

CAMBRIDGE

Humanities & Social Sciences

for the
Australian Curriculum

Interactive

Textbook

included

9

Compiling Editor
Malcolm McInerney



 CAMBRIDGE FIRST

Humanities & Social Sciences

for the
Australian Curriculum



Compiling Editor

Malcolm McInerney

Geography

Catherine Acworth | Alan Boddy | Tamara Boyer | David Butler | Rex Cooke | Matthew Davidson
Cheryl Desha | Deirdre Dragovich | Tony Eggleton | Xiumei Guo | Karlson 'Charlie' Hargroves
Grace Larobina | David Lergessner | Dora Marinova | Simon Miller | Peter Newman | Nonja Peters
Ken Purnell | Angela Reeve | Margaret Robertson | Heather Ruckert | Jesmond Sammut
Laura Stocker | Kate Thompson | Fiona Tonizzo | Andrew Walker | Michelle Walker

History

Angela Woollacott | Michael Adcock | Margaret Allen | Helen Butler | Christopher Cunneen
Raymond Evans | Jenny Gregory | Richard Malone | Alison Mackinnon | Judy McPherson
Michael Rathborne | James St. Julian | Luis Siddall | Robert Skinner | Alan Thomas
Nicholas Vlahogiannis

Economics and Business

Julie Cain | Megan Jeffery | Gillian Somers

Civics and Citizenship

Kathleen Thomas



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India
79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781107435117

© Malcolm McInerney, Angela Woollacott, Gillian Somers, Julie Cain, Megan Jeffery, Michael Adcock, Margaret Allen, David Butler, Rex Cooke, Raymond Evans, David Lergessner, Alison Mackinnon, Simon Miller, Margaret Robertson, Heather Ruckert, Jesmond Sammut and Andrew Walker 2014

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2014
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Cover designed by Sardine Design
Typeset by Kerry Cooke
Printed in China by C & C Offset Printing Co. Ltd.

A Cataloguing-in-Publication entry is available from the catalogue of the National Library of Australia at www.nla.gov.au

ISBN 978-1-107-43511-7 Paperback

Additional resources for this publication at www.cambridge.edu.au/GO

Reproduction and communication for educational purposes

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this publication, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act.

For details of the CAL licence for educational institutions contact:

Copyright Agency Limited
Level 15, 233 Castlereagh Street
Sydney NSW 2000
Telephone: (02) 9394 7600
Facsimile: (02) 9394 7601
Email: info@copyright.com.au

Reproduction and communication for other purposes

Except as permitted under the Act (for example a fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review) no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All inquiries should be made to the publisher at the address above.

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Please be aware that this publication may contain images of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people now deceased. Several variations of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander terms and spellings may also appear; no disrespect is intended. Please note that the terms 'Indigenous Australians' and 'Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples' may be used interchangeably in this publication.

Contents

<i>Foreword</i>	v
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	vii
<i>How to use this book</i>	viii

GEOGRAPHY

UNIT 1 BIOMES AND FOOD SECURITY

Chapter 1	Understanding ecosystems	3
Chapter 2	World biomes	13
Chapter 3	Biomes and food production	36
Chapter 4	Agricultural systems in Australia	57

UNIT 2 GEOGRAPHIES OF INTERCONNECTIONS

Chapter 5	Places and spaces	95
Chapter 6	Patterns of consumption	120
Chapter 7	Consequences of consumption	141
Chapter 8	Technologies	158
Chapter 9	Global mobility	177

CIVICS AND CITIZENSHIP: GOVERNMENT AND DEMOCRACY **188**

HISTORY

Chapter 10	Overview: the making of the modern world (1750–1918)	192
-------------------	--	-----

DEPTH STUDY 1 MAKING A BETTER WORLD

Chapter 11	The Industrial Revolution (1750–1914)	211
Chapter 12	Movement of peoples (1750–1901)	236
Chapter 13	Progressive ideas and movements (1750–1918)	262

DEPTH STUDY 2 AUSTRALIA AND ASIA

Chapter 14	Making a nation	287
Chapter 15	Asia and the world	321





DEPTH STUDY 3 WORLD WAR I

Chapter 16 World War I (1914–18) 353

CIVICS AND CITIZENSHIP: LAWS AND CITIZENS 384

ECONOMICS AND BUSINESS

Chapter 17 Australia, Asia and the global economy 388

Chapter 18 Participants in the global economy 408

Chapter 19 Managing financial risks and rewards for individuals 420

Chapter 20 Competition and businesses in the global market 438

Chapter 21 The changing nature of the Australian and global workplace 452

CIVICS AND CITIZENSHIP: CITIZENSHIP, DIVERSITY AND IDENTITY 466

Glossary 468

Index 480

Foreword

The writing of the Australian Curriculums for geography, history, economics and business, and civics and citizenship is an important and exciting chance for all of us to study these subjects separately. However, by having all of the subjects in this textbook, it makes us aware that there is significant correlation between them. In our world of simplistic divisions of knowledge there is always the danger that we see these subjects as quite separate and not connected. These subjects have a synergy and connection that is logical and obvious.

For example, to understand a history we need to consider the geography, and to make sense of the geography of a place or phenomenon we need to consider the concept of change over time. In 1987 the American geographer Donald Meinig said:

geography and history are complementary and interdependent, bound together by the very nature of things. This relationship is implied by such common terms as space and time, area and era, places and events, pairs that are fundamentally inseparable. In practice the two fields are differentiated by the proportionate emphasis each gives to these terms.

As shown in this textbook, the connection and interdependency of these subjects are particularly relevant as we study them in the Australian Curriculum.

Another example of the impact of geography on history is highlighted when we look at the rise and fall of the Roman Empire. Some argue that the rise of the empire relied on a favourable location enabling good agricultural production, mountain protection, accessible travel and expansive trade, and that the fall of the empire had to do with a regional drought that decreased the fertility of the land and agricultural output. As a result, the lack of food strained the empire and damaged the political situation to the point of collapse. To further expand on the geographical and historical connection, how could we study Australian history without recognising the impact of geography on our settlement, politics, national character, military involvement and much more? As the Australian historian Geoffrey Blainey said in his 1966 book *Tyranny of Distance*:

geographical remoteness has been central to shaping our history and identity – and it will continue to form our future.

While the team of authors assembled by Cambridge University Press to write *Humanities and Social Sciences for the Australian Curriculum* have written the textbook as distinct geography, history, economics and business, and civics and citizenship chapters in accordance with the curriculum, these topics frequently entwine. Such connections are found early in the history chapters when the geography of the area of study is highlighted by the inclusion of maps, and in geography the key concept of change makes it unavoidable to view the content without considering change over time and planning for the future.

In this textbook you will learn about the connection between humans and their social and environmental surroundings and hence the connection between all subjects. In history you will study the making of the modern world and the big transformations. The mass movements of people were a key feature of this period, as were the technological, economic and social changes of the Industrial Revolution. Empires expanded around the world and new ideas of political equality and nationalism lead to their downfall. The last chapters look particularly at Australia, Asia and the terrible cataclysm of World War I. The geography chapters enable you to study the nature and importance of the interconnections between humans and the environment in different places around the world. In the chapters addressing biomes and food security you will learn not only about the location and nature of biomes, but also how they have been altered by human use and how we can manage the environment and food resources for a sustainable future. The year level focus on interconnection and change continues as you study the nature and complexities of connections between places and between humans and places.





This textbook provides an opportunity for you to see that geography impacts on our everyday lives and that we are part of a highly interconnected and interdependent world.

The economics and business chapters will provide a deep understanding of the global economy and participants, interactions and interdependency within this economy. You will explore Australia's engagement with Asia, decision making within an economy and the changing global workplace. The civics and citizenship sections will build on your knowledge of the Australian political system including the role of the media, political parties and decision-making processes. These studies will enable you to see the development of the modern world and the global economy.

This textbook is unique in including many curriculums in one textbook. By doing so you will become aware of the relationships between these subjects and you will have the opportunity to connect them in a creative and meaningful way. The chapters are presented in a concise way with plenty of online supporting materials, interesting thoughts and facts, relevant primary and secondary sources, creative activities using relevant skills, eye-catching images and illustrations, glossary definitions and many other features to make this an outstanding resource for your learning. The authors hope that you find the study of these subjects of great relevance to you and, most importantly, enjoyable to learn about. Remember, the subjects are entwined and to really understand one we must consider the others.

Malcolm McInerney

Acknowledgements

The author and publisher wish to thank the following sources for permission to reproduce material:

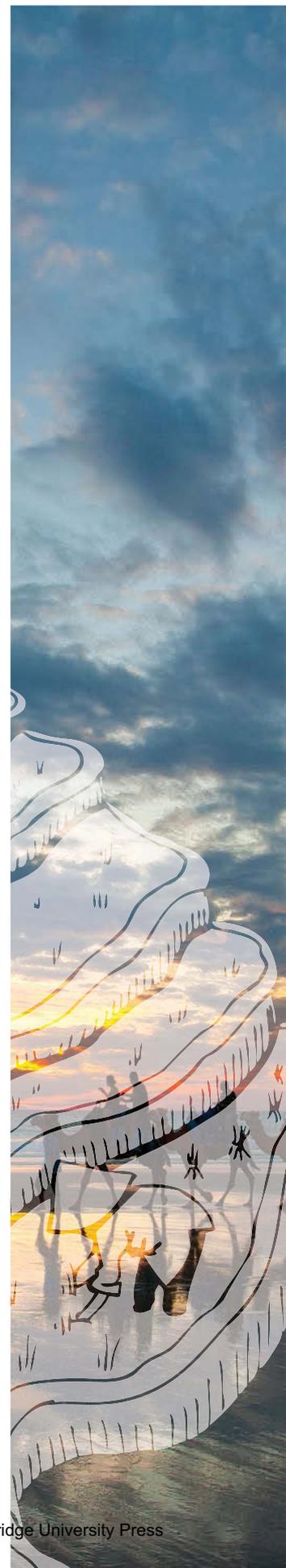
Chapter opener images: © Alamy / The Art Gallery Collection, **p.321**; Reprinted with permission from The Australian War Memorial, **pp.352-353**; The Bridgeman Art Library, **pp.192, 262**; Courtesy of Parliament House Art Collection, Canberra, A.C.T., **pp.286-287**; 2014 Used under license from Shutterstock.com / Aleksander Bolbot, **pp.2-3** / Wildnerpix, **p.13** / Denis Rozan, **p.36** / AceCootePhotography, **p.57** / Janelle Luggie, **pp.94-95** / africa924, **p.141** / Danillantiq, **p.158** / Tomislav Pinter, **p.177** / Iakov Kalinin, **p.388** / twobee, **p.408** / Zadorozhnyi Viktor, **p.420** / majeczka, **p.438** / ChameleonsEye, **p.452**; State Library of South Australia [B 4263], **p.236**.

Image sources: Reproduced by permission of AAMI Personal Insurance, **20.6**; Reproduced by permission of the ACTU, **21.14**; © Alamy / GL Archive, **3.3** / Ulrich Doering, **3.32** / Bill Bachman, **4.11, 4.16** / Peter Abell, **4.19** / Angela Waite, **4.26** / Radius Images, **4.28** / CB_food, **4.29** / Justin Hannaford, **4.32** / AgStock Images, Inc., **4.33** / Travelscape Images, **4.37** / Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd, **5.14** / Andrew Palmer, **5.20** / JELLE vanderwolf, **5.27** / David Wall, **5.32** / Lee Yiu Tung, **p.120** / David Stock, **6.10** / SDBCHINA, **6.14** / The Art Archive, **15.3**; Art Gallery Ballarat, **13.9**; Reproduced by permission of the ASX, **19.5**; With permission of the Australian Government Department of Human Services, **19.18**; Reproduced by permission of the Australian Human Rights Commission, **21.5**; Reprinted with permission from The Australian War Memorial, **16.3, 16.7, 16.11**; Reproduced by permission of Bakers Delight Holdings Ltd, **20.6**; Reproduced by permission of Bendigo Bank, **19.2**; Reproduced by permission of Boeing Australia, **18.6**; The Bridgeman Art Library, **11.20, 13.3, 13.11, 13.12, 16.2**; © Bureau of Meteorology, Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 licence, **4.12, 4.13**; Permission granted by Cadbury, **20.6**; © Commonwealth of Australia. Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia licence, **4.31**; © Commonwealth of Australia. Image produced by Murray-Darling Basin Authority, **4.9**; © Corbis / National Geographic Vintage, **16.17**; Reprinted by permission of CSIRO, **4.18**; Image © 2013 DigitalGlobe, **3.23**; © Dreamstime / Weldon Schloneger, **4.36** / Haywiremedia, **8.5**; Courtesy of Ecove Group, **5.21**; Map produced by ERIN (Environmental Resources Information Network), April 2012. Australian Government Department of Sustainability, Environment, Water, Population and Communities. © Commonwealth of Australia 2012. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Australia Licence, **2.22**; Reproduced by permission of the Fair Work Commission, **21.6**; Fairfax Syndication / The Age News picture by Neil Newitt, **4.22**; Reproduced by permission of Fairtrade Australia & New Zealand, **7.9**; Reproduced by permission of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, **4.38**; The Granger Collection, NYC – All rights reserved, **10.8, 11.8, 11.9, 11.10, 11.11, 13.14**; © Gunawan Kartapranata. Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported licence, **15.15**; Heritage Editions, **11.19**; Imperial War Museum [Q47894]. All rights reserved, **16.13**; © iStockphoto / adventtr, **8.1** / Steven Miric, **8.11** / Lise Gagne, **8.18** / seraficus, **10.13** / timhughes, **12.8**; Courtesy of KITLV / Royal Netherlands Institute of Southeast Asian and Caribbean Studies, **15.10**; Permission granted by LG, **20.13**; Reproduced by permission of the Menzies School of Health Research, **21.1.2**; © Monkeytypist. Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported licence, **9.1.2**; © Mrcricket48 at en.wikipedia. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported licence, **4.17**; Museum of Chinese Australian History (Chinese Museum). Quong Tart collection, **14.12**; Museum Victoria [MM 5018], **4.23**; NASA Earth Observatory. Public domain, **8.22**; From the collection of the National Archives of Australia, **14.9**; Reproduced with permission from National Archives (UK), **12.11**; National Gallery of Australia, **4.8**; National Library of Australia, **14.2, 14.20** / *The Australian Town & Country Journal*, 19 July 1879, **12.12** / [an24615958], **14.10** / F.F. Balliere [vn2818165], **14.11** / [an14617296], **14.22** / [vn3697266], **16.10**; Newspix / Ed Gannon, **4.34** / Ray Strange, **9.1.1** / Ellen Smith, **16.18** / Norm Oorloff, **21.15**; Courtesy of Parks Australia, **5.7**; Collection of the Queen Victoria Museum and Art Gallery, Launceston, Tasmania, **4.6**; Queensland Police Museum, **14.5, 16.16**; Permission granted by Rainforest Alliance, **20.7**; With kind permission from the Library of the Religious Society and Friends, **12.5**; Reproduced by permission of Safe Work Australia, **21.3**; Photographs and prints division, Schomburg Centre for Research in Black Culture, the New York Public Library, Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations, **13.5**; 2014 Used under license from Shutterstock.com / rm, **1.1** / Mike Brake, **1.4, 6.8** / Debra James, **1.7** / PHB.cz (Richard Semik), **2.2** / Ralph Loesche, **2.24** / Chris Howey, **3.24, 5.19, 5.25** / PiyachatS, **3.25** / Igor Strukov, **4.1** / Janelle Luggie, **4.2, 5.26** / Biaz Kure, **4.3** / Rudy Umans, **4.21** / branislavpudar, **4.24** / soft_light, **4.27** / Dmitry Kalinovic, **4.35** / sta, **4.40** / littleny, **4.41** / Gayvoronskaya_Yana, **4.42** / nexus 7, **5.5** / Leelakajonkij, **5.11** / Graham Prentice, **5.13** / Neale Cousland, **5.15** / Regien Paassen, **5.16** / Brisbane, **5.17** / Jason Searle, **5.22** / Taras Vyshnya, **5.23, 21.2** / Greg Ward NZ, **5.24** / jiarumbe, **5.28** / Rovenko Photo, **5.29** / Microstock Man, **5.30** / Rob Jenner, **5.31** / Mogens Trolle, **5.33** / Banana Republic Images, **6.1** / arka38, **6.2** / Stanislaw Tokarski, **6.3** / BartolomiejMagierowski, **6.13** / ChameleonsEye, **6.1** / TonyV3112, **6.18, 18.2(t-r)** / hxdbzxy, **6.19, 17.11** / Thomas Barrat, **6.20** / Joris van den Heuvel, **7.1** / africa924, **7.3, 7.5** / Huguette Roe, **7.6** / manzrussali, **7.10** / hPhotia, **7.12** / lev radin, **8.13** / kwest, **8.16** / Franck Boston, **8.17** / WDG Photo, **8.19** / col, **9.1** / Johnny Lye, **9.2** / Sadik Gulec, **9.4** / GST Production, **9.7** / David Lade, **9.8** / Instinia, **9.9** / ivan bastien, **9.1.4** / Pawel Papis, **10.6** / R. Gino Santa Maria, **11.24** / Susan Law Cain, **14.28** / Fedor Selivanov, **15.18** / Aleksander Todorovic, **15.21** / chungking, **15.23** / sergign, **16.1.1** / Jovan Mandic, **16.1.3** / Monkey Business Images, **16.1.4** / Songquan Deng, **16.1.5** / Svend77, **17.2(0)** / wavebreakmedia, **17.2(r)**, **19.16** / gpoinstudio, **17.4** / Michael D Brown, **17.8** / nattan726, **17.12** / donvictorio, **17.19** / Zvonimir Athletic, **17.20** / hxdyl, **17.24** / yankane, **17.26** / Everett Collection, **18.1** / Luciano Mortula, **18.2(t-l)** / Fotokon, **18.2(b-l)** / Martin Good, **18.2(b-r)** / Eugene Suslo, **18.4** / Arnab Maity, **18.7** / kentoh, **18.10** / Arseniy Krasnevsky, **18.11** / Ragne Kabanova, **18.14** / Gordon Bell, **19.1(t-l&t-r)** / TK Kurikawa, **19.1(b-l&b-r)**, **19.14** / Cheryl Savan, **19.3** / Andrey Popov, **19.4** / kurhan, **19.7** / Sam72, **19.8** / Syda Productions, **19.11** / Kostenko Maxim, **19.12** / sanjagrujic, **19.13** / Passion Images, **20.1** / Tanjala Gica, **20.9(l&r)** / wdoneot, **20.10** / Rawpixel, **21.4** / Dragon Images, **21.8** / Pressmaster, **21.9, 21.12** / bikeriderlondon, **21.10** / macgyverhh, **21.11** / DO NOT, **21.13** / Gerardo Borbolla, **21.16**; Reprinted by permission of Siemens, **8.15, 8.20**; Reproduced by permission of Spotlight Retail Group Pty Ltd, **20.12**; SSPJ via Getty Images, **11.4**; State Library of NSW, Mitchell Library – Z/CP/C5b, **4.10** / a928634, **12.7** / [on4_39081], **14.13** / [a928871], **14.21** / **14.26(0)** / *The Bulletin*, 21 August 1886, p.12, 13 ACP, **14.29**; State Library of Queensland, John Oxley Library [neg.21683], **14.7** / [neg.13127], **14.15** / *The Queenslander*, 1904, **14.25** / [neg.51453], **14.27** / [neg.60511], **16.12**; State Library of South Australia, [B 5099/15], **10.3** / [B 69054/118], **10.14** / [PRG 280/1/21/8], **14.4** / [B 38328], **14.16** / *Critic*, 26 August 1899, **14.23**; State Library of Victoria [H31045/39], **4.5** / **11.7, 13.16, 13.17, 14.24, 16.14**; © State Library of Western Australia 2012, **12.20, 12.21**; Reproduced by permission of Tong-Len Charity, **8.24-8.29**; Reproduced by permission of Toyota Motor Corporation Australia Ltd, **20.6**; © Trocaire from Ireland. Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic licence, **17.25**; Reproduced with permission from The Tropenmuseum, Netherlands, **15.20**; © The Trustees of the British Museum. All rights reserved, **14.3**; Courtesy of UC Berkeley, Bancroft Library, **12.13**; © United Nations. Reprinted by permission, **7.2**; Reproduced by permission of the University of Adelaide, **5.10**; Photo by TSGT Robert A. Whitehead, U.S. Air Force. Wikimedia Commons, **21.1.1**.

Non-source images: © Alamy / Universal Images Group Limited, **p.124(c)** / David Robertson, **p.126(b-l)** / Eddie Gerald, **p.126(b-r)** / Bill Bachman, **p.138(c)** / Pat Behnke, **p.138(b)**; Shutterstock.com / Marques, **p.124(b)** / Wade H. Massie, **p.125(t-l)** / Pavel L Photo and Video, **p.125(r)** / Tyshun, **p.125(b-r)** / linerpics, **p.126(t-l)** / Monkey Business Images, **p.126(t-r)** / Tutti Frutti, **p.134(b)** / Thomas Barrat, **p.155(t)** / Africa Studio, **p.138(t)**.

Text: 'Are we ready for CCTV?' by Damon Cronshaw, *Newcastle Herald*, 25 October 2012 (Image: Shutterstock.com / suphot), **p.104**; © Department of Immigration and Citizenship. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Australia, **p.182**; © Commonwealth of Australia. Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 Australia licence, **p.186**; Extract from *A Cargo of Women* by Babette Smith, 2008. Reprinted with permission © Allen & Unwin, **12.19**; Extract from *Flight from Famine: The Coming of the Irish to Canada* by Donald McKay. Printed with permission of Dundrum Press Limited. Copyright © 2009, **12.22**; Extract from *The Home Fires* by A. Spivalo. Reproduced by permission of Fremantle Arts Centre Press, **16.19**; Extract from 'Robots won't end manufacturing jobs but will change them, says productivity report' by Anna Patty, *The Sydney Morning Herald*, 7 April 2014, **17.3**; 'Budget deficit worse than thought, radical reform needed' by Gareth Hutchens, *The Sydney Morning Herald*, 13 April 2014, **17.9**; 'SME's international trade outlook on the rise' by Andrew Skinner, *The Age*, 25 March 2014, **17.20**; Reproduced by permission of the Australian Broadcasting Corporation and ABC Online. © 2014 ABC. All rights reserved, **17.24, 18.8**; © The Conversation (www.theconversation.com). Creative Commons – Attribution/No derivatives, **18.5**; Extract from 'Firms aim to join global supply chain', *Viet Nam News*, 23 April 2014, **18.12**; Reproduced by permission of the United Nations, **18.13**; Extract from 'Pressure on retailers to act ethically' by Eli Greenblat, *The Sydney Morning Herald*, 1 July 2013, **18.14**; Reproduced by permission of Etiko, **20.8**; Permission granted by Aussie Farmers Direct, **20.11**; Reprinted by permission of Rainbow Serpent, **20.14**; © Commonwealth of Australia. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Australia licence, **21.7**; © Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade website – www.dfat.gov.au. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Australia, **21.1.3**.

Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright. The publisher apologises for any accidental infringement and welcomes information that would redress this situation.



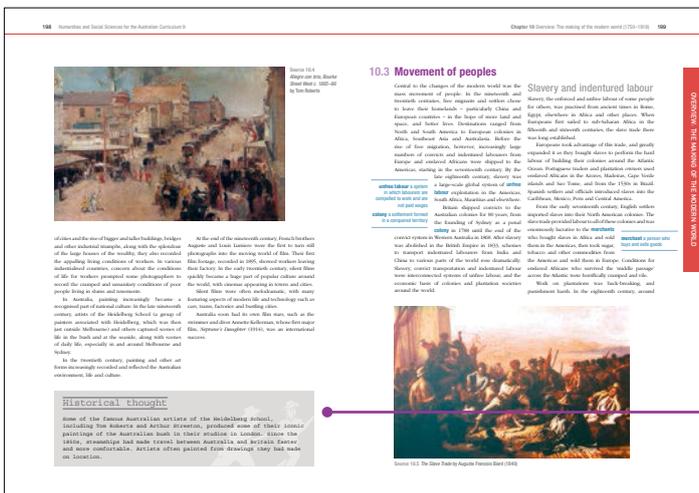
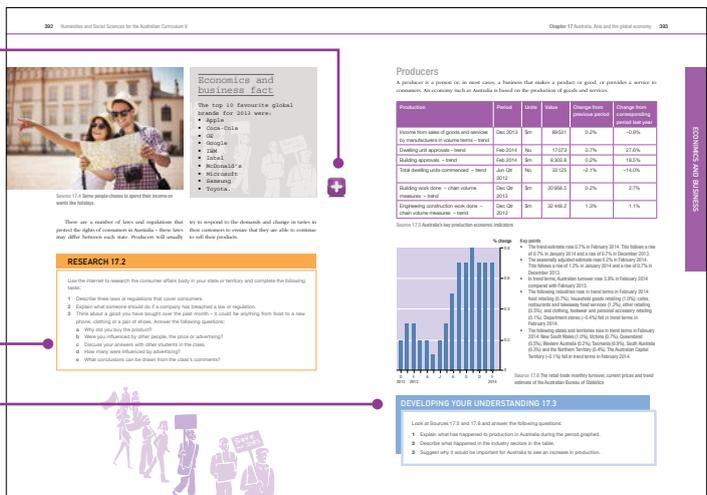
How to use this book

Chapter openers feature **Before you start** and **Let's begin** sections, which focus your attention on the topics being studied and prepare you for your in-depth investigations.



Icons alert you to additional activities and case studies available for download online through Cambridge GO for extra practice and further investigation.

A variety of **Developing your understanding** activities and **Research** tasks explore key concepts, develop skills and draw back to the general learning capabilities and cross-curriculum priorities.



Glossary terms are bolded in the text, defined in the margins and collated at the end of the textbook for easy reference.

Thought and fact boxes highlight interesting information to enrich your learning.

Reflecting and consolidating

questions at the end of the chapter include short answer and extended response to test your knowledge through the reinforcement of key concepts and application of skills.

Chapter summaries review the main ideas of the topic to reflect and consolidate on what you have learned.

228 **Reflections and Social Science for the Australian Curriculum 2**

Chapter 10: The meeting of the modern world (1750–1918) 228

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Industrialisation changed both the ways of production and the place of production from home to workshops, factory and office. Many workers had a hard daily grind and lived in cramped conditions.
- Slavery caused transport and industrial labour were systems of exploited labour that helped to build colonies and new countries.
- Settlers and migrants moved around the world to high countries, partly because of overpopulation and racism.
- Class struggle up and expanded quickly. The workers' protest grew.
- New technologies included photography and film, which recorded these dramatic changes along with art and literature. Films and cinema became very popular forms of entertainment.
- Ideas of individual rights and human equality spread: political revolutions and led to new forms of government.
- The business classes gained self-government, mostly in the 1850s, and federated as one nation in 1901.

Source analysis

Study Source 10.15 and answer the following questions.

The English were angry to find an area of new land before them, and that it was occupied by native people. This is evident from the map. The map shows the location of the land. The map also shows the location of the land. The map also shows the location of the land. The map also shows the location of the land.

Extended-response question

Underline members in the American, French and Spanish Revolutions. Present your findings in a report and be sure to answer the following questions:

- What political goals did they have in common?
- What political principles were shared?
- Did the earlier revolutions influence the later?
- Who were the main leaders of each revolution?

Short answer questions

- Explain how the daily labour for workers changed with the Industrial Revolution.
- How did Australia differ from other colonies in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries?
- Describe why the terms 'settler' and 'migrant' moved across the world in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.
- What benefits did the imperial powers receive from their colonies?
- Compare the aspects of racial culture and identity that the English and other major imperial colonisers. Identify the main constitutional changes in Australia in the mid-nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

244 **Reflections and Social Science for the Australian Curriculum 2**

Chapter 11: Civics and citizenship: Law and citizens 244

Civics and citizenship

Law and citizens

The principles of the Australian justice system

The underlying principle of the Australian justice system is that all people are created equal and that the law is the same for everyone. This means that everyone has the same rights and responsibilities under the law.

Role of the courts

The role of the court is to apply and interpret the law. The court is the final authority on the law. The court is the final authority on the law. The court is the final authority on the law.

Developing your understanding 11.1.1

- Outline the main features of the Australian justice system.
- Outline the three different types of court.
- Identify which court would make judgement on the following offences:
 - stealing from a shop
 - stealing from a shop (resulting in the loss of over \$5,000)
 - stealing from a shop (resulting in the loss of over \$5,000)

Court	Cost level	Offences
Supreme Court of Victoria	Unlimited amount in damages - offences considered more serious than those heard in the County Court	Sexual and child offences, such as murder, attempted murder and conspiracy of murder
County Court of Victoria	Unlimited amount in damages	All indictable offences except murder, treason or manslaughter
Magistrates Court of Victoria	Up to \$100,000 in damages	Summary offences, such as minor assault or offences involving children

Civics and Citizenship sections introduce the content descriptions for this subject area in a succinct manner and include **Developing your understanding** activities to ensure all four learning areas of humanities and social sciences are covered.

THIS TEXTBOOK IS SUPPORTED BY ONLINE RESOURCES

Additional resources are available free for users of this textbook online at *Cambridge GO*.

- The Interactive Textbook is an HTML version of the student text that delivers a host of interactive features. It is best viewed through Firefox, Safari or Google Chrome.
- The PDF Textbook is a downloadable version of the student text, with note-taking and bookmarking enabled.
- Activities in Word format and links to other resources may also be provided.



Use the unique 16-character access code found in the front of this textbook to activate these resources.

www.cambridge.edu.au/go

This textbook is also available for purchase separately as an App.

The App is specifically designed and formatted for iPads. It enables students to bookmark pages and may also include interactive features to enhance the teaching and learning experience of the student text. The App is also being developed for Android use.

For access instructions and product updates visit:
www.cambridge.edu.au/education/apps

Access your Interactive Textbook and PDF Textbook today at www.cambridge.edu.au/go

1. Log in to your existing *Cambridge GO* user account or create a new user account by visiting:
www.cambridge.edu.au/GO/newuser
 - All of your *Cambridge GO* resources can be accessed through this account.
 - You can log in to your *Cambridge GO* account anywhere you can access the internet using the email address and password with which you are registered.
2. Activate *Cambridge GO* resources by entering the unique 16-character access code found in the front of this textbook.
 - Once you have activated your unique code on *Cambridge GO*, it is not necessary to input your code again. Just log in to your account using the email address and password you registered with and you will find all of your resources.
3. Go to the My Resources page on *Cambridge GO* and access all of your resources anywhere, anytime.*

* Technical specifications: You must be connected to the internet to activate your account. Some material, including the PDF Textbook, can be downloaded. To use the PDF Textbook you must have the latest version of Adobe Reader installed. The Interactive Textbook is best viewed through Firefox, Safari or Google Chrome.

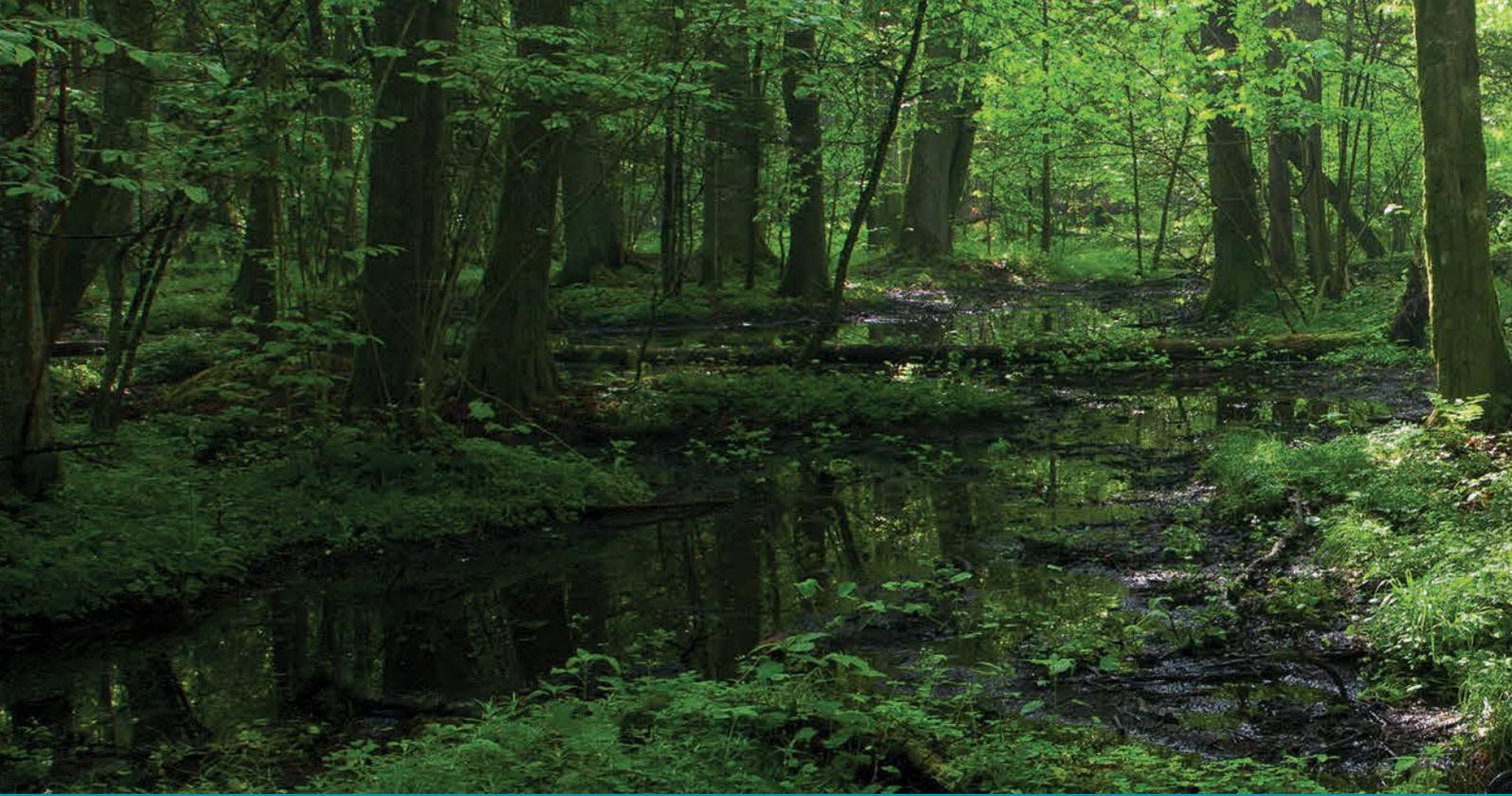
For more information or help contact us on 03 8671 1400
or enquiries@cambridge.edu.au





Geography





Unit 1

Biomes and food security



1

Understanding ecosystems

Before you start

Main focus

One way of looking at the Earth's natural environment is to look at the different ecosystems that form the basis of life on Earth.

Why it's relevant to us

Knowledge of the Earth's ecosystems is basic to understanding how the natural environment operates, how that environment can impact on people and the effects people may have on that environment.

Inquiry questions

- What is an ecosystem?
- What are the main characteristics of an ecosystem?
- How have natural forces combined to allow for the development of these ecosystems?
- How and why are ecosystems important to humans?

Key terms

- Climate
- Climax vegetation
- Decomposers
- Ecosystem
- Food chain
- Photosynthesis
- Primary producer
- Weather

Let's begin

Geographers make sense of the world by dividing it into regions. The physical world around us – the plants, animals, soils, slopes and **climate** – can be divided into different-sized regions, depending on the scale of the study being undertaken. Even the study of a small part of the Earth's surface may divide that area up into different ecosystems.

An ecosystem is a natural region – a hill slope, a pond, a beach, a backyard. This natural region is based on a physical feature upon which a group of plants, animals and microorganisms have developed. Some geographers studying ecosystems take a large-scale approach to their studies. These geographers examine relationships between plants and animals, and natural and human features, in a small area. Geographers who take what is known as a small-scale approach examine regions covering a much larger area. These regions are known as biomes and are the subject of the next chapter.

It is sometimes difficult to map ecosystems and biomes because they are subject to change – which may be long term, such as in the changes caused by the uplifting of mountains, or rapid, as in change following a cyclone, flood or bushfire.

climate the long-term changes in temperature and rainfall experienced in an area

1.1 Ecosystems

ecosystem an area of the Earth's surface where living organisms interact with parts of the Earth

An **ecosystem** is an area where non-living (abiotic) parts of the Earth's surface and biotic (living) organisms interact. They interact in such a way that a small area may be identified as a region.

Geographers may be interested in studying this ecosystem from a variety of viewpoints. They may be interested in what causes the ecosystem to function as a unit or in how the ecosystem is changing over time and what might be causing that change. They may also be interested in what changes might occur in the ecosystem if certain changes were made to it.

The key part of the word is 'system'. The various parts work together just as the parts of your body do or the parts of a car do. Ecosystems require 'inputs' to make them function – just as your body needs food and a car needs fuel of some sort.

Ecosystems also have 'outputs' – waste material resulting from the processes required to keep the ecosystem functioning. Your body may sweat. It certainly emits various wastes as gases, liquids and solids. A car converts the fuel into the energy required to move it forward and emits various gases as a result of the energy transformation process.

The ecosystem, the body and the car all require inputs from the world around us. This world can be divided into two parts – the abiotic and the biotic.

Geographical thought

The hair on your head is an interesting ecosystem: thousands of microscopic creatures live in and on your hair. These creatures actually wage war on each other. For them, the entire universe is your head.

Abiotic components of an ecosystem

The abiotic part of an ecosystem is that part of the ecosystem which is non-living. There are many abiotic

components of an ecosystem. All of these are essential parts of the ecosystem and contribute to the type of ecosystem that develops. Those components are as follows:

- sunlight
- temperature
- wind
- rainfall
- rocks
- soil
- gas.

Biotic components of an ecosystem

The biotic parts of an ecosystem are its living parts. These are closely related to the abiotic components of the ecosystem. The biotic parts of an ecosystem include the following:

- *Flora* is the plant life found in a region at a particular time.
- *Fauna* is the animal life found in a region at a particular time.
- *Fungi* look like plants but are in fact organisms (such as smuts, moulds, mushrooms and mildews).

How do ecosystems work?

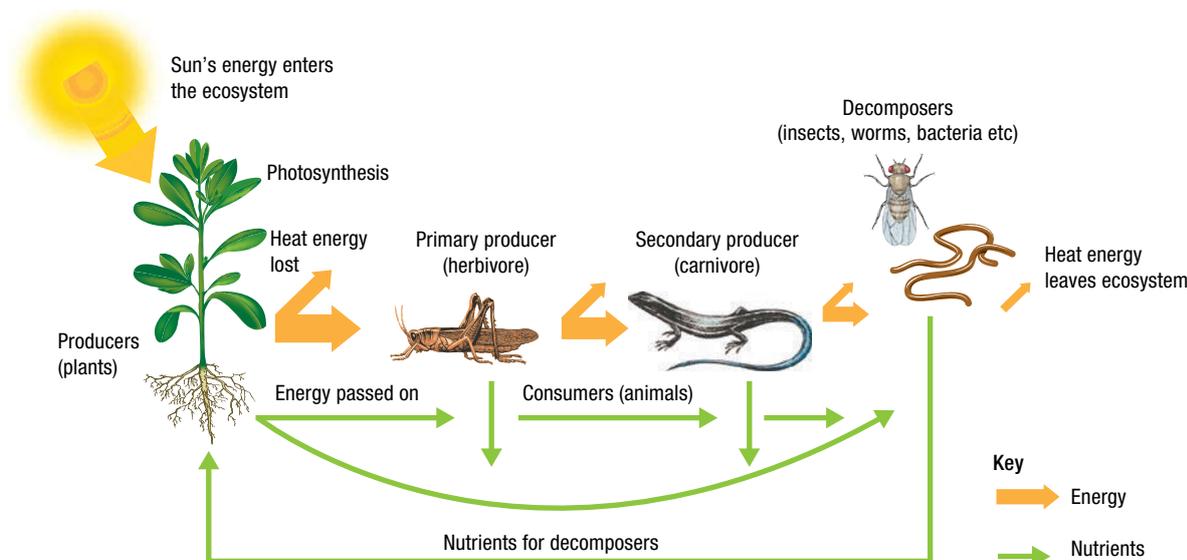
Ecosystems are dynamic. The parts operate together just as the parts of a human body or a car work together. Ecosystems are subject to change.

These changes may occur daily, annually or over a longer period of time.

Ecosystems on Earth are driven by the power of the sun. Radiation from the sun provides the heat that is essential for life on Earth. Without the sun, Earth would be a frozen rock whirling through space. Approximately 30% of this radiation is reflected back into space by clouds, aerosols, ice and snow. The remaining radiation is absorbed by the land, the oceans, the atmosphere and human structures.

The sun provides the Earth with light and heat. If you are a light sleeper, you will notice the arrival of the sun as the sky brightens and birds begin their daily activity. If your house has solar panels, you will notice that the output from the panels increases as the day progresses. The reverse occurs as the sun begins to set.

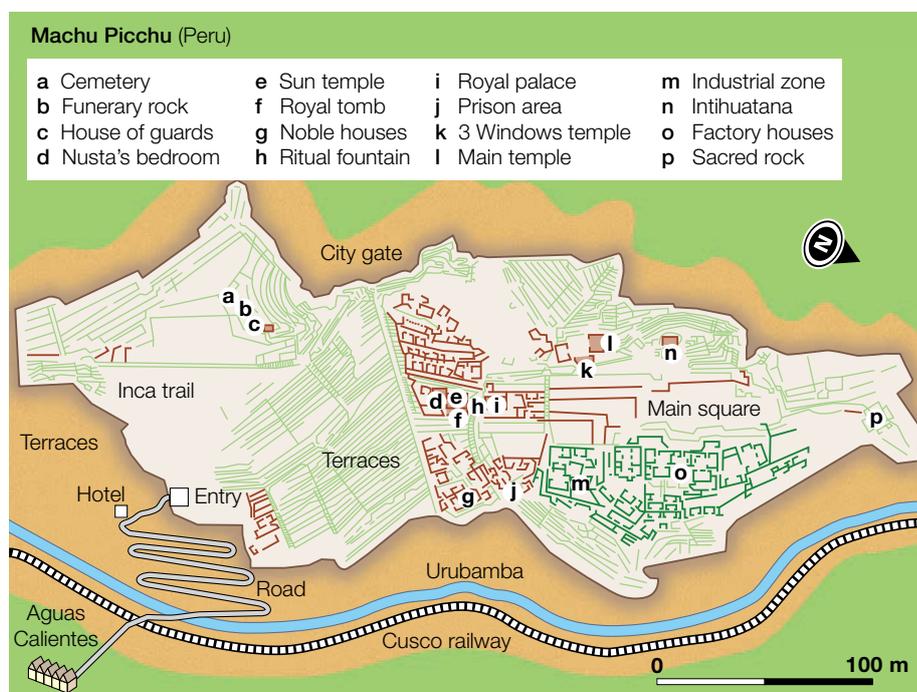
Source 1.1 shows the simple relationships within an ecosystem.



Source 1.1 Simple ecosystem diagram

Machu Picchu, in Peru, is a favourite destination for international travellers. Machu Picchu was constructed by the Incas around the middle of the fifteenth century, but was abandoned by them when the Spanish invaded Peru.

Machu Picchu has a layout that excites modern geographers and town planners, with clear areas set aside as a main square, an area for the upper classes or nobles, an industrial area and an area for workers' housing. Surrounding the city centre, and separated



Source 1.2 Machu Picchu town plan

solstice the two times of the year when the sun is at its greatest distance from the celestial equator. The summer solstice is the longest day of the year and the winter solstice is the shortest

from it by a wall, was an agricultural area. Perhaps the most significant feature of the town was its orientation in relation to the sun.

The sun temple is designed so that the rays of the sun on the winter **solstice** shine into it.

Some distance away is the Sun Gate. This is the point through which the sun's rays first light up Machu Picchu each day.



Source 1.3 Machu Picchu, high in the Andes Mountains, was carefully oriented in relation to the sun.

1.2 The sun and the abiotic environment: weather

weather the state of the atmosphere at a given time

The sun has a major impact on the abiotic environment. Let's start by examining the impact of the sun on **weather**. Weather refers to the day-to-day changes in the Earth's atmosphere in terms of:

- **precipitation**
- temperature
- humidity
- wind speed and direction
- air pressure.

precipitation water, in forms such as rain, snow, sleet or hail, that condenses in the air, becomes too dense to remain suspended, and falls to the Earth's surface

1.3 The sun and the abiotic environment: rocks and soil

in situ in the original position; not having been moved

Temperature changes associated with the heat of the sun are a major cause of mechanical or physical weathering, which is the breakdown of rocks **in situ** as a result of different components

of rocks heating up and expanding at different rates, or water in cracks and crevices in the rocks freezing during the cooler hours of the night and the rock being broken apart by the expanding ice.

1.4 The sun and the biotic environment: flora and fauna

photosynthesis the process of plants converting sunlight to energy

chlorophyll the green substance in plants that allows them to use the energy from the sun

Sunlight generates the process of **photosynthesis** in plants. This process is essential for much of life on Earth. Photosynthesis is a complex chemical process, involving **chlorophyll**, carbon dioxide, water and sunlight, and produces the carbon and sugar compounds necessary for plant growth

and the release of oxygen so necessary for animal life (including human life) on the planet.

Plants have a number of roles in ecosystems.

Some plants provide shade in which other plants will grow. Some plants are hosts for other plants; climbers and epiphytes, for example, need host plants. Many plants have special adaptations that allow them to grow in specific areas (mangroves and cacti, for example).



Source 1.4 Black sand beach in Hawaii formed by the erosion of basalt

All plants die, and in death they decompose and provide food for other plants.

Around the world there are some very difficult areas for plants to colonise. The growth of plants in these areas requires colonising plants with very special adaptations. These plants stabilise the environment and allow other plants, plants that are not adapted to the initial conditions, to eventually move into an area.

The first plants to inhabit an area are known as the **colonisers**.

coloniser the first to inhabit an area

The role of the colonisers is to establish an environment which will allow other plants to grow. The colonisers help break down the rock into soil, and when they die they provide plant nutrients for a later group of plants. Eventually the environment is changed significantly by different groups of plants. A soil layer is developed and larger plants then provide protection for seedlings of still larger plants. The most dominant form of vegetation in an area is known as the **climax vegetation**. Climax vegetation is the major plant community that will develop in an area given the existing climatic conditions.

climax vegetation the most dominant form of vegetation in an area

For a large part of eastern Australia, the climax vegetation is eucalypt forest. Don't lose sight of the fact that it is the sun that is driving this vegetation development.

The animal kingdom is affected by sunlight in two ways. The time of day can have a significant effect on when animals are active. Some are **diurnal**. These animals are active during the day: giraffes and wildebeest, for example, are diurnal. Some are **nocturnal**. These are active at night: owls and flying foxes, for example, are nocturnal. Some are **crepuscular**. These are active in the twilight hours of early morning and early evening: many birds, for instance, use these hours to visit water sources. Deer, too, are most active in the twilight hours.

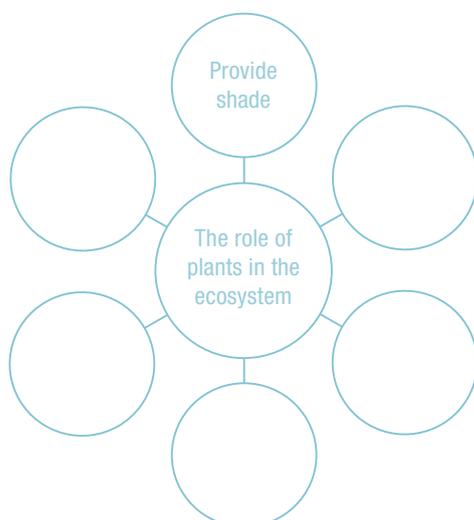
diurnal active during the day

nocturnal active at night

crepuscular active at dawn or in the early evening

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 1.1

Copy the graphic organiser below and explore the different uses of plants.



The other way sunlight affects the animal kingdom is through its effect on vegetation.

primary producer an animal that eats only plant matter

There are animals which only eat plant material. These are the **primary producers** in an ecosystem. Primary producers can be as small as caterpillars and as large as giraffes. They convert plant material into the food needed for their survival.

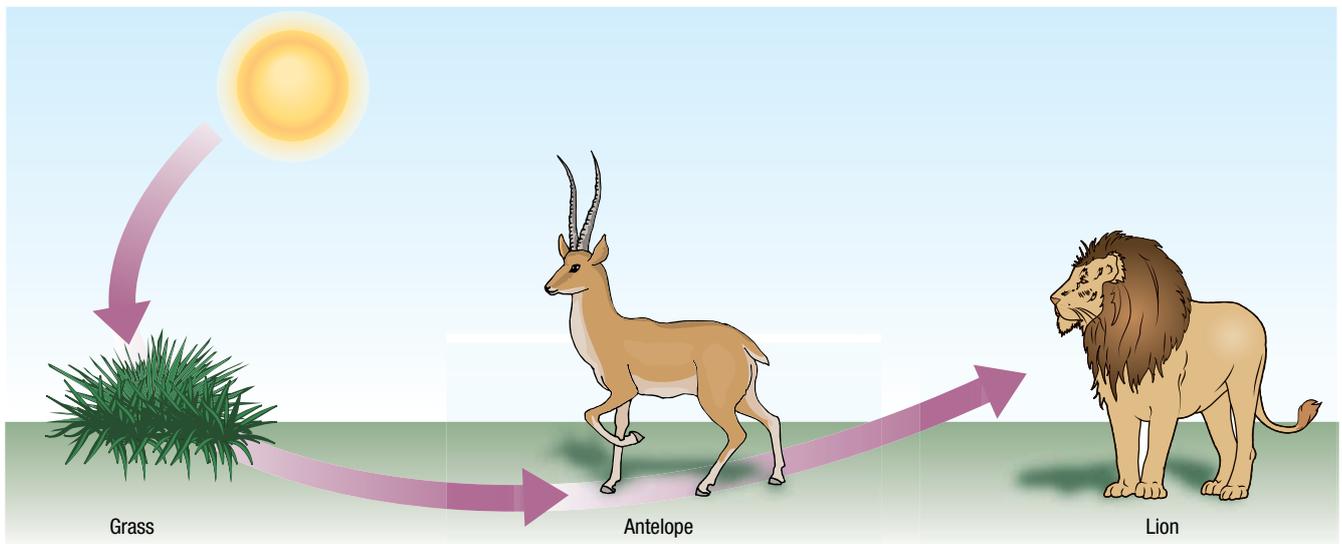
They also produce waste products, in the form of gases, solids and liquids, which assist in the breakdown

of plant material. On a more important level, many primary producer animals are the food of the next level of animals in the **food chain** – the carnivores.

These animals eat other animals.

Source 1.5 is a simple version of what happens in many parts of the world. The sun provides the necessities for plant growth. A herbivore grazes on the plants and a carnivore consumes the herbivore.

food chain the sequence of feeding arrangements in an ecosystem in which each member may be food for the next highest member of the chain



Source 1.5 Simple food chain in a small ecosystem

The actual situation is not that simple. The study of biomes in the next chapter will investigate the relationships between plants, animals and the environment in more detail.

The interesting thing about human beings is that they have an increased ability to survive because they consume all levels of the food chain, from the plants at the base (such as carrots, tomatoes and peas) to the herbivores (cows, antelopes, kangaroos) to the carnivores (sharks, crocodiles).

The role of the sun's energy in relation to plant and animal life on Earth is not over even when plants

and animals die. Many of the wastes remaining when a plant or animal dies go through further processing to return their nutrients to the environment.

This is where the **decomposers** come in. They break down the decaying life form into nutrients which can be used again in the ecosystem.

Scavengers form part of this group. Crows, Tasmanian devils and hyenas are scavengers. (Hyenas also hunt.) Fungi and bacteria are other life forms that assist in the decomposition of plant and animal remains.

decomposer an animal, fungus or bacterium that breaks down or cleans up waste matter

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 1.2

- 1 Describe the role of the colonisers.
- 2 Predict the impact on the ecosystem if the decomposers were eliminated.
- 3 Create your own food chain based on your own diet.

1.5 Introducing another variable: humans

For some considerable time humans have had a major impact on ecosystems on the Earth's surface and that impact is increasing. The impact can be small, such as using insecticide on an ants' nest (though that is certainly not a small event for the ant colony), or so large as to completely destroy ecosystems. Using an insecticide on an ants' nest is a deliberate attempt to destroy an ecosystem, but other actions may work to save an ecosystem.

Humans have not always had the degree of control over ecosystems that they have today.

Humans were originally very much an integral part of the ecosystem: they lived in caves, gathered roots and berries and hunted wild animals during the day. Humans themselves were hunted by those wild animals.

Fire became an important tool for humans. It provided warmth and protection. Australia's first inhabitants used fire to modify the environment for their own use. Fire was used to remove undergrowth and encourage the growth of new shoots, which would attract animals. It has only recently been recognised that there was often a pattern to the burning. This pattern left a mosaic of sections of undergrowth at different stages of development. Some of this undergrowth provided protection for the animals the people hunted. The important thing was that catastrophic bushfires were prevented, as different parts of the land were in different stages of recovery from deliberate fires.

In time, humans learned which plants could be grown in certain areas and which animals could be brought under control.

This knowledge resulted in the **domestication** of plants and animals and is the basis of agriculture in the modern world.

Over time humans have become established at the top of the ecosystem. Humans can save, protect, destroy or modify an ecosystem. The sequence should probably be:

Modify

Save

Protect

In reality, the sequence in many places has probably been:

Destroy ...

and where do we go from here?



The Tasmanian tiger

The thylacine, better known as the Tasmanian tiger, was native to Australia and primarily found in Tasmania and some regions of Victoria. It was the country's largest carnivorous marsupial and had existed for over 4 million years.

The introduction of humans and dogs to the environment brought disease and predators to the ecosystem of the thylacine, and numbers declined drastically. Thylacines were kept in zoos, but suffered in captivity. They were also hunted by farmers who assumed the thylacine had been killing their sheep.

The last thylacine died in captivity in 1936, and although sightings have been reported and extensive searches carried out, there is no conclusive evidence of the creature being still in existence.

Currently, scientists are making attempts to clone thylacines from preserved specimens.

domestication the process of taming animals or cultivating plants for uses that benefit humans

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 1.3

- 1 What were the possible impacts of the extinction of the thylacine in Tasmania?
- 2 Discuss how ecosystems in Tasmania would be affected if the thylacine was cloned and returned to its natural ecosystem.
- 3 Describe the steps taken by modern conservationists to help prevent more species becoming extinct.
- 4 Research and list plants and animals that have been rediscovered since they were declared extinct.

Humans have been altering ecosystems for thousands of years. Increasing populations required more food than could be provided by hunting and gathering. Providing more food required clearing land

of its vegetation cover. In many parts of the world the flow of water had to be altered to provide water for larger and larger areas of crops and for the increasing number of livestock being raised. The flow of water also

had to be altered to provide for increasing numbers of people living in settlements. The Industrial Revolution placed even more pressure on ecosystems as trees were cut and burned, and later coal and oil were extracted from the ground. Cities were built and spread across the countryside and communication networks of road and rail were constructed to connect them.

In the desire for this kind of progress, ecosystems for a long time took second place in humans' thinking. In parts of the world where development is still seen as the primary goal, or in places where disputes cannot be settled without conflict, ecosystems still take second place.

Fortunately, in other places the need to save and protect ecosystems is regarded as important.

As a result, an international network of botanical gardens and zoos seek to protect and enhance the future of plant and animal species that are under threat. There is also a network of reserves, state forests and, more importantly, national parks – both on land and on the water – which seek to preserve ecosystems. There are no guarantees that the efforts will be successful, but the efforts must be made.

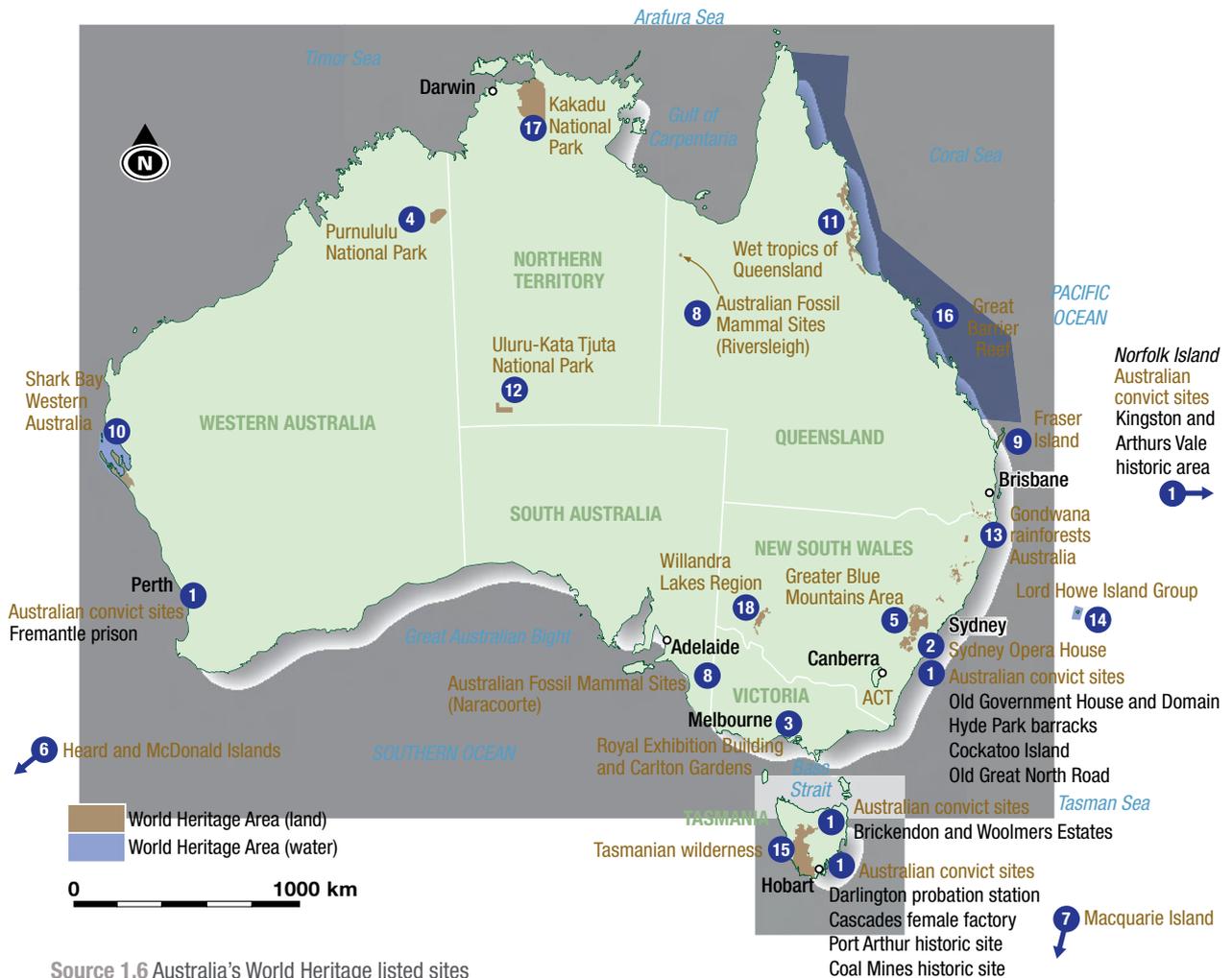
The world's first national park – Yellowstone, in the United States – was opened on 1 March 1872.

Australia's first national park was the National Park, south of Sydney. It was opened on 26 April 1879. It was the world's second national park. It was renamed the Royal National Park after a visit by Queen Elizabeth II in 1955.

In 1972, the United Nations recognised that parts of the world needed to be set aside as having special cultural or physical significance. By 2012, 962 sites had been recognised by the UN Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) as World Heritage listed sites.

While world governments realise that parts of the Earth's surface need to be protected, it is not always easy, or possible, to do so. The fight to save the Cooloola area of Queensland was a classic example of the will of the people clashing with the government of the day and a mining company.

Many clashes like this have occurred in the past 50 years, and many are under way around the world today.



Source 1.6 Australia's World Heritage listed sites

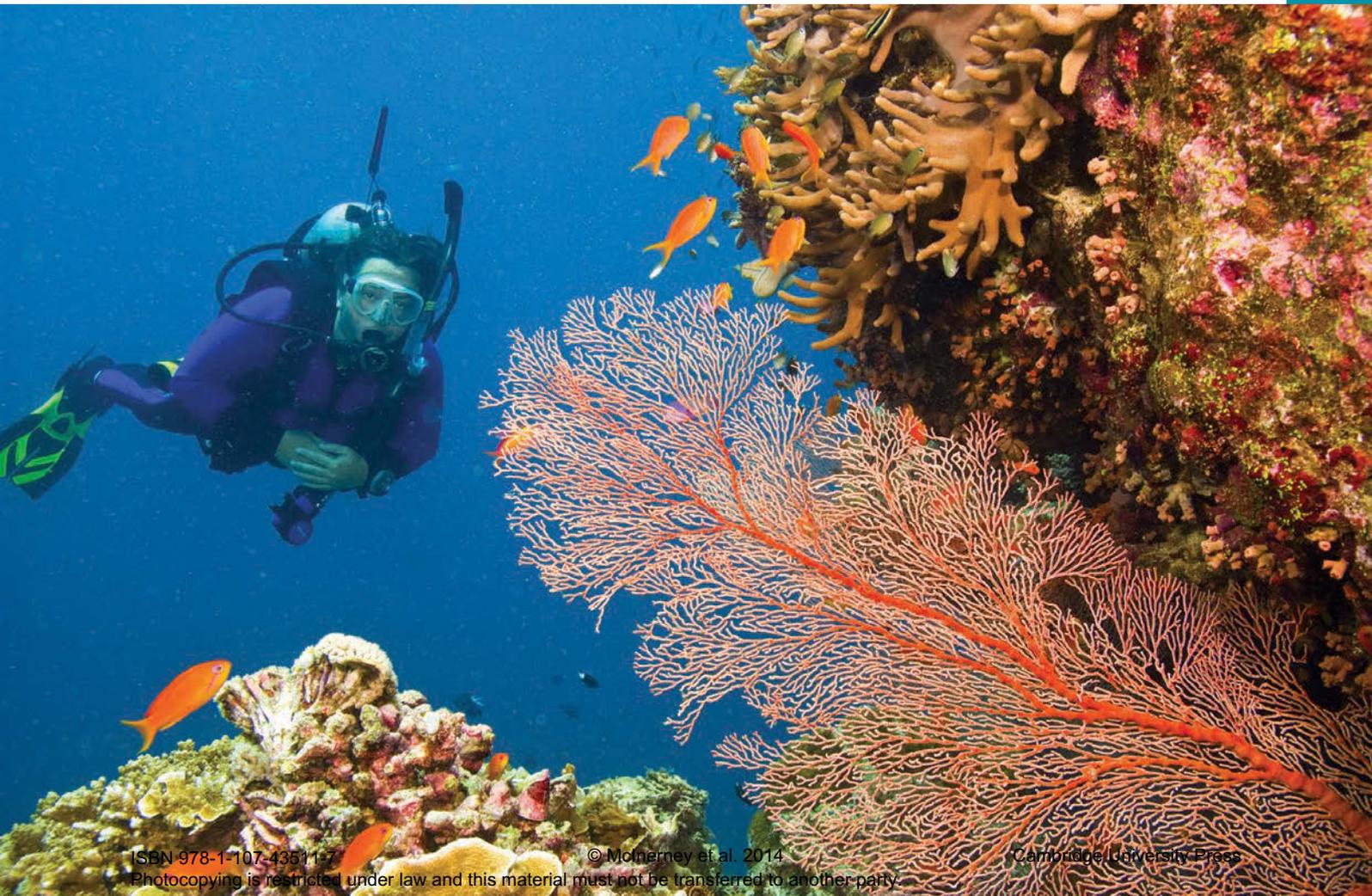
Geographical thought

It is interesting that the majority of sites identified are of cultural significance – the pyramids and the Mayan temples, for example. Only 188 sites are considered to be of significance because of their physical environmental characteristics. At the end of 2012, Australia had 19 sites listed and two sites awaiting approval.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 1.4

- 1 List the impacts that humans have had on the environment.
- 2 Suggest other types of creatures that have had a negative impact on an ecosystem.
- 3 Describe how humans can have a positive impact on the environment.
- 4 Evaluate the methods used to determine whether or not to preserve an area or site. Are some sites more significant than others? Explain why.

Source 1.7 The World Heritage listed Great Barrier Reef



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Ecosystems have both living and non-living components. All these parts work together, with 'inputs' to make them function and 'outputs' – waste material resulting from the processes – required to keep the ecosystem functioning.
- Ecosystems are dynamic, responding and adapting to changes made by humans, the weather and animals (for example).
- Ecosystems exist at all types of scales, wherever abiotic parts of the Earth's surface and biotic organisms interact.
- Ecosystems are important for the continued existence of life on Earth. Humans can have significant and damaging impacts on ecosystems by introducing waste and pollution, and even destroying ecosystems.
- The need to save and protect ecosystems is regarded as important in some areas of the world.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Describe how the sun affects an ecosystem on a daily basis.
- 2 Describe how the sun affects an ecosystem on an annual basis.
- 3 Define 'food chain'.
- 4 Explain the relationships between the non-living and the living parts of an ecosystem.
- 5 Discuss how humans can have an impact on an ecosystem.

Extended-response question

Pildappa Rock is near Minnipa in South Australia. It is one of a number of 'wave rocks' in Australia.

Examine the pictures below. Your task is to tell the story of the ecosystems here without using any other information source. What information is provided by the four images? What evidence of the information presented in this chapter is shown in them? Present your findings in a short report.



Source 1.8 Pildappa rock showing its wave rock shape



Source 1.9 Summit of Pildappa Rock showing the uneven nature of this granite formation



Source 1.10 An ecosystem on the summit of Pildappa Rock



Source 1.11 The hollow in this rock is also an ecosystem.

2

World biomes

Before you start

Main focus

To look at the different world environments on a global and Australian scale, geographers combine ecosystems into larger areas known as biomes.

Why it's relevant to us

People have adapted to living in different biomes and biomes have been altered, for better or for worse, by humans. The sale of Australia's resources is a major source of income for the nation, but it comes at a cost to the country's biomes.

Inquiry questions

- What are the world's major biomes?
- What are the characteristics of these biomes?
- What physical factors affect the location of biomes?
- How do plants and animals interact in biomes?
- How have humans impacted on biomes?
- What are Australia's biomes?

Key terms

- Aspect
- Biome
- Coniferous
- Desert
- Ocean current
- Orographic rainfall
- Rainforest
- Savanna
- Xeric
- Zonation

Let's begin

The word 'biome' refers to groupings of plant and animal communities which have adapted to inhabit particular parts of the Earth's surface.

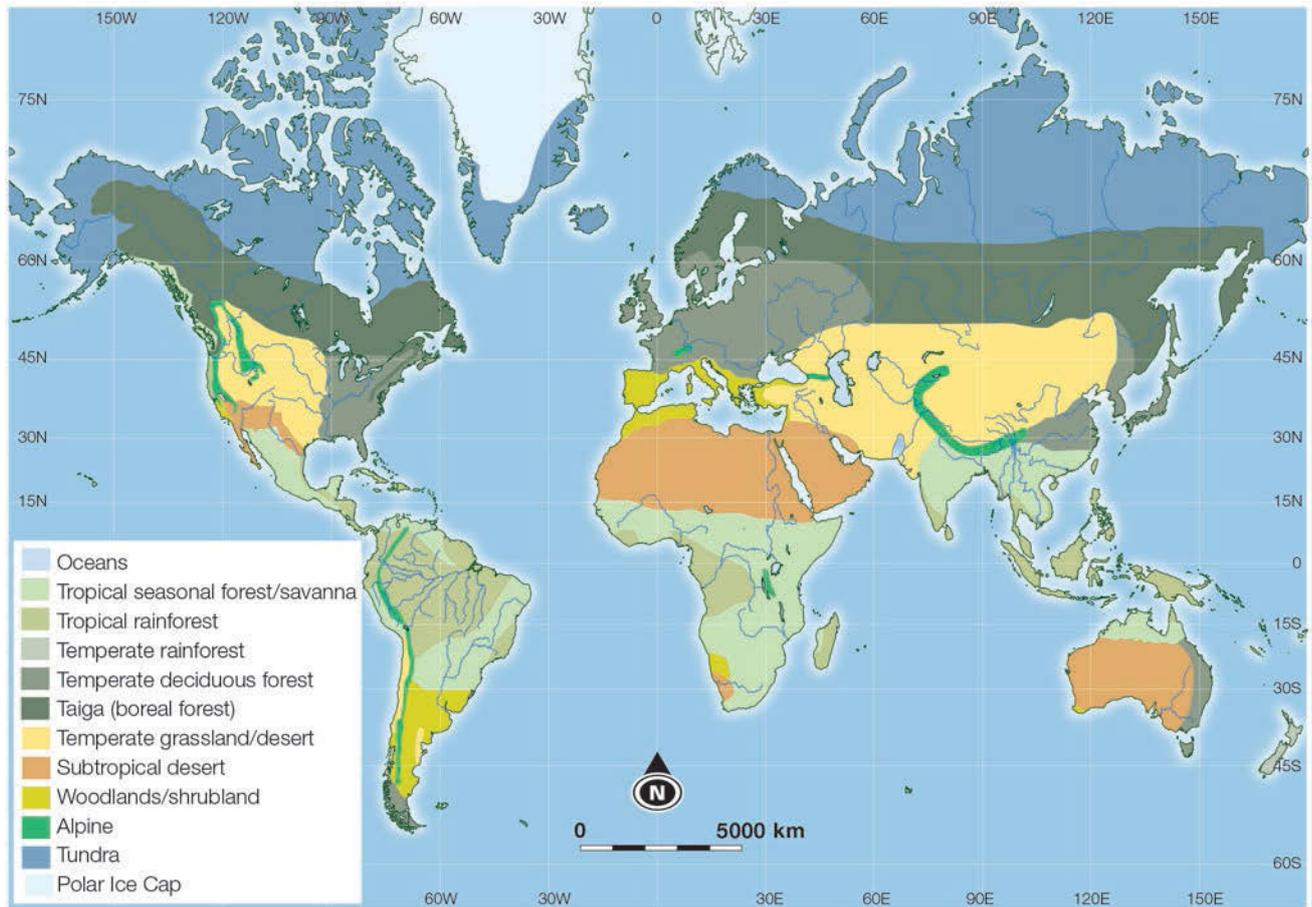
Before the domestication of plants and animals, the main thing biomes had to adapt to was the world's changing climate. In recent times, biomes have had to adapt not only to a changing climate but also to human interference.

It may be difficult to believe, but the current pattern of the world's biomes is not the pattern which was evident even as recently as 15000 years ago, when most of Canada, and Central Park in New York, for example, were covered by an ice sheet hundreds of metres thick.

Australia has developed a unique set of biomes because of its isolation from other continents for millions of years. As the Australian continent has drifted northwards over these millions of years, the flora and fauna which make up the biomes have adapted to the changing environment.

At times large parts of the current continent were the floors of shallow seas, and at times the climate was very different. A completely different set of biomes existed in places that are now desert or semi-desert.

2.1 Understanding the world's biomes



Source 2.1 World's major biomes

biome grouping of plant and animal communities that have adapted to inhabit particular parts of the Earth's surface

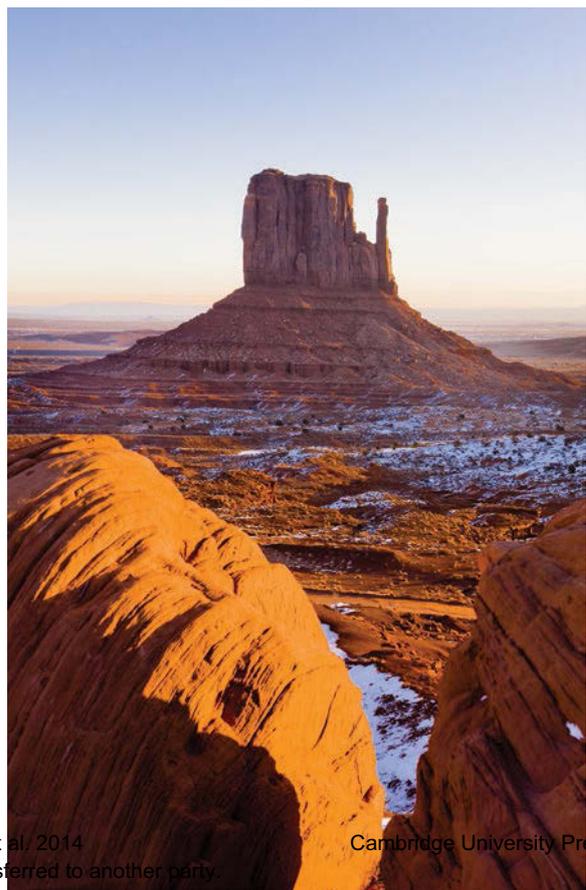
Source 2.1 shows the world's **biomes**. An internet search will show that there are many different maps of the world's biomes. Some use different terminology for the biomes.

Students should note that the map would be even more complicated if the ocean's biomes were added to it.

2.2 Location pattern of the world's biomes

The normal way of looking at this location pattern is to look at the change from the Equator to the Pole. For example, in Source 2.1, start with Africa and move to the North Pole along 10°E longitude.

Source 2.2 Monument Valley, Arizona, is in temperate grassland desert



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.1

Copy the graphic organiser below and name a country that would have this biome.

Biome	Country
Tropical rainforest	
Tropical seasonal forest/savanna	
Sub-tropical desert	
Woodland/shrubland	
Temperate deciduous forest	
Taiga (boreal forest)	
Tundra	
Polar ice cap	

rainforest a tropical forest environment with a large rainfall

This examination shows the transition of biomes from the hot, wet **rainforest** of the tropics to the polar ice caps. The same biomes are found in different parts of the world. There is a pattern of biomes from north to south across the globe.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.2

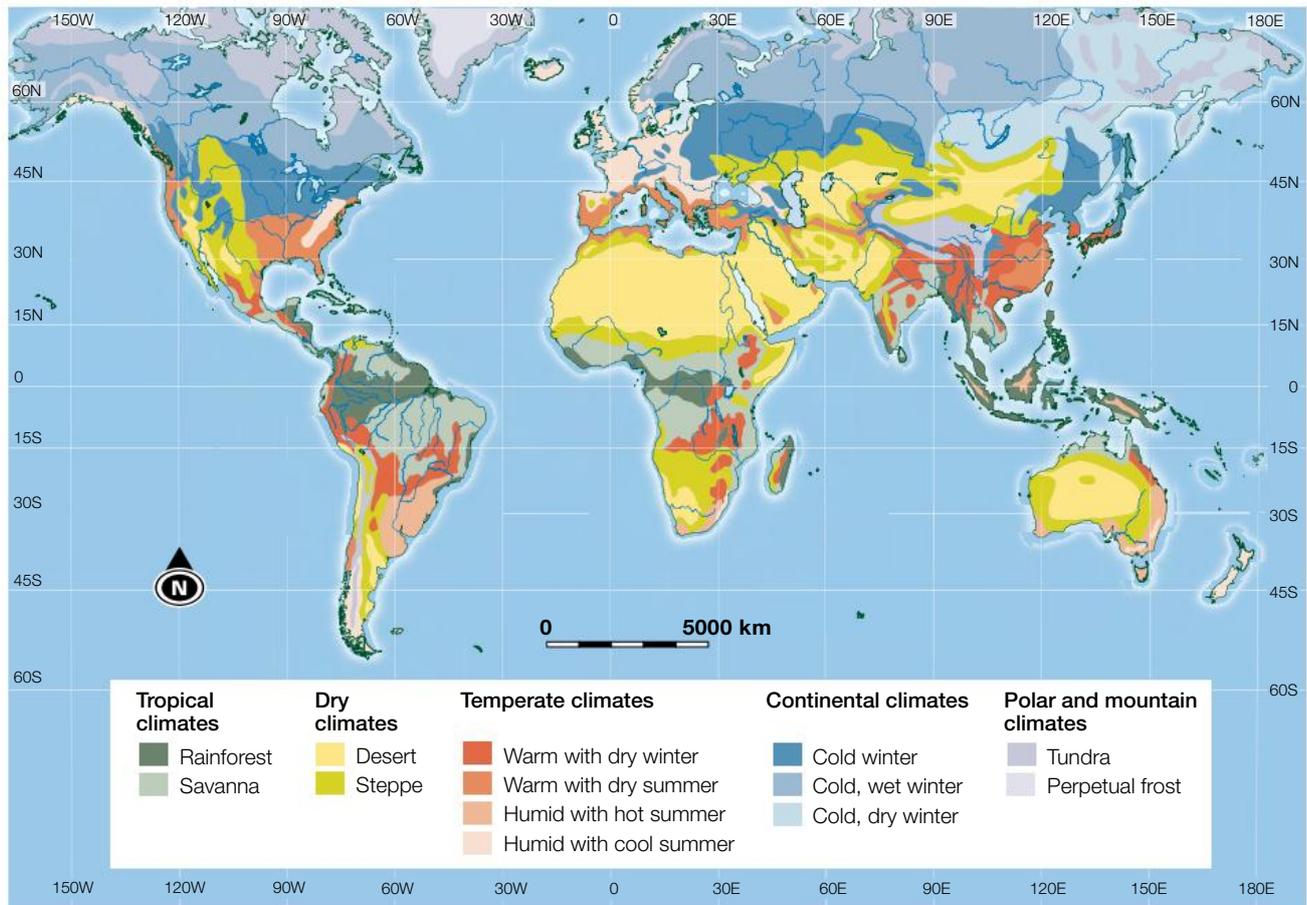
- 1 The class should be divided into four groups.
- 2 Each group will be allocated one of the following lines. Identify the biomes along your line.
 - a The Panama Canal to the North Pole
 - b Singapore to the North Pole
 - c The Panama Canal through South America to the South Pole
 - d Singapore to the South Pole via Indonesia and Australia.
- 3 Share your results with the other groups and determine if there were similarities in the changes in:
 - a the Northern Hemisphere profiles
 - b the Southern Hemisphere profiles.
- 4 Share your results with the other groups and determine if there were differences in the changes in:
 - a the Northern Hemisphere profiles
 - b the Southern Hemisphere profiles.
- 5 Discuss the following:
 - a If there were similar patterns observed in the northern and southern hemispheres, what factors could have caused these similarities? Equally, if there were differences, what might have caused them?
 - b Was there an anomaly in the pattern? (An anomaly is something which doesn't fit the general pattern.)
 - c Which biomes are poorly represented in the Southern Hemisphere? Why is this so?
 - d Which biome is the anomaly? This is the biome that does not fit the pattern as it can be found in zones from the Equator to the poles. (This anomaly will be examined later.)

Climate and the location of the world's biomes

There are many factors affecting the location of the world's biomes but one factor stands out above any others: climate. The plant and animal communities of our world respond to variations in climate. It is their response to the variations in climate that give the world both this

distinctive pattern of biomes and the pattern of changes in biomes as one moves from the Equator to either pole.

This relationship between vegetation and climate was recognised by Russian/German climatologist Wladimir Koppen when he was devising his world climate classifications between 1884 and 1936. His classification recognises that vegetation patterns are a reflection of climate patterns.



Source 2.3 Koppen's world climate classification

savanna a grassy plain with scattered trees and shrubs

desert an area that receives less than 250 millimetres rainfall per year

perpetual frost an area that is constantly covered in ice, such as the polar caps

Many of the names Koppen gave to his climate regions were based on vegetation terms – rainforest, **savanna**, **desert**, tundra. Other descriptors are more related to climate terms – **perpetual frost**, dry climates.

This raises the issue of how phenomena are classified. Vegetation areas should be named after vegetation terms. The classic example

is 'rainforest', which is a climate zone named after a vegetation term.

The study of ecosystems in the previous chapter showed the important roles of temperature and rainfall in ecosystems. It should then be no surprise that climate is the major controlling factor in the distribution of biomes. It should not take too much thought to work out the other major controlling factor. Again, this factor is important in controlling ecosystems – people.

2.3 Rainforest biomes

Rainforests are one of the world's most interesting biomes. As Source 2.1 showed, they are found on several continents, both north and south of the Equator.

Rainforests are such complex biomes that it is often difficult to take a photograph that allows a person to see all their features. These features include:

- height
- density
- coverage
- plant species
- special adaptations
- special relationships between plants.

Height

Rainforest trees are usually very tall. They have few branches until the top (or canopy) of the forest.



Source 2.4 Rainforest vegetation in the Coolooloa National Park, New South Wales

Density

Rainforests have a high density of trees per hectare compared with other forests. How is 'tree' defined here? A tree may be defined as a woody plant which has a girth (circumference) of at least 25 centimetres at a height of 130 centimetres. This is often referred to as circumference at breast height.

Coverage

One of the distinctive features of a rainforest is that the canopy is 'closed' – the branches of the trees link

together at the canopy. This means that very little light reaches the forest floor, which has a major effect on the characteristics of the forest. Having no light reaching the forest floor means that one plant species is excluded from the rainforest. That species is found in many biomes and is the curse of the urban backyard. Can you guess what it is? Here are the final clues:

- It is green.
- It grows rapidly after rain.
- Keeping it under control in your backyard usually requires physical exertion with a machine, and most species contribute to greenhouse gases.

If you don't know the answer it may be because you live in a unit or apartment.

Plant species

A rainforest is characterised by a wide variety of plant species growing at various height levels. It will have a number of canopy tree species, and many of them will not grow outside a rainforest environment. Attempts have been made to grow some of the commercially profitable rainforest species in plantation environments but the plants will not thrive.

Lower storeys of a rainforest also host a wide variety of plant species. Some of these are young plants of the canopy layer, waiting for a canopy tree to fall and create a space for them to grow up into. Others are plants which have adapted to living in the moist, humid, dark environment of the rainforest understorey. Mosses, lichens, epiphytes and palms fall into this category.



Source 2.5 The drip-tipped rainforest leaf of the macaranga plant helps the movement of water to the ground.



Source 2.6 Buttress roots on a tree growing on a steep slope near Cairns, Queensland

Special adaptations

The plants of a rainforest show evidence of many adaptations they have made to live in their environment.

The trees need to grow tall and straight very quickly if they are to take their place in the canopy layer. In order to compensate for the trees forming a closed barrier to sunlight reaching the ground, the leaves of the canopy trees have adapted so that rainfall will not be trapped in the canopy and evaporate back into the atmosphere but instead will make its way to the ground where it can be absorbed by plants.

Special relationships between plants

The rainforest has many plants which coexist. Vines – both woody and fleshy – grow on the trunks of trees and form part of the interlacing of plants in this biome.

Epiphytes, staghorns and orchids have found their own special place in the rainforest: they grow in places where falling plant and leaf litter accumulate and rot to provide food for them or, in the case of epiphytes, they grow in a cup-like shape so that they trap their own food.

Geographical thought

The canopies of a tropical rainforest are so densely packed that rain falling on the trees at the top can take up to 10 minutes to reach the ground.



Source 2.7 Epiphyte growing on a rainforest tree near Barron River Falls, north Queensland



Source 2.8 Woody vines grow from tree to tree and work as a highway for animals in the forest.

Mosses, lichens and fungi play their own role, breaking down plant material at or near the forest floor so that it becomes food for the plant life above. It all works very well. All the species work together to support the future of the biome.

There is one final relationship between the plants of a rainforest which needs to be examined. Rainforests are among the most magnificent expressions of life on Earth. The profusion of plant life and the size of the forest – in terms of height and area – have led people to believe that this biome grows on very fertile soils. What else could account for the prolific growth?

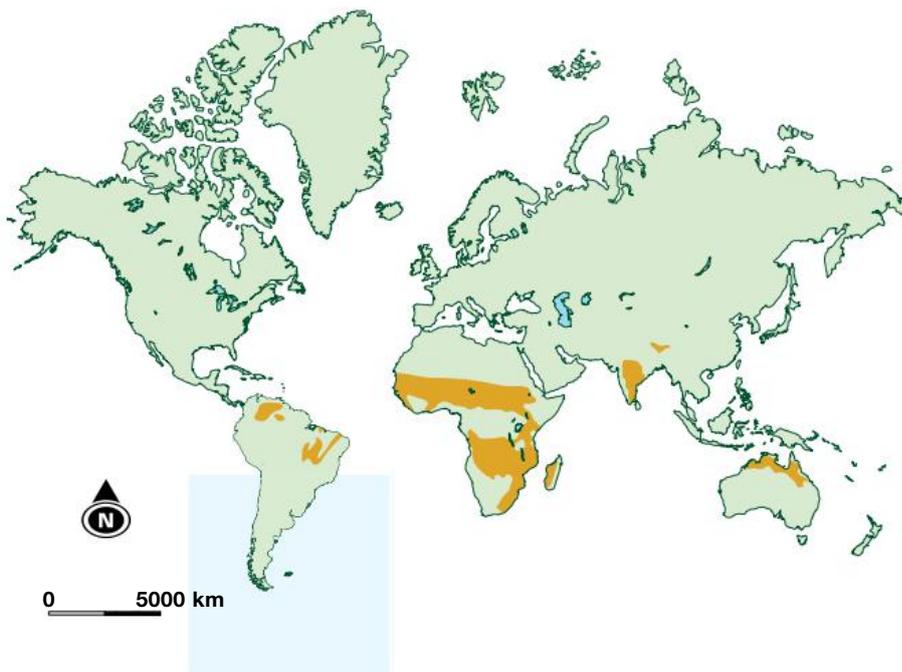
However, in many rainforest areas the soil was not originally fertile. Over time, the rainforest converts the soil on which it grows into fertile soil that will support its growth. Rainforests expand their area by converting the soils around their edges into soils suitable for this growth. Rainforests are not the only plant communities that change the nature of the soil they grow on, but they are the best at this process. Plant communities can change soil types in different ways, as discussed throughout the chapter.



2.4 Savanna biomes

The savanna biome is completely different from the rainforest biome. The rainforest biome is dominated by its plant life. The savanna biome is dominated by its animal life. The plant life is important, but it is the animal life of this biome that attracts the most attention. The world's savanna areas are shown in Source 2.9.

The plant life associated with this biome will be examined first, followed by the factors that affect that plant life, and then the animals which inhabit this exciting biome.



Source 2.9 Savanna biomes

Vegetation

The images below show typical savanna landscapes.

The criteria used for examining vegetation in the rainforest biome will also be used here.

Height

The trees do not grow very high. There is often a sparse shrub layer, and the ground cover is primarily grass.



Source 2.10 Savanna near the slopes of Mt Kilimanjaro, Tanzania



Source 2.11 A group of lionesses basking in the sun following a successful night's hunt

Density

The density of the tree and shrub layers is very low but the density of the grass layer can be quite high.

Coverage

The trees and shrubs cover very little of the ground. The primary ground cover is grass.

Plant species

There are more species in the ground layer than in the tree and shrub layers.

Special adaptations

There are many special adaptations that plants have developed to survive in this environment.

These include:

- The canopy has a spreading shape, to shade the root layer.
- Many plants have developed thorns and prickles to prevent animals eating the vegetation.

- Some plants have developed tissues that retain a supply of water they can use during the dry season.

These are not the only adaptations associated with this landscape, but they are the ones that help make it a distinctive biome.

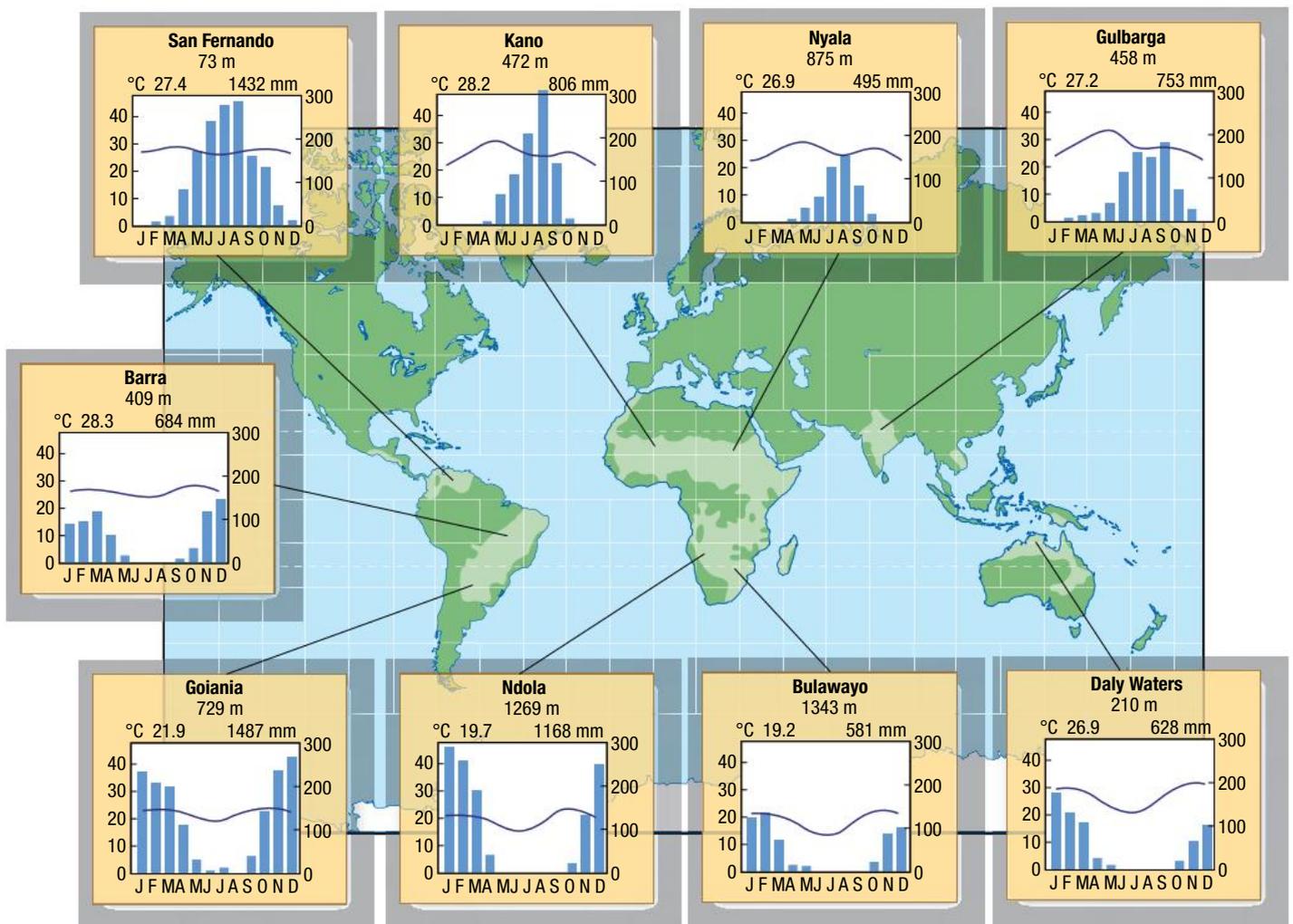
Special relationships between plants

There does not appear to be any special relationship between the plants in the savanna as there are in the rainforest.

Factors that affect the savanna vegetation pattern

The key factor that governs most biomes is climate. The characteristic of the climate that has created the savanna vegetation pattern is simply its seasonal change.

In savanna areas, the climate changes from hot and wet to hot and dry. The hot and wet season brings an explosion of plant growth to the savanna, especially in



Source 2.12 Temperature and rainfall graphs from savanna areas around the world

the grasses. This vegetation change has a major impact on the animal life of this biome.

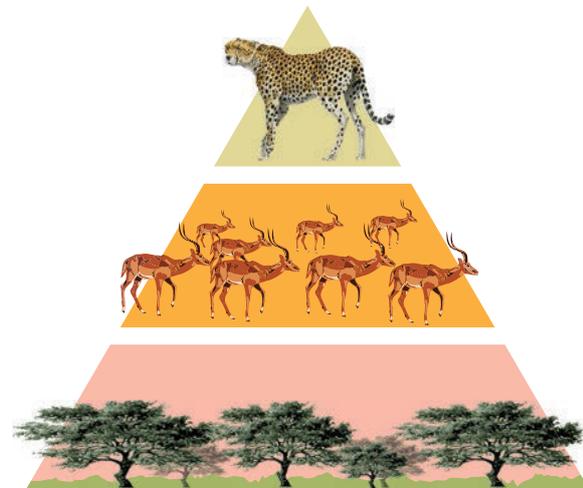
Animal life

When the rains come, the savanna vegetation springs to life. The most rapid response is from the grasses, which have died back during the dry period just as they do in your backyard. The rains bring a rapid spurt of growth. This growth attracts a group of animals known as grazers or herbivores.

The herbivores eat the grass. They migrate into an area where the rains have caused the grass to grow and retreat as the area dries up. They breed, and their numbers multiply. While most herbivores graze on the grasses, some, such as the giraffe and the elephant, graze on other new vegetation too. The giraffe's long neck allows it to reach new shoots and its thick rubbery lips allow it to avoid thorns and prickles. The elephant simply knocks the tree down to get at the leaves it wants.

The herbivores bring with them another group of animals: the carnivores. These animals eat meat. They prey on the herbivores – they eat the weak, the young and those not paying attention to their surrounds. Some, such as the crocodiles, congregate at river crossings and attack the herbivores as they cross.

Decomposers make up the final major group of animals on the savanna. They obtain their nutrients by



Source 2.13 Simple African savanna food chain

eating the rotting flesh left behind by carnivores and devouring the bones of dead animals. These animals, like many other animals on the savanna, produce droppings which dung beetles – probably as far removed from the top of the food chain as it is possible to be – use to do their work: they convert the droppings into nutrients, which return to the soil and are used by the plants for their growth. Thus the 'circle of life' is completed on the savanna.

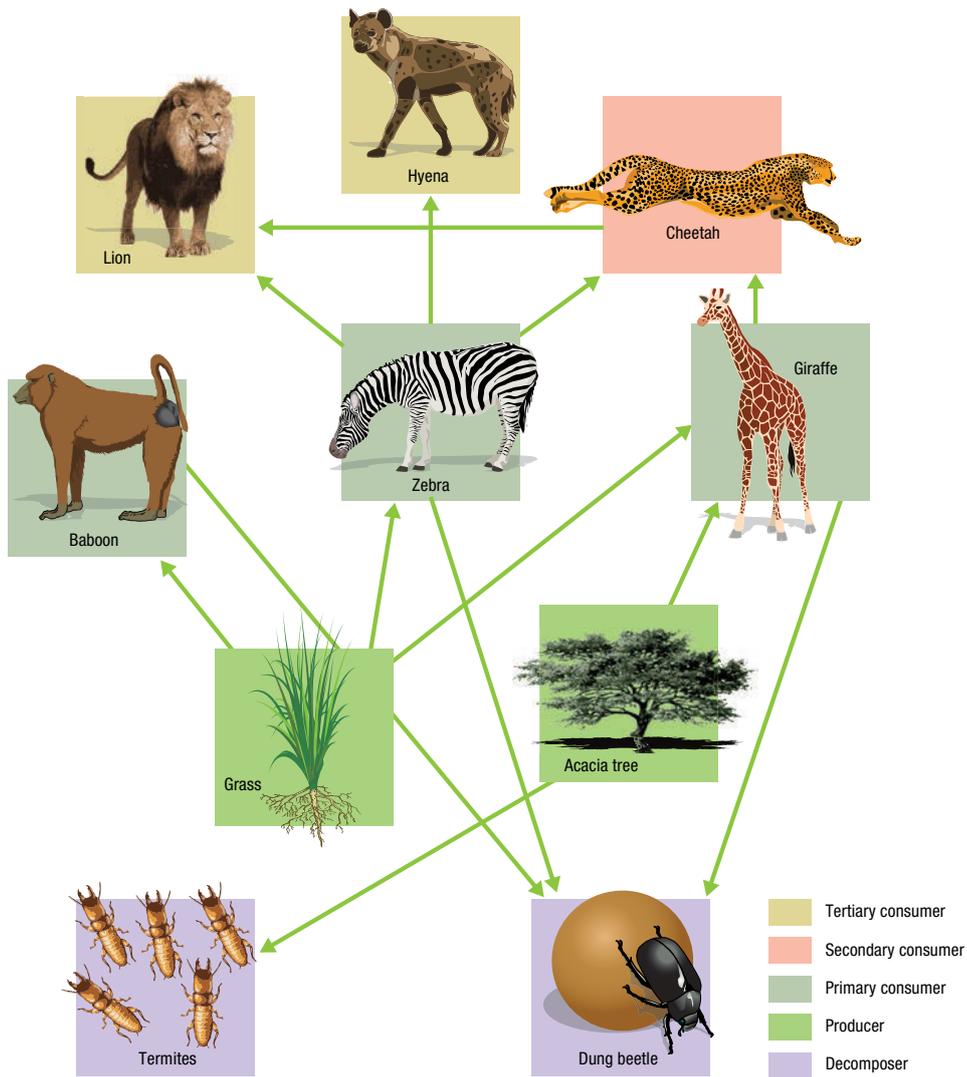
Source 2.13 is a simple food chain for the African savanna.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.3

- 1 Explain why the carnivores are important.
- 2 Discuss how the removal of weaker herd animals could actually be a benefit.
- 3 What might happen in a savanna if the herbivores had no predators?

Geographical thought

Grasslands cover almost one-fifth of the land on Earth. They can be found on every continent except Antarctica.



Source 2.14 More complex African savanna food chain

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.4

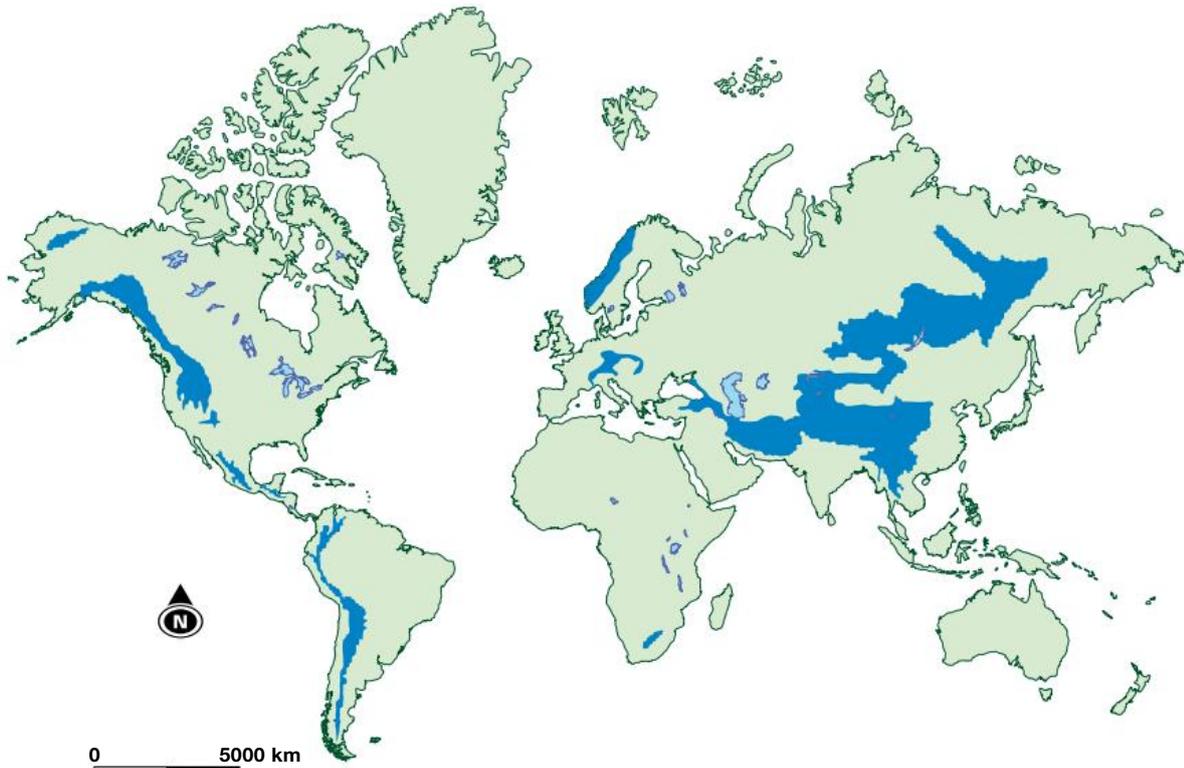
- 1 Australia has savanna areas. Explain why the Source 2.13 diagram doesn't work for the Australian savanna areas.
- 2 Source 2.14 is a more complicated interpretation of the same food chain, but still does not show the full extent of the relationships between the plant and animal communities of the savanna. For example, where do the hippopotamus, the warthog, the wildebeest, the oxpecker and the gnu fit?

Although it has been impossible to cover all aspects of the savanna biome in this chapter, it has been established that:

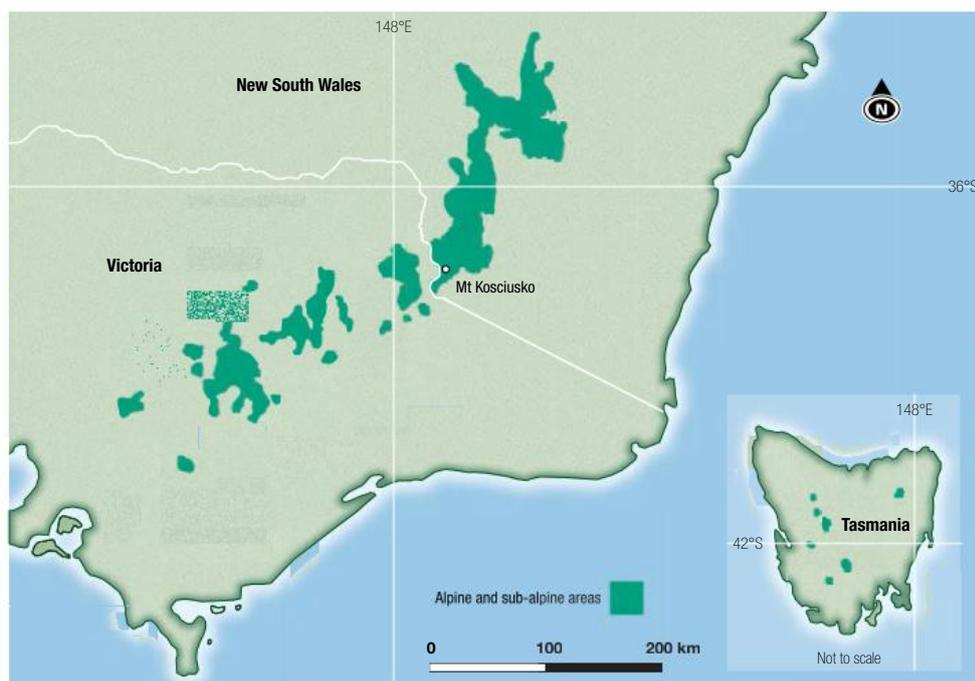
- the vegetation community is distinctive
- the vegetation community responds to variations in climate, especially rainfall
- the animal life responds to the variations in the vegetation communities
- there are very complex relationships between the various animal communities.

2.5 Alpine biomes

The alpine (or mountain) biome is the anomaly: it doesn't fit the pattern based on climate that has been observed to this point. As can be seen in Source 2.15, it stretches north and south from the Equator in North and South America and stretches east to west across Eurasia.



Source 2.15 Alpine or mountain biomes



Source 2.16 Australia's ski fields

We need to take a different approach to examine this biome. In countries where mountains tower thousands of metres into the sky, a simple field trip from the base of the mountain to the top of the mountain would have shown the main characteristics of this biome. Australia doesn't have mountains that rise many thousands of metres into the sky. Many Australians would not notice that vegetation patterns change with altitude, but they know where Australia's alpine areas are and they know that at certain times of the year the higher parts of Australia's eastern highlands are snow-covered.

The world map (Source 2.1) did not show any alpine areas in Australia because the scale of the world map is too small. The alpine areas in Australia can only be seen on larger-scale maps.

Sources 2.17 and 2.18 show some of the features of the alpine biome in Australia. It is clear that the vegetation changes as altitude increases.

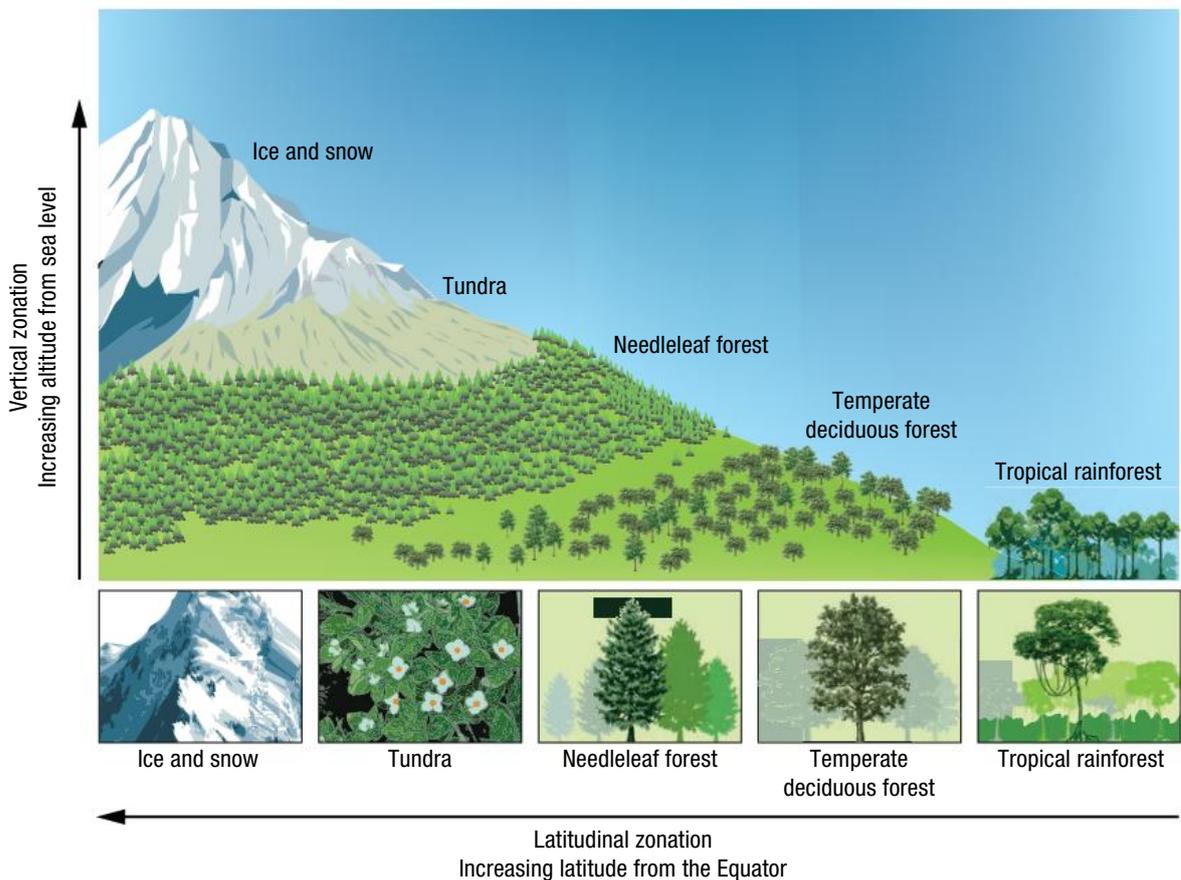
What happens in other parts of the world with 'real' mountains, which are normally over 3000 metres high? Australia's highest 'mountain' is only 2228 metres high.



Source 2.17 Vegetation in a valley close to the summit of Mt Kosciuszko, New South Wales



Source 2.18 Looking towards the summit of Mt Kosciuszko in summer



Source 2.19 Vegetation changes with altitude and latitude

The study of Australia's 'mountain' biome shows that the vegetation changes as the altitude increases. Studies in other parts of the world show the same changes. For many places, models can be obtained that show the changes in vegetation as altitude increases far beyond the heights of mountains in Australia. Source 2.19 is one example of these models.

zonation variation in plant life due to differing environmental conditions

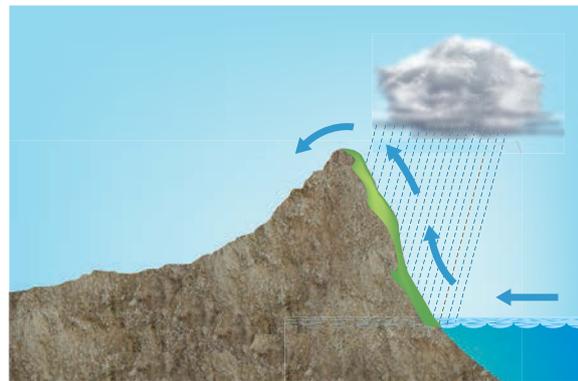
Source 2.19 shows there is a change of vegetation with altitude (**zonation**). It also demonstrates that the same types of changes occur with changes in latitude.

The relationship is simple:

- Vegetation changes as altitude changes.
- Vegetation changes in a similar way as latitude changes between the Equator and the poles.

There is a simple reason for this. Temperature decreases as altitude increases. Air expands as it rises, as it expands the pressure decreases, and as pressure decreases, air cools. This means that it is possible in some mountainous areas near the Equator to begin a mountain climb in rainforest and finish it at the top of a snow- and ice-covered peak.

Two other factors affect the vegetation pattern in mountain biomes. Many mountain ranges are close to the coast. They block rain-bearing winds that move onto land from the sea and force these winds to rise. As the winds rise, the air cools and water condenses out of the air to form clouds. This often results in heavy rainfall, known as **orographic rainfall**. This can produce biomes associated with high rainfall, particularly rainforest, on



Source 2.20 Impact of mountains on rainfall

the coastal sides of the mountains. The inland slopes of the mountains often receive little rainfall, so very different biomes, such as savanna and desert, may be found on these slopes. These areas are said to be in a rain shadow.

The other factor that makes mountain biomes so complex is the impact of the sun's rays as they warm the land. Mountain slopes that receive direct heat from the sun lose their snow cover quickly.

Mountain slopes that do not are cooler, and have a slightly different vegetation pattern. This warming effect is known as **aspect**. It affects mountain biomes closer to the poles most: some slopes only receive sunlight for a few months of the year.

orographic rainfall rainfall produced when rain-bearing winds are forced upwards by mountain ranges; they then form clouds and (often) rain

aspect the warming effect of the sun's rays on vegetation

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.5

Divide the class into three groups to study:

- the **coniferous** forest biome
- the temperate deciduous forest biome
- the tundra biome.

Complete the following tasks, then give a short presentation of your findings.

- 1 Describe the vegetation character of the biome.
- 2 Identify the factors which have given rise to the development of the biome.
- 3 Identify the special adaptations plants have made to survive in the biome.
- 4 Examine the relationship between the plants and animals in the biome.
- 5 Discuss how animals have adapted to survive in the biome.

coniferous describing an evergreen tree that grows cones

Geographical thought

The majority of animals in the alpine biome are warm-blooded. Such animals include the alpaca, the llama, the chinchilla and the snow goat.

2.6 Australia's biomes using the geography concept of 'scale'

The examination of world biomes at the beginning of this chapter identified five biomes in Australia:

- tropical rainforest
- tropical seasonal forest/savanna
- **temperate deciduous** forest
- sub-tropical desert
- woodland/shrubland.

temperate belonging to a broad climate zone between the tropics and the poles

deciduous describing trees that drop their leaves each year, typically for winter

scale (on a map) the amount by which the real world has been reduced so that it fits onto the map

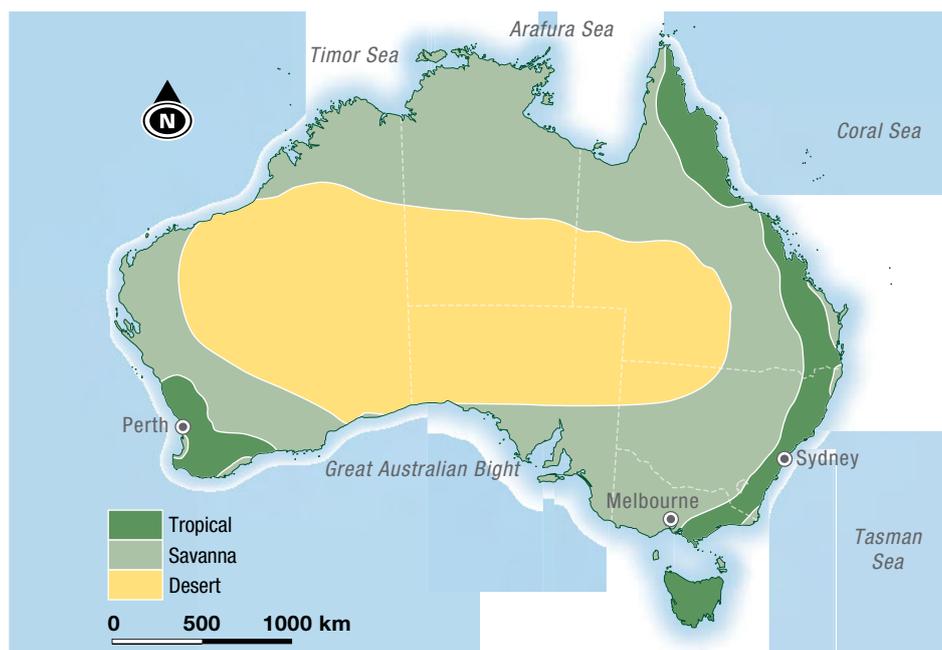
This examination of biomes was based on a map of the world with a very small **scale**. Small-scale maps can only show a certain amount of detail. The focus is now on the biomes found in Australia. This requires study at a much larger scale, where more detail can be shown.

Here are two sources representing Australia's biomes. Which is better?

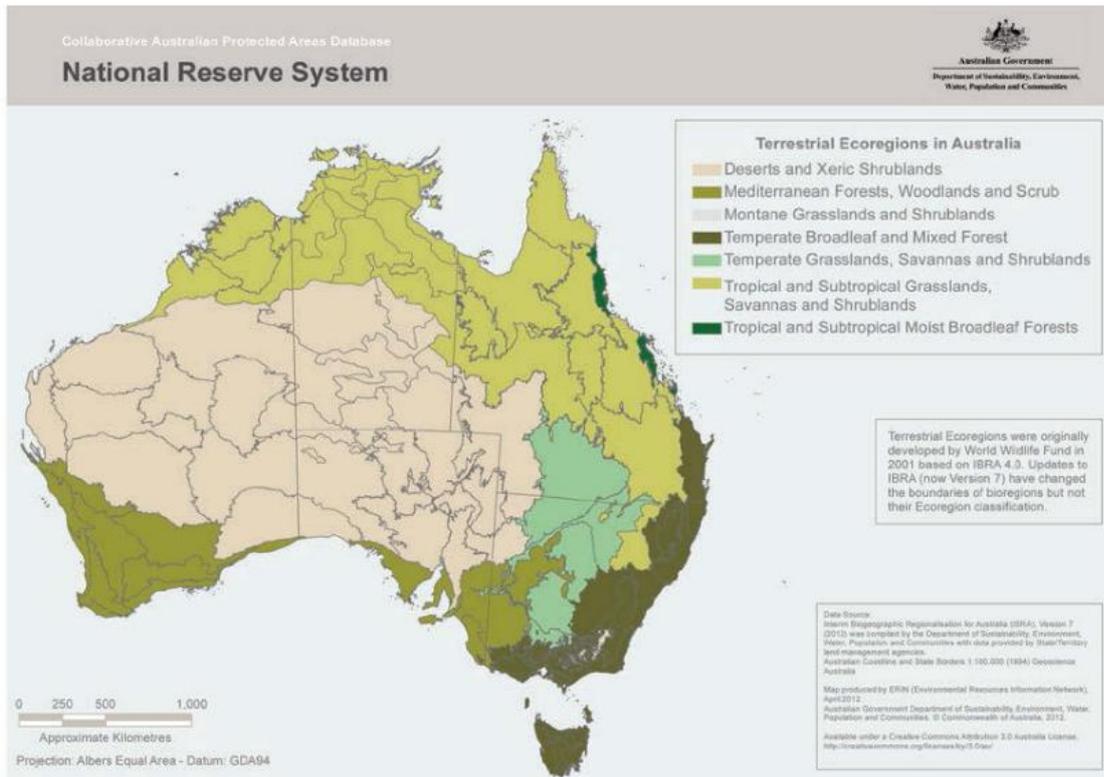
Source 2.21 is simple and uses the terms used earlier in the chapter. Source 2.22 is more complex. There are more biomes identified, and they have more complicated names.

If Source 2.21 is used, it is clear that the study will be very general. Another issue with Source 2.22 is the terminology. The terms 'desert' and 'savanna' are fine, but defining the rest of Australia as 'tropical' is a problem: Perth, Hobart and Sydney are all in 'tropical' areas. Their climates in reality are not.

Source 2.22 identifies seven biomes on the Australian continent. There are some broad links to the biomes identified earlier in the chapter. Let's revisit these.



Source 2.21 Australia's biomes



Source 2.22 Australia's biomes

World biome	Australian biome
Tropical rainforest	Tropical and sub-tropical moist broadleaf forests
Tropical seasonal forest/savanna	Tropical and sub-tropical grasslands, savanna and shrubland
Temperate deciduous forest	Temperate broadleaf and mixed forest
Woodland/shrubland	Mediterranean forests, woodland and scrub
Sub-tropical desert	Deserts and xeric shrublands

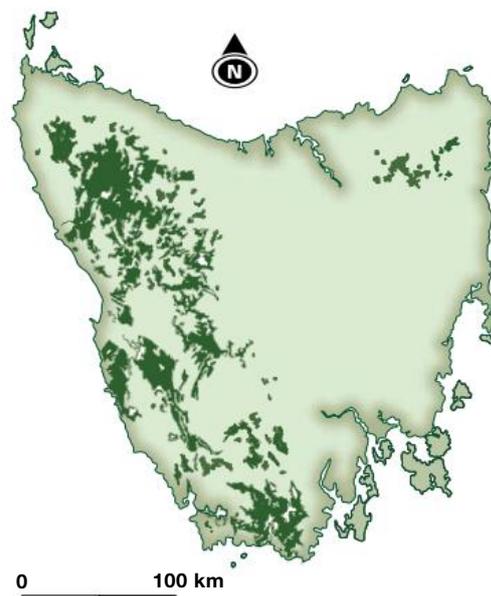
xeric extremely dry, or adapted to extremely dry conditions

It is immediately clear that there are also differences. When biomes are examined at this scale, there are more of them, and the biomes are more likely to include more than one vegetation type, such as 'savanna and shrubland', or 'deserts and xeric shrublands'. Where do the terms 'broadleaf, Mediterranean and xeric' come from and what is a 'mixed' forest? Follow these up to find their meanings.

These issues simply relate to the scale at which a study is being undertaken: a global study of biomes is made at a very small scale but a study of biomes in Australia can be made at a larger scale.

Eventually, if the focus was like zooming in with Google Earth, the scale would be so large that it would no longer be a study of biomes but a study of ecosystems.

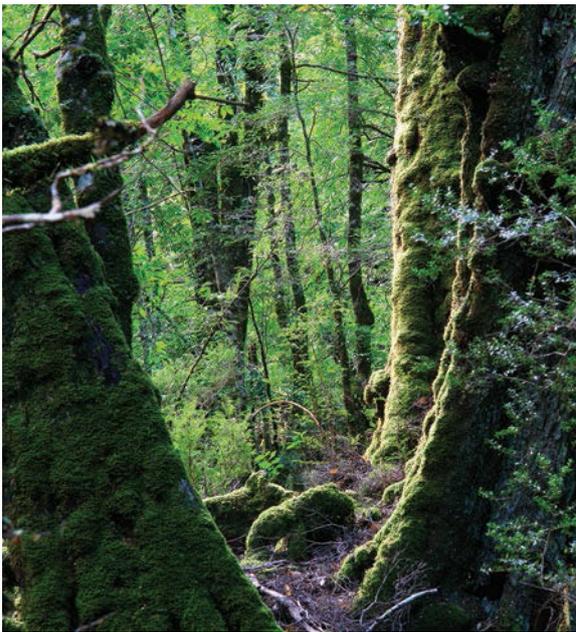
Source 2.23 Tasmanian rainforest areas



2.7 Distinctive Australian biomes

Rainforests

Rainforests are tourist magnets. It is interesting to look at maps of Australia and see where there are areas of rainforest. Source 2.21 makes it look as if the 'tropical' biome extends right down the east coast of Australia to Tasmania and across to Western Australia, but this is not the case.



Source 2.24 Tasmanian rainforest

The issue is complex. How do you define 'rainforest'? Is it simply an area that is wet and has a forest cover? Or is it more than that?

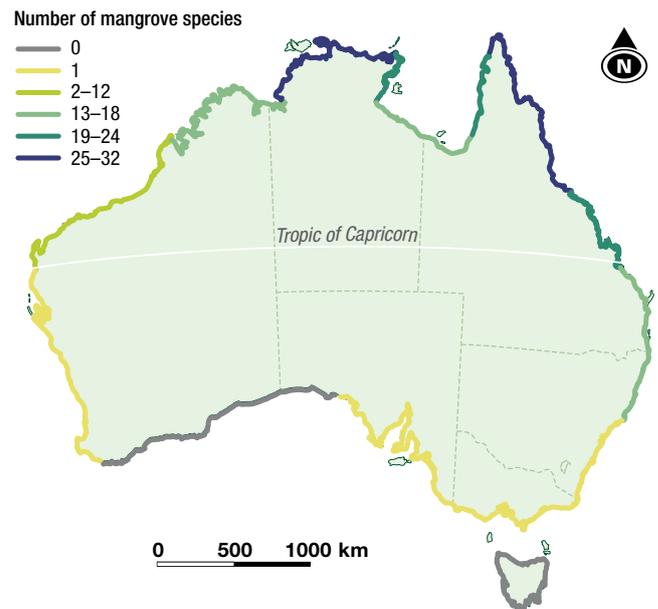
There is clearly a problem with the definition of 'rainforest'. Is the term being used to describe any type of forest found in a wet area? Is it the amount of rainfall or the characteristics of the vegetation that defines the biome? A 'rainforest', according to climate

definitions, has to have an annual rainfall of more than 4000 millimetres.

Many vegetation geographers or biogeographers prefer the term 'vine forest' for the forests of north Queensland, as it is an indicator of the type of vegetation. However, the term 'rainforest' is very well known and will probably remain. It is worth knowing that there are different ideas about rainforests around the world.

Mangrove forests

Mangrove communities are a very distinctive biome worldwide, but they don't make it onto the small-scale maps because the communities are found on narrow stretches of coastline. Source 2.25 shows the distribution of mangroves around the Australian coastline. It provides a few ideas on what factors affect the distribution of mangroves.



Source 2.25 Australia's mangrove communities

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.6

Examine Source 2.25 and identify the following statements as either TRUE or FALSE.

- 1 Mangroves are found right around the coast of Australia.
- 2 Only one species of mangrove is found south of the Tropic of Capricorn.
- 3 Queensland has more mangrove species than New South Wales.
- 4 There are no mangrove species in Tasmania.
- 5 Mangroves are a tropical plant.



Source 2.26 Mangrove community at Hays Inlet, off Moreton Bay, Queensland

Source 2.26 shows part of the mangrove community found around the shores of Moreton Bay. If you holiday at Surfers Paradise, you will not see mangroves growing on the beaches there. The coastline is too active for mangroves to grow, as it is open to strong wind and wave action. Mangrove communities grow in quite calm, salty waters. They are very similar to rainforests.

There are no mangroves in Tasmania because the temperatures are too low even for *Avicennia marina*, the one species of mangrove which can tolerate cooler waters.

Mangrove communities are very dense, and many have a closed canopy. This cuts out light to the lower layers so that there is no competition from various other species. The mangrove communities drop a lot of litter – leaves and branches – and this decays and provides plant nutrients. The lower layer is usually made up of young seedlings waiting their turn to fill a gap in the canopy. Like the trees in a rainforest, mangrove



Source 2.28 Hays Inlet mangrove community



Source 2.27 The Great Australian Bight, where sand dunes and limestone cliffs face the relentless swells of the Southern Ocean and no mangroves are found

plants have many **adaptations** which help them survive in their difficult environment: Source 2.29 shows the buttress roots of Queensland's red mangrove, which helps support the plant in this muddy environment, and Source 2.30 shows the special root system that many mangrove plants have developed. These are breathing roots, which assist as the tide comes in and eventually covers the root system completely. These roots are known as pneumatophores.

Source 2.30 also shows another important feature of the mangrove plant. The root system traps silt and mud and builds the land up. Source 2.31, taken in Deception Bay, Queensland, shows the mangrove root systems extending into the bay and building the land up.

As the land is built up, the environment changes. The land is less likely to be inundated by salt water, so

adaptation an evolutionary trait a plant or animal develops to better suit its environment



Source 2.29 Buttress roots of the red mangrove in north Queensland



Source 2.30 Breathing roots of the *Avicennia marina* (grey mangrove)



Source 2.31 Mangrove roots extend into Deception Bay and trap more silt and mud.

other plant species are able to colonise the area. This results in a transition from one biome to another. In this case the transition is to salt marsh plants, which have their own ways of combating salt, then to casuarina forest, and then to the climax vegetation, eucalypt forest. These changes can occur in the space of a couple of hundred metres, which means they do not show on the small-scale maps of world biomes.

An interesting factor to add here is the impact of rising sea levels. Examine Sources 2.32 and 2.33. The king tides only reach this area on a few days of the year. In Redcliffe (Queensland) these tides occur in January and February. Plants growing in this area, including the mangroves, have to adapt to this inundation. Source 2.34 shows the mangrove community at the maximum king tide level.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.7

- 1 Suggest what the impact on this plant community would be if the sea level was always as high as shown in Source 2.34.
- 2 Discuss other possible future scenarios for this plant community.



Source 2.32 Incoming king tide covering the area inland of the Hays Inlet mangroves



Source 2.33 King tide at close to its maximum



Source 2.34 King tide on the Hays Inlet mangroves

Geographical thought

Oceans make up 71% of the Earth's surface. This means 29% of the Earth's surface is land. Deserts make up 33% of the land's surface area. In other words, deserts make up one-third of the land's surface area.

Deserts

A desert is defined by having one of the following two climate features:

- 250 millimetres of annual rainfall (or less)
- vegetation covering less than 50% of the ground.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.8

- 1 Explain why the term 'rainforest' should be used more carefully.
- 2 Analyse why people in places far from the tropics consider their forests 'rainforests'.
- 3 Describe how mangroves have adapted to growing in salty water.
- 4 Compare the mangrove communities of South Australia and the mangrove communities of north Queensland.



2.8 Factors affecting Australian biomes

Climate has been identified as the main factor affecting the global distribution of biomes.

Examining biomes at a larger scale allows for the closer examination of other factors which affect the distribution of biomes on a more local scale.

Mountain ranges

The pattern of biomes along Australia's east coast is influenced by the location of the Eastern Highlands, or the Great Dividing Range. This set of mountains, even though it is not high by world standards, has an orographic impact on the circulation of wind and the accompanying rainfall. Winds blowing in off the ocean are forced to rise, and they drop their moisture on the eastern side of the range. Source 2.21 and Source 2.22 show the effects of this. The sources show a narrow

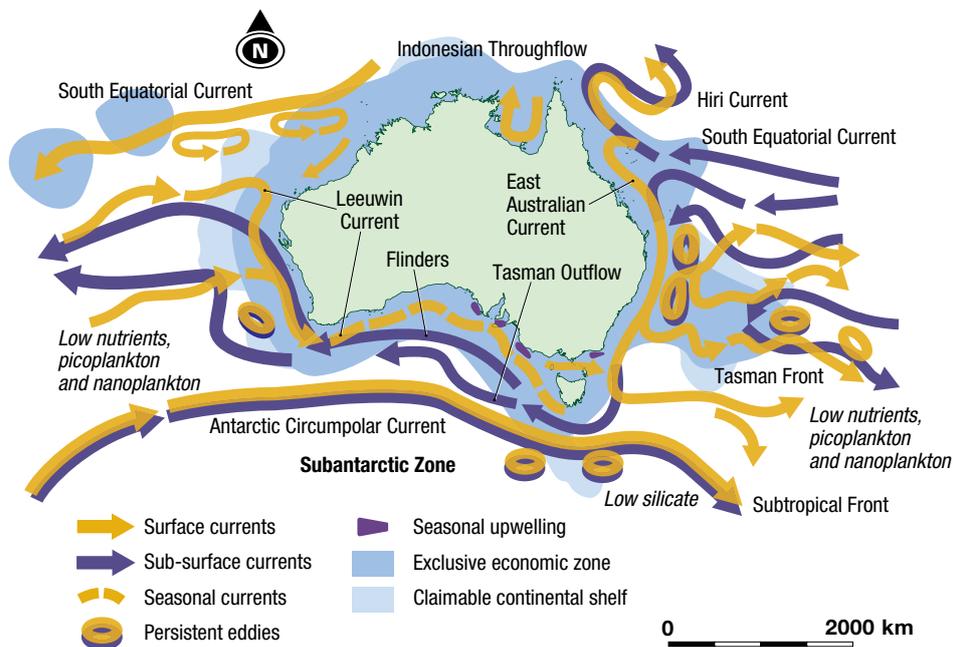
coastal vegetation pattern and a different vegetation pattern immediately to the west of the range.

Ocean currents

The other impact on biomes which can be found by examining biomes at a larger scale is that of **ocean currents**. Source 2.36 is a detailed image of Australia's ocean currents.

What needs to be examined is where the currents are coming from, as this affects the temperature of the water and therefore the temperature of the air above them. The Eastern Australian Current (EAC) is a warm current. It flows from north to south along the east coast of Australia. This warm current will warm the air above it,

ocean current the regular movement of water in the ocean in a particular direction



Source 2.35 Australia's oceanic currents

causing it to expand. As air expands, it can absorb more molecules of water, so the air moving across this current towards the Eastern Highlands holds lots of moisture.

This is compressed when the air cools as it rises over the Eastern Highlands. The result is simple: lots of rainfall on the eastern side of the Eastern Highlands and much less on the western side.

On the other side of the continent the situation is more complex. The western side of Australia does not

have a clear annual oceanic flow. The South Equatorial Current (SEC) is blocked by currents flowing north from Antarctica. These waters are much colder, and they also have an effect on the air flowing over them. Cold air does not pick up moisture from the ocean and so is unlikely to bring rain. As the air passes over the land it is warmed, and is therefore able to absorb moisture, making rain even less likely.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.9

- 1 Using an atlas, locate the following:
 - a the Atacama Desert
 - b the Kalahari Desert
 - c the types of ocean currents that flow off-shore of these areas.
- 2 What is the relationship between the location of the desert and the type of ocean current flowing along the coast?

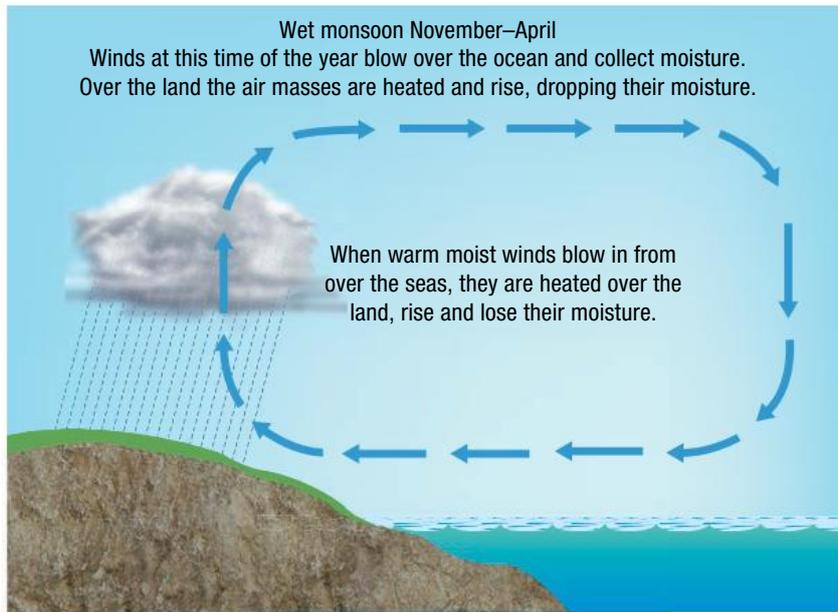
Seasonal air mass movements

Monsoons

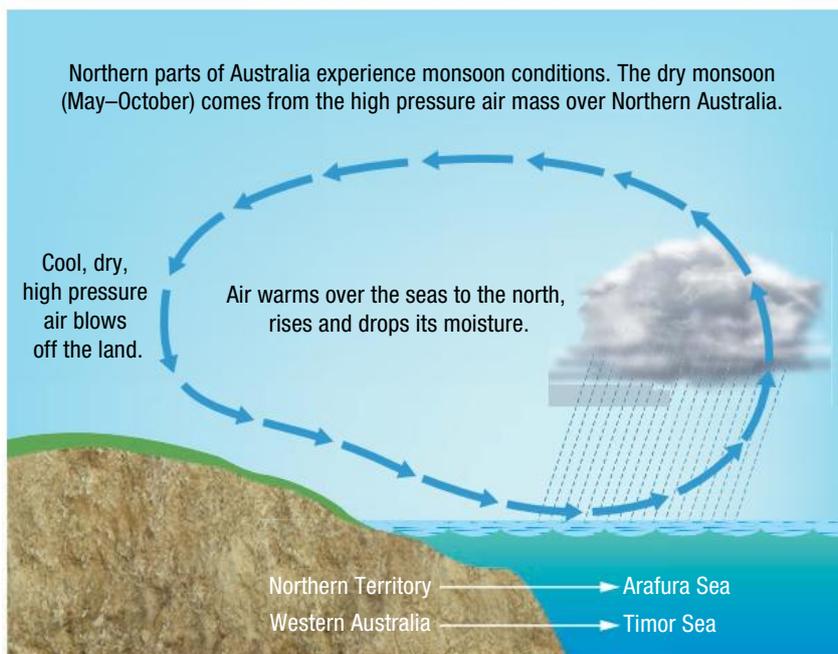
Northern Australia experiences a seasonal change in weather as Earth's changing location in relation to the sun makes the sun appear to move north and south of the Equator. Air masses are affected by this: areas of low pressure move north as the sun appears to move

north (to the Tropic of Cancer) and south as it appears to move south (to the Tropic of Capricorn). This affects the biomes in this part of Australia.

When the sun appears to be over Australia's Tropic of Capricorn, it warms up the land there and causes



Source 2.36 Wet monsoon season



Source 2.37 The dry monsoon

the air above it to rise. This rising air draws in moisture from the surrounding sea bodies and rainfall occurs. This promotes growth, especially of the grasses of the savanna areas of northern Australia. This is the time of the ‘wet’ monsoon.

When the sun appears to be over the Tropic of Cancer, in the Northern Hemisphere, low pressure air moves northwards and dry, stable, high pressure air takes its place over the Australian continent. This high pressure air comes from central Australia; it does not contain moisture and is cold, and so it descends. The dry period begins, and continues until the sun again

appears to be over the Tropic of Capricorn. Sources 2.36 and 2.37 show how this seasonal change operates.

El Niño and La Niña

Weather patterns associated with **El Niño** and **La Niña** events may have more unpredictable impacts on biomes. The monsoons are an annual event, but El Niño and La Niña weather events can last much longer.

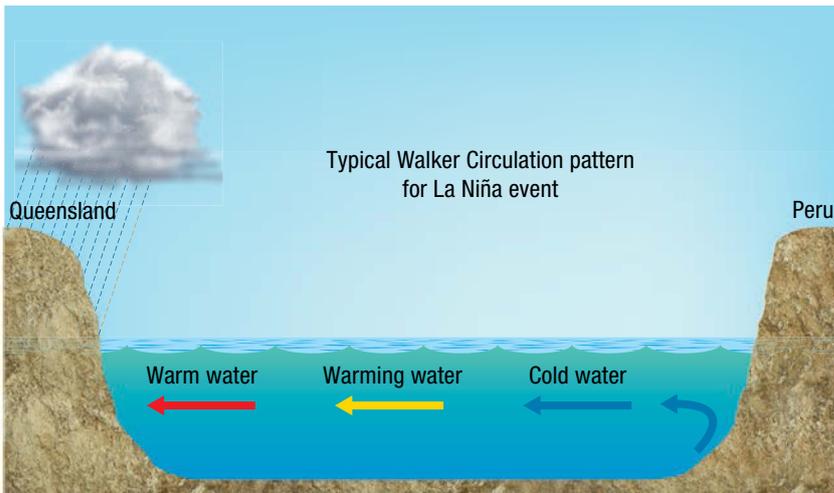
El Niño extensive warming of the eastern and central Pacific Ocean, leading to an increased possibility of dry conditions in eastern Australia

La Niña cooling of the central and eastern Pacific Ocean, leading to an increased possibility of wet conditions in eastern Australia

These events can bring flooding rain, or crippling drought, to northern and eastern Australia.

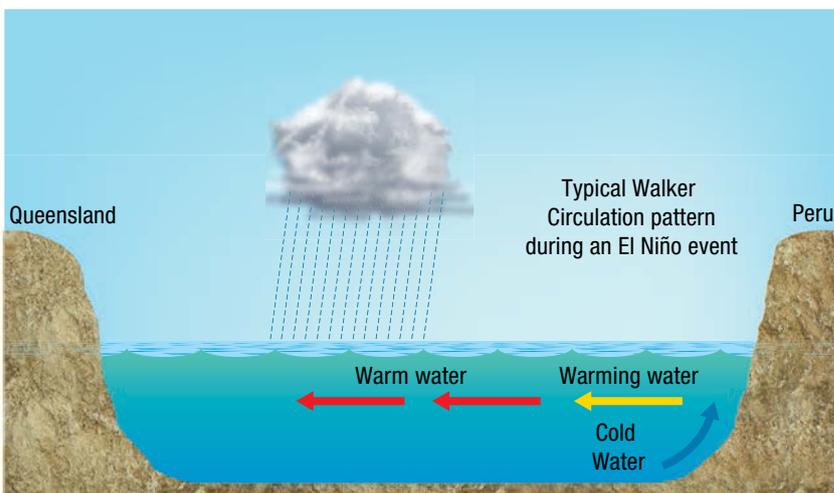
They are predictable, which is of great help to Australian farmers: they can work out when to plant their wheat crop and when to expect rain to start the crop. However, the duration and intensity of these events are not so predictable.

They are driven by air mass movements generated by cold ocean currents flowing north along the coast of South America. If the flow of the current is strong, eastern Australia will experience a La Niña wet weather pattern; if the current is weak, eastern Australia will experience an El Niño dry weather pattern.



Source 2.38 El Niño and La Niña weather patterns

The Walker Circulation is named after Sir Gibson Walker, who described relationships between seasonal variations in climate patterns in the Asia-Pacific region.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 2.10

- 1 Explain why vegetation cover, rather than the amount of rain that falls in a year, should be used as the method of identifying a desert area.
- 2 Analyse the similarities and differences between how plants and animals cope with desert conditions.
- 3 Explain how monsoons affect Australia's biomes.
- 4 Examine how El Niño and La Niña events affect Australia's vegetation patterns.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Biomes are groupings of plant and animal communities that have adapted to inhabit particular parts of the Earth's surface.
- Before the domestication of plants and animals, the main factor that biomes had to adapt to was the world's changing climate; now, biomes also have to adapt to human impacts.
- The major biomes of the world include the rainforest, savanna and desert biomes. Each biome has its own characteristics, according to its climate.
- The plant and animal communities of the world respond to variations in climate. These responses give the world this distinctive pattern of biomes.
- The rainforest biome is dominated by its plant life.
- The savanna biome is dominated by the response of its animal life to seasonal changes in rainfall.
- The alpine biome doesn't fit the pattern based on climate. It stretches north and south from the Equator in North and South America and east to west across Eurasia.
- Because of its isolation from other continents, Australia has developed a unique set of biomes.
- As the Australian continent has drifted northwards over millions of years, the flora and fauna that make up the biomes have adapted to changing environments.
- The pattern of biomes in Australia largely reflects the rainfall distribution map.
- Ocean currents along the western side of the continent affect biomes inland.
- The mountain ranges along the east coast affect the pattern of biomes along Australia's east coast.
- The largest biome in Australia is the desert biome: 18% of Australia's mainland is desert.
- There is only a small area of alpine biome in Australia because Australia does not have very high mountains.
- Mangrove communities are found in many sheltered waters and are very dense communities, often with a closed canopy.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Compare the differences between a biome and an ecosystem.
- 2 Discuss some of the explanations for rainforest trees developing buttress roots.
- 3 Describe the causes of the major seasonal changes on the savanna and how they affect animal life there.
- 4 Identify the factors that cause the major changes in mountain biomes.
- 5 Name and describe the mountains in Australia that have the main area of alpine vegetation.

Extended-response question

Desertification was identified by the United Nations as a cause for international concern in 2006.

'Desertification' is the term used to describe the expansion of desert areas into surrounding savanna regions. It has been linked to both changes in climate and changes in land use. Discuss the situation in relation to desert regions in Australia. Present your discussion in a short essay.

3

Biomes and food production

Before we start

Main focus

People depend on biomes for food, clothing and shelter, and a wide range of other products.

Why it's relevant to us

It is important to preserve biomes for future generations.

Inquiry questions

- How do people use biomes?
- What impact do people have on biomes?
- How can biomes be preserved for future generations?
- What is the role of rice production for food and income security in Southeast Asia?
- What are the factors that affect rice yields, and is rice production environmentally sustainable?
- How are changing farming practices, particularly new technologies, positively and negatively affecting rice production and the environments in Southeast Asia?

Key terms

- Eutrophication
- Extensive agriculture
- Globalisation
- Green Revolution
- High-yielding varieties (HYVs)
- Hunting and gathering
- Intensive agriculture
- Irrigation
- Pesticides
- Rural–urban migration
- Sequent occupation
- Staple food

Let's begin

The biomes of the Earth's surface provide food, clothing and shelter to all of the Earth's 7 billion inhabitants. These inhabitants – us – make different demands on these biomes. Some people live in harmony with the biome in which they live. Many of us rely on biomes far removed from where we live for our food, clothing and shelter; otherwise there would not be Woolworths, Coles, Myers, David Jones, Harvey Norman and Ikea.

3.1 World land use

Humans use biomes across the globe to produce goods that can be used for food, clothing and shelter. Humans also adapt and change biomes across the world to produce goods that can be used for food, clothing, shelter and energy. Two sentences, two different outcomes. The key words are 'use' and 'adapt' and 'change'.

How people use biomes

The simplest way to obtain an overview of how people use the world's biomes is to examine a map of the world's economic activity. It is interesting to compare the map showing the world's biomes in Chapter 2 (Source 2.1) with Source 3.1. There are some similarities.

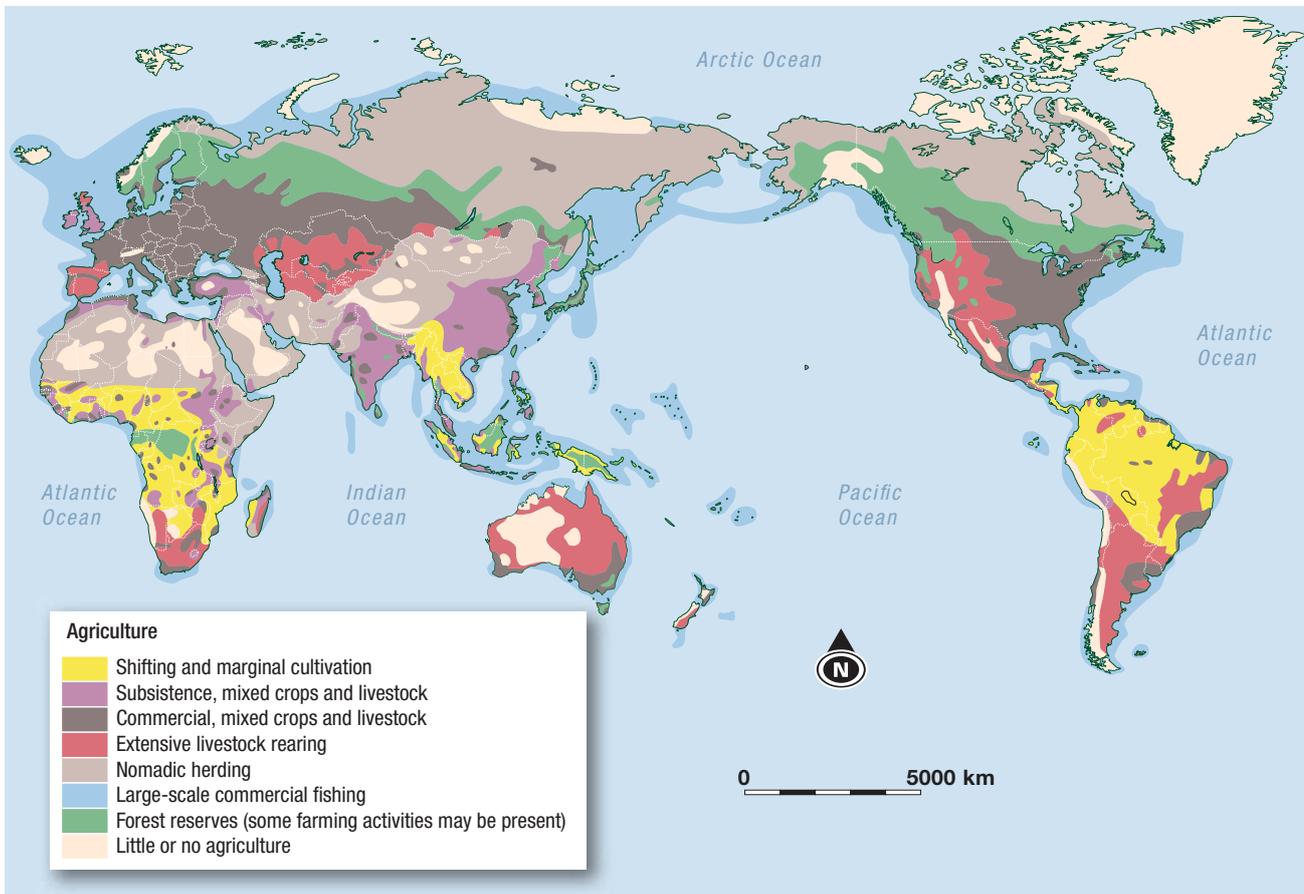
The **tundra** area in the Northern Hemisphere is essentially a biome that is used for nomadic herding. The taiga, or boreal forest, either remains as forest or is used for **nomadic herding**.

One would think that the desert areas would have little or no agriculture, but even here, though some areas have little or no use, much of the Sahara in Africa is used for nomadic herding and parts of Australia's desert regions are used for extensive livestock rearing.

The savanna biomes are dominated by grasses. One would expect to see extensive livestock rearing in these regions. The major savanna areas of the world have a variety of land uses, from subsistence mixed crops and livestock in India to mainly subsistence and marginal cultivation and commercial mixed crops and livestock in Africa.

tundra an area where plant growth is limited by low temperatures and a short growing season; usually found at high latitudes or high altitudes

nomadic herding moving cattle or other animals, such as goats or yaks, from place to place as food becomes available and so as not to exhaust the biome



Source 3.1 World economic activity

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.1

- 1 Commercial mixed crop and livestock activities are carried out over large areas of Europe, North America and Australia. Discuss how these activities may be related to a particular biome.
- 2 List the economic activities that occur in tropical rainforest biomes.
- 3 Describe the relationship between mining and biomes. Use bauxite and gold as your examples.
- 4 Describe how people have made use of the alpine biomes.
- 5 Explain why the important sugar-producing regions of Australia are not shown on Source 3.1.

The initial examination of the world's economic activity shows that biomes throughout the world are used, and that there is a major division in the way people use them. Some people use biomes for commercial purposes while others use them for subsistence purposes. The people using biomes for commercial purposes are growing crops or raising livestock for sale. They are using

subsistence (agriculture) producing just enough for the family to survive
surplus excess

biomes for economic benefit. They expect to make a profit and they use the profit they have made to provide the necessities and luxuries of life. The **subsistence** farmers who raise crops in some areas and herd livestock in others are at the other end of the spectrum.

They usually have very little **surplus** for sale; their lives are a constant battle to provide food for themselves and their families. The luxuries of life – holidays to Hawaii, a night at the opera or even dinner at a fast-food outlet – are far removed from the way of life of these people.

There is another division in the way people use biomes which is not clearly shown in Source 3.1. The key

of the map uses the words 'extensive' and 'large-scale' in relation to some land uses ('livestock rearing' and 'commercial fishing'). The key doesn't use the opposite terms – '**intensive**' and 'small-scale' – in relation to land uses. '**Extensive**' and 'large-scale' refer to individual agricultural activities that cover a large area.

The obvious activities in Australia are the raising of sheep and cattle and the growing of wheat and cotton. In the United States, it is the growing of corn and cotton. These farms cover large areas. 'Intensive' and 'small-scale' land uses refer to activities that cover a small area. In Australia, many land uses fall into this category: sugar cane farming, vegetable production and dairying.

A key geographic term – 'scale' – has been used here in a way that is different from how it is used in relation to maps. A large-scale map is very different from a small-scale map. Source 3.2 will clarify the differences.

intensive agriculture where the land is intensively farmed with high inputs of things such as labour, water and fertiliser; one example is wheat production

extensive agriculture crop or livestock production over large areas of land that requires fewer inputs such as labour; one example is wool production

Term	Referring to land use	Referring to maps
Large scale	Huge area 1000 km ²	Small ratio or fraction 1:250 000
Small Scale	Small area 80 ha	Large ratio or fraction 1:50 000

Source 3.2 Differences between the use of 'large' and 'small' scales

In terms of the use of biomes for food production, there is one global issue to consider before continuing.

Thomas Robert Malthus, a minister of religion, was born in 1766 and died in 1834. This was long ago, but the ideas he proposed are very relevant to geographers

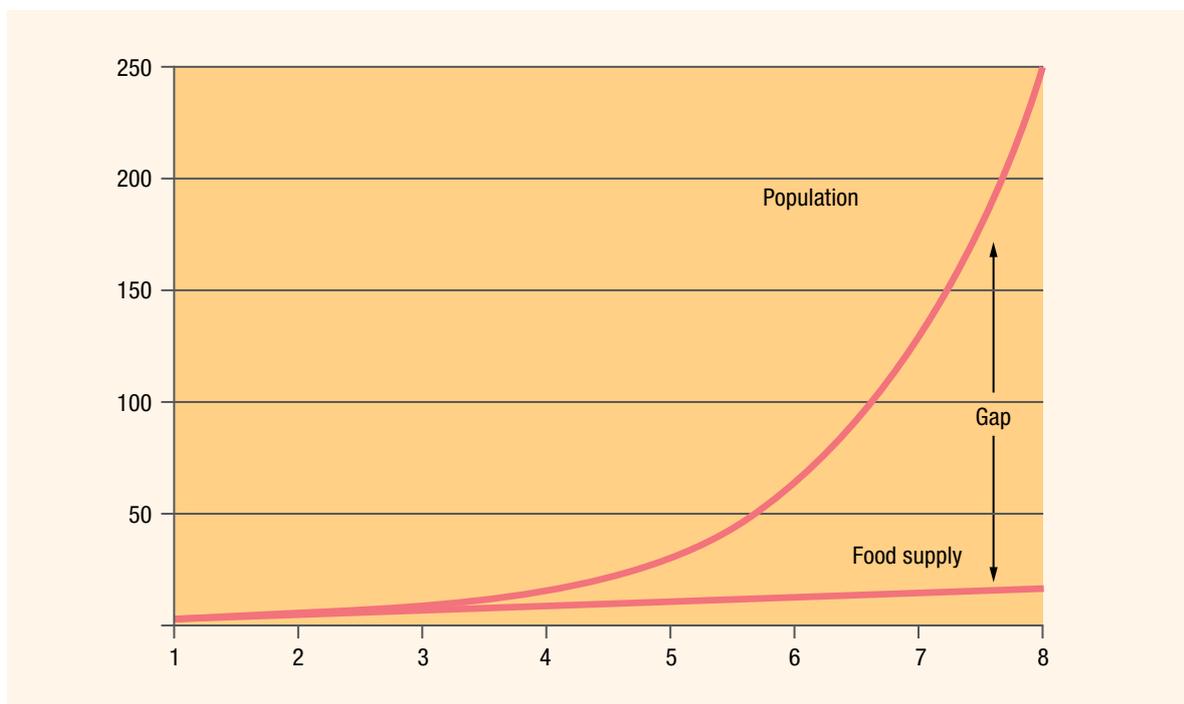
in the modern era. Malthus (Source 3.3) believed that the world's population growth in the early 1800s would be faster than the growth of world agriculture, and that only disaster could result unless serious action was taken. In Malthus' words:

The power of population is so superior to the power of the earth to produce subsistence for man, that premature death must in some shape or other visit the human race. The vices of mankind are active and able ministers of depopulation. They are the precursors in the great army of destruction, and often finish the dreadful work themselves. But should they fail in this war of extermination, sickly seasons, epidemics, pestilence, and plague advance in terrific array, and sweep off their thousands and tens of thousands. Should success be still incomplete, gigantic inevitable famine stalks in the rear, and with one mighty blow levels the population with the food of the world.

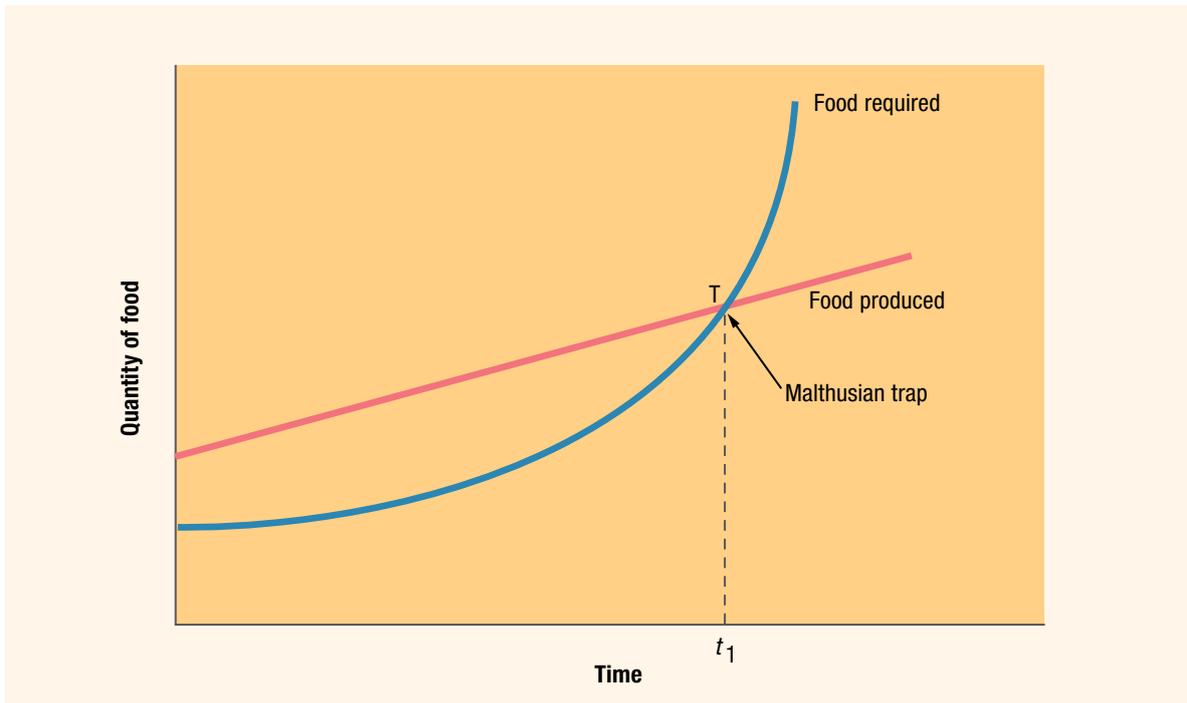


Source 3.3 Thomas Malthus

Converting his words into diagrams shows the following (Source 3.4).



Source 3.4 Population growth outruns food production.



Source 3.5 Crisis point: what would happen?

Malthus believed a disaster or a series of disasters would occur when the crisis point (Source 3.5) was reached.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.2

Geographers may divide the world into the ‘haves’ and the ‘have nots’ in relation to food accessibility. At any one time, some regions are in surplus and have enough food for their region and some left over. Other regions are in famine and people are dying because there is not enough food. Divide your class into groups so that some groups examine areas of food shortage and others examine areas of food surplus. When researching your topic, select relevant questions from the list below.

- How are regions identified as being affected by famine?
- Where are these regions?
- Have these regions always been affected by famine?
- Why is famine occurring in these regions?
- Where are the areas of surplus?
- Have these regions always had a surplus?
- Why do these regions have a surplus?
- What is stopping the areas of surplus sending their surplus to areas affected by famine?

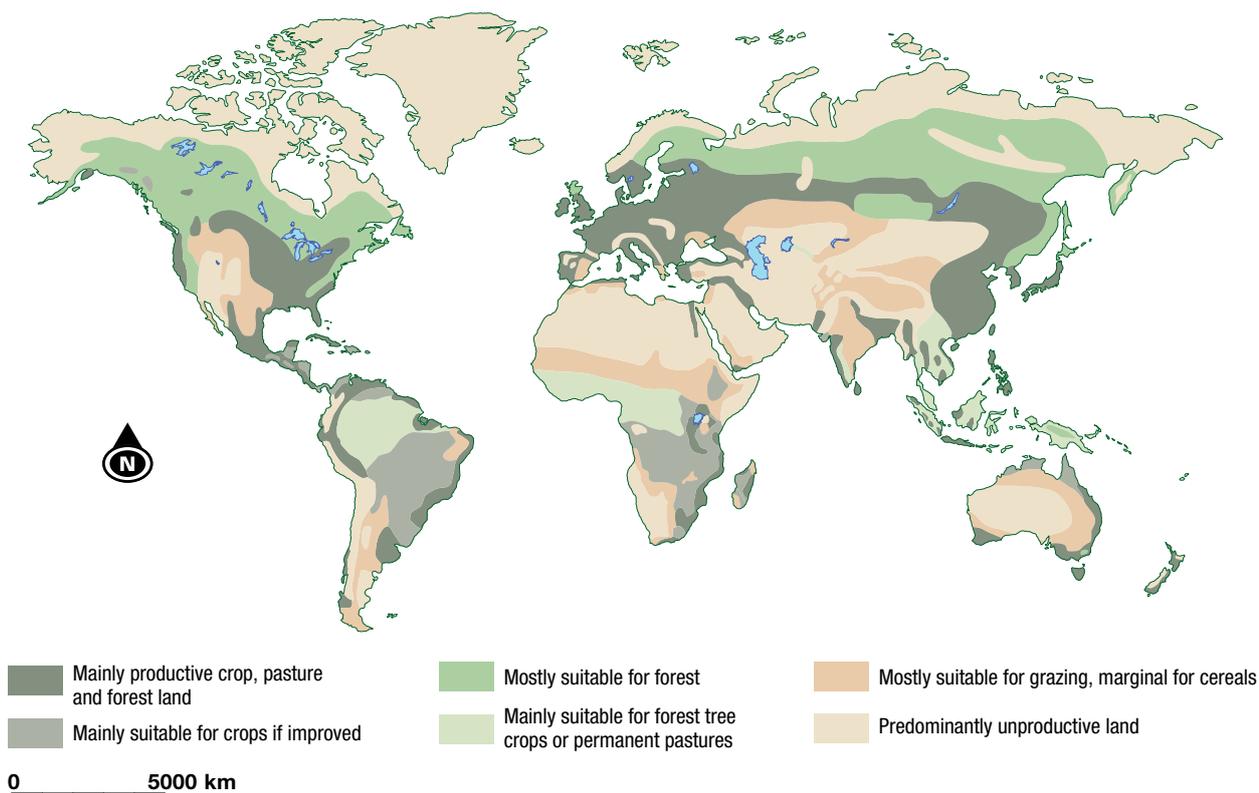
Source 3.6 shows the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organization’s perception of what the world’s current land area could be used for.

What would happen to the world’s biomes if this became reality?

That is the global scene. It may be frightening, but for a geographer, it should suggest enormous possibilities.

In terms of maps, the next sections will take a large-scale focus and examine what could be considered a hierarchy of uses of biomes.

This is very similar, as an idea, to the hierarchy of animals in the food chain of the savanna.



Source 3.6 World potential land use capabilities

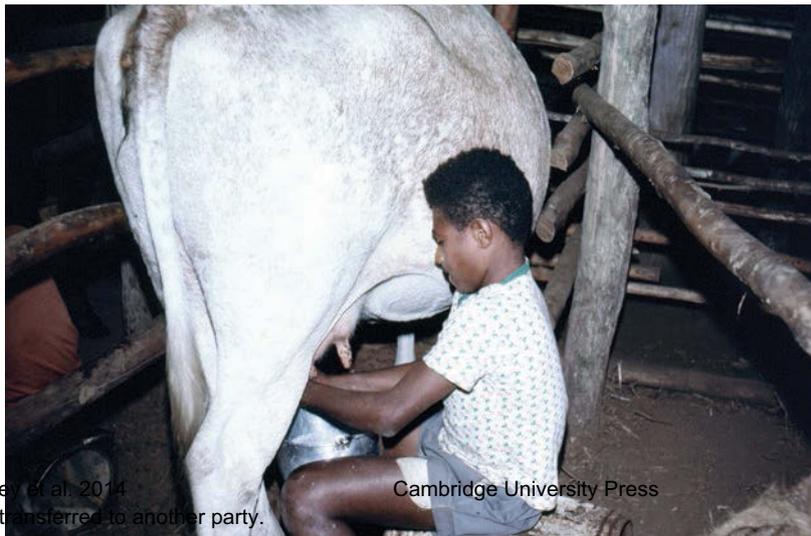
Geographical thought

Hunter-gatherers were the first people to domesticate dogs.

Source 3.7 Cattle were introduced.



Source 3.8 Milk was introduced into the diet.



Hunters and gatherers

hunting and gathering the practice of obtaining food requirements through the hunting of wild animals and the collection of naturally growing plants and plant products

The earliest humans **hunted and gathered** food in the forests and plains around them. There are parts of the world where this still happens. The photo set in Sources 3.7–3.11 shows a group of people living in the forests of the Fly River in Papua New Guinea.

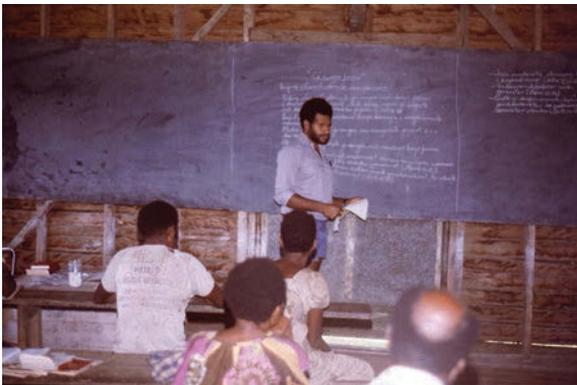
When missionaries first encountered this group of people they lived simply on the fruits of the forest. The missionaries changed these people’s way of life, settling the group in a village and therefore transforming their nomadic life in the forest. Evidence of some of the changes can be seen in the pictures following.



Source 3.9 A hospital was constructed.



Source 3.11 Areas were converted to farm land.



Source 3.10 A school was built.

As hunters and gatherers, the people had had a limited impact on the rainforest biome they lived in. They lived off the forest. An animal was killed from time

to time, but not all the animals were killed; nor was their habitat destroyed. A sago palm was felled from time to time but not all the sago palms were felled. In short, these people lived in harmony with their environment.

The people are referred to as the Suki: that is the name of the language they speak. The earliest known record of them is when they attacked the explorer Luigi D’Albert in 1877 while he was exploring the Fly River. They were still head hunters as recently as 1931. Missionaries visited the area during World War II, and returned permanently in 1944. The photos above were provided by a student – Richard Gardner – who was a missionary in this area in the 1960s and 1970s. Gardner was proud of his work with the Suki and proud of the fact that one Suki tribesman had actually continued his education and returned to the village as a university graduate.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.3

Copy the table below and summarise the positives and negatives that you think would come with living as a hunter-gatherer today. Think about what you would find difficult and what would benefit you.

Hunters and gatherers

Positives	Negatives

Shifting cultivators

If shifting cultivators are left undisturbed, they too have a minimal impact on the rainforest environment in which they are usually found. The cycle of shifting cultivation is shown in Sources 3.12 and 3.13.

The story of these shifting cultivators is simple. An area of rainforest is selected as a plot and most trees in it are felled. Some are left to hold the soil together if the plot is on a steep slope and some may be left for



(a) Forest



(b) Slash and burn



(c) First crop



(d) Yield diminishes in second and third year



(e) Bush returns after plot is abandoned



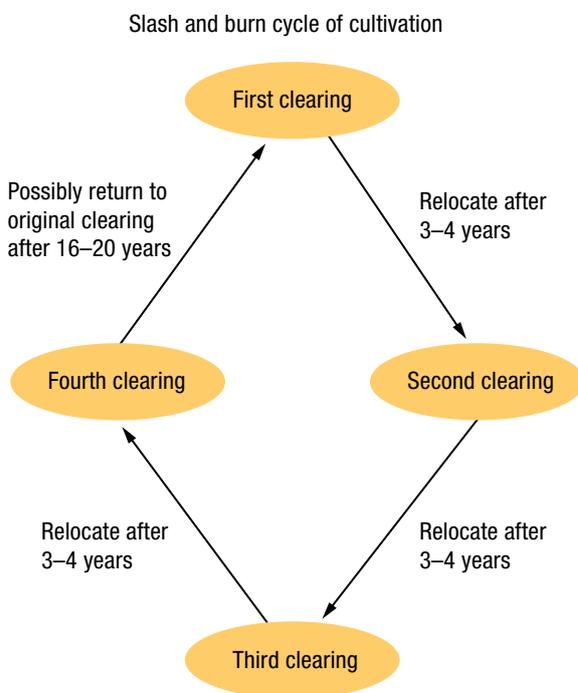
(f) Forest eventually returns

Source 3.12 The cycle of shifting cultivation

climbing plants to grow on. Some of the felled trees are burned to provide nutrients for the soil and others are used as a barrier, to protect the plot from wild animals. A variety of crops are planted. This is important because it means the people's diet is varied. It also means that if one crop fails, they will still have food. The first crop is excellent. The plot is only used for around 3 years, because the yields decrease over time. At that point a new plot is established.

Before leaving the old plot, the group will open the barrier around it. Wild animals, usually wild pigs, will enter the plot to forage among the leftovers.

These will be killed, making for a variation in the diet of the people.



Source 3.13 Shifting cultivation cycle

The group may move their settlement to the new plot if it is far away. The old plot and old settlement sites are soon reclaimed by the rainforest. Over 16–20 years the humus layer builds up on the floor of the forest and the soil fertility returns. Remember, a rainforest is capable of creating its own fertile soils. When the soil fertility has been restored and a good forest cover has been established, the group can return and use the area again. In this way they shift their plots around, making breaks in the canopy of the forest from time to time, using the fertility of the soil but never completely destroying the biome because they move on once their crops have exhausted the fertility of the soil.

Contact with the outside world has changed the way of life of the shifting cultivators. Missionaries bring



Source 3.14 This plot is on Nguna Island in Vanuatu and shows cassava, bananas and sweet potatoes being grown.

medicines, and others may bring axes and chainsaws. The medicines mean that fewer people are dying from the diseases and other threats in the forest. The populations have increased and the axes and chainsaws mean that areas can be cleared more quickly and larger areas can be cleared.

The growth in population means that the shifting cultivator has to return to a plot sooner than the required 16–20 year growth period. The rainforest is therefore not well enough established, so the cycle is shortened. In many areas, particularly the northern Philippines, the abandoned plots were being taken over by grass, which



Source 3.15 Blady grass (*Imperata cylindrica*) often replaces rainforest in areas where shifting cultivators have overused the land. Blady grass can be found in many parts of Australia.

does not provide good soil nutrients. Grass encourages more grass, which competes with the young rainforest species.

Large areas of rainforest have been converted to grassland, which is useless for agriculture. Also, the grass is not palatable to cattle, which might otherwise have been introduced.

Here is a biome which could have been used sustainably for years to come, but which is being turned into useless grassland instead. The rainforest is gone and so is the rich diversity of life that lived in it. In many areas the practice of shifting cultivation has been outlawed, but what happens to the people for whom it is a way of life?

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.4

- 1 Explain why hunter-gatherers have such a small impact on their biome.
- 2 Describe how shifting cultivators managed their impact on the biome.
- 3 List the influences that caused shifting cultivators to increase their impact on the biome.
- 4 Research current methods of farming that have less impact than shifting cultivation on a biome.

3.2 Adapting biomes

Rice cultivators

Rice cultivators take the use of a biome to a higher level again. More than 500 million hectares (ha) are used for growing rice each year: that is more than 11% of the world's arable land. Rice is the main food for more than half of the world's population – for most of those living in China, India and Indonesia. There are two types of rice cultivation: dryland (or upland) rice and wet rice.

Geographical thought

Rice is a subsistence crop. It is grown by the family and consumed by the family. Only 5% of the world's rice crop is exported.

Dryland (or upland) rice

Here the forest is cleared and the rice is planted. It is often grown on very steep slopes, as shown in Sources 3.16 to 3.19. The crop relies on rainfall.

The biome has been significantly altered. The original vegetation has been removed. Most of the wildlife associated with that vegetation has gone. A new



Source 3.16 Upland rice field in Sabah, Indonesia



Source 3.17 The soil layer is not very deep and the rainfall needed to sustain this crop will wash some of the soil layer away very quickly.



Source 3.18 Abandoned, overgrown field in the same area



Source 3.19 The original rainforest biome is seriously under threat in this area.

biome is now in place. This biome is controlled by the people who develop the plots.

As the plots are on steep slopes it is highly likely that landslides will occur, because the vegetation which protected the slope and held it together has been removed. Upland rice represents about 13% of the rice area planted annually but only produces around 4% of the rice produced annually. Almost 100 million people in Bangladesh, Cambodia, China, India, Indonesia, Myanmar, Thailand and Vietnam depend on this rice source.

Wet rice

Wet rice cultivation takes the human impact on biomes to a whole new level.

The impacts on the original rainforest biome are easy to identify. The vegetation cover has again been removed, which means the associated wildlife has had to find alternative habitat.

Additionally, the land has been sculpted so that fields can be created. The flow of water through this system is precisely managed. Some elements of the original biome remain – those which can provide food – but the rest have been removed.

In terms of humans affecting rainforest biomes, this would appear to be the top of the pyramid, but it is not.

Commercial farmers

Earlier in the chapter there was a reference to the scale of this. The chapter has followed the increasing impact humans have had on the rainforest biome. There are two uses of this biome which have not yet been addressed. First, it is necessary to move from the global scale to the national scale.

Australia is one of the world's major producers and exporters of sugar. Sugar is extracted from a grass that grows easily in the hot, wet environment of the tropics.



Source 3.20 Wet rice cultivation in mountainous regions of Bali, Indonesia



Source 3.21 Lowland rice cultivation Singdand Laut, Indonesia

Intensive agriculture

The Tweed River valley and the Ord River Scheme have extensive areas of sugar cane, but the areas are still too small to show on a map of Australia.

It is interesting that both these areas differ from the main sugar-growing areas. Most sugar-growing areas produce one crop per year using natural rainfall. The crop in New South Wales takes 15 months to mature, because this area is cooler than northern areas. The crop in Western Australia is grown using irrigation from the Ord River Dam.

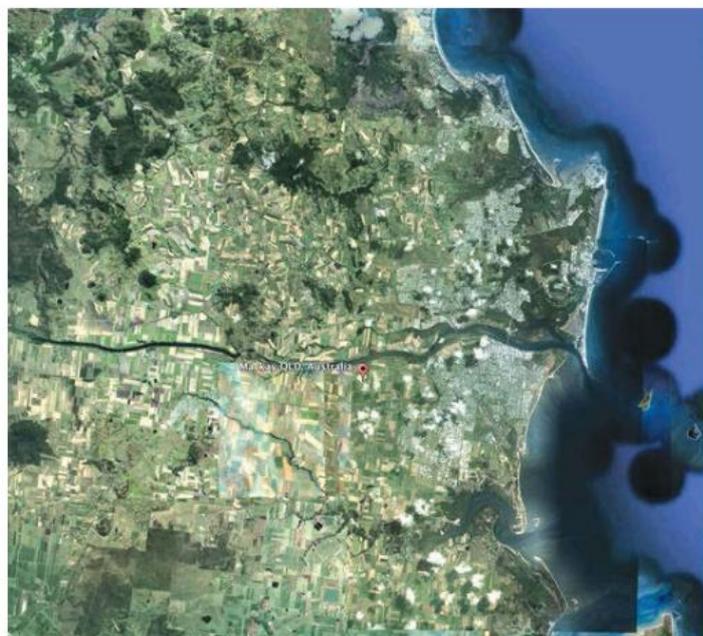
There are approximately 6000 sugar cane growers in Australia, with the majority on the east coast. Farms are usually small – around 100 hectares.

This is why sugar cane farming is described as an ‘intensive’ industry. The farmer owns a small area of land, and grows a crop which has a high yield and a high value. The farm is often highly mechanised and uses large amounts of fertilisers, pesticides and weedicides. The impact on the original biome is significant.

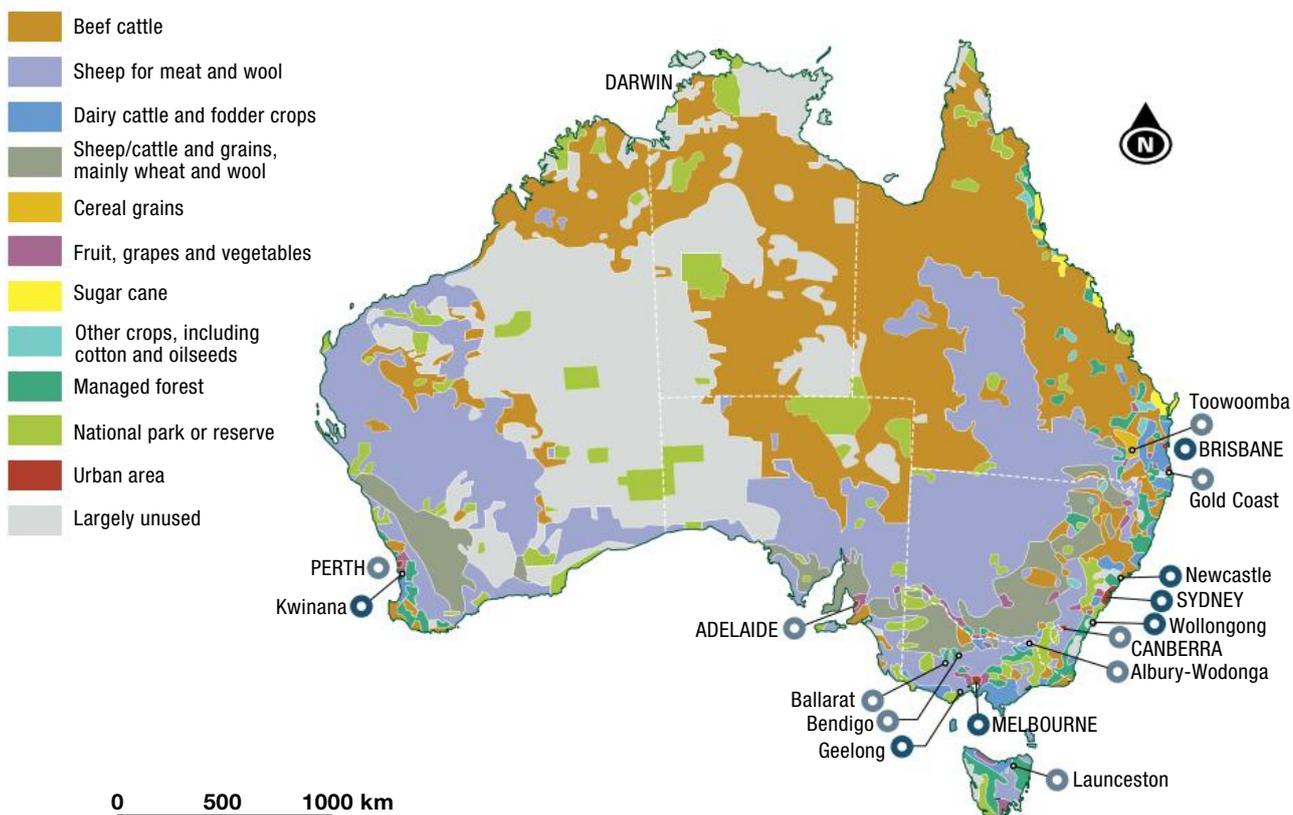
Source 3.22 shows the sugar cane area around Mackay, Queensland.

Machinery is also used extensively in the industry, to clear the flat land for farming. The hills stand out in the

image – they still have remnants of the original biome on them, at least partly because machinery works best on flat land.



Source 3.22 Sugar cane farms west of Mackay show the almost complete loss of the original biome.



Source 3.23 Australia – economic activity

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.5

Australia has large tracts of extensive agriculture. These farms are huge in area.

Some make extensive use of machinery, but others do not. Choose one extensive agriculture activity in Australia and report on the following:

- Where is it located?
- Why is it located where it is?
- What was the original biome?
- How has that biome been affected by the economic activity?
- How might the biome be more sustainably managed in the future?

Present your research in a report.

Geographical thought

The forest of the Amazon provides 20% of the world's oxygen. Wet rice fields contribute between 100 and 500 million tonnes of methane gas (a greenhouse gas) to the atmosphere each year.



Changing biomes over time

Biomes change over time as different people recognise different uses for it. This geographical concept is called **sequent occupance**. One example is the Redcliffe Botanic Gardens.

sequent occupance land use changing over a period of time

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.6

Copy the table below and create a Plus, Minus, Interesting Chart (PMI Chart) detailing the different ways in which various types of agriculture impact on biomes. An example has been provided.

	Plus	Minus	Interesting
Hunting and gathering	Low impact on resources	Resource availability can be affected by disasters such as flood or fire	Still practised today in some areas

3.3 Preserving biomes

Studies to date have shown that humans have had significant impacts on the world's biomes. On 1 March 1872, United States President Ulysses S. Grant declared the area of Yellowstone to be a national park. The objective was to save a part of the Earth's biomes for future generations.

Yellowstone is widely believed to be the world's first national park. Australia was not far behind, declaring the world's second national park, now named the Royal National Park, on 26 April 1879 (Source 3.24).

Today over 100 nations have designated national park areas. Australia has just over 4% of the country reserved in its 685 national parks.

When the construction of the Aswan Dam in Egypt threatened the temples of Abu Simbel, nations organised a World Heritage Convention.

The outcome was that funds were raised to relocate the temples. A broader outcome was the development

of the concept of 'world heritage areas'. These are areas of natural and/or cultural significance that should be managed sustainably so that they are available for future generations to enjoy. Australia has 41 areas on the World Heritage list, including Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park, Fraser Island and the Great Barrier Reef.

Talk by government and industry has moved from 'how can we develop the resources of an area for maximum profit?' to 'how can we develop and manage the resources sustainably?' This has been a major shift in thinking about biomes and their use. One of the wake-up calls was a book – *Silent Spring*, written by Rachel Carson in 1962 – which described the impact of modern pesticides on the planet's bird life at that time.

Finding pesticide residue in Antarctic penguins was another wake-up call. Not all countries are managing their biomes sustainably, but changes for the better are being made.



Source 3.24 Royal National Park, New South Wales, Australia

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.7

- 1 Discuss why national parks are important for the future of biomes.
- 2 Explain why managing a biome sustainably is important for the future of biomes.

3.4 A closer look at rice in Southeast Asia

Rice is the staple food of Southeast Asia and contributes significantly to the livelihoods of smallholder farmers, the regional economy and society. Rapidly increasing populations in the countries of Southeast Asia have placed pressure on the rice-farming sector to both increase yields for food and income security and to strive

towards sustainable practices to protect water, soil and other environmental resources. Rice accounts for two-thirds of the calorie intake of more than 3 billion people in Asia and it is increasingly consumed in Europe, North America and other regions. Approximately 610 million people in Southeast Asia depend on rice as a staple food.

The role of rice

Rice as a staple food

cereal crop grasses grown to produce edible grains, such as wheat, oats and rice

maize a grain known in most English-speaking countries as 'corn'

biofuel fuel made from natural sources

staple food the most commonly eaten food in a specific region

In Southeast Asia, rice is consumed daily and is considered to be the most important **cereal crop** for both food and income security.

After **maize**, rice is considered the second most important crop in the world. However, maize is also grown for **biofuel**, and rice has greater importance as a **staple food**.

Rice production is widely considered the reason for populations in Southeast Asian countries continuing to grow with less poverty. Rice is also increasingly consumed in Europe, North America, Australia and New Zealand because of immigration and the increasing interest in food from other regions. Rice is also consumed in Africa, the Middle East and Pacific countries.



Source 3.25 Rice farming is a dominant feature in Southeast Asian landscapes.

The Green Revolution

Rice production increased dramatically in Southeast Asia in the 1960s because of the introduction of **high-yielding varieties (HYVs)** and improvements in fertilisers, **pesticides** and farm machinery. Financial institutions and governments all played a role in financing the uptake of new technologies by providing credit

high-yielding varieties (HYVs) varieties developed by selective breeding and cross-breeding to achieve faster growth and to produce more seeds

pesticides substances used to destroy insects and other organisms that can harm or damage plants or animals

or donating inputs to smallholder farmers. By the 1970s, more than 40% of rice farms involved irrigation, and by the 1980s, HYVs were being widely used. This dramatic, technology-driven increase in rice production was dubbed 'the **Green Revolution**' and was responsible for a decline in poverty and an increase in economic growth.

Green Revolution a period beginning in the 1940s when new agricultural techniques brought great increases in production and greatly decreased the incidence of hunger worldwide



Source 3.26 Rice farming in the Philippines utilises rich volcanic soils but is at risk of crop destruction from volcanic eruptions.

The rice plant

The rice plant is a **monocot** grass that can grow to 1.8 metres tall.

Many varieties are less than 1 metre tall. The term 'rice' is used for the seed or grain of the rice plant, but is often used more generally, and incorrectly, to describe the whole plant. A tiller is a shoot made up of the roots, a stem and leaves. The term 'tillering' refers to the division of tillers from the root zone during the **vegetative phase**. A **panicle** is a cluster of rice flowers from which the grain develops. HYVs often have more panicles than older varieties of rice. Panicles form in the reproductive stage and remain present in the ripening stage when the rice grain becomes fully formed.

The rice plant depends on **nitrogen**, **phosphate** and trace nutrients to grow. It also has a high water requirement.

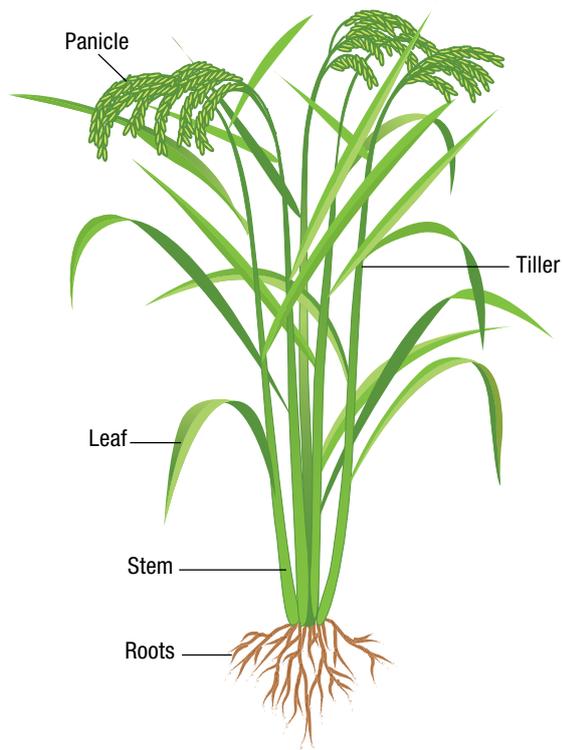
monocot a flowering plant that grows its parts in threes (the number of petals is typically a multiple of three); it only produces one embryonic leaf (cotyledon) in its seeds

vegetative phase the stage at which a plant produces its leaves

panicle a cluster of flowers from which the grain develops

nitrogen an odourless, colourless, unreactive gas forming about 78% of the Earth's atmosphere

phosphate the salt of phosphoric acid, which is commonly used as fertiliser

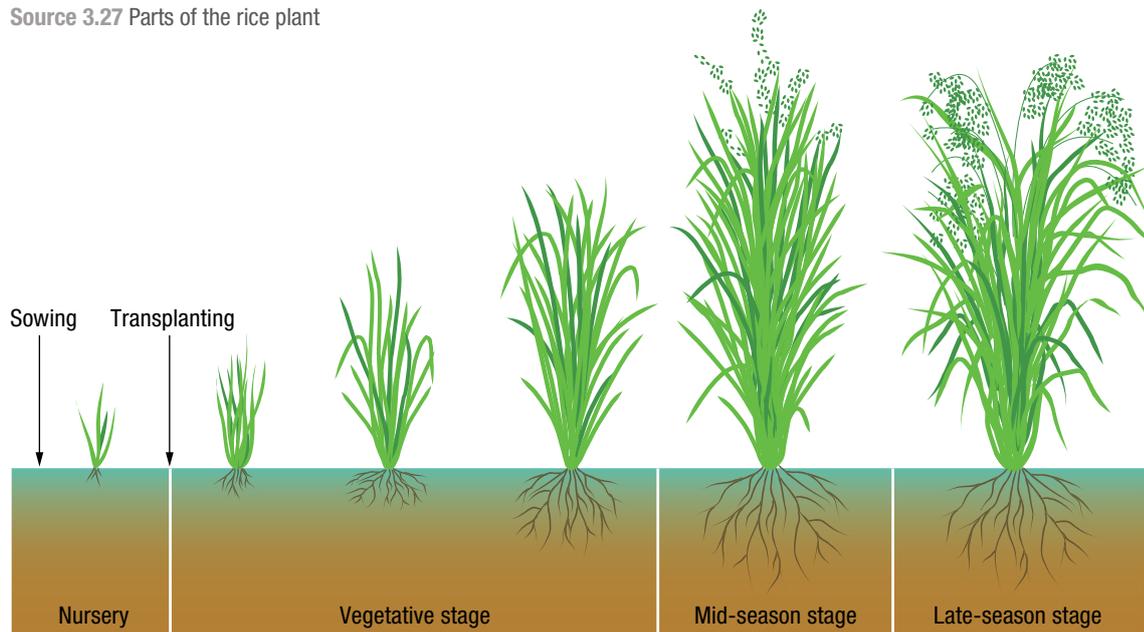


Source 3.27 Parts of the rice plant

Nutrients are supplied by the soil and water the rice grows in, but **domesticated** varieties of rice must be supplemented with nutrients from fertilisers to produce their maximum yield. There are four main stages in rice plant growth:

domesticated describing a plant grown from seeds originally harvested from plants growing wild, and which are used to plant areas such as rice fields

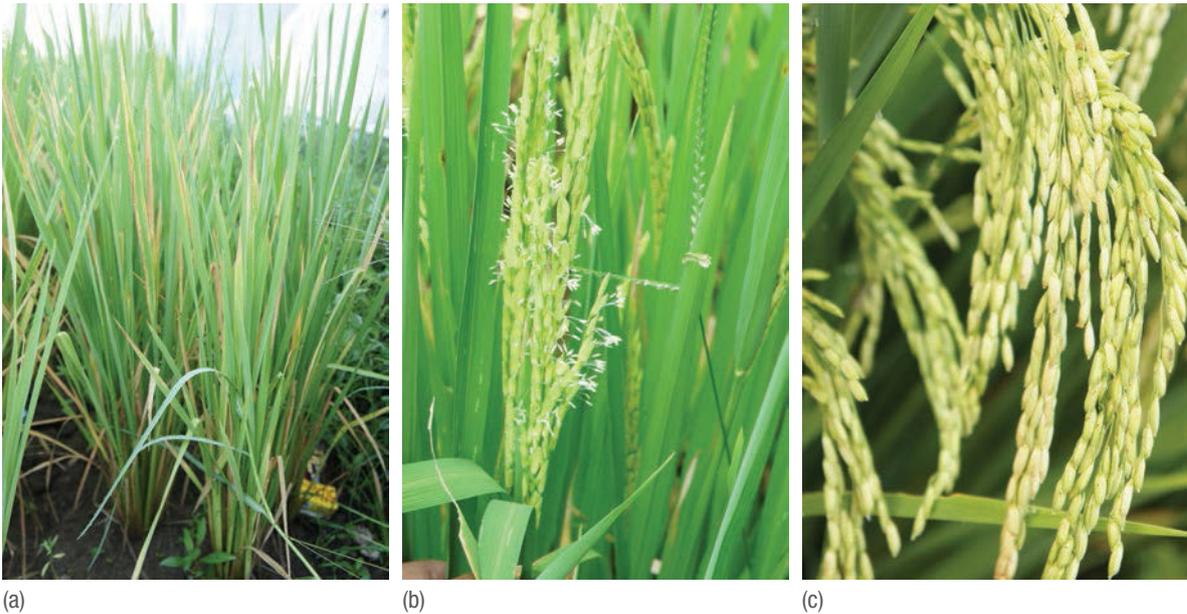
- nursery stage – this stage begins with sowing rice seeds in nursery fields. Seedlings are transplanted approximately one month after sowing.
- vegetative stage – following transplanting, the rice plant develops tillers, and later the panicle growth begins.
- mid-season stage – this is a reproductive phase during which the panicle develops flowers. Nutrient and water requirements are high during this phase.
- late-season or maturing stage – this is when seeds develop from fertilised flowers. The seeds are ready for harvest when they are firm. If seeds are not harvested in time, they become 'overripe' and fall from the plant.



Source 3.28 Stages in rice plant growth

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.8

- 1 Identify the three largest producers of rice in Southeast Asia.
- 2 Describe the four main stages of rice plant growth.
- 3 Name the two rice varieties commonly grown in Asia.
- 4 Describe the characteristics of HYVs of rice.



Source 3.29 Seedling showing (a) no panicle, (b) a flowering panicle with seed development, and (c) maturing seeds. (Source: Wirastuti Widyatmanti)

Significance in culture

In many Southeast Asian societies, rice farming is celebrated through festivals and ceremonies.

These events are important because they bring rice-farming communities together and maintain cultural traditions that encourage social cohesion.

Many rice festivals and ceremonies have remained relatively unchanged for centuries and help to preserve song and dance traditions. Spiritual beliefs that predate current religious practices underpin many of these ceremonies and are accepted as part of the rich cultural history of Southeast Asian countries.

Rice-based food is given as gifts during religious events and on holy days. The end of the Holy Month of Ramadan (Eid al-Fitr) is celebrated with gifts of rice-sweets and elaborate meals centred around rice. In Malaysia and Indonesia, which are largely Islamic countries, rice has a special place during Ramadan as

well: it is prepared for the early morning meal and the 'breaking of fasting' in the evening. Rice sweets and rice-based foods also feature strongly in Buddhist, Hindu and Christian celebrations. Malay peoples, who live in Indonesia, Brunei, Singapore and Malaysia, celebrate *Tepuk Tepung Tawar* (Patting Plain Flour Ritual) in which different coloured rice grains, along with flowers, vegetables and flour, represent aspects of happiness and prosperity.

Rice-growing systems

Irrigated rice

Over 70% of rice is produced in small (0.5–2.0 hectares) **irrigated** rice fields. This involves the diversion of water from canals and streams into rice fields where water is maintained at a depth of 5–10 centimetres. Between 3 and 6 tonnes of rice per hectare (per crop) are produced, but up to 10 tonnes per hectare can be achieved. Most irrigated rice fields are in the lowlands, where the **topography** is better suited to water management. Water is retained in rice fields using small dykes called **bunds**. Farmers remove small sections of these bunds to release water into neighbouring fields or to drain the fields for the rice harvest. Irrigated rice fields are usually used for rice **monoculture** – up to three crops can be grown per year

irrigation the process of supplying water to a crop, typically via channels

topography the natural or artificial features of an area

bund an embankment, like that of a river's edge

monoculture the growing of a single crop in an area

Geographical thought

Rice was once widely used as currency in Southeast Asia and other parts of the world. It was used as currency until World War II in some rural areas.

in the wet tropics. In temperate areas, only one rice crop is grown per year, and other crops such as wheat are grown in rotation.

Rain-fed rice

Rain-fed rice farming depends on rainfall as its primary source of water. There are two sub-categories of rain-fed rice farming: lowland and upland. Rain-fed lowland farming involves the use of bunds to flood the rice field. The coastal lowlands used for rain-fed rice farming are often subject to prolonged episodes of flooding and drought. During these droughts, salinity can become a problem as saline tidal waters, which have high **evapotranspiration** rates, flow into low-lying fields.

evapotranspiration the process by which water evaporates from land and water and is expired from plant material and joins the atmosphere

Rain-fed lowland rice farming is challenging for farmers because of climatic variability and because the soils are often unsuitable. Because of the risk of crop failure, many farmers are reluctant to invest in farm inputs such as fertiliser and tend to avoid HYVs, which demand more water and nutrients. The risk of economic loss from floods or drought is too high for most farmers. As a result of minimising their investment in farm inputs, they usually produce less than 2 tonnes of rice per hectare.

Rain-fed upland rice farming is also known as dryland cropping. In this system, bunds are not used to submerge rice, and lower-yielding rice varieties that require less water are generally used. Because yields are often less than 1 tonne per hectare, rice is only farmed to meet local food requirements. Other crops are grown along with rice to provide cash crop alternatives.



Source 3.30 Seedlings ready for transplanting into irrigated rice fields, Java, Indonesia (Source: Wirastuti Widyatmanti)

Rice production and sustainability

Environmental impacts

The Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change (IPCC) estimates that methane emissions from rice farming are approximately 15% of the total emitted by all sources. The release of methane into the atmosphere contributes to the overall human-induced Greenhouse Effect. Methane is mainly produced in rice fields when they are submerged: ponded waters prevent atmospheric oxygen from entering the soil, leading to an increase in the methane-producing **anaerobic** bacteria that thrive on decomposing plant material, manure and nitrogen-based fertilisers.

anaerobic (organism) an organism that can live without free oxygen (oxygen in the air)

Irrigated rice requires more water than most other cereal crops. This high demand reduces the water available to the natural environment and creates competition with other land uses that share water resources.

Irrigation canals and bunds are designed to direct fresh water away from natural watercourses and into the rice-farming areas. The impact of water diversion is most significant in the dry season in monsoonal environments. During the wet season, monsoon rains provide abundant water, but during the dry season, water availability can be limited. In temperate rice-growing areas, where annual rainfall is generally lower, there is pressure on water resources year-round.

Fertilisers are not fully utilised by rice plants, so any excess is absorbed by the soil, lost into the atmosphere, leached into groundwater or transported offsite by runoff or the release of banded waters. Fertilisers can therefore lead to **eutrophication** of waterways: they can reduce the concentration of dissolved oxygen in the soil, which leads to reduced **biodiversity** and degraded habitat.

eutrophication an excess of nutrients in water, resulting in an increase of bacteria and plant life, which leads to the deaths of animals as the oxygen levels in the water decrease

biodiversity the diversity of plant and animal life in a particular habitat

HYVs are more susceptible to insect pests than older rice varieties. The use of pesticides is controversial because of concerns over human health risks, and about their effects on the natural environment. Pesticides may affect insects and other fauna that are important for ecosystem functioning. Pesticides are readily transported by water and can affect aquatic ecosystems many kilometres away from their source.

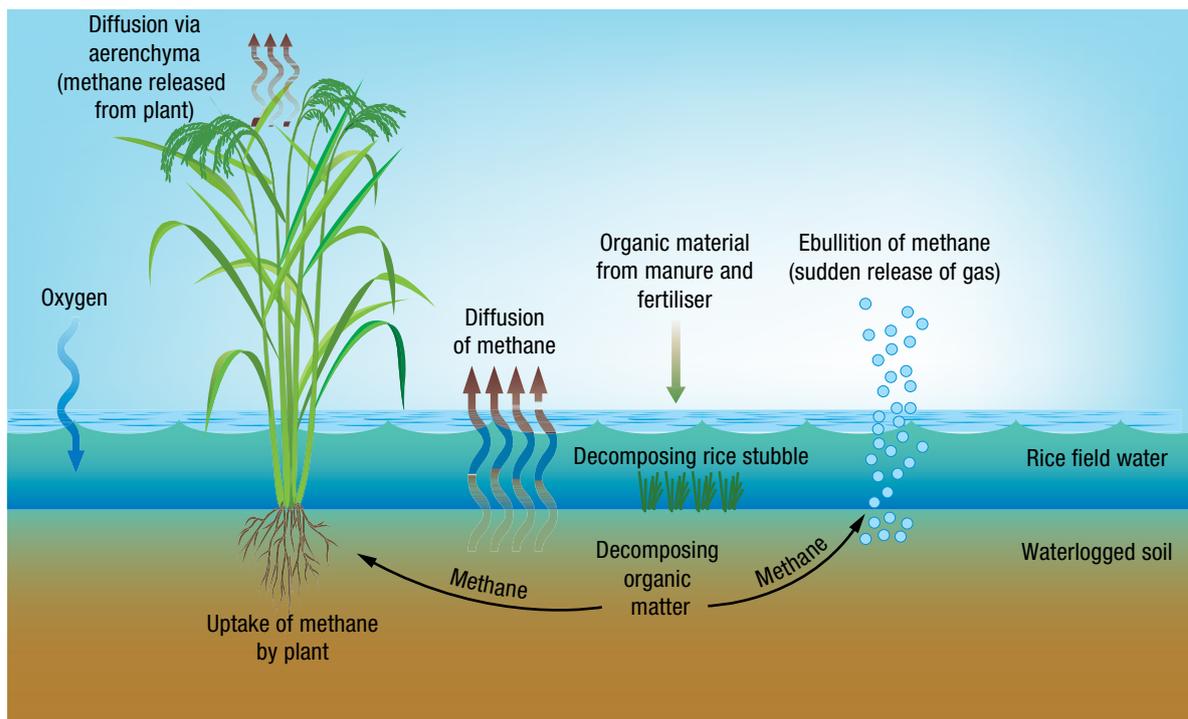
A great deal of land clearing is done to create more rice fields. Land clearing reduces the size of natural environments and can increase erosion and **offsite sedimentation**. Pressure on land resources from urbanisation, industry and other farming practices has led to the reclamation of coastal wetlands for

offsite sedimentation the contamination of waterways by accumulated sediments washed from the land

rice. These reclaimed lands are often not well suited to rice farming because of their low elevation, the presence of acid sulfate soils and their proximity to tidal waters. Reclaimed wetlands can easily be exposed to flooding, and to **salinisation** and **acidification** of soil and water.

salinisation when salt is deposited on the soil

acidification when a substance becomes acidic, or is converted into an acid



Source 3.31 Methane gas production in rice fields is enhanced by the use of fertiliser and manure, and by waterlogged conditions.

Rural–urban migration

rural–urban migration the movement of workers from farmlands to cities and other urban areas

Rural–urban migration is a threat to the supply of labour for rice-producing rural areas. Economic growth in Southeast Asia since the 1980s has attracted rural youth to secure, salaried positions in the cities and the increasingly urbanised regional centres.

The migration of young people to urban areas has left behind an ageing labour force in rice-farming communities. Rice farms are often handed down through generations, so a lack of interest in maintaining the family-run farm forces owners to sell their fields or to lease them to others, which means the family tradition of rice farming can cease abruptly.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.9

- 1 List the key differences between irrigated and rain-fed farming systems.
- 2 Explain why methane emitted from rice fields is an environmental problem.
- 3 Explain how the migration of young people affects society in both rural and urban areas.
- 4 Identify two threats of rice farming to aquatic ecosystems.

Environmental constraints

The success of rice farming is inextricably linked to the environment. Without adequate water supply and fertile soil, rice farmers face the challenge of artificially managing the environments they farm.

To achieve high yields from HYVs, they have to increase their use of fertilisers, pesticides, water and other inputs.

Rainfall is the primary water source for farmers.

Keeping water in upstream areas, in large dams and weirs, and diverting water to other land uses and domestic supply, reduces the availability of water in irrigated rice-farming areas. Surface waters (rivers, streams, canals and lakes) are also at risk of contamination from domestic waste and effluent from industry.

Soil fertility is variable across Southeast Asia. Nutrient-rich soils are found in alluvial environments, such as flood plains, and in areas where volcanic activity occurs. Hill slope soils, which are often used for rice terraces, can be shallow and low in nutrients. Sandy soils in coastal areas are often low in nutrients due to leaching.

The disturbance of acid sulfate soils in coastal lowlands can release large amounts of acid and toxic metals, which harm the rice plant and can degrade the offsite environment.

Changing consumption trends

Southeast Asian countries can be categorised as net importers or net exporters of rice. **Globalisation** and an increase in the disposable income of young people have led to a shift in food preferences.

Urban youth are increasingly adopting Western diets and replacing rice with wheat-based staples, such as bread.

The health benefits of reducing carbohydrates, which are a major component of rice, are also better known. A change in dietary preferences

has reduced the consumption of rice by individuals, but the rising population maintains the demand for rice, particularly in rural areas where incomes are lower and traditional diets remain important.

Factors that determine whether a country is a net exporter or a net importer include: the number of people who consume rice, the available labour source, the land available for cultivation, the yield of the rice varieties that can be farmed, the farming technology and seasonal controls (such as rainfall) on production. Countries may shift from being net importers to net exporters and vice versa if there is a change in any of these factors.

globalisation the process by which the world is becoming more interconnected, with an increase in social and economic integration between countries (for example, an increase in international trade and communication)

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 3.10

Investigate the role of pests and how they are controlled in rice fields. Information is widely available on the internet.

Complete the following tasks:

- 1 Identify three pests that affect rice fields.
- 2 Describe how these pests affect rice production.
- 3 List control measures that are used to manage or eradicate these pests.
- 4 Identify the environmental risks of the control measures.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Governments are responding to demands by the public to manage resources sustainably.
- People have always used biomes for food, clothing and shelter.
- The impact people have on biomes varies from very little to major.
- Some so-called primitive people are able to manage their biomes quite sustainably.
- Population growth can be harmful to biomes.
- Some subsistence and commercial activities can almost completely remove the original biome.
- National parks are one way to preserve biomes for future generations.
- The public is becoming more aware of the need to manage biomes sustainably.
- Rice is a staple food for all Southeast Asian countries and is important for food and income security.
- Environmental factors, such as soil quality and variable rainfall, and human factors, such as competition for water resources and demand for urban land, are constraints on rice farming.
- An increasing preference for Western food has seen a decline in the consumption of rice in younger generations. However, high population growth has maintained demand for rice.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Explain what shifting cultivation is. How many years does a shifting cultivator use a plot for?
- 2 Contrast intensive and extensive farming.
- 3 Contrast subsistence and commercial farming.
- 4 Discuss the importance of rice to Southeast Asian livelihoods.
- 5 Describe one way rice farming negatively affects the environment.

Extended-response question

This chapter has shown how people have changed some biomes from natural systems to systems completely dominated by humans. Write a newspaper article about how urban areas depend on rural and natural systems today. When writing your article, consider the following:

- that urban areas use food produced in rural areas
- the history of food production
- what urban areas would be like without rural food production
- the impacts of urbanisation on the economy, the environment and culture.



Source 3.32 A field in the Usambara Mountains, Tanzania, 'slashed and burned' in preparation for planting maize crop

4

Agricultural systems in Australia

Before you start

Main focus

Agriculture has been at the centre of Australia's development since European settlement in 1788, and over this time the nature of agricultural practices has changed dramatically. As it looks to the future, agriculture in Australia faces the challenge of providing food and fibre security in a sustainable way for an increasing population, with the threat of climate change and environmental degradation placing an enormous burden on the nation's ability to increase production.

Why it's relevant to us

In highly urbanised modern Australia, consumers are becoming increasingly alienated from the production of the food they eat and the natural fibres they wear. There needs to be a greater awareness of the vital place that agriculture has in the lives of all Australians and an understanding of the threats that will be faced by the industry in the future.

Inquiry questions

- What role did agriculture have in the development of Australia?
- What is the state of agriculture today?
- How have past agricultural practices impacted on the Australian environment?
- What threats are facing future agricultural production?

Key terms

- Commodity
- Dryland agriculture
- Economy of scale
- Environmental degradation
- Factory farm
- Food security
- Green Revolution
- Sustainable agriculture
- Turbidity

Let's begin

As with many other countries, agriculture has been at the forefront of Australia's development. The expression 'riding on the sheep's back' was a reference to the prosperity that Australia derived from the production and export of wool in the nineteenth century and the first half of the twentieth century. Life in the bush and on the farm has featured largely in the history of Australia, mythologised in such works as Banjo Paterson's poem *The Man from Snowy River* and the comical stories of Dad and Dave in *On Our Selection*, shown in some of Australia's earliest films. Agriculture's significance in modern times is still celebrated in the resurgent popularity of annual agricultural shows such as Sydney's Royal Easter Show. Today agriculture remains a major part of the Australian economy, producing a diverse range of products, from sheep, cattle and wheat in Australia's vast inland, to cotton and rice in Australia's irrigation districts, to tropical fruits such as mangoes and bananas in Australia's north.

4.1 Agriculture in Australia

agriculture the science or practice of farming, including cultivation of the soil for the growing of crops and the rearing of animals to provide food, wool and other products

Agricultural Revolution a period of massive change in the way that agriculture is practised

hunting and gathering the practice of obtaining food requirements through the hunting of wild animals and the collection of naturally growing plants and plant products

Sustained **agriculture** first developed over 12000 years ago in various regions around the globe.

This first **Agricultural Revolution** marked a monumental shift from the early **hunting and gathering** societies to communities that domesticated animals and grew crops for food. The advent of sustained agriculture was a relatively recent phenomenon in Australia. Prior to European settlement the Indigenous people of Australia lived a predominantly nomadic hunting and gathering existence and did not farm the land in a systematic way. The arrival of the First Fleet in January 1788 heralded the arrival of agriculture. In May 1788 the livestock

in the fledgling colony was listed as seven horses, seven

cattle, 29 sheep, 74 pigs, five rabbits, 18 turkeys, 29 geese, 35 ducks and 209 chickens, and a few acres of land were being cultivated (unsuccessfully) for cereal crops at Farm Cove.

By 1860 the agricultural revolution had firmly arrived. On the official Census there were listed 431525 horses, 3957915 cattle, 20135286 sheep and 351096 pigs, and 48000 hectares of land was devoted to cereal crops.

Today the agricultural industry extends right across the nation, except in the desert areas in Australia's vast inland, and encompasses an enormous range of **commodities**, as shown in the table below.

These industries range in size from the extensive cattle stations – which can be up to 24000 square kilometres in Australia's arid zone – to fruit and vegetable farms of just a few hectares in the **peri-urban** zones.

commodity a raw material or primary agricultural product that can be bought and sold, such as copper or coffee

peri-urban areas just beyond the boundaries of major urban centres

Livestock	Cereal crops	Oil seed crops	Pulse crops	Other crops
Sheep	Wheat	Canola	Soybean	Cotton
Goats	Oats	Safflower	Lupin	Sugar cane
Cattle (dairy and beef)	Barley	Sunflower	Mung bean	
Pigs	Sorghum		Peanut	
Poultry	Maize		Chickpea	
Horses	Millet		Field pea	
Deer	Rice		Fava bean	
	Triticale			
Fruit – tropical	Fruit – general	Berries	Vegetables	Nuts
Banana	Apple	Strawberry	Root vegetables (potatoes, carrots, onions)	Almond
Mango	Pear	Raspberry		Macadamia
Pineapple	Grape	Blackberry	Cruciferous vegetables (cabbage, broccoli, cauliflower)	Cashew
Papaya	Stone fruit (peach, apricot, plum)	Kiwifruit		
Avocado	Cherry	Passionfruit	Lettuce	
Lychee	Citrus fruit (orange, lemon, grapefruit)		Tomato	
	Melons (watermelon, rockmelon)			



Source 4.1 One of the world's major cereal crops is wheat. The wheat in this image has reached maturity and is ready for harvesting.



Source 4.2 Cattle mustering on a Northern Territory cattle station

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.1

- 1 The products in the previous list are only some of the agricultural commodities that are produced in Australia. The list doesn't include silage production for animal feed, for instance. As a class, discuss some of the other agricultural products that you are familiar with that are grown in Australia.
- 2 Some of the commodities on the list, such as cattle, can be produced in most Australian regions, but some have specific growing or production conditions. As a class, make a list of some of the major factors that may have an influence on where agricultural production can take place and what types of commodities can be produced.
- 3 As a class, discuss the importance of agriculture to the Australian economy relative to other sectors of the economy, such as mining, manufacturing or services. Which is most important, and why?

RESEARCH 4.1

Did any of the class answers for Question 1 above included native foods or 'bush tucker'? Research some of Australia's native foods and discuss their potential as agricultural commodities.

Agricultural productivity in Australia is constrained by significant geological and climatic factors, as well as pressures from alternative land uses such as urban development. Of all the inhabited continents, Australia is the driest. It also has some of the Earth's oldest, shallowest and most weathered and infertile soils, making vast areas of Australia unsuitable for **intensive agriculture**. Over 70% of Australia's

intensive agriculture where the land is intensively farmed with high inputs of things such as labour, water and fertiliser; one example is wheat production

land area receives low amounts of rainfall and is classed as either semi-arid or arid: of the 7.6 million square kilometres of total land area barely a tenth is suitable for sown crops and pastures, and much of that only after the addition of fertilisers or the use of other soil-improving practices such as the planting of pasture **legumes** (which fix essential nitrogen to the soil). Australia does

legume a type of plant, such as clover, soybeans and lupins, that carries nodules on its roots; working with certain bacteria, legumes are responsible for the fixing of nitrogen in the soil



Source 4.3 Harvesting wheat in Victoria's fertile Wimmera region

have areas of naturally fertile soil, such as in the Wimmera area of Victoria and the Darling Downs region of Queensland, but these are not extensive compared with the deep, fertile soils of the North American prairies or the Ukraine in Eastern Europe.

Australia is also one of the most urbanised countries in the world, with almost 90% of the population living in towns and cities, and most of these within 100 kilometres of the coast along the south-western, southern and eastern regions of the continent, where the soils are more fertile and rainfall is more abundant. The continual spread of urbanisation is one of the pressures that agriculture is facing in Australia, as more and more land is being claimed for urban development.

Land and water are essential for agriculture and the Australian landscape and water catchments have changed significantly since European settlement. Agriculture is the largest consumer of water in Australia – on average, it represents 50–70% of total water use – and

since settlement around 100 million hectares of forest and woodland have been cleared, mostly for agricultural production. Even today land continues to be cleared for agriculture. In 2013

around 456 million hectares, or 59% of land in Australia, is used for agriculture, making it the dominant form of land use.

Agricultural land use has also had other significant impacts on the Australian environment.

The alteration of vegetation cover has led to increased erosion and salinity; land clearing has caused a reduction in biodiversity and increased extinction rates; the cultivation of food plants and the grazing of domestic animals have changed the nutrient

hectare a unit of land equal to 10 000 square metres

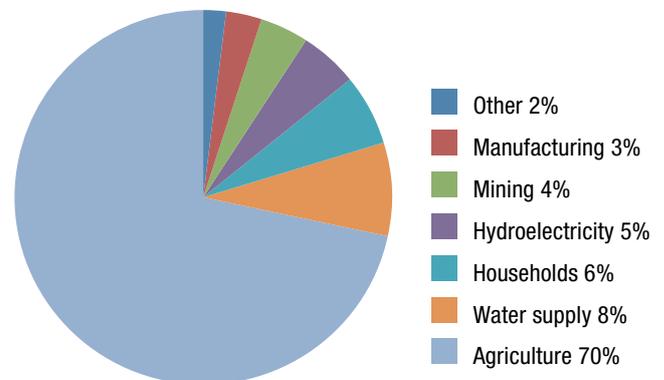
erosion the wearing away of the surface of the Earth by the action of water and wind

salinity the level of salt in soil and water

balance of the soil; and the addition of fertilisers has increased the rates of soil acidification.

Historically, despite the difficulties faced in establishing and adapting agriculture to Australian conditions, and in managing the impacts agriculture has had on the environment, it has been a successful enterprise. Australian farmers are innovative. They are constantly adopting new ideas and practices to increase productivity while also looking after the land. They have been able to produce enough food and natural fibre (such as wool and cotton) to meet the needs of several times our own population.

soil acidification a gradual increase in the acidity of a soil, which reduces crop productivity



Source 4.4 Water use in Australia

Agricultural enterprises are also successful for the Australian economy. Until the 1970s agricultural products made up a substantial percentage of world trade. In 1876–80, food and natural fibre accounted for about 58% of the value of world trade. This made Australian farmers some of the wealthiest in the world and this wealth showed in the grandeur of some of the houses built at the time.

Geographical thought

Some of the longest fences in the world have been created in Australia to protect farming land and livestock from pests and predators. The Dingo Fence, which is 5400 kilometres long – 2.5 times the length of the Great Wall of China – stretches from South Australia to Queensland to protect sheep from dingo attack.



Source 4.5 Early photograph of the Chirnside property near Werribee, Victoria

One of these, Werribee Park Mansion in Melbourne's west, was built by the pastoralists Andrew and Thomas Chirnside in the 1870s and reflected the immense wealth the family had made from sheep production.

Today agriculture makes up less than 10% of world trade and farm profits have decreased significantly. Today's Australian farmers need to produce more than four times the volume to earn, in real terms, just over half of what farmers earned in 1951–52.

Rabbits, which were released in Victoria in 1859 and soon grew to plague proportions, have had a devastating impact on the natural environment and agricultural production. To protect their crops from rabbits, farmers in Western Australia erected three rabbit-proof fences. Rabbits managed to cross the first one, so two more had to be constructed. The total length of all three fences is more than 3000 kilometres.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.2

- 1 Explain the meaning of the expression 'Australia rode on the sheep's back'.
- 2 Describe the major limiting climate factor for agriculture in Australia.
- 3 Suggest some of the ways that agriculture in Australia has dealt with the lack of natural rainfall.

Agriculture and the spread of settlement in Australia

The spread of settlement in Australia was closely linked to the expansion of agriculture. This was not always an easy process. For the first 150 years of settlement the establishment of agriculture was hampered by the vastness of the continent, the unfavourable climate and rainfall, the poor soil, the lack of agricultural experience and knowledge of those settling the land and poor decision making by farmers and Australian governments.

Despite being a nation that has largely settled the coast, the bush has always been a feature of the Australian collective consciousness, and dreams of making a living from the land have had a strong attraction for many people.

In the process of settlement the landscape was **fragmented**. Before the arrival of Europeans in 1788, the Indigenous peoples were intimately

bound to the land; it was – and still is – an essential part of their spiritual and physical being.

European notions of land ownership didn't exist and territorial boundaries between peoples were based on cultural identification with land features such as rivers and mountains. Aboriginal people could move freely over the landscape.

European notions of land ownership were based on the principle of private ownership, and land was allocated with geometrical precision, based on units such as acres. The fragmentation of the landscape begun by the Europeans was consolidated with the establishment of boundary fences and roads which clearly marked out territory and restricted the free passage of people and animals through the landscape. Widespread land clearing was an integral part of this process.

fragmented broken up into smaller or separate parts



Source 4.6 An early style of chock and log fence in Tasmania

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.3

- 1 Explain what 'a landscape becoming fragmented' means.
- 2 Explain how perceptions of the land differed between Indigenous Australians and the early settlers.
- 3 Discuss how you think Indigenous people might have reacted as the landscape was becoming fragmented.

RESEARCH 4.2

In a recent book by the historian Bill Gammage, called *The Biggest Estate on Earth*, he claimed that the Indigenous people of Australia were the first to create widespread landscape change on the continent and were adept managers of the land who intimately understood the life cycles of native plants and the importance of fire in the management of the landscape. Gammage's conclusions imply that contemporary Australian land managers have a lot to learn from Indigenous land management techniques. Research what some of these Indigenous land management techniques were and how they might be useful in contemporary land management practices.

Settlement and expansion 1788–1860

From early in the history of the Australian colonies the colonists eagerly sought new land for growing cereal crops and for sheep and cattle production.

The period from 1788 to 1820 was a period of limited agricultural expansion because of low population growth and geographical impediments such as the impenetrability of the mountain ranges west of Sydney. Most of the agricultural settlement was taking place within 50 kilometres of Sydney in New South Wales and at Hobart and Launceston in what was then called Van Diemen's Land. Wheat and maize were the major crops and wool was only beginning to be recognised as having economic potential.

Once a crossing had been found through the Blue Mountains west of Sydney in 1813, settlers who were eager for fertile land for agricultural development spread through the inland. The same thing was happening in Victoria. In 1836, Sir Thomas Mitchell, who was exploring the western district, wrote of the richness of the land.

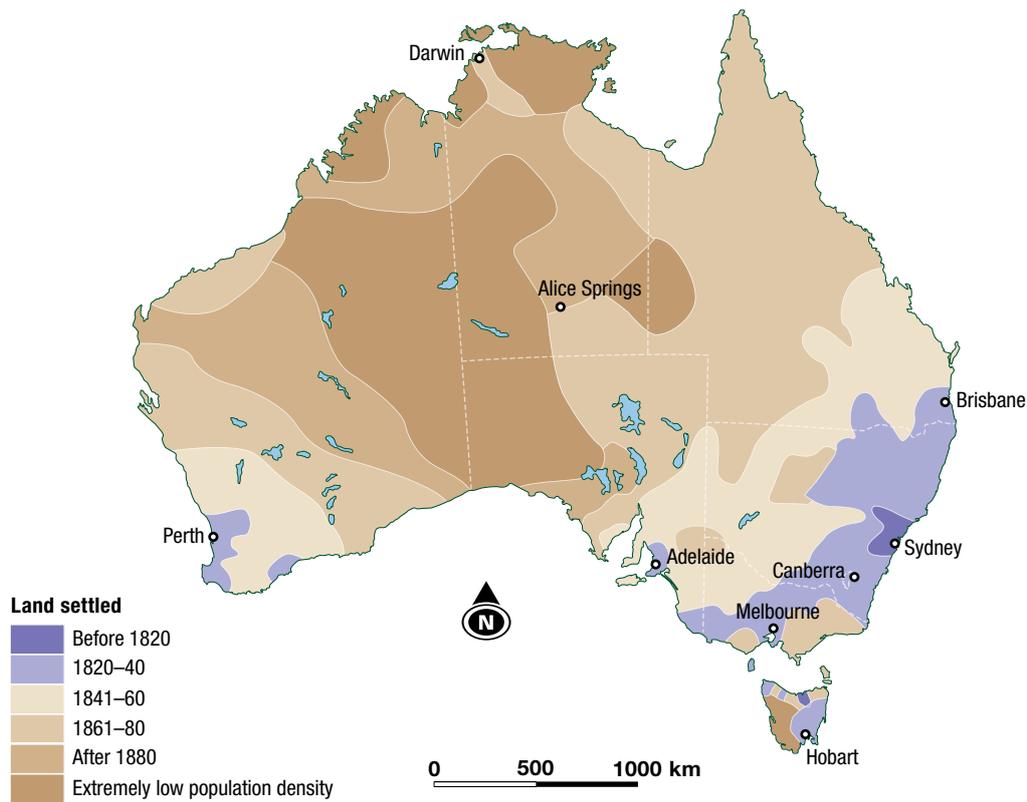
Towards the south coast on the south and adjacent to the open downs between the Grampians and Port Phillip, there is a low tract consisting of very rich black soil, apparently the best imaginable for the cultivation of grain in such a climate.

Agricultural settlement of the vast interior of the continent during the next 40 years was led by the **squatters**, who were seeking land for sheep and cattle grazing. The growing of cereal crops was still largely restricted to the high rainfall coastal zones on Australia's eastern and south-eastern coasts.

The squatters were farmers who had, during the early years of European settlement, illegally occupied large areas of **Crown land**. So vast was the country and so small was the population that there was little the colonial authorities could do to keep the squatters in check.

squatter a farmer who in colonial Australia occupied large tracts of Crown land in order to raise sheep or cattle

Crown land land owned by the government



Source 4.7 Pattern of land settlement in Australia

The vast sheep and cattle runs the squatters acquired – they averaged about 12 000 hectares – were so financially successful that these men became wealthy and powerful members of Australian society: the squattocracy. By the

1830s, colonial governments no longer regarded the squatters as acting illegally and began granting them licences or leases for the territory that they had occupied.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.4

- 1 Explain why the development of agricultural settlement in Australia was so limited in the first 20 years of European settlement.
- 2 Discuss whether or not it was in the interests of the squatters to ignore the government restrictions on taking up land to run sheep and cattle.
- 3 Suggest ways in which the success of the wool industry might have promoted greater migration to the Australian colonies.

Unlocking the land – turning the bush into farms, 1860–1900

By the 1860s the colonial governments were under pressure to ‘unlock’ the land that had been occupied by the squatters and break it up into farming allotments. A number of factors were encouraging this change:

- Large numbers of immigrants had swelled the population of the colonies following the gold rushes of the 1850s and there was pressure on governments to allocate land to these new settlers.
- The governments of the colonies also believed that Australia’s fortunes could not be tied predominantly to the export of wool and decided that the rapidly growing population needed to be self-sufficient in food.

- There was a general (but inaccurate) belief that the European tradition of intensive farming of smaller parcels of land could be transplanted to Australian conditions.

Colonial governments introduced a number of Land Acts (laws) which broke up the land holdings of the squatters and promoted schemes aimed to help people

extensive agriculture crop or livestock production over large areas of land that requires fewer inputs such as labour; one example is wool production

farm a variety of produce on their land, with a particular emphasis on intensive agriculture such as wheat rather than **extensive agriculture** such as wool production. There was great enthusiasm for these schemes: it was hoped they would revolutionise agricultural production in Australia.

One government land agent in Echuca in Victoria even enthusiastically wrote in 1872 that the Victorian Land Act had somehow affected the climate:

With the Land Act 1869 a great improvement in the seasons took place, the rainfall increased, the grass became abundant, steady and increasing settlement took place, which has now amounted to a rush, and ... still they come. (quoted in Charles Fahey, *John Sweeney and the Making of an Australian Farming Landscape: A Micro-level Study of Baulkamaugh and Katunga, 1877–1955*)

Large areas of land which had previously been licensed to squatters was divided into selections of 16–130 hectares and sold. In Victoria, the Land Act of 1862 reserved 4 million hectares of land for selection. In many cases the wealthy squatters, through various means, were able to buy back much of their land, often selecting the most productive allotments.

Many of the blocks that were not good quality agricultural land or did not have characteristics essential for viable farming, such as creeks and rivers, were rejected by the squatters and were bought by small farmers known as **selectors**.

selector a farmer, often with few resources, who bought a small parcel of land following the land reforms in Australia in the 1860s

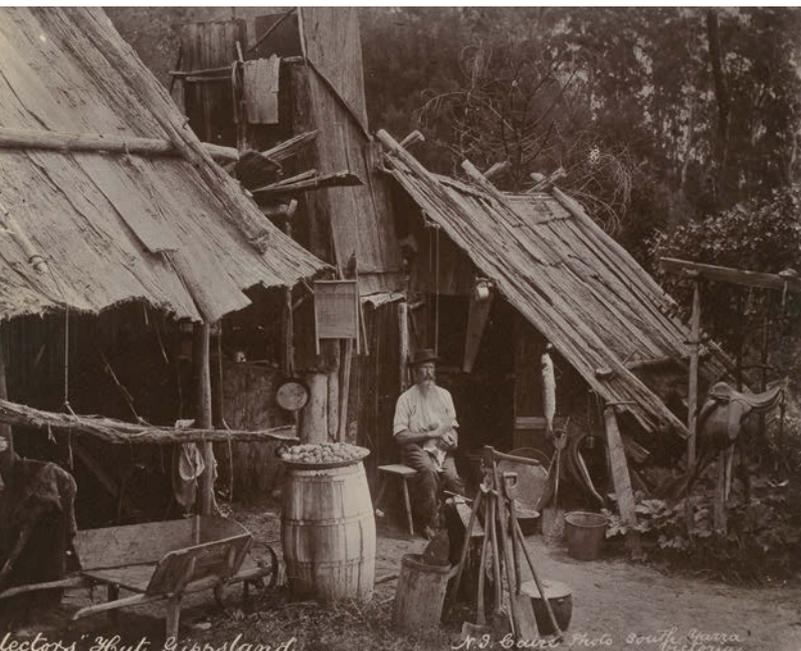
The selectors who purchased these land parcels brought their families to live and work on the farms, and for a great number of these families extreme hardship ensued. Many of these blocks were too small to sustain a family, let alone produce a surplus, and a great number of them had no access to a reliable water source. Drought and flood caused heartbreak for many, and attempts to get the land to produce enough to sustain a family often had adverse environmental consequences.

Large numbers of these farms were doomed to failure and over time many were deserted by the farmers, who just walked off the land. The land parcels were then often incorporated back into larger land holdings.

It was during this period that the agricultural landscape of Australia started to change dramatically. Close to the major settlements of Melbourne and Sydney, which had been settled for a number of years, smaller agricultural holdings were well established – land had been cleared and fenced and roads had been built. Large parts of the interior, however, had not been substantially changed. The squatters had had little need to clear the land of vegetation and fence it. The boundaries of their land holdings were creeks and rivers or other prominent landscape features.

The various Land Acts of the 1860s brought about a significant change in land use to areas that had previously been open **pastoral land**. The Land Acts generally required the selectors to clear and fence their land, and this and other provisions in the Acts were beginning to change the characteristics of land use in Australia.

pastoral land land used for the grazing of cattle or sheep



Source 4.8 A selector's hut in Gippsland, Victoria, in the 1880s (Nicholas Caire, *Selector's Hut, Gippsland* c.1886, National Gallery of Australia, Canberra, purchased 1983)

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.5

- 1 List the ways in which the Land Acts of the 1860s were a failure.
- 2 Describe how the Land Acts of the 1860s promoted change in the landscape of Australia's inland.
- 3 One of the underlying beliefs driving agricultural settlement in Australia in the first 150 years was a belief in the ideal of the 'yeoman farmer'. The yeoman farmer was a European small farmer who, with intensive labour, could work a small plot of land and make it productive. Many people came to Australia from Europe with the belief that they could make a similar living from the land here. In what ways did this belief not quite fit the reality of Australian conditions and circumstances?

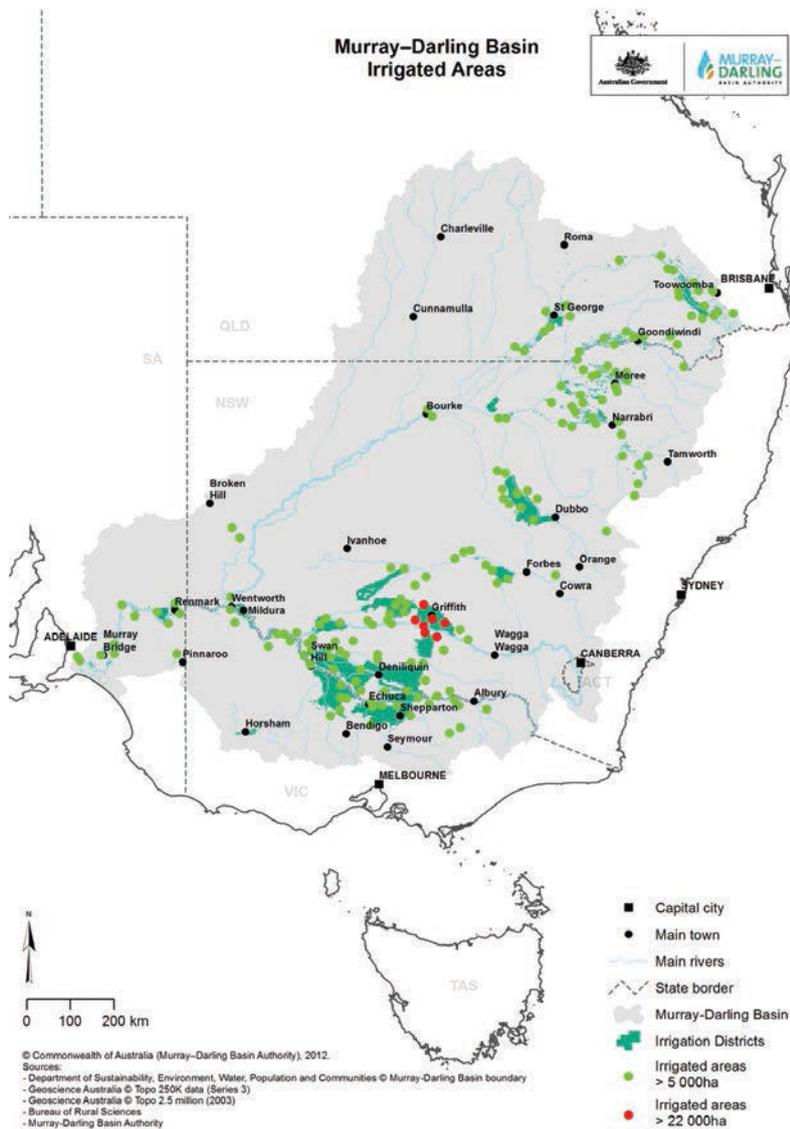


Consolidation of agricultural settlement, 1900–70

By the first decades of the twentieth century virtually the whole of the Australian continent had been opened

up to agriculture and agriculture was a major employer. In 1910 agricultural industries employed about 26% of the Australian workforce.

The only areas which didn't have an agricultural presence were the deserts in central Australia.



Source 4.9 Irrigation districts along the Murray and Darling rivers and their tributaries

dryland agriculture
farming that depends only
on natural rainfall and soil
moisture to water crops

Agricultural activity was widespread and varied. While the **dryland** production of wool and wheat were the mainstays of the Australian agricultural industry, irrigation schemes had also been established, mostly along the

Murray River and its tributaries, to support more intensive agricultural practices such as fruit growing and dairying.

A pastoral industry based on cattle grazing had been established across Australia's northern regions, from the Kimberley Ranges in Western Australia to the Gulf of Carpentaria in Queensland.

Sugar cane and bananas were being harvested along Queensland's tropical coast. Tasmania was producing quality apples, and a dairy industry was established in the high-rainfall zones along Australia's south-east and southern coasts.

Systematic agricultural settlement in Australia was further developed in the first half of the twentieth century through the establishment of 'soldier settlement schemes' to repatriate men returning from World Wars I and II.

Australian governments, faced with having to provide for tens of thousands of men returning from

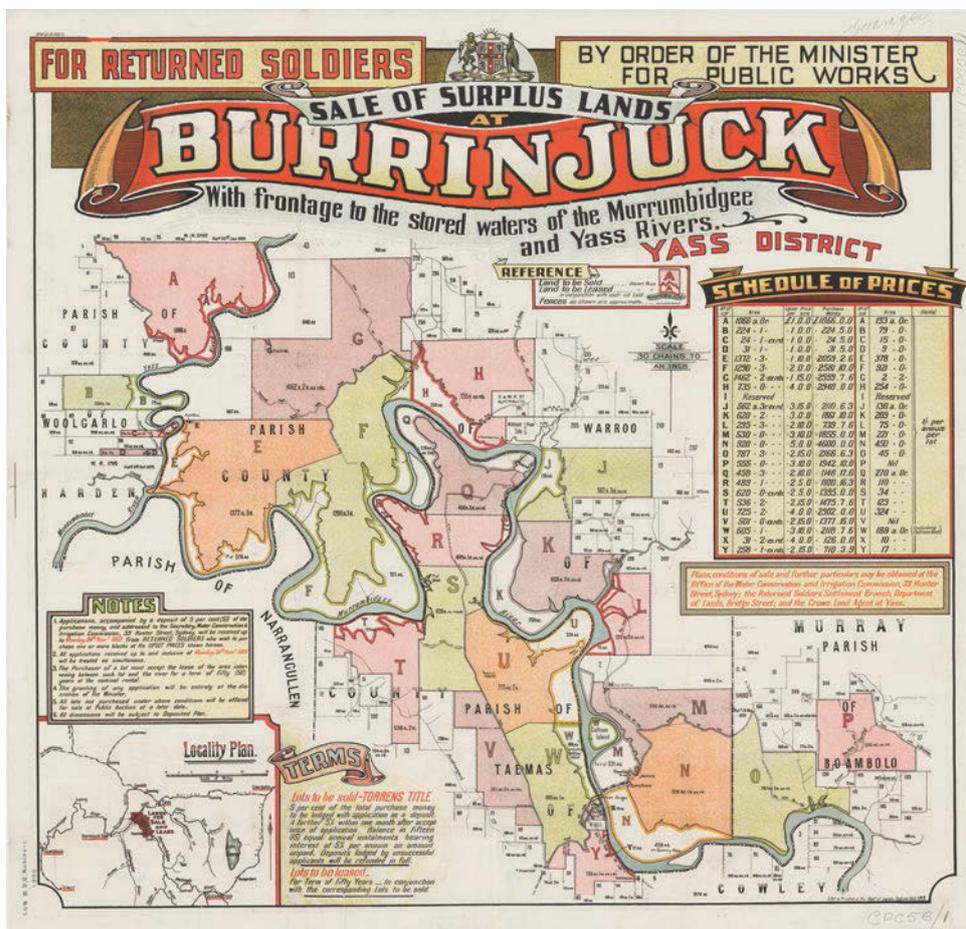
war, developed various land settlement schemes to place these men and their families on farming allotments. These schemes served a number of purposes:

- They rewarded men for their war service.
- They solved the problem of finding employment for these men.
- They were seen as a means of boosting agricultural production through intensive farming practices.

Like the Land Acts of the 1860s, the soldier settlement schemes broke up the bigger landholdings and opened up various tracts of Crown land for settlement. State governments also spent substantial amounts of money buying land that was already privately owned.

The following table shows the amount of land acquired by each of the state governments for their soldier settlement schemes, how much was allotted and how much the acquisition of private land cost.

Like many of the government rural settlement schemes that had come before it, the soldier settlement scheme set up in 1918 following World War I was also generally regarded as unsuccessful, and many of these soldier settlers had left the land within 20 years. In Victoria, 60% of the settlers had left their blocks by 1939.



Source 4.10 Brochure advertising the sale of land near Yass, New South Wales, to returned soldiers

Soldier settlement – areas acquired and allotted 1924							
Particulars	NSW	Vic	QLD	SA	WA	Tas	Total
Private land acquired in acres	1 843 869	1 744 111	41 101	2 106 937	253 478	268 209	6 257 705
Crown land set aside for settlement	7 166 991	528 239	699 723	693 140	8 841 233	61 373	17 990 699
Number of farms allotted	8 819	8 640	2 000	3 249	1 095	1 935	25 738
Total number of acres eventually allotted	8 134 009	2 290 489	705 565	2 779 078	9 094 711	271 537	23 275 380
Price paid by government for land acquired (£)	8 060 002	13 214 902	270 480	4 302 942	607 215	2010 255	28 465 766

Source: Australian Bureau of Statistics, *Year Book Australia 1925*

There were a number of reasons for the failure of these farms:

- Many of the soldiers were inexperienced as farmers.
- The soldiers did not have enough money or resources to develop their farms.
- Many of the blocks were too small to generate sufficient income and a number of them were situated in areas that were not suited to intensive agriculture.
- The prices farmers were getting for their produce fell.

The soldier settlement schemes which followed World War II, in 1945, were generally regarded as more successful. By the middle of the century the conditions required for successful agricultural enterprises in Australia were better understood, so soldiers were allocated blocks of land of an appropriate size, and the type of agriculture that took place on them was more in accordance with what the land could sustain.

By the last decades of the twentieth century the large pastoral estates of the nineteenth-century squatters throughout southern Australia had largely been broken up. The modern equivalents of these enormous pastoral stations are now found across the arid and semi-arid

regions of Australia, where cattle and sheep grazing over large areas is the only viable form of agricultural production.

The unproductive blocks of land that had brought such hardship to settlers following the Land Acts of the 1860s and the soldier settlement schemes of the early twentieth century were gradually bought and incorporated into larger, more productive farms or incorporated into nature reserves.



Source 4.11 The 35 000-hectare Langidoo Station – a sheep grazing property near Broken Hill in western New South Wales

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.6

- 1 Discuss the extent to which agricultural settlement occupied the Australian landmass by the beginning of the twentieth century.
- 2 Explain why the soldier settlement schemes following World War I were regarded as a failure and the ways in which they repeated the mistakes of the earlier Land Acts.

The limits of agricultural production in Australia

One of the major factors influencing the history of agricultural settlement in Australia for over 150 years after 1788 was a lack of understanding of the climatic and geological limitations on agricultural production. Agricultural knowledge and practices imported from Europe and other agricultural regions of the world did not suit Australia's conditions, and agricultural adaptations to Australian conditions were often learned through harsh trial and error. The social impacts of some of these ill-suited beliefs and practices were disastrous for farming families, and they have also caused long-term damage to Australia's environment, damage that will affect future food production.

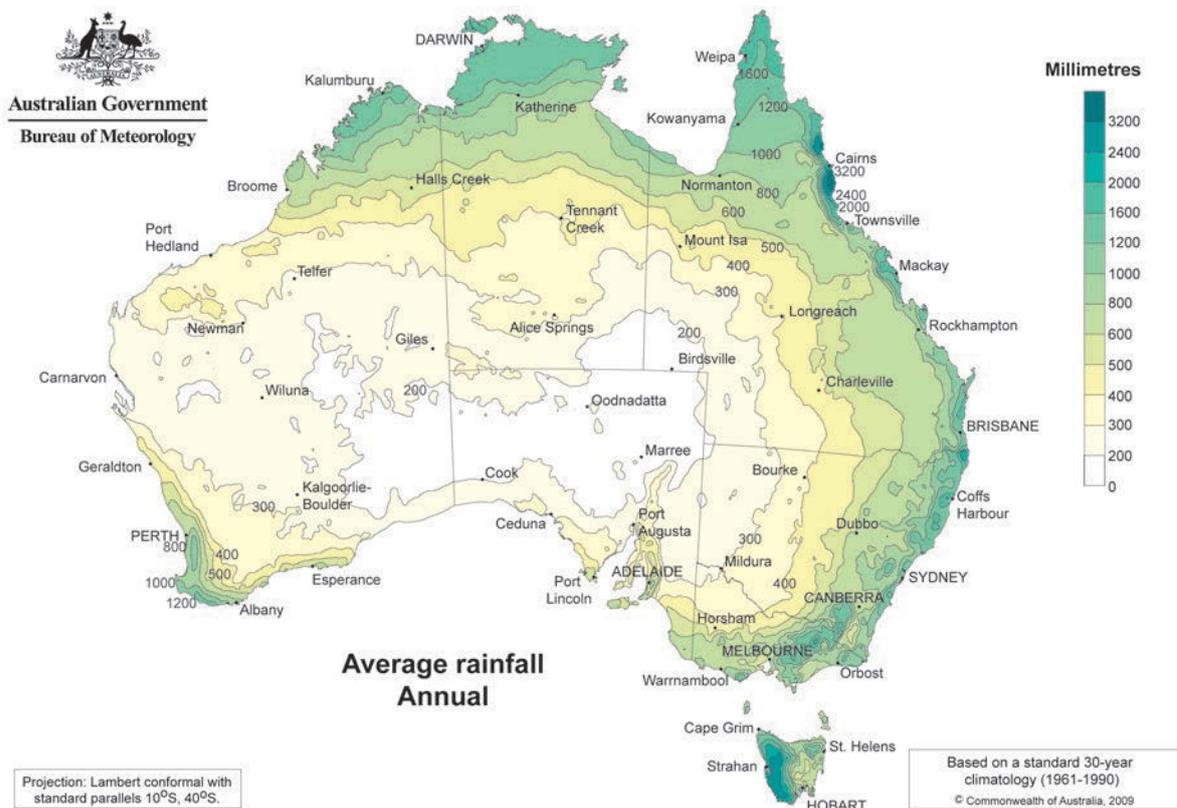
Australia's unique climate

Rainfall, or the lack of it, is the most important single factor determining agricultural land use in Australia, but knowledge about how Australian rainfall patterns impact on agricultural land use was accumulated only over time.

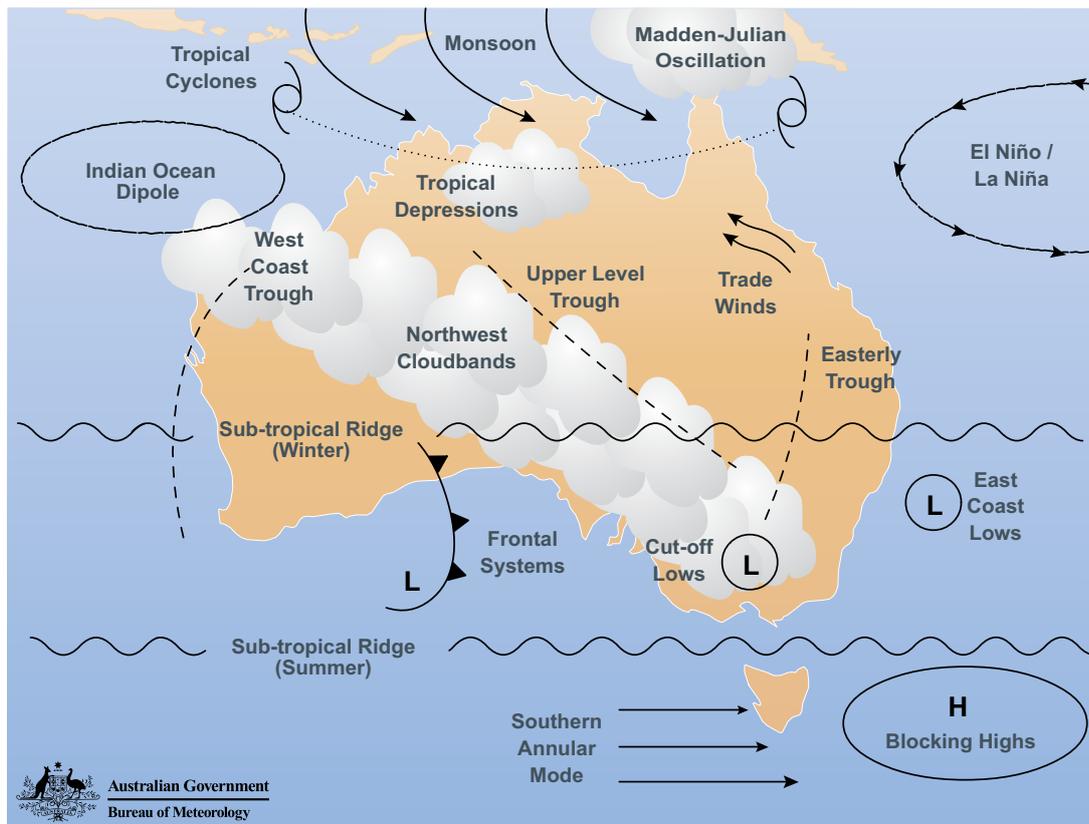
The Australian continent experiences a high degree of climatic seasonality: it fluctuates between periods of rain and periods of dry conditions.

Vast areas of the continent receive limited rainfall, and even across large areas that do receive good rainfall, high rates of evaporation cause the ground to quickly dry out, depriving plants of moisture.

Much of Australia's interior receives little rainfall in either winter or summer, and experiences high



Source 4.12 Map of average annual rainfall for Australia



Source 4.13 Diagram of the climate influences on the Australian continent

evaporation rates. Many of these areas are only suitable for extensive livestock grazing.

Even the northern half of Australia, which receives higher rainfall rates than the arid interior, receives this rain in the summer months when evaporation is at its greatest, limiting the type of agriculture that can be practised there. In the Kimberley region in northern Western Australia, for example, the number of livestock that the land is capable of sustaining is only one head of cattle for every 25–30 hectares. Agricultural production in these arid and semi-arid areas in the past has at times exceeded the land's capacity, causing serious land degradation. Erosion and destruction of fragile habitats have resulted from overgrazing and poor crop choices. In some areas

government decrees limited the types of agricultural practices that could be used. The Goyder Line in South Australia, for example, was drawn up in 1865 to limit the extent of wheat production in the north of the state.

The southern portion of the continent, through New South Wales, Victoria, Tasmania, South Australia and Western Australia, receives most of its rainfall during the cooler winter months, when evaporation rates are lower. This makes these areas more suitable for a greater variety of agricultural enterprises, as soil moisture is generally sufficient to grow cereal crops even in relatively dry land such as the Mallee area of northern Victoria. This region also includes most of Australia's sheep belt.

RESEARCH 4.3

- 1 Source 4.13 shows the climate influences that affect the Australian continent. Use the links at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks to go to the Australian Bureau of Meteorology website and detail how each of these influences affects the weather.
- 2 Research the historical climate and rainfall data for your area. Starting at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks again, link to the Australian Bureau of Meteorology website.

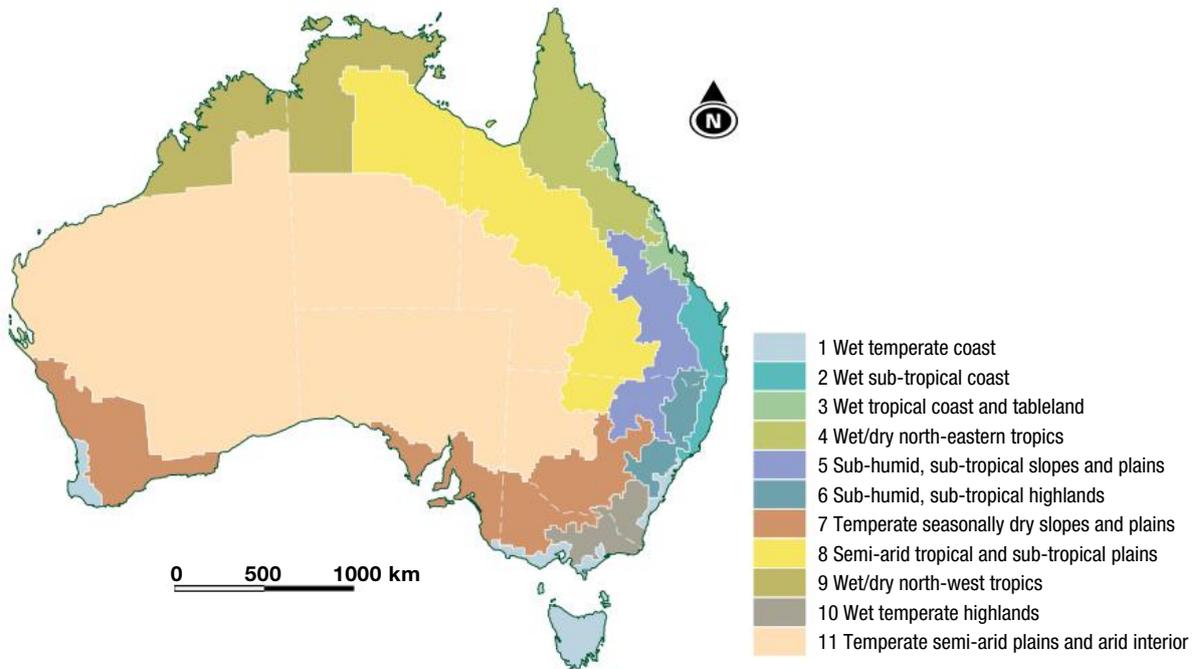
(continued)

Along the left-hand side of the home page is a series of links. Go to Climate and Past Weather. On this page you need to click on the link for weather and climate data. To get information for your area you need to:

- select 'Monthly Rainfall' or 'Monthly Temperature'
 - select a weather station in the area of interest (by typing in the name of your location).
- 3 Describe the climate in your area: hot summer/cold winter; mild summer/mild winter; winter rainfall/dry summer; uniform rainfall all year round.
 - 4 Investigate the Goyder Line. What factors were used to determine it?

Australia's agricultural zones

The CSIRO has identified 11 agricultural regions in Australia, based on soil type, land features, climate and ecology, as shown in Source 4.14.



Source 4.14 The 11 agricultural ecological zones as defined by the CSIRO

4.2 Environmental impacts

Agricultural land use puts pressure on the environment. The results include erosion, salinity, loss of biodiversity and a decline in water quality. The term used to describe the impacts on natural systems that are additional

environmental degradation a change or disturbance to the environment perceived as harmful or undesirable

to those which occur naturally is **environmental degradation**. Erosion, for instance, is a natural process, but agricultural practices which expose the soil to wind and rain, such as cattle grazing, are not – they are a

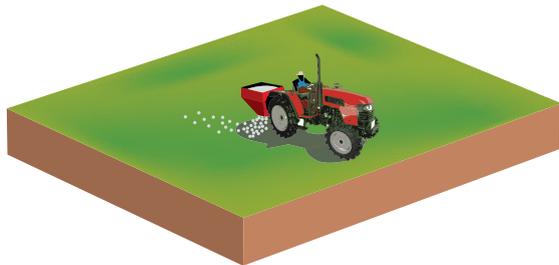
result of human behaviour. Today, much is being done in Australia to try to address some of these issues, but some of the damage that has been created by past agricultural practices is substantial and costly to fix.

About two-thirds of Australia's agricultural land is degraded to some degree, and in places the degradation is expected to continue because of the extent of the deterioration and the continued pressure of land use.

Much land degradation is directly linked to the replacement of native vegetation with introduced

shallow-rooted pastures and cereal crops. Land degradation has also been a result of poor farming practices. The expansion of grain production throughout the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in Australia left the land degraded. As each new wave of settlers

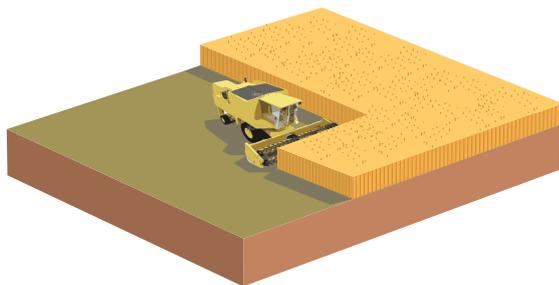
occupied virgin land for wheat cropping, for instance, many of the farmers had little understanding of the need for crop rotation and resting of paddocks, so they would plant the same crop every year, until the soil was exhausted and fertility declined.



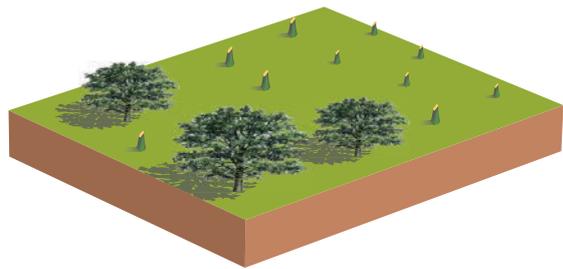
Mechanised farming with heavy use of fertiliser, using finite fossil fuels and generating pollution and CO₂



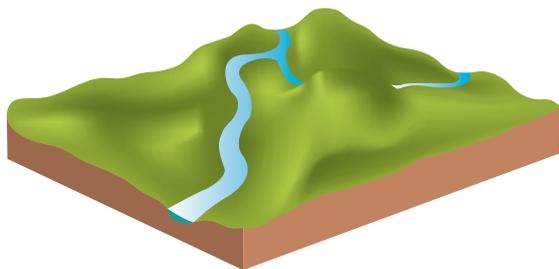
Intensive use of chemicals to control resistant pests



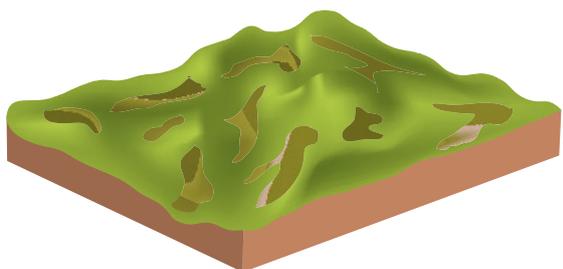
Monocrop cultivation, leading to loss of diversity



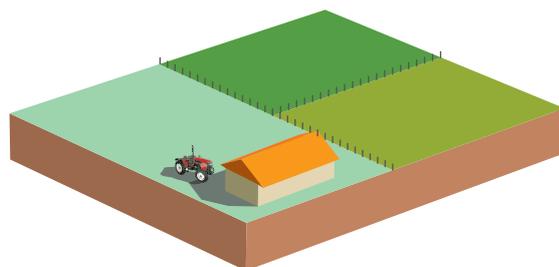
Deforestation, leading to shortages of wood for fuel



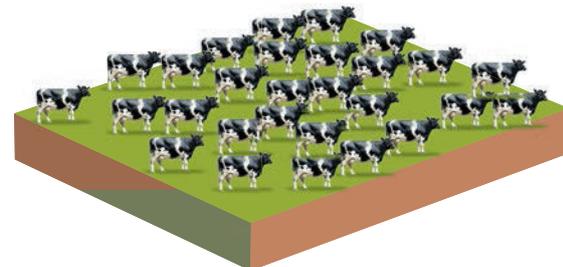
Demands on water resources for irrigation, which can destroy soil by salinisation



Overcropping, overgrazing, leading to soil erosion



Population growth, leading to smaller plots and more intensive farming



Loss of plant and animal genetic diversity caused by large-scale farming

Source 4.15 The environmental costs of modern agriculture



Source 4.16 Severe stream bank erosion along Castle Creek near Euroa, northeast Victoria



Source 4.17 Sydney Harbour Bridge almost obscured by a severe dust storm in September 2009. The storm carried thousands of tonnes of precious topsoil into the atmosphere.

Soil erosion

Soil erosion is the result of wind and water removing soil from one place and depositing it in another.

While soil erosion is a natural process, disturbance of the land by various agricultural practices has increased the rate of erosion. On sloping lands that have been converted to cereal crops, the rate of erosion has increased by a factor of 50 in some instances. Agricultural practices which accelerate the process of soil erosion include land clearing, replacement of native grasses with introduced species, overgrazing and soil disturbance (through soil tillage such as ploughing or harrowing).

There are a number of ways in which erosion occurs. These vary according to the vegetation cover, the soil type and structure, the slope of the land and land disturbances or the activities of burrowing animals (such as rabbits and wombats).

In water erosion, the severity of the rainfall – severe rainfall is a large amount of rain falling in a short space of time – is a major factor in the degree of erosion and the amount of soil that is transported. In wind erosion the velocity of the wind is a major factor. The types of erosion that occur on agricultural land are:

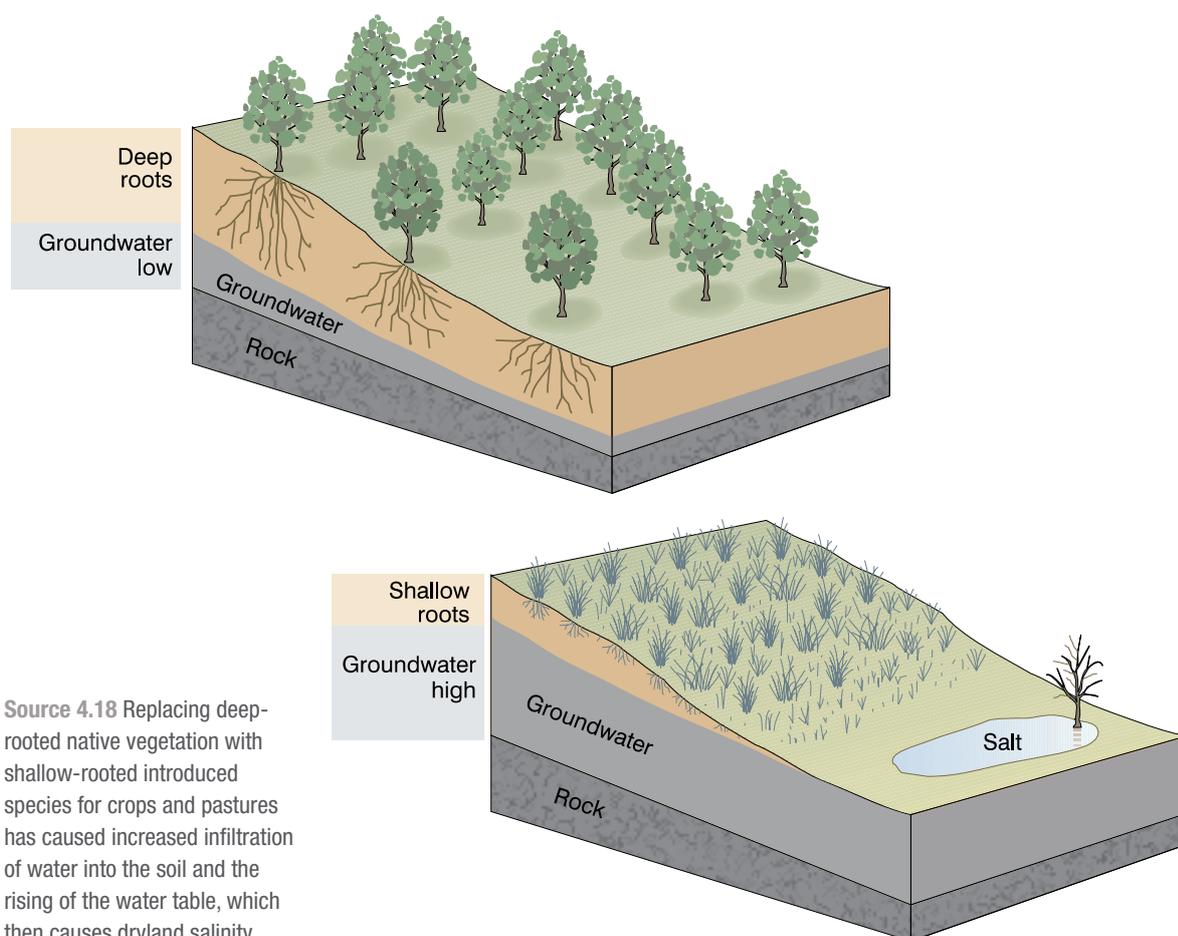
- 1 *sheet erosion*: when the topsoil is removed as a thin layer through the action of water flowing uniformly over an area of bare soil, such as land that has been cultivated for planting crops or has been overgrazed by livestock or pest animals such as rabbits
- 2 *rill erosion*: where little rivulets of running water gather and cut small channels in the soil; also linked to farming practices such as cultivation or overgrazing
- 3 *gully erosion*: when water follows drainage lines and washes away soil, cutting deep channels in the

earth; under natural conditions vegetation moderates the effects of water flow by holding the soil together and protecting the ground from the direct impact of rainfall, but farming practices often remove much of the vegetation that slows down erosion

- 4 *stream bank erosion*: stream banks erode as a natural process, but this process is accelerated by agricultural practices such as vegetation removal and damage caused by livestock going to the water to drink (Source 4.16)
- 5 *wind erosion*: when land is left bare the soil is exposed to the actions of wind; when the wind reaches a particular velocity the process sorts the soil particles, removing the finer material containing the organic matter, clay and silt and leaving the coarser, less fertile material behind. The resulting dust storms can carry soil hundreds of kilometres, as the dust storms that engulfed Sydney in 2009 did, when soil from western New South Wales, an area which had been experiencing drought, was removed by strong westerly winds (Source 4.17).

Soil acidity

Soil acidity is a major problem for Australian agriculture. It is estimated that approximately 50 million hectares of surface soil and 23 million hectares of subsoil are affected in Australia's agricultural zone. In 2001 the estimated annual value of lost agricultural production due to soil acidity was about \$1.6 billion. Soil acidification, like erosion, is a natural process, but it is intensified by agricultural practices such as the use of nitrogen fertilisers and nitrogen-fixing pasture plants (such as clover or lucerne) – these change the chemical composition of the soil, leading to a decline in the ability of the soil to support enough vegetation to



Source 4.18 Replacing deep-rooted native vegetation with shallow-rooted introduced species for crops and pastures has caused increased infiltration of water into the soil and the rising of the water table, which then causes dryland salinity.

prevent soil erosion. These practices also limit crop and pasture growth because they affect the availability of nutrients that plants need, such as calcium, magnesium, boron and molybdenum.

Acidification can also lead to an increase in toxic levels of aluminium, iron or manganese.

Salinity

Salinity is another widespread problem which affects agricultural production in Australia.

Over 2.5 million hectares of agricultural land in Australia is affected by salinity; this is expected to grow to 12 million hectares in the next 50–100 years. This represents about 4.5% of currently cultivated land.

The presence of salt in agricultural land either kills the vegetation or causes a reduction in plant productivity.

Salt is a naturally occurring substance in Australian landscapes. Stores of salt are found in rocks and the soil, and much is locked away in underground water storages. These stores have been built up over millions of years from ocean salt spray, the weathering of rocks and the deposition of ancient ocean sediments when

areas of the Australian landmass were below the sea. Low rainfall and the relative flatness of the Australian landscape have meant that this salt does not get flushed away through the river systems – it has accumulated in the **water table**.

water table the level below which the ground is saturated with water

Australia's deep-rooted native plants, as they have adapted to the harsh Australian environment, have kept these underground salt stores in balance.

They have adapted so that they use all available water above the ground, intercepting much of the water before it enters the water table. This has kept the water table from increasing in size and rising – it needs to stay below the level of the root zone, because it can cause damage to the plants if it reaches the root zone.

With European settlement the water balance has changed. Land clearing for agriculture has replaced woodland and forest with shallow-rooted plants such as cereal crops and pasture grasses.

This has meant that less above-ground water is being taken up by plants, and so more water is getting through to the water table, raising it and bringing salt to the surface. Where this occurs in non-irrigated land it is known as dryland salinity.



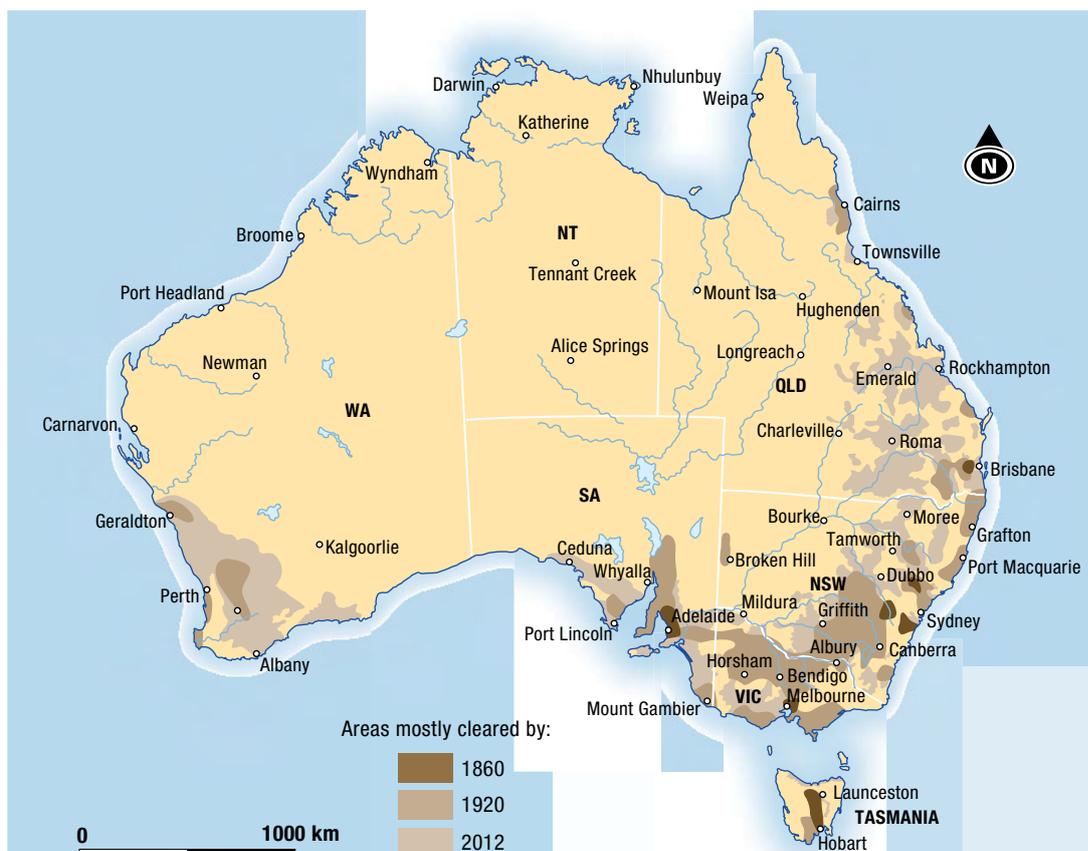
Source 4.19 Salinity in the wheat belt of Western Australia is affecting grain production; this salinity is expected to increase.

In irrigated areas, where excessive water usage is bringing the water table to the surface, it is known as irrigated salinity.

The signs of a salt-affected landscape are sick or dying trees, a decline in vegetation, **colonisation** by salt-tolerant weeds, salty bare patches on the earth and saline pools in creek beds. Water quality is affected as the salt is washed into rivers and streams; in extreme cases the water is made too salty for animals and humans to drink.

The loss of biodiversity in Australia is another factor affecting the productivity of agricultural land. Australian farmers have over generations contributed to biodiversity loss through soil disturbance, land clearing, the fragmentation of landscapes, monoculture farming practices, pesticide and herbicide use, the introduction of feral animals such as pigs and goats, the introduction of weed species and the depletion of water resources such as wetlands. Australian farmers have come to realise the importance of having a diversity of organisms (both plant and animal) to support agricultural ecosystems.

colonisation the process by which a species enters a new area and dominates it



Source 4.20 Areas of vegetation cleared in Australia since 1788. Land clearing has led to loss of biodiversity and increased potential for erosion. The increase in the workforce following the gold rushes of the 1850s and mechanisation in the twentieth century substantially increased land clearing rates.

Healthy natural ecosystems have evolved to do what they do best:

- process and recycle nutrients and wastes
- provide insect pollinators for plants
- provide natural predators for pest species
- balance the water cycle and provide clean water
- stabilise the land and soil
- provide shelter and food for a multitude of organisms.

synthetic pesticide a pesticide in which the active ingredient has been manufactured (as opposed to a natural pesticide, in which the active ingredient occurs naturally)

Without a healthy supporting ecosystem, agricultural systems become vulnerable to pressures we have discussed, such as soil erosion, salinity, and pest and disease invasion.

In the past a lack of understanding about how healthy natural ecosystems help keep environmental systems in

balance led to the increasing reliance by farmers on **synthetic pesticides** for pest control.

The unfortunate side-effect of this reliance is what is known as the pesticide treadmill. This is where insect pests develop immunity to the pesticide and the farmer is forced to use greater concentrations or more powerful variants of it, and this continues in a cycle as the pests develop greater tolerance to the new regime.

It is a cycle which increases the likelihood of soil and water contamination over time.

impacts is a decline in the quality of water used for human and livestock consumption. Intensive land use along the Murray River is creating significant issues for the people of Adelaide in South Australia, who rely on water from the Murray River for personal consumption.

The increasing salinity of the river system is not only making the water unpleasant for drinking but it also speeds up the deterioration of infrastructure such as water pipes.

Other things that lead to a decline in water quality include increased sediment flows into rivers and streams as a result of erosion, and fertilisers, herbicides and pesticides flowing into waterways from agricultural runoff.

Two of the main fertilisers that are entering Australian waterways as runoff are nitrogen and phosphorus. Australia's ancient soils are naturally deficient in these two elements and the discovery in the early twentieth century that the addition of phosphorus and nitrogen to pastures and crops could significantly boost agricultural production was seen as a revolution in farming in Australia.

It was later discovered, however, that the entry of these fertilisers into Australian waterways through runoff from farms was having major environmental consequences.

One of these is algal blooms (growth) in rivers and lakes. Algae are naturally occurring microscopic organisms, and in low numbers they are important



Source 4.21 A farmer spraying herbicide in a paddock of the previous year's wheat stubble to suppress weed growth prior to reseedling

Water quality decline

The decline in water quality as a consequence of agricultural practices and environmental degradation is a major issue in Australia. One of its most immediate



Source 4.22 A farmer paddling through an outbreak of blue-green algae on the Darling River, New South Wales

contributors to the ecology of water bodies. Increased nutrient loads from farm fertilisers, however, are causing these organisms to multiply to levels, in some species, at which they can produce toxins that are fatal to humans and animals. Unchecked algae growth also reduces oxygen levels, causing widespread fish deaths.

turbidity cloudiness in the water due to the presence of extremely fine soil particles that are held in suspension

Other consequences include increased **turbidity** and unsightly scums which affect the smell and taste of the water.

Increased research into land and plant science is now helping farmers deal with excess fertiliser loads. Farmers now use a balance sheet approach to fertiliser applications, and apply them much more effectively. They have a greater understanding of nutrient inputs (fertilisers, soil conditioners and legume nitrogen fixation) and nutrient exports (such as how much fertiliser is harvested with the crops, and losses to groundwater, rivers and atmosphere), so they can develop an appropriate management plan. This is much more environmentally effective, ensures optimal productivity and saves the farmer money.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.7

- 1 Describe how the widespread removal of native vegetation for agricultural production has contributed to dryland salinity.
- 2 Explain how increased acidity of the soil inhibits agricultural production.
- 3 List the positive and negative impacts of the use of fertilisers in Australian agriculture.
- 4 Summarise the pesticide treadmill.
- 5 Discuss how the 'balance sheet' for fertiliser application works and the benefits of this strategy to the farmer and the environment.
- 6 In the left-hand column of the table below are a number of activities that farmers could use to address environmental issues on their farms. Match these with the reasons why these activities might be carried out.

Strategy	Reason
Plant native trees in paddocks.	Encourage biodiversity.
Build fences around areas of salinity and along creeks and rivers.	Promote a natural filter to intercept sediment and fertiliser run-off.
Use a balance sheet approach to fertiliser application.	Reduce the level of the water table.
Restore wetland areas.	Prevent livestock trampling the land, thus reducing erosion and stabilising the soil.
Match animal numbers to the availability of feed.	Reduce the amount of pesticide needed.
Set aside areas of land for nature reserves.	Minimise the amount of fertiliser entering waterways.
Encourage natural insect predators.	Avoid overworking the land.

- 7 Explain how the practices of the selectors and the soldier settlers, as they tried to make unproductive land sustain a living, had a greater negative impact on the environment than the vast sheep and cattle runs of the squatters.
- 8 Suggest how issues of environmental degradation might affect future agricultural production in Australia.

Agricultural innovation and agricultural productivity in Australia

Australian farmers have been very successful at finding innovative solutions to problems and maximising agricultural productivity. The early development of agriculture was derivative – the crops, livestock, technology and concepts of agricultural production were all imported from overseas – so a lengthy process of adaptation and innovation had to take place before successful systems of Australian agriculture evolved.

Australia has a rich history of agricultural inventions and technological adaptations to suit Australian conditions and increase productivity.

Some of the more notable ones came around the end of the nineteenth century:

- The stump jump plough allowed a farmer to plough areas from which stumps and roots had not been fully cleared. This invention was especially important in the opening up of the mallee country in Victoria and South Australia.
- The combine harvester stripped, threshed and winnowed wheat. This invention, which was pioneered by H. V. McKay, an agricultural engineer from Victoria, allowed farmers to harvest wheat crops on a large scale.
- The scrub roller, which is dragged through the bush to flatten the vegetation, opened up vast tracts of light bush country.

- Large-scale irrigation, developed by the Chaffey brothers around Mildura, allowed intensive agriculture to be expanded into Australia's dryland agricultural zone.
- William Farrer, in the late 1800s, bred a number of new wheat varieties, the most notable of which was an early-maturing wheat strain named 'Federation', which was drought and disease resistant.

The Green Revolution

However, it was during the twentieth century that the most widespread impacts of agricultural innovation and adaptation occurred. Across the world this period became known as the **Green Revolution**, and it was driven by advances in agricultural science and technology leading to a greater understanding of efficient land, soil and water management practices.

Coupled with this were advances in the understanding of plant and animal genetics and dramatic improvements in the science of **animal husbandry**.

The technological advances in agricultural science were driving dramatic productivity improvements, and these were being supported by other factors, such as:

- mechanisation and the development of specialised agricultural machinery
- technological advances such as the use of computers and the internet

Green Revolution a period beginning in the 1940s when new agricultural techniques brought great increases in production and greatly decreased the incidence of hunger worldwide

animal husbandry the agricultural practice of breeding and raising livestock



Source 4.23 A crude scrub roller used by farmers to clear light scrub in Victoria's Mallee region in 1927



Source 4.24 Chickens on a commercial poultry farm

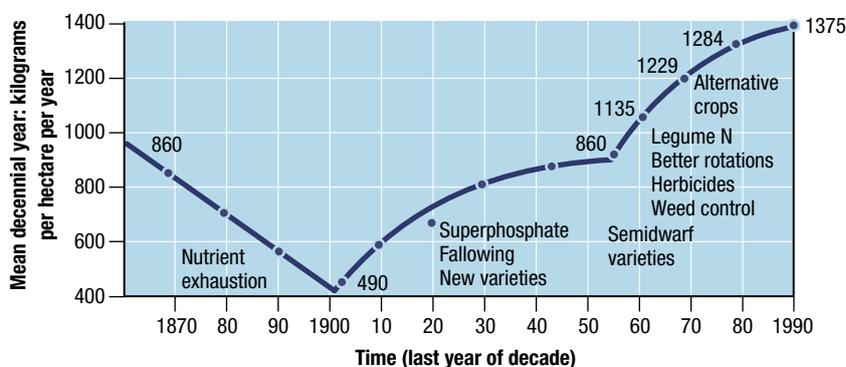
factory farm a farm where many animals are raised together in a small space

- the development of pesticides, herbicides and fertilisers and their increased use
- the development of specialised agricultural production enterprises such as **factory farms** for production of livestock such as pork and poultry
- the development of intensive agriculture infrastructure such as greenhouses for fruit and vegetables
- the involvement of big business in agricultural enterprises
- the development of multinational companies that support agricultural production, such as the global agricultural giant Monsanto, which has invested hundreds of millions of dollars into seed and agricultural chemical research and development
- government investment in agricultural infrastructure such as irrigation schemes and railway and other transport networks
- government policies that favour maximising production, such as diesel fuel rebates for farmers, reducing the cost of fuel.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.8

- 1 Suggest how the invention of the scrub roller might have had a negative environmental impact.
- 2 Examine how mechanisation increased agricultural production.
- 3 Describe the difference between scientific agriculture and earlier agricultural practices.

Wheat production in Australia



Source 4.25 Trends in wheat yields in Australia since the 1870s, showing declining production towards the end of the nineteenth century and substantial increases throughout the twentieth century

One of the outcomes of the Green Revolution was the development of higher-yielding strains of cereal crops; these have allowed increased food production to meet the demands of an increased population. One measure of these improvements is wheat crop yields.

By the end of the nineteenth century inefficient agricultural practices such as continuous planting of crops on the same land were having a clear effect on crop yields in Australia: they were declining significantly because of a reduction in soil fertility.

By the end of the twentieth century crop yields had almost quadrupled. In the case of wheat, the introduction of practices which increased nitrogen levels in the soil,

and the use of superphosphate from the 1950s onwards, resulted in substantial improvements in crop yields through improved soil fertility. A better understanding of land management resulted in the widespread adoption of the ley (or rotational) farming system in dryland agricultural areas. This system involves resting and rejuvenating land through cycles of crop planting alternated with turning the land out to pasture.

When the land is under pasture, farmers can graze sheep or cattle and maintain the profitability of the land. This system replaced earlier farming techniques where crops were planted year after year until the soil was exhausted. The rotation of crops with pasture grasses

or legumes helps improve soil stability, increases the amount of organic matter in the soil, fixes nitrogen into the soil and improves weed and pest control.

Continued research throughout the twentieth century further assisted wheat production with the breeding of higher-yielding disease-resistant wheat strains, the development of chemicals to control pests and weeds, and greater understanding of the role of **trace elements** in plant growth. The wheat industry was also improved by increased mechanisation and technological progress.

trace element a chemical element required in only minute amounts by living organisms for normal growth

The introduction of tractors in the 1940s greatly assisted production, as did the development of the self-propelled combine harvester, which didn't require horses to pull it. These harvesters became widespread across the Australian wheat belt after the 1950s.

Just as society moved into the digital age, so did farming. Farmers now use GPS to map out the planting of crops, so they can minimise soil compaction by tractors travelling over the same ground again and again, and there are sophisticated computer software programs that allow them to measure crop yields based on nutrient balances in the soil.



Source 4.26 A farmer using a GPS in his tractor to track the cultivation pattern in his paddock. This system allows the farmer to more accurately plant seed and administer fertiliser, and minimise soil compaction.



Source 4.27 A farmer ploughing a field with oxen in northern Vietnam



Source 4.28 A farmer using a minimal-till cultivation system where the stubble from the previous year's crops is left in the soil

Benefits of conventional tillage	Benefits of no-till method
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Breaks up the soil, allowing water and oxygen to penetrate. • Machinery required is not as specialised as for the no-till method and is less expensive. • Buries organic matter such as dead plants and animal manure to fertilise the soil. • Controls weeds by burying them and interrupting the growing cycle rather than relying on heavy use of herbicides. • Ploughs along the contours of the land, reducing erosion. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Protects the soil from erosion by maintaining the soil structure. • Maintains the soil structure and so protects the habitat of beneficial soil organisms such as earthworms. • Enhances water infiltration of the soil as water follows the pathways opened up by worms and decayed plant roots. • Retains crop and pasture residues from the previous year/s on the soil surface, which protects the soil from erosion. • Reduces the release of CO₂ into the atmosphere because the organic matter in the soil is left undisturbed. • Requires less use of heavy machinery, which reduces energy costs. • Reduces time needed to prepare the soil.
Disadvantages of conventional tillage	Disadvantages of no-till method
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increases erosion by exposing the top soil. • Interferes with the soil structure. • Requires high labour and energy costs to prepare the soil. • Leaches fertilisers into rivers and streams. • Breaks up the soil and increases the release of organic matter as CO₂ into the atmosphere. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increases the use of herbicides to control weeds. • Requires specialised machinery that is relatively more expensive than conventional tillage equipment.

4.3 The changing nature of Australian agriculture: 1970 until the present

Since the beginning of European settlement, agriculture has dramatically changed both the Australian landscape and people's relationship with the land. The first 180 years of agriculture in Australia was a period of expansion and consolidation, and patterns of land use became firmly established.

By the 1970s the general pattern of Australian agriculture was predominantly the family-owned farm, which was passed on from generation to generation. The family lived and worked on the farm, and bringing up a family 'on the land' was seen as a healthy and attractive lifestyle – money was good, the work was

hard but rewarding, and children could be brought up in a healthy environment. Government support for agriculture during most of the twentieth century was strong, and state and federal governments provided incentives for farmers to produce more. They spent vast amounts on agricultural infrastructure such as irrigation schemes and set up trade barriers to protect Australian farmers from offshore competition. The world demand for Australian farm produce was high and farmers got good prices for staple commodities such as wool and wheat. Within Australia food-processing factories such as Rosella, SPC and Arnott's Biscuits were processing



Source 4.29 Australian food-processing companies such as Rosella process the products of Australian farmers.



Source 4.30 Along a 1-kilometre stretch of suburban road in Coburg, in Melbourne's north, which was developed in the 1920s and 1930s, there were about a dozen of these small shops that serviced the local community with fresh produce such as milk, eggs, fruit and vegetables sourced from the local region. Now these shops have been converted to housing.

Australian farm produce into a variety of goods – tinned soup, fruit and biscuits – and Australian consumers were really only offered ‘Australian made’.

Throughout Australia the fresh produce and processed foods of Australian farmers were sold through small businesses – grocery stores, butchers, greengrocers, dairies and corner shops – rather than through the big supermarket chains that we have today. This was a period when there was a much closer relationship along the food and fibre chain between the farmer, the storekeeper and the consumer.

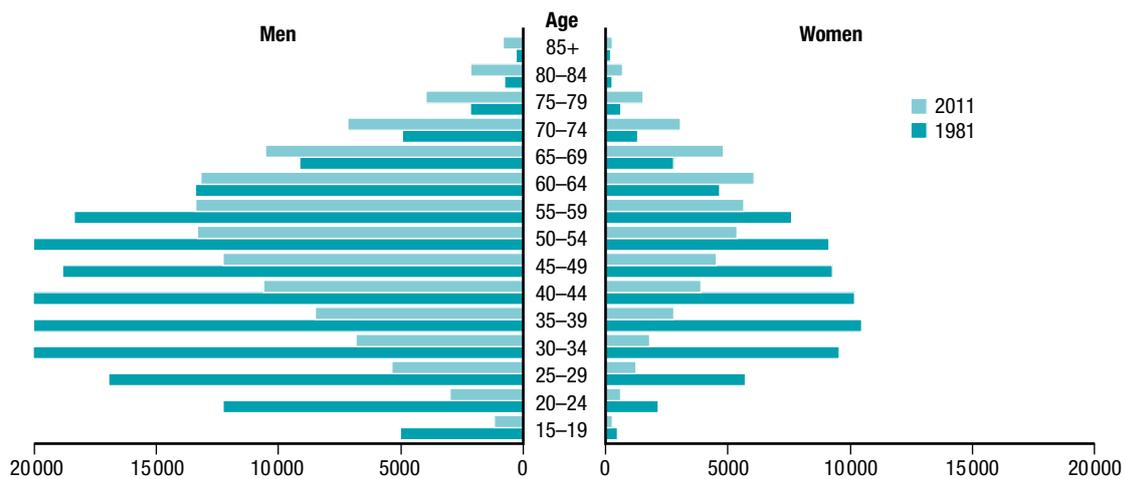
From the 1970s onwards the nature of agriculture in Australia changed significantly and farming became more complex. Changes in national and global economies put pressure on farmers to become more competitive. Today, farmers compete more with overseas producers than they ever did before. The costs of running a farm have soared. Fuel and other farm input costs – such as fertilisers and labour – have risen and competition for limited resources such as water have forced the introduction of such things as water trading, which means farmers have to buy and sell water for their farms.

In the last 40 years Australian cities have expanded dramatically, and increasing numbers of people seeking a ‘tree change’ are moving away from cities into the country, encroaching on farming land and forcing significant change on traditional farming communities within 100 kilometres of the major urban centres, such as by driving up land prices. Other pressures being felt by farmers come from competing land users such as the mining and coal seam gas industries, which are threatening the viability of a number of farming communities – farming land is either being used for the extraction of minerals or is under threat from pollution, such as groundwater contamination associated with coal seam gas production.

The changing nature of agriculture in Australia is changing the business structure of farming. While the family-owned farm is still the dominant form of ownership in Australia, particularly in industries such as dairying and horticulture, the structure of farms is changing. Since the 1970s the declining profitability of farming has meant that the traditional pattern of farm ownership is no longer economically sustainable. Studies

have shown that in some regions of Australia only 28% of farms are of a sufficient size and profitability to support the families owning them. Over the last four decades Australian farmers have faced a decline in the average terms of trade of about 2% per year. What this means is that farmers have had to increase their output by 2% each year just to be able to buy the same bundle of goods and services from year to year. In this environment small farmers are finding it hard to compete and are either

leaving the land or being forced to supplement their farm income through employment off the farm. Compared with 1980, there are now 100 000 fewer farmers and the average age of farmers is increasing; many children of farmers decide not to take over the farm when they reach adulthood, so their parents stay working the farm. The sons and daughters of farmers are increasingly leaving the land to find employment in the larger urban centres and the capital cities.



Source 4.31 The average age of farmers is increasing as their children decide not to take up life on the land, meaning that farmers are forced to stay working their properties.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.9

- 1 Explain how buying 'Australian made' produce assists Australian farmers.
- 2 Suggest why Australian governments might have put **tariffs** on food imported from other countries to make them more expensive.
- 3 Discuss how 'tree-changers' – people moving out of urban areas to live on small rural properties – have affected farming in the areas they are moving into.

tariff a government tax on imports and exports

The changing nature of rural communities

Rural society is changing. Where country towns once were thriving communities with strong populations and profitable businesses that served the farming sector, many are becoming more like ghost towns, as businesses have closed down and people have left to find work in urban centres.

One such measure of the changing **demographic** profile of these towns is the death of sporting clubs such as Australian rules, rugby league, cricket

demographic related to the structure of a population

and netball – there are just not enough young people to field teams.

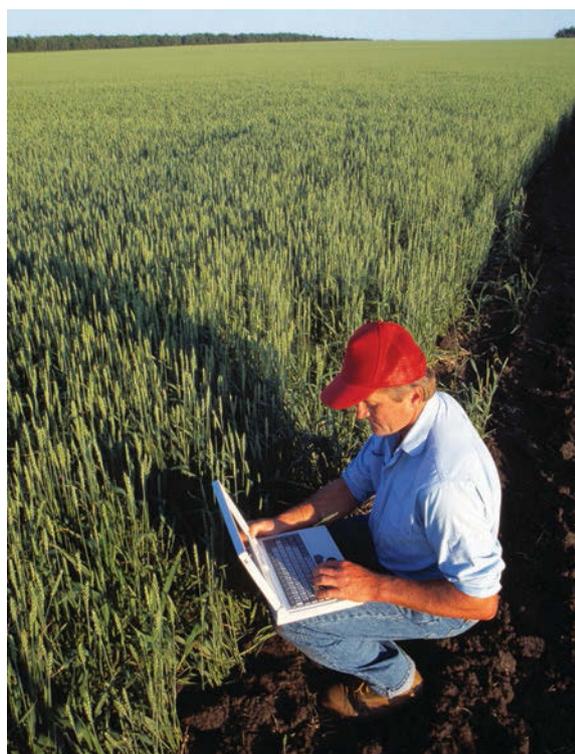
Since the 1970s farming operations have become increasingly less geographically and demographically defined as a block of land on which the family has a home and everybody in the family is involved in the running of the farm.

Farmers have become more sophisticated in their approach to the business of farming. The image of the lone farmer working the field on his tractor or rounding up the sheep with a couple of sheep dogs and then trucking the produce off to the local railway siding to be sold is now outdated.

Today's farmer is more likely to be studying the internet for weather reports, programming the GPS in the tractor to ensure optimum crop planting or negotiating the purchase of seeds for the following year's crop on a mobile phone.



Source 4.32 The rural town of Terowie in South Australia's mid-north has suffered a dwindling population since rural industries and services went into decline.



Source 4.33 A farmer using a laptop to input data relating to his wheat crop

Agriculture in Australia today

Modern farming requires an understanding of the whole business of agriculture, from balancing the nutrient levels

in the soil to buying and selling water and monitoring international market prices for agricultural commodities.

One way for farmers to remain profitable is to set up smaller-scale corporate enterprises where farming families join together as a cooperative.

These enterprises use **economies of scale** to deal with rising costs.

The benefits of a cooperative are:

- It can share resources such as farming machinery.
- It is more able to buy resources such as seed and fertiliser in bulk quantities and thus negotiate for a reduction in the price.
- It is better able to negotiate with buyers for optimum return on their products.
- It can more easily afford the services of agricultural consultants who can provide the members of the cooperative with specialist advice.

Another feature of modern agriculture in Australia is the increasing number of large corporations and multinational companies that are investing in agricultural and food-processing enterprises.

Agricultural companies are not new to Australian agriculture; they have been involved since the early period of European settlement.

The Australian Agricultural Company, which today is a major beef producer in northern Australia, was first formed in 1824 by an Act of the British Parliament in order to purchase 1 million acres of land in New South Wales for agricultural production. Its investors included members of the British Parliament and prominent English bankers.

Modern agricultural corporations include large family-run farming businesses that produce a diverse range of commodities on multiple sites.

One such family enterprise in Queensland has 11 farms, stretching 1500 kilometres across a region. This business produces a range of vegetables which it sells to the major supermarket chains. The benefit of this type of business over other farms that are geographically limited and only focus on a few commodities is that, if one commodity is affected by localised weather conditions such as flood or drought, or a downturn in the market price, other parts of the business that are not similarly affected can maintain profitability.

Other enterprises that are becoming more established in Australia are large companies made up of shareholders who are not necessarily farmers.

economy of scale the advantage that a larger producer or consumer has over a smaller one because of costs that do not increase proportionately with size or amount purchased



country hits troubled times. As Barnaby Joyce, a federal National Party politician, put it in 2009:

Overseas interests are targeting our mining and agricultural industries because they have long-term strategic value and we should be mindful of that. We are not going to be able to sustain ourselves in the long term through service industries; that is the economic form of trying to make a living by taking in someone else's washing. (*The Australian*, 24 April 2009)



Source 4.34 A Timbercorp sign on one of the company's eucalypt plantations advising people to keep out

Some of these companies, such as Timbercorp, take advantage of government tax incentives to buy up substantial areas of land to produce a single crop, such as almonds. These companies have large amounts of money to invest, and have at times dominated the water trading market in irrigation zones, to the detriment of smaller farmers who miss out on their water allocations.

These investment companies are also driving up land prices, so they are seen by many people in the country as not really caring about farming communities and being driven only by profit.

Another feature of modern Australian agriculture is the increasing numbers of foreign companies that are investing in agricultural properties, businesses and food-processing companies. This increase is fuelling anxiety in the bush that Australia is 'selling off the farm' and thus undermining its capacity to feed itself if the

The other concern for farmers in Australia is that foreign companies that have bought food-processing factories in Australia have been shutting down these factories because of the cost of production in Australia. Rising labour costs and the fluctuating value of the Australian dollar have meant that for many of these businesses, which have factories all over the world, it is cheaper to close their Australian factories and produce their goods in other countries.

These decisions impact on farmers when they are no longer able to sell their produce to the local processors, and they have a flow-on effect on the economic health of rural communities. Places like Shepparton, in Victoria, have been hit hard by such closures. The SPC Ardmona factory in nearby Mooroopna, which was owned by the Coca-Cola Company, closed down in 2011. SPC Ardmona processed fruit such as peaches and apricots from local growers. Its closure meant not only that people in the factory lost their jobs, which impacted on the regional economy, but also that the local growers had to find other markets for their produce.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.10

- 1 Explain how economies of scale might be applied in modern farming.
- 2 It has been claimed that the demise of rural sporting clubs has heralded the death of the soul of rural communities. Explain what you think this means.
- 3 Source 4.31 indicates that there were substantially more people involved in farming in the age group 15–29 in 1981 than in 2011. List some of the reasons for this decrease.
- 4 Explain why the average age of farmers is increasing.
- 5 Explain what the expression 'selling off the farm' means.
- 6 Analyse why the buying of Australian farms by foreign companies is such a contested political issue in Australia. List some of the benefits of foreign investment in Australian agriculture.

RESEARCH 4.4

Research some of the ways digital technologies have assisted agricultural production over the last 25 years and create an annotated visual display.

The power of the major supermarket chains – Coles and Woolworths

One of the features of the changing nature of modern agricultural enterprises in Australia is the growing power of the two major supermarket chains, Coles and Woolworths, to influence the prices of agricultural produce. The two chains have been involved in a price war to capture customer loyalty. Each is trying to sell its produce at the lowest prices. This is good for the customers, but is it good for the farmer as well? For farmers who have a guaranteed contract with the supermarkets to supply the produce it could be seen as a good thing, because they are assured of a market for their produce. In the short term the supermarket customers are also benefiting through lower prices for basic food items such as bread and milk.

However, there are growing concerns about the effects this dominance has on Australian agriculture:

- Growers are forced to bid against one another and the successful ones are often the corporate farmers with better economies of scale. This pushes the smaller producers out of the market.
- The farmers who are under contract to the supermarkets have their profit margins reduced. In the case of some dairy farmers, the pressure to ensure that the cost of milk to consumers remains low means that the price they receive for their milk barely covers the cost of producing it.
- Farmers lose autonomy and flexibility over their operations as they are forced to respond to the terms of their contracts with the supermarkets. One of the concerns is that the supermarkets may be making the decisions about how the commodities are produced and what is grown.
- The high quality requirements of the supermarkets for the produce, such as having fruit of an even size and colour, can mean a high use of agri-chemicals.
- Over the longer term, forcing some growers out of the industry could lead to reduced competition pressures, so the supermarkets could in the future start charging higher prices for produce while still keeping their costs low. This would increase the profits for the supermarkets.



Source 4.35 The two big supermarket chains, Coles and Woolworths, have been involved in a price war, bringing down the price of staple food items such as milk and bread.

- Supermarkets, in favouring certain types of produce over others, reduce choice and thus may make some types of produce uncommon or not available, leading to a loss in agricultural diversity.
- Supermarkets trying to ensure year-round supply of fruit and vegetables encourage the greater energy expenditure needed to either grow food in artificial conditions or to transport food over great distances.

Sustainable agriculture

Agriculture in Australia has changed dramatically, particularly in the last 60 years. Some of the drivers of this change have been a real need for increased production because of population growth and an ideology that says that progress and productivity are intrinsically good things. In basic terms, for farmers this means making two blades of grass grow where one grew before. As we have seen, food and fibre production and distribution soared through most of the twentieth century, through technological and scientific developments; the expansion of agricultural enterprises and supporting industries, such as the chemical and seed industries; and increased land clearing.

These developments have allowed farmers – and there are now fewer of them – to maximise productivity

and reduce their labour costs (by getting more machines to do the work) at the same time.

Although these changes have had many positive effects, including the almost quadrupling of crop yields in some cases, and have reduced many risks in farming, such as dealing with the unpredictability of Australia's variable climate, there have also been significant environmental costs and social costs.

Environmental costs include:

- land and water degradation
- pollution
- biodiversity loss
- increased energy consumption of nonrenewable sources such as oil.

Social costs include:

- economic decline of rural communities; greater unemployment means less money being spent in country towns
- reduction in the rural workforce as people leave the country to work in the cities
- relative decline in the wages of farm workers
- ageing population of the farming community.

Coupled with these costs are the threats that a changing climate poses to future agricultural productivity. There is a possibility that current agricultural regions will become unsuitable for the type of farming that is currently being practised there.

Over the past 20 years there has been increasing concern that current forms of agriculture are not going to be sustainable over the longer term.

sustainable agriculture
farming that is conducted
in a way that preserves
resources

ecology the way in which
everything living interacts
with the world around it

As a result, there is a movement towards more **sustainable agriculture**.

This is based on the principle that we must meet the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs.

Sustainable agriculture requires an understanding of the relationship between agriculture and natural

ecology and the management of that relationship. Sustainable agriculture will:

- satisfy human needs for food and fibre
- enhance the quality of the environment so that it supports natural and agricultural processes, leading to healthy soil, stable landforms, clean water and greater biodiversity
- make the most efficient use of non-renewable resources such as oil
- reduce chemical use and integrate natural biological cycles and controls into agricultural practices (such as using farm-friendly insects to control pests)



Source 4.36 There is increasing consumer demand for free-range chickens because of concerns about the inhuman treatment of caged birds.



- ensure that farming operations are economically viable and support prosperous rural communities
- encourage the ethical treatment of animals and abandon high-density practices such as cage-breeding chickens
- enhance the quality of life for farmers and society as a whole.

Responding to the need for sustainable agricultural practices

Australian farmers and rural communities have always been resilient, resourceful and innovative.

Today's farmers are dealing with the environmental consequences of 220 years of Australian agriculture and the impact of restructuring in the agricultural sector over the last 40 years in a number of ways:

- Farmers are now taking steps to rehabilitate the land through the assistance of organisations such as Landcare Australia, which provides advice and assistance to farmers. One of the ways to rehabilitate the land is to return areas of properties to natural habitats. This promotes biodiversity, and the natural vegetation helps return the water table to manageable levels so that salinity can be kept in check.
- There is better management of irrigation water allocations in river systems such as the Murray–Darling, which helps ensure that there is adequate water for environmental flows which keep the river system and the wetlands healthy.
- Natural wetlands are being restored: they act as buffers, intercepting sediment and nutrient flows

in the rivers and streams so that water quality is maintained.

- There is a growing awareness of the value of the native food or 'bush tucker' industry as a sustainable industry.
- There is a growing understanding of the use of fire to keep native grassland areas in Australia's arid and semi-arid zones healthy and provide sustainable fodder for the cattle industry in these regions. These were practices developed by Indigenous Australians over thousands of years prior to European settlement.
- There is increased development and use of organic farming methods – such as crop rotation and recycling of nutrients such as compost – in which no synthetic chemicals are used.
- Farmers' markets, where smaller producers sell their products, are growing in number and popularity. These markets offer consumers the opportunity to have closer contact with the producers of the foods they eat.
- Rural towns are becoming more resourceful in attracting people into their communities by promoting them as tourism destinations, and through niche industries. For example, Clunes, a rural community in central Victoria, promotes itself as a destination for book lovers, and its annual book fair attracts hundreds of visitors.



Source 4.37 Australian native forest foods from the Daintree rainforest in north Queensland

Geographical thought

Thomas Malthus was an eighteenth-century economist who predicted that human population increase would eventually outstrip food production and lead to a natural check on population growth through famine, disease or war. Malthus' argument, which he put forward in his *Essay on the Principle of Population* in 1798, was that population growth increases exponentially, so it doubles with each cycle (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 ... and so on) while agricultural production increases arithmetically over time (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 ... and so on). Malthus' theory is just one of many about the relationship between human growth rates and the ability of agriculture to sustain human populations. His gloomy projections haven't been fulfilled – yet, at least – even though the world population reached 7 billion in 2011.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.11

- 1 Define organic farming and describe how it differs from conventional agricultural practices.
- 2 Rural communities need to be more diversified than they have been in the past, when they relied on agriculture for their success. Do you agree? Why or why not?

RESEARCH 4.5

- 1 Investigate the role of Landcare and other conservation organisations in Australia that assist farmers in managing land and water.
- 2 Research genetically modified crops. Analyse whether or not they have a place in sustainable agricultural practices; list some of the arguments for and against them. Present your findings to the class in a PowerPoint or Prezi presentation.

Food security

Apart from the early period of European settlement at the end of the eighteenth century, when the colony almost starved, Australia has managed to provide the food and fibre requirements of its population and have a surplus to export. Today Australian farmers produce over 90% of Australia's daily domestic food requirements and approximately 60% of their total agricultural production is exported. In the global market Australia contributes 1% of all food consumed in the world and feeds about 40 million people outside Australia each day.



Source 4.38 Logo of the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization, which is leading world efforts to provide food security. The Latin phrase *fiat panis* means 'Let there be bread'.

food security the knowledge that enough food will be provided for the population now and in the future

Australian agriculture has always been at the leading edge of innovative practices and technological advances, and it must maintain this position if it is to continue to provide **food security** for both Australian and global communities. The population of

Australia is projected to grow from almost 23 million in 2013 to 35 million in 2050, and the global population is

projected to grow from 7 billion in 2011 to 9 billion in 2050, so the pressure to increase agricultural productivity is enormous.

This will also be influenced by the predicted effects of climate change.

Until now, Australia's food security has been maintained by the availability of:

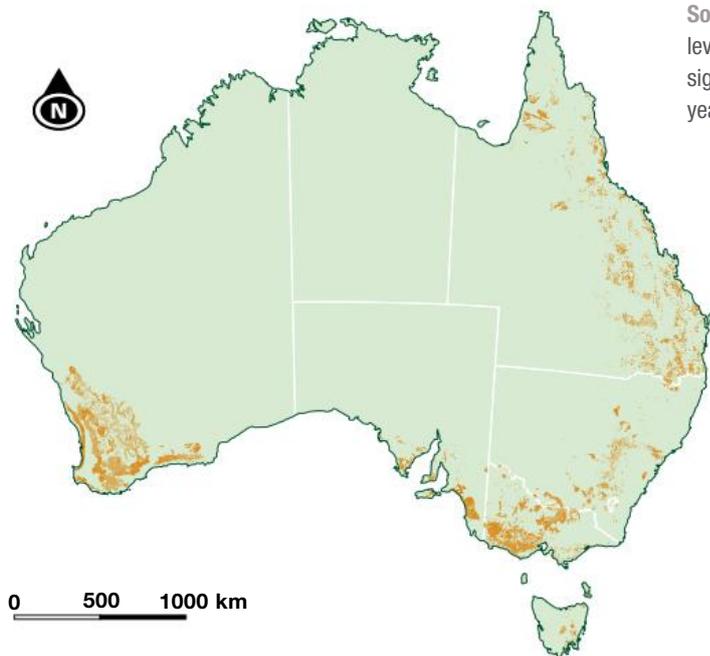
- arable farming land
- affordable energy resources
- water
- nutrients
- effective farming and trade practices
- efficient transport networks
- sufficient storage capacity for agricultural products.

Climate change is expected to have a significant impact on everything on the list above. Current projections are that in Australia we can expect changes in both the distribution of water available for agriculture (such as river flows) and the timing and duration of rainfall events. Higher average temperatures will increase evaporation rates and reduce moisture levels in the soil. If rainfall, water distribution and temperature patterns are altered, land use patterns will change – production may decline in existing agricultural areas.

Climate change projections also point to an increase in the frequency and intensity of adverse weather conditions such as flood and drought, and suggest changes in the geographical distribution of pests and diseases. This combination will make the production of some cereal crops and livestock unsustainable at some locations. Widespread adaptation, including the relocation of existing agricultural regions, will be required. Also, many existing farming practices will need to change to meet the requirements of reducing carbon emissions and restoring land and water health.

The capacity of the world's natural resources to deal with increasing human population is going to be stretched to the limit in the next 40 years.

Currently, human activities use one-third to one-half of the global ecosystem's production; that is, looking at all the things that the Earth's processes produce, such as fresh water and biomass (crops, for instance), humans



Source 4.39 Areas of Australia forecast to have high levels of salinity in 2050. This increase is going to significantly impact on crop production in the next 40 years unless strategies to deal with it are implemented.

are taking 30–50% of it for their own use. To extend this beyond 50% is going to put enormous pressure on the biosphere.

A roadmap for the future of agriculture

Greater management of both natural and agricultural resources is going to be needed if we are to secure food production over the next 40 years. Some of the strategies required are:

- protection of existing natural ecosystems to ensure the health of natural processes and maintain biodiversity: this means reducing the current rate of land clearing
- restoration of degraded land and water resources
- widespread development of more sustainable agricultural practices
- reduction of carbon emissions from human activities
- greater environmental and resource management of other land use industries, such as mining
- greater control over urban development and the spread of cities that are encroaching onto farming land.

These challenges are going to be difficult in light of present trends in both industry and human development. Some of these trends are the increasing demand for biofuel production in the developed economies of the world as they seek alternative (renewable) sources of fuel. The biofuel industry, which converts organic products such as corn or sugar cane to fuel, is competing with food agriculture for the use of arable land.

The demand is being driven by the increasing cost of oil and the need for countries to secure energy resources while there is political instability in the oil-producing nations of the world.

Another trend that is going to put enormous pressure on global agriculture is the growth of the middle class in places such as China and India.

As these nations become more prosperous, the demands on food production change. In the past, the levels of calorie consumption in these countries have been well below the levels of Western nations such as Australia and the United States, and their diets have been based on staple foods such as rice.

However, as prosperity increases dietary habits change, and levels of consumption increase. One of the areas of consumption increase is animal protein products such as meat and dairy. As it takes much more energy and resources to produce a kilogram of meat than it does to produce a kilogram of rice, the extra demands on agricultural production are going to be enormous.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 4.12

- 1 Examine how successful Australian agriculture has been in meeting the food and fibre requirements of its population.
- 2 Explain what 'food security' means.
- 3 Referring to Source 4.39, identify the areas of Australia that will be prone to severe salinity in 2050.
- 4 Explain how this distribution corresponds to existing areas of agricultural production.
- 5 Summarise the impact salinity may have on future Australian food production.

RESEARCH 4.6

- 1 Research biofuel and how it is impacting on agricultural food production.
- 2 The UN Food and Agriculture Organization was set up to deal with issues of world hunger. The logo of the FAO (Source 4.38) is instantly recognisable. Inset in a circle which represents the globe are the letters of the organisation and the image of a stalk of wheat. It also has the Latin phrase *fiat panis*, meaning 'Let there be bread'. Create a logo for an organisation that has been set up to deal with issues of food security in Australia over the next 40 years. Annotate your logo, explaining your choice of words, phrases and images. Have a class vote on which one best represents the future of Australian agriculture.

Source 4.40 Rice is a staple food in many parts of the world.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Agriculture has been practised for thousands of years all over the world.
- In Australia, the arrival of the First Fleet brought with it the agricultural practices of Europe.
- By 1860, the Australian agricultural revolution was in place, with a boom in breeding livestock and land cultivation.
- The spread of settlement in Australia can be linked to the expansion of agriculture.
- Landscapes were fragmented, and were based on the European notion of ownership.
- By the mid-1860s, governments were under pressure to 'unlock' the land, and break the areas previously settled by squatters into small farming allotments.
- During the second half of the nineteenth century Australian governments recognised that Australia needed to be self-sufficient, and could not rely solely on the export of wool.
- Australia's unique climate placed limits on early agricultural practices. Australia's dryness was a problem because many of the agricultural practices used were brought from Europe, which is not dry.
- Australia's agricultural zones all need specific practices to deal with their climate and ecology.
- By the early twentieth century, agricultural production was a large part of the Australian economy.
- Systematic agricultural settlement in Australia was further developed with the establishment of 'soldier settlement' schemes for men returning from World Wars I and II.
- The Green Revolution that began in the 1950s was driven by advances in agricultural science and technology that led to a greater understanding by farmers of efficient land, soil and water management practices.
- Agricultural land use places pressure on the environment: the effects include erosion, salinity, loss of biodiversity and a decline in water quality.
- Australian farmers have been very successful at providing innovative solutions to problems and maximising agricultural productivity.
- They have also had to deal with the country's vastness and relative remoteness from the rest of the world.
- From the 1970s onwards, changes in the national and global economies have put pressure on farmers to become more competitive.
- Today farming requires an understanding of the whole business of agriculture, from balancing the nutrient levels in the soil to buying and selling water and monitoring international prices.
- Agriculture in Australia has changed dramatically, particularly in the last 60 years: there has been a real need for increased production because of population growth, and also an ideology that progress and productivity are intrinsically good things.

Source 4.41 Local produce on display at a farmers' market



Short-answer questions

- 1 Analyse how a lack of understanding about Australia's climate and geology and its limitation in the first 150 years of settlement led to increased environmental degradation.
- 2 Discuss the Green Revolution and how it changed agriculture.
- 3 List some of the changes experienced by Australian agriculture in the last 40 years.
- 4 Describe sustainable agriculture.
- 5 List the challenges facing the future of food security in Australia and overseas.

Extended-response question

Problem solving for sustainable development: finding a compromise between Australia's energy needs and those of agriculture, the environment and the economy.

Securing energy sources such as gas in Australia is vital for the economy. Food and fibre security is also vital to Australia's future prosperity. The question is how to balance the interests of industries such as mining and energy with those of agriculture, the environment and the economy.

Divide into small groups. Use a problem-solving model to explore the issues involved with coal seam gas exploration and production, and evaluate solutions that would be acceptable to all stakeholders. Each group should represent the interests of one of the following stakeholders in the debate:

- coal seam gas industry
- farmers
- environmentalists
- politicians.

Step 1 – Fact finding

- 1 List the facts relating to coal seam gas production.
- 2 Identify where your group stands on the issue: negative, positive or somewhere in between?
- 3 List the information you need in order to develop solutions.
- 4 Create a list of sources where that information can be found.

Step 2 – Problem finding

- 1 Identify all the underlying problems and issues related to coal seam gas production.
- 2 Analyse the information and identify a major problem/s which, if solved, would provide a solution for farmers and environmentalists and the coal seam gas industry.

Step 3 – Idea finding

- 1 List as many ideas as you can for solving the problem/s.
- 2 Brainstorm ideas, focusing on quantity rather than quality of ideas. (Evaluation of the ideas can take place at a later stage.)

Step 4 – Solution finding

- 1 Evaluate the ideas proposed for solving the problem. As a group, debate them and decide on a hierarchy of solutions. Can any of these ideas be combined to make them more suitable?

Step 5 – Acceptance finding

- 1 Develop a plan for implementing your chosen solution. Consider all those who must accept the solution, plan for answering their questions and decide how to convince them that the solution is appropriate.
- 2 Present your arguments to the class and answer any questions they raise.
- 3 Class members from each stakeholder group should ask questions of the group presenting that reflect the interests of their group.

Step 6 – Evaluation

- 1 Were there any solutions that all stakeholders came up with?
- 2 What were some of the disagreements between the stakeholders and why were there disagreements?
- 3 What are some of the ways solutions to these types of issues that are acceptable to all stakeholders can be found? Suggest some strategies for managing the interests of all groups.



Source 4.42 Australian farmers have been very successful at maximising agricultural productivity.



Unit 2

Geographies of interconnections



5

Places and spaces

Before you start

Main focus

How place and space, as major geographical concepts or organising ideas, help us to better understand how we, other people and cultures see and connect with places that are important to who we are.

Why it's relevant to us

The way we see, understand and connect with places that are significant in our lives, as well as other people's and other cultures' futures, has a big influence on how we live today.

Inquiry questions

- What factors influence how we perceive and engage with places in our local area?
- Why do we see some places as safe and/or inclusive and other places as unsafe and/or exclusive?
- What can our community do to improve people's access to places, activities and services and ensure that public places in our local community are safe?
- How do the activities and interests of Australians shape places?
- What are the challenges and opportunities this presents for designing more sustainable futures?

Key terms

- City
- Consensus
- Domestic tourism
- Geographical concept
- Governance
- Identity
- International tourism
- Population
- Service centre
- Town
- Worldview

Let's begin

Place and space are major geographical concepts, or organising ideas, that help us see, understand and connect with our local area and other places, spaces, cultures and environments. They provide important ways for us to gather and interpret information to make informed decisions about the use of places, connecting places over space and time, and understanding the environmental, cultural, social and economic consequences of these decisions.

5.1 Place and space

Places are parts of the Earth's surface that have specific meaning for some people. A place can range in size from a comfortable chair in a room to a national park to a country to the whole world.

A place can be a natural feature, such as an old-growth forest, or a human construction, such as a house. It could also be a place where natural and human features and human constructions interconnect, such as a farm.

geographical concept a key notion or idea that helps us to explore, understand and explain features, patterns and relationships on the Earth's surface

In geography we use the **geographical concept** of space to better understand where, how and why places are located and connected over the Earth's surface. As we move, or send something, from one place to another place, we are using our understanding

of space. For example, the form of transport you use and the route you take to go from your home to your school is informed by your understanding of how your home and school are connected across space.

Often maps are used to show the location, distribution and reasons for the pattern of places over space.

Stories of place

How we identify and interact with a place and its spatial features depends on our personal and cultural perspectives: on the relationship we have with the place and its natural and human environmental features and why it is important for us, our culture, our people and our future.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.1

Copy the table below and identify and describe the places you and other students find important.

Important places		
Think	Pair	Share
Choose a place that is important to you.	In a pair, discuss and compare your important places.	Join with one or two other pairs to share your discussion outcomes.
Describe the place and write down three reasons why it is an important place for you.	How are the places similar and different? How are the reasons for their being important similar and different?	Identify common reasons for the places you identified as being important.

Discuss with the class any common reasons you found for why places are important.

Elma Yantarrnga's story

Elma Yantarrnga is an Anindilyakwa-speaking person from Groote Eylandt in the Northern Territory. Elma is the senior female ranger with the Anindilyakwa Land and Sea Rangers. She represents the Anindilyakwa Land and Sea Rangers at land management conferences right across Australia, as well as being actively involved in training and in conversations with such organisations as the Northern Territory Department of Fisheries and the Australian Quarantine and Inspection Service (AQIS). When Elma thinks of her land and place and her work, she says:



Source 5.1 Anindilyakwa Land and Sea Rangers retrieve a ghost net from the waters surrounding the Groote Eylandt archipelago.

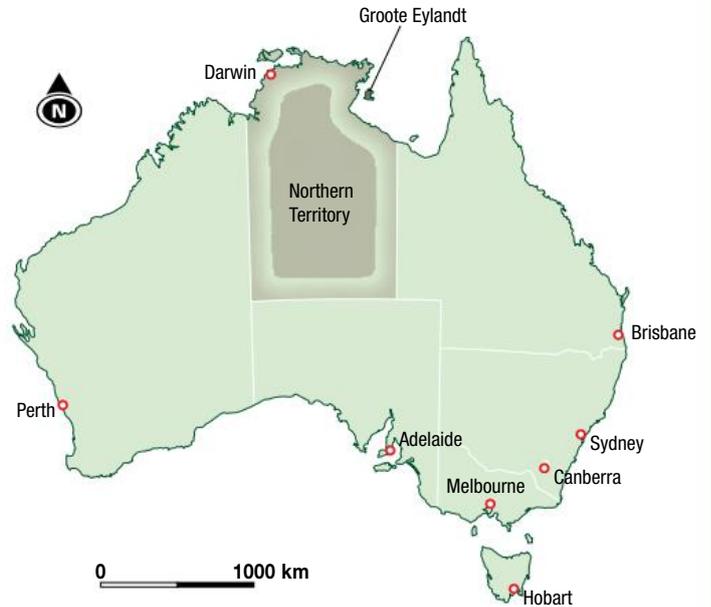
I do this for my people and my land. I am a ranger so that I can look after our land the best way. Some people think that we are out here having fun, that we aren't working.

But we are working; we are working to look after our land. I know, as a ranger, that I need to learn different ways of looking after land and that is why I am always learning and training and showing people what I do.

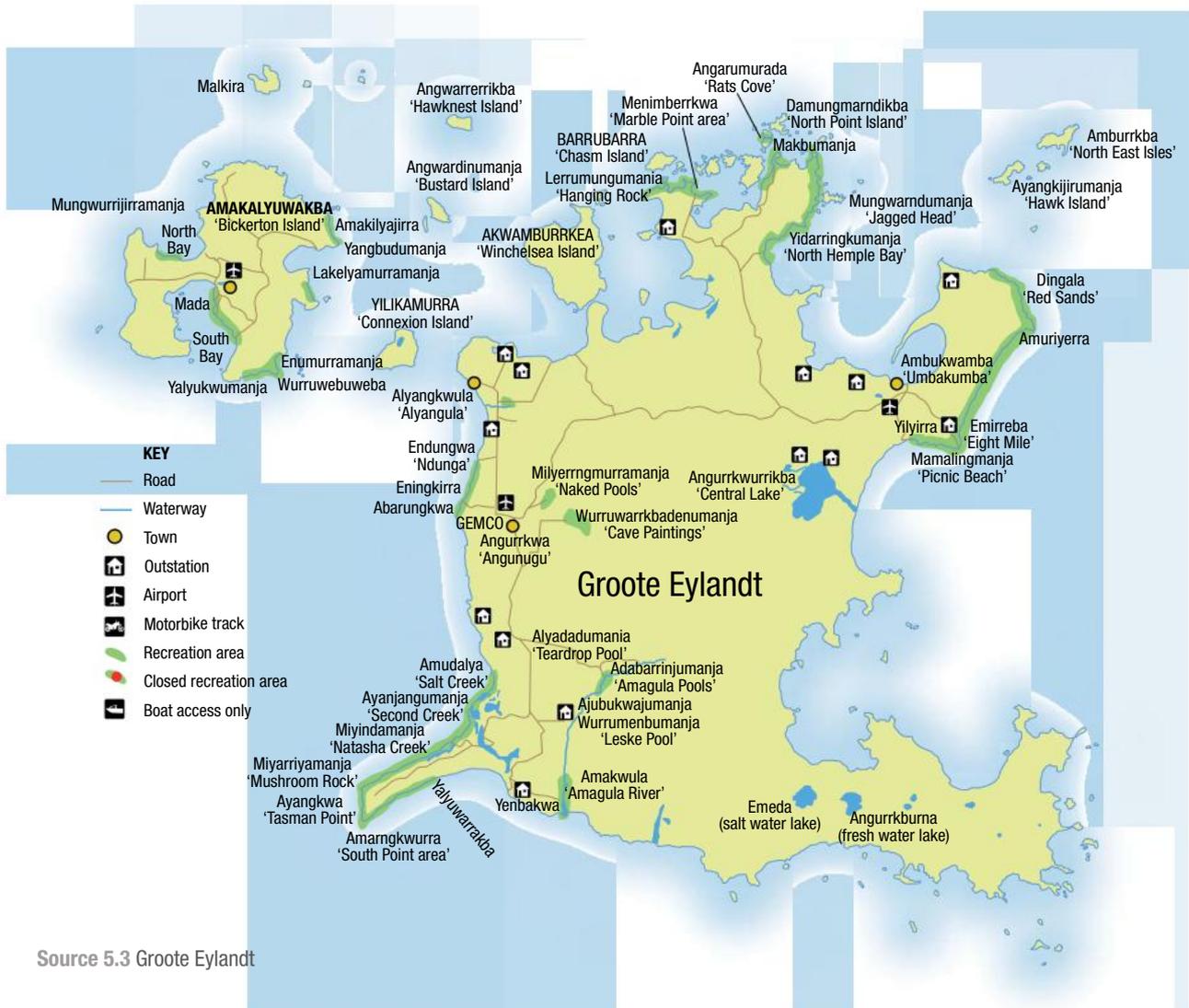
When you are a ranger you are looking after your land all the time. It is a new way of seeing land and our place and it is important.

We listen and tell stories about our land with our people and then we go to work and we remember those stories and we think of those stories when we are doing our ranger work and it makes me a better ranger. When we are talking to the people that come and look at our land, like the Fisheries people and the AQIS people,

(continued)



Source 5.2 Location of Groote Eylandt



Source 5.3 Groote Eylandt

we listen to what they have to say about our land and we tell them what we have to say about our land and then we all work together to look after this land. Some people get their brains washed like a lollipop when they don't listen to the people and what our people tell us about our land. This is my land and I look after my land for my people.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.2

- 1 Describe the geographic location of Groote Eylandt.
- 2 Explain why telling and sharing stories of land and sea are an essential part of life and culture for Elma Yantarrnga as a traditional landowner and as a ranger.
- 3 Suggest what may happen if the stories of the people who have a deep spiritual connection with land and sea are not listened to when decisions are being made about that land and sea. As you read through this chapter, remember Elma Yantarrnga's story about the importance of including, sharing and listening to stories about connection and care of land and place.

Tala's story

Tala was born and grew up in Jordan. Her family is Palestinian and she now lives in Australia.

Since coming to live in Australia, Tala has thought and written about why place is so important to migrants' **identity**.

identity the ways in which we define ourselves

Tala says that before she left Jordan, she believed that people were more important than place because people bring meaning to the places around them. She now believes that it is our connection to place that brings meaning to who we are. Place connects with people, culture and spirituality; it lives in the person and travels with them as a 'sense of home, sense of place, sense of dwelling as a mobile habitat'.

Tala found coming to a foreign country where she did not speak the language very difficult, as language connects us with a place and its culture.

nostalgia remembering good things about the past

When migrants leave their countries and come to Australia they face language – and **nostalgia** – problems as they try to assimilate to Australian ways of living and find an identity in this new place. Migrants find ways to assimilate to Australian life while keeping connections with their past life.

Many migrants' homes have become private museums of cultural objects they have brought with them. 'Middle Eastern migrants always surround ourselves with socially and culturally pleasing objects,' says Tala. These are more than just objects: they connect migrants

with their life experiences of their former place – 'They represent my history, my culture' – and help them deal with all the changes in their new lives.

Tala says that holding festivals and celebrating cultural days in the new place is important. It 'brings meaning to this new place by celebrating culture'.

Connecting with people of your culture, speaking your language, and buying, cooking and sharing your culture's food is also part of establishing your sense of identity, place and belonging.

Childhood memories and stories of places are very important. Tala says that she has never lived in the Palestinian territories. However, through listening to her grandmother and grandfather's stories about living in Jerusalem, Tala has a very strong sense of connection with Jerusalem: it is part of who she is and of her culture.

Tala says that the senses are also important in connecting with place and culture. The cooking, smell and taste of Middle Eastern food bring back fond memories of experiences in Jordan with family and friends: 'When I go to a new place I keep the smell in my mind, and that connects me with a certain place.' Music and musical instruments are also important connections to culture and identity. Tala downloaded Omar Bashir playing the oud. To experience Middle Eastern music being played on authentic Middle Eastern instruments go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks for a link to this YouTube video.

Tala loves her life in Australia, in part because she keeps her connections with her past as she assimilates to Australian life and her new identity.



Source 5.4 Jordan

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.3

- 1 Describe and explain the importance of the relationship between place and identity for Tala: write a 300–400 word essay or create a poster, a PowerPoint or another electronic display.
- 2 In a small group discuss how your connection with a special place, or places, is important to your identity. List the reasons.
- 3 One of Tala's fondest memories of Jordan was visiting Petra. Go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks for a link to a site that will help you research and describe where Petra is and why it is such a significant place. Suggest a place in Australia that has a similar significance to you.



Source 5.5 The oud



5.2 Worldviews

How we identify and interact with a place depends on our individual and cultural perspectives on the relationship we have with the place and its natural and human environmental features.

Perspectives explain how we see the world and our place in it. They include spiritual connections, the values placed on the interdependence of the natural

and human environment, our sense of belonging to the place, and the place's importance through time. The major perspectives and beliefs that determine how we see the world around us and live in it can be called our **worldviews**.

worldview the collection of ideas, beliefs and spiritual connections through which we – personally, as groups and as cultures – understand, connect with and interact with the world

It is very difficult to fully understand our worldviews because they are so much part of who we are. We usually think, say and do things without realising that we are following our worldview. In a sense, our worldview is to our personal, social and cultural being as our lungs and heart are to our physical being.

It is important to be aware of our and other people's worldviews – where they come from and how they influence our thinking. Through understanding our

and other people's worldviews we are more able to positively connect with other people and cultures.

An understanding of our own worldview also helps us to better appreciate how we see the relationship between humans and the environment. For example, is it a relationship based on seeing humans controlling environments for human needs, or is it a relationship based on seeing human needs and the environment's needs as interconnected?

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.4

- 1 In groups of three, identify a geographical issue to share your views on. It may be a local issue (such as building a skate park), a regional issue (such as building dams on your local rivers) or a world issue (such as how to reduce poverty in the world).
- 2 Spend 5–10 minutes individually thinking, and maybe recording notes, about your ideas and beliefs on the issue.
- 3 Take turns explaining your ideas and beliefs to the other people in your group – take 3 minutes each. Rotate the roles of speaker, timekeeper/questioner (if needed) and recorder.
- 4 After each person has spoken, the recorder will lead a discussion on the views expressed by the person they recorded.
- 5 Discuss how your views were similar and different, and reasons why this may be so.

Uluru – how worldviews coexist

governance the set of rules, organising processes and structures that groups, societies and countries follow to make decisions and maintain order in their day-to-day living

Uluru is an example of how the coming of Anglo/European culture, **governance** and worldviews to Australia impacted on Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people's connections with country.

The Uluru experience also illustrates how Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander and Anglo/European cultures and worldviews can coexist. We all have choices about how we do this.

Uluru is recognised worldwide as an iconic symbol of Australia. Uluru and Kata Tjuta have extraordinary cultural, spiritual and geological significance. The Anangu people, the traditional owners of country including Uluru and Kata Tjuta, have lived in deep spiritual and cultural interdependence with this country for tens of thousands of years. They are part of the oldest cultural–country interrelationship still existing on Earth.

Uluru and Kata Tjuta are among the oldest landforms on Earth. Rocks there have been dated at around



Source 5.6 Location of Uluru

550 million years old. Their cultural and geological significance is recognised: Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park was listed as a natural World Heritage site in 1987. In 1994 Uluru-Kata Tjuta was re-nominated under cultural criteria, and it is now recognised as a mixed natural and cultural World Heritage site. It is one of only 29 sites worldwide with this joint listing.

Geographical thought

World Heritage listing is managed through the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) as part of an international treaty called the Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, adopted by UNESCO in 1972. The treaty aims to identify, protect and preserve sites of cultural and natural heritage around the world that are considered to be of outstanding value to humanity.

The recent management of Uluru-Kata Tjuta country and of tourism in the Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park illustrates how people's different worldviews can coexist.

At a ceremony at the Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park on 26 October 1985, Sir Ninian Stephen, Australia's Governor-General, handed the **title deeds** of Uluru-Kata Tjuta to the Anangu traditional owners under the *Aboriginal Land Rights Act 1976* (NT) ('ALRA').

title deed a legal document that shows ownership of a piece of land

At the same time a lease agreement was signed by the newly formed Uluru-Kata Tjuta Aboriginal Land Trust and the Director of National Parks – it leased the land back to the federal government for 99 years. The agreement formally acknowledged Anangu ownership of the park, and recognised the value of Uluru-Kata Tjuta as a park of national and international importance.

The park is now jointly managed by a board made up of Anangu and *piranpa* (non-Aboriginal people) members, with their roles and responsibilities set out in both the *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999* (Cth) ('EPBC Act') and the ALRA. The EPBC Act ensures that visitors to the park respect its natural and cultural values, while the ALRA protects the property rights of the Anangu. This process of working together has come to be known as 'joint management'.

Source 5.7 Uluru-Kata Tjuta Cultural centre in Uluru Kata Tjuta National Park



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.5

Read the Northern Territory government's advertisement THE ROCK BELONGS TO ALL AUSTRALIANS! (AND ALWAYS HAS).

THE ROCK BELONGS TO ALL AUSTRALIANS!

(AND ALWAYS HAS)

On October 26 without consultation or mandate, the Federal Labor Government will hand over Ayers Rock and the whole of the Uluru National Park to fewer than 100 Australians. They will then pay these special Australians \$75,000 a year to lease it back from them. All Australians visiting Ayers Rock will pay to see it, and the new owners will get 20% of that fee as well.

The Northern Territory Government is adamantly opposed to this action:

- It is contrary to accepted procedures under which land claims have been made — until now.
- It shows an arrogant disregard by the Hawke Labor Government of the interests of the Northern Territory and of all Australians.
- It is another misuse of Commonwealth power in an area which has always been regarded as a State responsibility.
- It places in the hands of just a few that which belongs to all Australians: Ayers Rock, the heart of this country.

The Northern Territory Government seeks support from the Australian community to prevent this act of gross irresponsibility. The Hawke Labor Government must be reminded that it is elected to respect the wishes of the majority of Australians, not to serve the narrow factional interest of its own left wing.

Will Katherine Gorge (already under claim) be next? Perhaps the Great Barrier Reef will follow.

Australians did not give the Hawke Government a mandate to divide this country.

They were given custody of our heritage, not the right to give it away.

NORTHERN TERRITORY GOVT.

Source 5.8
Midweek Territorian,
23 October 1985

- 1 Identify the two main purposes of the 26 October 1985 agreements.
- 2 Explain what the main concern of the Northern Territory government was.
- 3 Identify and justify your point of view on 'who owns' Uluru.
- 4 Share your opinions with the class.

Geographical thought

Over 400 000 Australian and overseas people visit the Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park each year.

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people make decisions through **consensus**. The process is very important. The leader of the conversation is chosen by the community because of their knowledge and skills in the issue being discussed. The people identify the issue and talk about ideas on how to move forward.

consensus an agreement reached by a group as a whole

Every person tells their story (one story) on the matter. The conversation continues until there is agreement on what will happen.

Non-Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people usually start by looking at the 'for' and 'against' arguments of a proposal. The result is often an argument rather than a conversation, and many times a few people dominate the argument.

For many people, the outcome is more important than the process.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.6

- 1 In small groups, or as a whole class, conduct a consensus decision-making process in relation to walking on Uluru.
- 2 Identify the issues and continue talking until you reach agreement on the issue.

World heritage sites

UNESCO has listed over 900 locations as World Heritage sites. They are places that have special cultural or physical significance, not just for the local community or the nation where they are located, but for all of humanity.

5.3 Safety and inclusion

How we see and connect with places often depends on whether or not we feel safe and included there.

What makes a place safe or threatening, including or excluding, for you?

Being safe and included in the community and country they live in is a major day-to-day concern for millions of people around the world. When people cannot feel safe where their home is they often flee that place. Some flee to safer regions in their country and many flee to other countries. The people who flee from their country are asylum-seekers.

Article 1 of the 1951 United Nations Refugee Convention defines a 'refugee' as:

- a person who is outside their country of nationality or habitual residence, asylum-seekers who generally apply for refuge status,
- has a well-founded fear of persecution because of their race, religion, nationality, membership of a particular social group or political opinion, and
- is unable or unwilling to avail themselves of the protection of that country, or to return there, for fear of persecution.

There are more people who move within the borders of their own country than move out of their country as asylum-seekers. For example, in 2011, while there were more than 800 000 people who were newly displaced across international borders, there were 3.5 million people who were newly displaced within their own country.

Geographical thought

Afghanistan is the leading 'country of origin' of displaced people. In 2011 there were close to 2.7 million displaced people who had left Afghanistan. They were spread across 79 countries, but 95% of them were in Pakistan and the Islamic Republic of Iran.

Making public spaces safer places

Safety in public spaces is an important concern in all communities.

Safety has been one of the main reasons for children carrying mobile phones. Now we are all being told to download personal safety apps on our smartphones so we can instantly get help when we are in trouble.

Closed-circuit television (CCTV) – a surveillance system that sends television signals from cameras to monitors and/or recorders – is another way electronics are being used for public safety.

Read the following opinion piece from the *Newcastle Herald*.

Are we ready for CCTV?

Damon Cronshaw, *Newcastle Herald*
25 October 2012

'Every time we have a shoplifting incident, we catch it on camera. CCTV is a great tool for apprehending offenders.' Frontline Hobbies owner Colin Scott.

Newcastle mayor Jeff McCloy has no doubt about the benefits of CCTV.

McCloy has used it successfully at his properties. Once, he caught a graffiti offender spraying a tag on a wall in Hunter Street. The image made the *Newcastle Herald's* front page and police soon caught the offender.

'It's imperative that we have CCTV in Newcastle,' McCloy said. 'Every modern city in the world has it and it's a tremendous deterrent for crime.'

'I can't understand why there would be any resistance to it.'

A push for CCTV in Newcastle's trouble spots is back on the city's political agenda, amid plans to combat and reduce alcohol-related violence.

CCTV rose to national prominence last month when it was used to catch the alleged killer of Melbourne ABC radio employee Jill Meagher.

Newcastle City Council staff remain interested in CCTV, despite a decision this year from the previous elected council not to proceed with a trial.

For some, CCTV is a step on the slippery slope towards a surveillance society and a restriction of civil liberties.



It's a concept that invokes Big Brother, the ever-present eye of a totalitarian dictator, made famous in George Orwell's novel *Nineteen Eighty-Four*.

But many who want the CBD and other public areas to be safer welcome CCTV, considering its practical aspect of crime fighting.

Newcastle MP Tim Owen said he would 'like to see more CCTV in areas of high concern for street violence'.

'I would be encouraging the council to look very closely at it,' Owen said.

'I think there is a general consensus in the council that they would like to introduce CCTV, but it depends on the new council.' Bond University Adjunct Professor of Criminology Paul Wilson said he was concerned about the proliferation of CCTV as a crime prevention method.

'Other methods, such as better street lighting, more police patrols and environmental changes, may be more cost effective and less likely to invade privacy,' Professor Wilson said.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.7

- 1 Identify three main arguments for using CCTV in public spaces and three main arguments against it.
- 2 Explain and justify your opinion on the use of CCTV in public spaces.
- 3 As a member of your local government's (shire or council) advisory committee, you have been asked to identify five actions you would take to improve public safety. List and describe each of the five things.

5.4 Transport

Where we live and the types of transport available to us have a major influence on how we live and connect with other places: people who live in a capital city obviously have different transport choices and access to services, such as specialist doctors and universities, from people living in remote areas of Australia.

Geographical thought

The 2011 Australian census showed that 66% of Australia's population lived in the capital cities – just over 20% live in the Greater Sydney area and just under 20% live in the Greater Melbourne area.

The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS), with the Adelaide University Australian Population and Migration Research Centre, has developed the Accessibility and Remoteness Index Australia (ARIA) map (see Source 5.10) to show the levels of accessibility to and

remoteness from **service centres** in Australia. Access and remoteness are determined by the physical road distance from the settlement to the nearest service centre; there are five service centre categories, based on population size. The index ranges from 0 (high accessibility to largest service centre) to 15 (high remoteness from small and large service centres): an inner regional zone has larger service centres, of between 48 000 and 249 999 people, and an outer regional zone has service centres of between 18 000 and 47 999 people.

As members of our community we have a right and responsibility to be involved in planning for the future of our community and its connection with other places.

Area	People (millions)
Major cities	15.1
Inner regional	4.3
Outer regional	2.1
Remote	0.32
Very remote	0.17

Source 5.9 The distribution of the Australian population according to ARIA

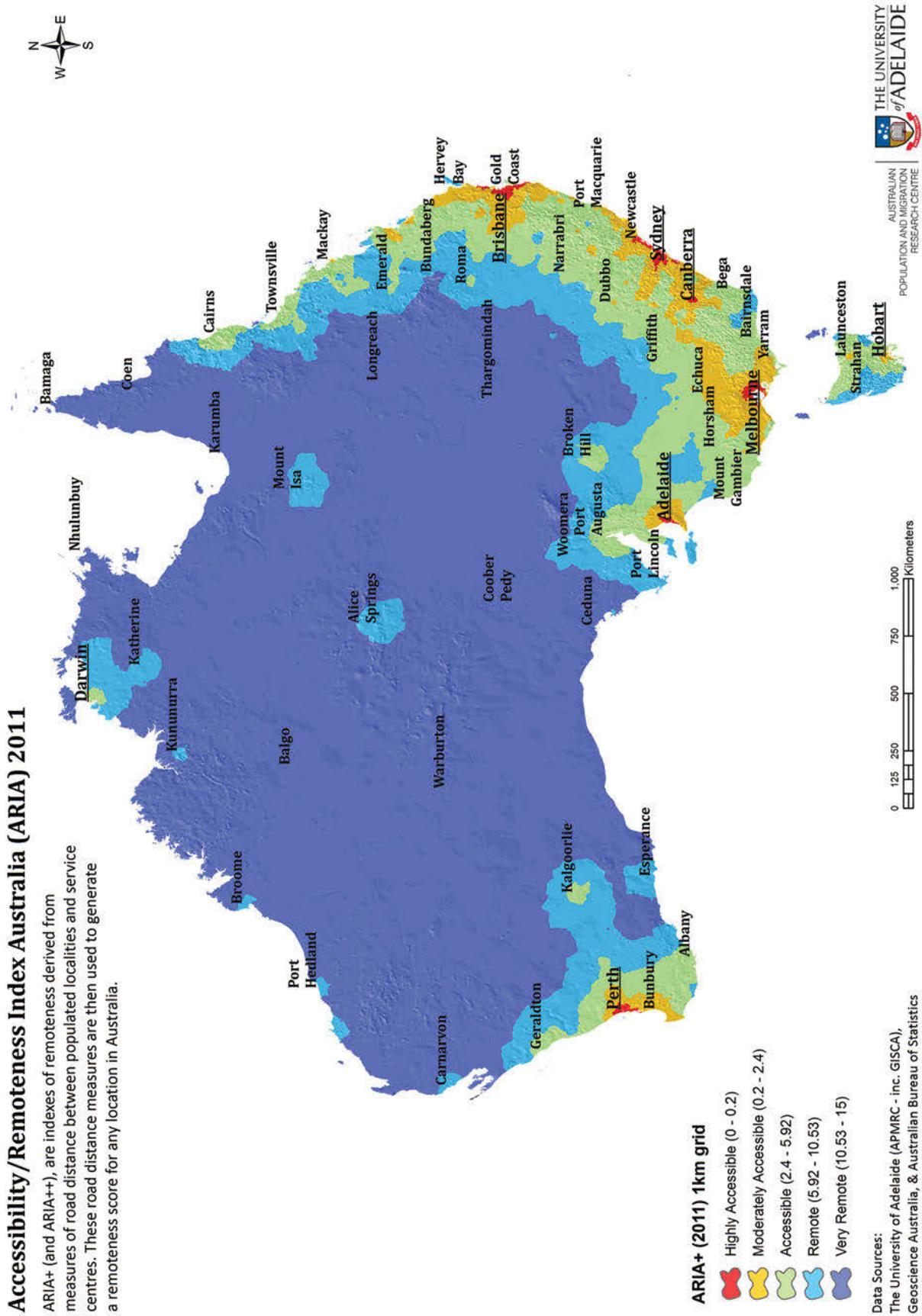
service centre a settlement (village, town or city) that has shops and services such as education, health and banking; larger service centres (cities) have a greater range of services than smaller service centres

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.8

- 1 Suggest why settlements such as Broome and Mt Isa are identified as remote rather than very remote, even though they are located in very remote regions of Australia.
- 2 Use the Accessibility Remoteness Index map (Source 5.10) an atlas or your own experience to identify three places – a capital city, an outer regional settlement and a remote or very remote settlement – in Australia. Use your knowledge and research from the internet and other sources (for example, you could contact a school) to complete the following table on transport choices and issues.

Capital city	Outer region	Remote/very remote region
Transport choices		
Major transport and access to services issues		

- 3 Provide an argument to either support or reject the statement that 'the internet has reduced the isolation of remoteness'. Hold a class discussion on this topic.



Source 5.10 Accessibility and Remoteness Index Australia (ARIA) map

5.5 Australian places

While a few Australians live on remote properties and farms, the vast majority of us live in either a town or a city. Life in cities and towns can be the same in a lot of ways, and very different in others.

It's not just a question of size; there are other important differences. Cities can face unique challenges, such as the

environmental impact of both the stable population and of any large events that take place there. Towns have their own issues, such as access to services and resources. Also, both towns and cities can be tourist destinations, but the impacts of tourism – both positive and negative – can be very different in the two kinds of places.

5.6 Characteristics of towns and cities

Definition of a town and a city

town a built-up area somewhere between a city and a village in size

city a larger town; in Australia this is generally defined as being a metropolitan area

population the number of people residing in an area

There are some key differences between a **town** and a **city**. A town is defined as a built-up area with a name, defined boundaries and local government; it is larger than a village and generally smaller than a city. A city is defined as a large town.

These definitions provide an overview of a town and a city, but they don't provide exact size characteristics for either. In Australia, there is no clear statistical definition between a town and a city. The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) defines an 'urban centre' as a **population** cluster of 1000 or more people'. Therefore we can suggest that the minimum population for a town is 1000 people, but there is still no clear population division between a town and a city. To understand the difference between a town and a city you would have to identify the characteristics of a city.

City, state	Population (2011)
1 Sydney, NSW	4 605 992
2 Melbourne, Vic	4 169 163
3 Brisbane, Qld	2 146 577
4 Perth, WA	1 832 116
5 Adelaide, SA	1 262 940
6 Gold Coast, Qld	576 747
7 Newcastle, NSW	540 002
8 Canberra, ACT	367 752
9 Wollongong, NSW	288 102
10 Sunshine Coast, Qld	241 683
11 Hobart, Tas	216 276
12 Geelong, Vic	174 086
13 Townsville, Qld	167 636
14 Cairns, Qld	146 477
15 Darwin, NT	129 062
16 Toowoomba, Qld	125 265
17 Launceston, Tas	107 746
18 Albury-Wodonga, NSW/Vic	103 209
19 Ballarat, Vic	95 007
20 Bendigo, Vic	89 665
21 Mandurah, WA	88 305
22 Burnie/Devonport, Tas	84 217
23 Mackay, Qld	83 350
24 La Trobe Valley, Vic	78 614
25 Rockhampton, Qld	75 648



Source 5.11 The Sydney Harbour Bridge lit up for New Year's Eve celebrations

Source 5.12 Australia's largest 25 cities

metropolitan relating to a large city, its surrounding suburbs, and other neighbouring communities

exurbia a residential area beyond the suburbs

In Australia, a city is characterised as a **metropolitan** area, which includes the historic core area, the continuously developed suburbs that surround the historic core and the **exurbia** that surrounds the city; the exurbia is the region beyond the connected suburbs of a city. For example, Camden is

classified as being in the exurbia of Sydney.

A city is also characterised by the diverse range of products, services and employment opportunities it is able to offer. The greater concentration of services – banking, government services, law, health, education and recreational services – within cities attracts people. As a result of the location of these services, other businesses build up around them; this in turn creates demand for people to work in these businesses. This leads to the populations of the cities growing, which attracts more services. For example, Bendigo in Victoria grew into a city as a result of the discovery of gold in the nineteenth century and the demand for services by the miners.



Source 5.13 Hobart is the largest city in Tasmania and the 11th largest city in Australia.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.9

- 1 Construct a column graph that illustrates the information in the previous table (Source 5.12).
- 2 Using a blank map of Australia and an atlas or online map, find all the major cities and label them on the map.
- 3 Suggest a trend in the distribution of major cities in Australia. Explain your suggestion.

Features of large cities

Large cities are places of diverse activities and interests. Towns and cities provide various activities for the people who live in them: culture, leisure and sport, shopping and celebrations.

Culture

Australia is one of the most multicultural countries in the world. Throughout its history since 1788, Australia has received influxes of migrants from countries all around the world, from the early migration of British and Irish settlers to the mass immigration of British and European people after World War II.

According to the ABS 2011 census, 27% of the resident population were born overseas (6.0 million people). This was an increase from 10 years earlier – the figure then was 23.1% (4.5 million people). People born in the United Kingdom are the largest group of overseas-

born residents, accounting for 5.3% of Australia's total population at 30 June 2011. This is followed by people born in New Zealand (2.5%), China (1.8%), India (1.5%) and Vietnam and Italy (0.9% each).

When migrants come to Australia, many of them congregate and live in areas or suburbs where other migrants from their country live.

There are a number of examples of how migrants have influenced the culture of an area. In Jindalee in Perth, 43% of the residents were born in Britain. Harris Park in Sydney has 43% of its population born in India. In Adelaide, the suburb of Hectorville has 16% of its population born in Italy. Pacific Pines and Upper Coomera on the Gold Coast in Queensland have 15% of their residents born in New Zealand.

When large concentrations of people from the same nationalities and cultures live in an area they tend to have an impact on the built environment.

For example, in the western Sydney suburb of Cabramatta, 35% of the population were born in Vietnam. As a result of this, there have been changes in the built environment that reflect their culture, such as mall gates, which reflect and symbolise Vietnamese heritage and beliefs.

Similarly, there are many specialty shops in Cabramatta – such as grocery stores, bakeries, seafood stores and spice stores – that cater to the Vietnamese community.



Source 5.14 Ceremonial gates in the mall area of Cabramatta

Leisure/sport

Australia's warm, sunny climate is ideal for a range of leisure and sporting activities. The demand for facilities to provide and cater for these activities has shaped many of our cities. Governments and councils have to provide sports facilities from the amateur up to the professional levels. An example of a major sporting precinct is Melbourne Park in Melbourne. Within this complex are the Melbourne Cricket Ground, which is used for cricket and AFL; the Melbourne Tennis Centre, which hosts the Australian Open Tennis Championship; and Olympic Park Stadium, which is the home ground for the Melbourne Storm rugby league team, the Melbourne Rebels rugby union team and the Melbourne Victory and Melbourne City soccer teams.

Sydney and Brisbane have also developed world-class sporting facilities. Sydney hosted the 2000 Olympic Games and as a result of this has a wide range of sporting facilities. The centrepiece of this is the main Olympic stadium, which held 110 000 people during the Olympics. Since that time, rebuilding and redevelopment has reduced the seating to 80 000. This stadium plays host to a range of sporting events, from rugby league, rugby union, soccer and AFL to cricket. The Sydney Cricket Ground and Sydney Football Stadium are other major sporting locations in Sydney.



Source 5.15 Melbourne Park precinct



Source 5.16 Sydney's Olympic Park stadium



Source 5.17 Brisbane's Lang Park stadium

Shopping

Over the past 20 years, shopping in cities and towns has changed from shops in suburbs that service the local community to large regional shopping centres. These shopping centres allow shoppers to go to one location and find a variety of stores and services, including many specialty stores. The company that has been a driving force in the development of these large shopping centres is the Westfield Group. Westfield has 44 shopping centres in Australia, covering every major metropolitan area in five states, and those centres are home to more than 11 000 retail outlets.

Westfield's shopping centres attract more than 500 million visits each year. This demonstrates how dominant this company has become: it has both created demand and responds to changes in demand for shopping over the past 20 years.

The development of large shopping centres has also led to the development of other areas within cities that cater for 'boutique shopping'. These are usually populated by smaller shops owned by independent retailers or designer labels. These areas cater for those who want specialised items that cannot be found in major shopping stores and centres. Examples of these include Oxford Street in Sydney, Chapel Street in Melbourne, Rundle Street East in Adelaide, King Street in Perth and Queen Street in Brisbane.

Celebrations and nightlife

Within cities there are also areas that attract people who go out for their recreational and social activities to cafes, restaurants, bars and clubs. They tend to be located in central and/or CBD areas of the cities, such as George Street and The Rocks in Sydney, Southbank in Melbourne and Fortitude Valley in Brisbane. These areas also provide a range of employment opportunities for people.

The hospitality industry employs almost a million people in Australia and is a vital industry in terms of employment and services for the community.

Cities are also the location for many major celebrations and events, such as New Year's Eve celebrations and cultural festivals. These celebrations contribute both economically and socially to the cities. For example, the New Year's Eve celebrations in Sydney contribute

\$156 million to the local economy, with around 1.5 million people going into the city to watch the fireworks and celebrate the New Year. This demonstrates the vast economic impact that one celebration has on a city.



Source 5.18 The Gold Coast coastline and beaches, one of Australia's major tourist destinations



Source 5.19 The Rocks area of Sydney, with restaurants and views of the harbour

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.10

- 1 List the reasons you visit the centre of your capital city.
- 2 Explain why the city is an ideal place for your needs.
- 3 Discuss the benefits of attracting large numbers of people to metropolitan areas.
- 4 Identify any negatives to having so many people in the one place.

5.7 Major events in Australian cities

Cities have infrastructure and facilities that allow them to host certain large events that towns cannot support. These events can bring economic, social and cultural benefits to the city. Many cities in Australia host major events, from food and wine festivals to global events such

as the 2000 Summer Olympic Games. These events are important because they bring people, goods, services and investment into the cities and their communities.

The benefits of hosting events has seen the New South Wales and Victorian governments set up organisations

to attract major events into their cities and regional areas. This has seen many international sporting and cultural events come to New South Wales and Victoria. These have provided economic benefits for the local economy via tourism and hospitality. For example, an exhibition of artefacts from the tomb of the ancient pharaoh of Egypt, Tutankhamen, was brought to

Melbourne, and international football (soccer) team Manchester United played 2013 preseason games in Sydney. These events provided national and global exposure that promoted both Melbourne and Sydney as major cities in Australia.

One example of an Australian city hosting a major event is the 2000 Sydney Olympics.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.11

- 1 List five major features of your local city.
- 2 Identify the various events your city hosts.
- 3 Discuss the pros and cons of these events.
- 4 Suggest events you feel would benefit your local city.

The legacy of the Sydney Olympics

To me, the legacy lies in those intangible qualities such as the stories that people have to tell now because of the Olympic Games. (Cathy Freeman, 400-metre Olympic gold medallist, Sydney 2000)

The legacy of an Olympic Games is a very complex issue: how do we measure a legacy?

One way to look at the legacy of the Olympics is from an economic perspective. When Sydney bid for the 2000 Games, the bid committee estimated a total cost of \$3 billion, of which just \$363.5 million would be borne by the public. By 1998, however, when the New South Wales Auditor-General was called in to review the Games' budget, it became clear that this figure was a huge underestimate.

He calculated that the true cost of the Games was more like \$5.9 billion, of which the public would be paying \$2.3 billion. In 2002 the New South Wales Auditor-General undertook a further audit, confirming that the Sydney Games had ended up costing \$6.6 billion, and had cost the public purse somewhere between \$1.7 and \$2.4 billion.

So if you look at the legacy of the Olympic Games from an economic perspective, it wasn't a sound investment for New South Wales and Australia.

The built and physical environment is another legacy that needs to be examined. Sydney now has world-class sporting venues: ANZ Stadium (Olympic Stadium), the Olympic Park Aquatic Centre, the Equestrian Centre,

the Tennis Centre and the International Regatta Centre. These sporting areas have become training grounds for the next generation of athletes, with many schools and organisations, such as the New South Wales Institute of Sport, using them to train young athletes. By having these world-class facilities, Australia's young athletes can develop their talents, which may allow them to achieve their goals of competing at a global level and even in future Olympics.

Another contentious issue in hosting an Olympics is what to do with the built environment (other than the sporting venues) once the Games have finished. Having developed such specific infrastructure and sites for the Olympics, there needs to be ways to adapt and/or redevelop the area afterwards. One of the key reuses of the Olympic site was the conversion of the Athletes' Village into a residential suburb called Newington. This was very successful, with many of the houses being purchased straight after the Olympics.

Another major reuse was the relocation of the Royal Easter Show from Moore Park to the Olympic site. The Royal Easter Show is an annual two-week event that showcases agricultural products and livestock, and it attracts over 800 000 people. This move has been very successful: it has new, modern facilities for all exhibitors, and a more central and accessible location, so there are now increased attendances.

However, while these reuses are in effect now, the Olympics site was underutilised for a long period after the Games, with governments and authorities debating what to do with it. There were many debates as to the best model to use, but they eventually settled on a 'mixed use' philosophy. This approach promotes the



Source 5.20 The Royal Easter Show now uses the Olympic site.

integration of recreational, educational, residential and commercial activities in the one area.

The recreation aspect was achieved by using the Olympics sporting facilities and by providing green space in the form of parks. Education has been included through the development of a centre that runs fieldwork activities; these look at the land remediation process on the Homebush site. The centre also runs activities that look at the regeneration of the **intertidal wetlands**, which were once under severe threat.

intertidal wetland the part of a shore between the high water and the low water marks

Residential development was seen as a crucial part of the reuse of the Olympic site. The residential living on the site currently consists of two high-rise towers, named the Australia Towers, with a further two towers in the planning or construction phase. Having a permanent population changed the dynamic of the area; people who lived there permanently needed a range of services, such as cafes, restaurants, retail and supermarkets, all of which had to be built.

The commercial sector was slow to move to the Olympic site, but over the past 4–5 years there has been an increase in the amount of commercial activity. The most notable commercial activity on the site was the building of three office blocks by the Commonwealth Bank. These blocks house around 5000 employees who have been relocated from the Sydney CBD. There has



Source 5.21 One of the Australia Towers high-rise apartment towers in Olympic Park

also been an increase in the number of hotels on the site, with three permanent hotels catering for tourists and for those attending events (such as music and sporting events) held at the site.

The ‘Green Games’ left many unique and significant benefits for the physical environment.

It regenerated ecologically sensitive wetlands, protected and enhanced the biodiversity of sites, established vast areas of green space within a built environment and remediated land. This has had dramatic impact on the environment. Areas that were once sites for residential and industrial waste dumping are now areas of unique environmental significance: the Brickpit (where clay was extracted to make bricks) is now home to a colony of the green and golden bell frog.

Source 5.22 Green and golden bell frog



UNDERSTANDING 5.12

- 1 Copy the table below and summarise the positive and negative legacy of the Sydney Olympics.

The legacy of the Sydney Olympics

Positive	Negative

Use the internet to gather information about the Sydney and London Olympic Games.

Compare and contrast the legacies of the Sydney Olympics (2000) and the London Olympics (2012). In your answer you should look at:

- built environment
- economic costs
- sporting facilities
- environmental impacts
- reuse of the Olympic sites.

- 2 Imagine that your home city or town is chosen to host the next Olympic Games, then complete the following tasks:

- Identify an area in your home city/town that would be the centre of the Games and suggest what kinds of changes to buildings, facilities and infrastructure would be required to host the events.
- Suggest the economic effects the Games would have on your town while they are being held, and their possible economic legacy.
- Suggest what changes to the built environment would remain in place after the Games and how those places could be repurposed for ongoing use.
- Explain the environmental impact the Games would have on your home city/town and what could be done to protect the local environment.

5.8 Tourism

domestic tourism where people travel within their own country for recreation

international tourism where people travel outside their own country for recreation

Tourism is a valued and important industry in Australia.

It contributes around \$34 billion per year to the Australian economy, and employs 500 000 people directly. There are two types of tourism: **domestic tourism** and **international tourism**.

leisure market is a key segment of the Australian tourism industry. The core target is families, with parents who are 30–54 years old: this represents 35% of Australia's population.

The locations most visited by domestic tourists are the major capital cities – Sydney, Melbourne and Brisbane. Outside these, the most popular locations are the Gold Coast, the Whitsundays, tropical North Queensland, the Hunter Valley and the Blue Mountains.

In 2011–12 the most common state for domestic tourists to go to was New South Wales, which had 33% of all visitors from outside the state. This was followed by Queensland, with 25%, and Victoria, with 24%. These three states dominated domestic tourism, with a total of

Domestic travel by Australians

Domestic travel within Australia is an important part of tourism. It accounts for three-quarters of the tourism spend in Australia annually: \$25 billion a year. According to Tourism Australia, the domestic overnight

82% of all visitors. The main reasons domestic tourists gave for their travel during this period were going on a holiday (43%), visiting friends and relatives (34%) and business (19%).



Source 5.23 Whitehaven Beach in the Whitsundays, a major domestic tourist destination

International travel by Australians

The numbers of Australians travelling overseas have increased dramatically in the last 10 years.

According to the ABS, 3.5 million residents departed Australia in 2002. By 2011 this number had increased to 7.8 million and in 2012 it was 8.2 million. That is an 134% increase in that 10-year period.

There are some key trends, the first of which is that New Zealand is the most visited country by Australians. However, from 2007 to 2012 there was an overall increase in the number of people going (an additional 201 300 people) but a 3.1% decrease in the overall proportion of people going to New Zealand. In other words, more people went to New Zealand than ever, but the overall number of people going overseas increased so much that those New Zealand trips were a smaller proportion of the amount than before.

The second key trend is the dramatic increase in the number of Australians going to Indonesia. In 2007 there were 282 500 people going to Indonesia. By 2012 there were 911 800 people, or 11% of all Australians going overseas as tourists.

There are a number of factors that have led to the increase in Australian residents travelling overseas.

The main factor has been the emergence of low-cost airlines such as Jetstar, Pacific Blue, Air Asia and Scoot. This has increased the number of flights and lowered airfares to close international destinations such as Indonesia, Thailand, Singapore and Fiji.

Another factor is the value of the Australian dollar. With the Australian dollar strong against most other major currencies (meaning that instead of, say, getting US80c for A\$1, you get US\$1 for A\$1, which is called parity), it is very attractive for Australian residents to take an overseas holiday, especially to places like the United States, where the exchange rate is around parity. Natural hazards in Australia have also contributed to residents going overseas for holidays. Cyclones and floods, especially in Queensland, have led people to look for other places to holiday.



Source 5.24 Auckland, New Zealand: Australia's most popular international destination



Source 5.25 Kuta, Bali: Australians like Bali for a beach holiday because it is very cheap.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.13

- 1 Explain why tourists would be drawn to major cities.
- 2 Suggest why Australians travel overseas.
- 3 List factors that would deter Australians from travelling overseas.
- 4 Discuss the tourism appeal of each state for both domestic and international tourists.

RESEARCH 5.1

Select a town or area and evaluate the impact of tourism on it. In a short report, refer to tourism's:

- economic impact
- environmental impact
- cultural impact.

Popular Australian tourist destinations

There are many tourist destinations in Australia that appeal to both domestic and international tourists.

This section looks at different destinations. These destinations have very different appeals and are popular with different groups of tourists – and face different challenges as a consequence of tourism.

By looking at several locations, we can build up a picture of Australian tourism that is more complete than if we just looked at a single place.

Hunter Valley, New South Wales

The Hunter Valley is 155 kilometres northwest of Sydney.

It is the second most visited area in New South Wales (after Sydney); 7.6 million people visited the Hunter Valley in 2012. The Hunter Valley is most famous for wine-making, and there are many **vineyards** and **wineries** in the area. The wineries range in size from small boutique wineries up to large, internationally recognised wineries.

With such a large number of tourists going to the area, facilities are needed to cater for them. This has seen the development of accommodation for those staying for weekends or longer periods. Small-scale **bed and breakfast**

venues cater for couples, while five-star resorts such as Cypress Lakes Resort and the Hunter Valley Country Club accommodate wealthy families.

Other tourist attractions have developed in the area. There are three golf courses (Cypress Lakes, the Vintage and the Hunter Valley Golf Club), as well as hot air ballooning, historic sites, horse riding and shopping.

This tourist industry has been of tremendous economic benefit to the Hunter Valley. In 2012 tourism



Source 5.26 Grape growing and wine production is the biggest industry in the Hunter Valley.

vineyard a plantation where grapes are grown, usually for use in wine-making

winery a place where wine is made

bed and breakfast a guest house that supplies sleeping accommodation and a meal in the morning

contributed an estimated \$1.6 billion to the local economy. Tourism also employs thousands of people in the area, especially in restaurants and accommodation.

Longreach, Queensland

Longreach is a town in the central west of Queensland, around 1200 kilometres northwest of Brisbane. It is a small town – 4189 people – that has a number of tourist attractions. The main one is the Australian Stockman's Hall of Fame. The Hall of Fame was built in 1988 to recognise the contributions that various people have made to life in outback Australia. It displays the history of famous explorers, stockmen, pastoralists and Indigenous Australians who explored and worked in the outback. It also houses a vast collection of archival material, including photographs, artworks and other items. Since it opened, over 1 million people have visited the Hall of Fame, which indicates how popular it is.

Another major attraction in Longreach is the Qantas Founders Museum. The Queensland and Northern Territory Air Service (QANTAS) was started in Longreach, where a hangar and a runway were built in the 1920s. Since then, Qantas has grown to be one of Australia's biggest companies, and this museum is dedicated to preserving the humble beginnings of this Australian icon.

Each year around 120000 visitors go to Longreach, which has tremendous economic benefit to the town. On average these visitors stay for 4 or 5 nights.



Source 5.27 Stockman's Hall of Fame in Longreach

Phillip Island, Victoria

Phillip Island is 140 kilometres south-southeast of Melbourne. The island is 26 kilometres long and 9 kilometres wide, and it has a population of 9406 people.

There are two major tourist attractions, and they bring 3.5 million visitors to the island each year.

The first is the area's natural and wildlife features, such as the little penguin colony, Seal Rocks and the Koala Conservation Centre.

One unique and very popular wildlife feature of Phillip Island is the Penguin Parade. The little penguins of the colony (formerly known as 'fairy penguins') go out to sea each day to catch food (mostly pilchards and other small fish) for themselves and their young. Just on dusk every evening they return and make their way up the beach to their burrows in the sand dunes. Tourists can sit and watch the penguins come up onto the beach and into their burrows; Phillip Island is one of the few places in the world where you can watch such an event.



Source 5.28 A little penguin nesting on Phillip Island

The second major tourist event is the island's program of motor sport. The Phillip Island Grand Prix Circuit is home to major motor racing events each year, including events for the international MotoGP series (motorcycles), the World Superbike Championship and the domestic V8 Supercar Series. The events attract thousands of people; for example, the 2012 MotoGP attracted a 3-day record of 122465 people.

With both the motor sports and wildlife features attracting such a large number of visitors, Phillip Island faces major issues in protecting the environment from the tourists. A special visitor centre had to be built to cater for the large numbers of people going to the Penguin Parade.

Governments and local authorities have to ensure that environment and wildlife tourism remains ecologically sustainable and is not exploited for purely economic reasons.



Source 5.29 Phillip Island's Grand Prix circuit

Port Arthur, Tasmania

Port Arthur is 61 kilometres south-east of Hobart, and has a population of 366 people. The British established Port Arthur as a **penal colony** in 1830. Port Arthur continued as a convict settlement up to 1877, when it ceased operation. After its closure, tourists started coming to the site to see and try to understand what the convicts had gone through. People come from all over the world to view this historic site, so tourism is a stable source of income for the area.

penal colony an institution where prisoners are held (often located on an island or an isolated location from which escape is difficult, or impossible)

In 2012 around 220 000 people visited Port Arthur, making it the most popular tourist destination in Tasmania. In recognition of this, the Tasmanian government has put a lot of resources into preserving and protecting the site, which is now listed as a World Heritage site. As part of the preservation program, the



Source 5.31 Ruins of Port Arthur penitentiary



Source 5.30 Ruins of the convict hospital at Port Arthur

Port Arthur Historical Sites Management Authority, which runs the site, has developed extensive educational and archaeological programs. The aim of these programs is to educate people while preserving an important part of Australian history.

Coober Pedy, South Australia

Coober Pedy is a town in the far north of South Australia, 850 kilometres north of Adelaide and 700 kilometres south of Alice Springs. Opal was discovered in the region in 1915, and a wave of European migrants came to the area in the 1960s to seek their fortune.

Opal mining developed into a multi-million dollar industry and Coober Pedy slowly developed into a modern mining town, the 'Opal Capital of the World'.

The town is widely known for its underground housing, an effective and environmentally friendly response to the area's searing summer heat and chilly



Source 5.32 Underground house in Coober Pedy

dugout a shelter that is dug into the ground and roofed over

desert evenings. This is one of the main tourist attractions of the town, as it offers visitors an experience that isn't found anywhere else in the world. These underground houses,

called **dugouts**, attract thousands of tourists each year, providing valuable economic stimulus to what is now a small mining town.

The constant influx of tourists has also created employment for locals in the hospitality industry and led to the development of many tourism-based small businesses, such as outback tours and mine tours.

Monkey Mia, Western Australia

Monkey Mia is located in the Shark Bay World Heritage Area, around 800 kilometres north of Perth. It is famous for its bottlenose dolphins; for the past 40 years, the dolphins have come in to the shallow waters and allowed humans to feed fish to them.

The amazing thing about this is that it has been a completely natural behaviour; humans have not trained these bottlenose dolphins to come in – the dolphins do so by themselves.

Around 100 000 tourists go to Monkey Mia each year to see the dolphins fed. The large number of tourists has created some major concerns about the management and protection of the dolphins and the environment of the area. The Western Australia Department of



Source 5.33 The bottlenose dolphins found at Monkey Mia

Conservation and Environment manages the dolphin experience by:

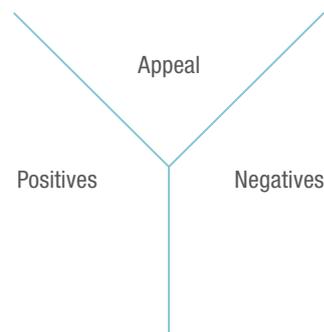
- regulating dolphin feeding
- maintaining a dolphin interaction area
- careful recruitment of new dolphins into the interaction program
- regulation of boat encounters.

The government is hoping to protect the dolphins and maintain an ecologically sustainable tourism industry here, ensuring that Monkey Mia can be enjoyed by future generations.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 5.14

- 1 Copy the graphic organiser and look at the positives, negatives and appeal of one of the Australian tourist destinations discussed in this chapter.
- 2 Use the internet to gather information about another popular tourist destination in your home state.
- 3 Use the information you have gathered to plan a 5-day family holiday to that destination. Your plan should include:

- transportation costs to and from the destination
- details of where you will stay for five nights, and the costs of the accommodation and meals
- details on activities for each day of your stay – what you will be doing, how much it will cost and how much time it will take.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Places are parts of the Earth's surface that have specific meaning for the people who identify with them.
- We use the concept of space to better understand where, how and why places are located and connected over the Earth's surface.
- How we identify and interact with a place and its spatial features depends on our personal and cultural perspectives on the relationship we have with the place and its natural and human environmental features, and why it is important for us, our culture, our people and our future.
- Through understanding our and other people's worldviews – the collection of ideas, beliefs and spiritual connections through which people personally, as groups and cultures, understand, connect with and interact with the world – we are more able to positively connect with other people and cultures.
- How we see and connect with places includes whether or not we feel safe and included in the place.
- Where we live and the types of transport available to us have a major influence on how we live and connect with other places.
- Through including and listening to people's stories about the importance of place to them we are better able to be part of positive, inclusive and caring communities.
- A town is defined as a built-up area that is larger than a village and generally smaller than a city, and that has a name, defined boundaries and local government.
- A city is defined as a large town.
- Cities host major events that play an important role: they bring people, goods, services and investment into the cities, which leads to economic benefits for the cities.
- There are many tourist destinations in Australia, providing a wide range of experiences and appealing to different groups of visitors.

Short-answer questions

- 1 List the influences on a person's sense of place and space.
- 2 Discuss why people might move locally or internationally.
- 3 Suggest why consensus is important when managing places like Uluru.
- 4 Describe the value of transport in an area.
- 5 Evaluate the importance of tourism to the Australian economy.

Extended-response question

Everyone has a sense of place, space and belonging. Imagine you are a person with a disability or from a different culture. In a diary entry, explore your perceptions and use of places and spaces in your local area. How does your perception of place and accessibility affect how you engage with and connect to this place?

6

Patterns of consumption

Before you start

Main focus

What we consume and where it is produced link places around the world.

Why it's relevant to us

Over the last 20 years there have been sizeable shifts in patterns of production and consumption. As technology becomes more advanced, there have been changes in what we buy and where it is produced.

Manufacturing is shifting to China and other countries, while industry in developed countries is changing.

Inquiry questions

- What do we mean by the 'Industrial Revolution', 'industrialism' and 'capitalism'?
- How have traditional centres of production changed?
- How is technology shifting patterns of production?

Key terms

- Footloose
- GDP (Gross Domestic Product)
- Hi-tech
- Industrialism
- Manufactured
- Outsourcing
- Transnational companies (or corporations)
- Venture capitalist

Let's begin

The city of Pittsburgh was changed by rapid industrialisation and by the challenges it faced after many industries left the area. Technology plays a key role in the changing patterns of production, and Silicon Valley is now an important place. The region of Pudong in China has also changed dramatically through the rise of manufacturing in the region, with significant environmental impacts. The laptop provides an interesting example of the way production and consumption cross national borders.

6.1 The Industrial Revolution

Before 1750 most of the world's population lived in rural areas, working the land, often in extremely tough conditions. Skilled craftspeople produced **manufactured** goods in small quantities in these rural areas. While cities existed, their populations were smaller and they were fewer in number. The Industrial Revolution changed this situation forever. This shift started in Britain but quickly spread through Europe, and North America and from there to the rest of the world. As cities developed, new large-scale industries were set up.

manufactured to produce something in a mechanical way

Geographical thought

In 1800 there were 22 cities worldwide with more than 100 000 inhabitants. By 1895 there were 100 cities with more than 100 000 inhabitants.

Industrialism across the world

industrialism when a country's economic and social systems become based on the production of goods through mechanised industries in urban centres, rather than through agriculture

Although the Industrial Revolution led to **industrialism** in Europe, North America and Australia in the 19th century, this shift occurred much later in many regions. Countries such as India, South Africa and Thailand are currently shifting from agricultural to industrial production, at an extremely rapid rate.

The extent to which a country is industrialised can be influenced by a range of factors, including the growth of population, access to technology and the amount and types of raw materials that are available for use by industry.

Industrialisation is closely related to the level of development in a country. Industrialised countries tend

to be richer, have higher levels of education and longer life expectancy.

As countries become established as centres of **industry** and populations grow richer, their ability to produce goods at a competitive price can start to reduce as wages increase, making it difficult to compete with companies that operate in countries that are poorer and pay lower wages, countries where industrialisation is in its earlier stages. What happens then in the established industrialised countries is often the emergence of service industries, such as financial services, health care and information technology.

industry a type of commerce or business, such as the metal industry or the tourism industry

Source 6.1 A shipping port of an industrialised country



Geographical Thought

Over 60% of those employed in Australia work in service industries.

Capitalism

Industrialisation has led to most nations in the world adopting, to a greater or lesser extent, what is known as a capitalist economic system.

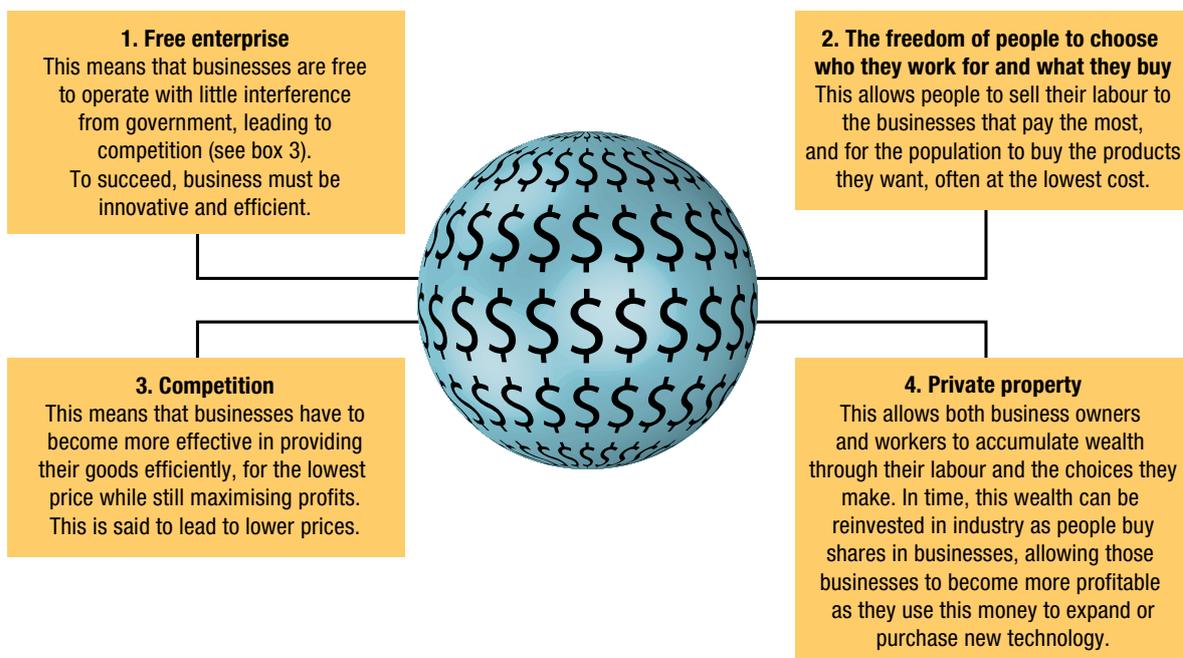
Throughout the twentieth century capitalist principles led to huge industrial growth in developed nations. Capitalists argue that by letting private industry run the economy – rather than relying on governments to intervene by planning economic growth, setting high taxes and redistributing wealth – the population will become wealthier in a shorter period of time. They also suggest that the system rewards hard work and innovation and is equitable in that anyone with these qualities can succeed.

Many argue, though, that this type of system exploits poor workers while maximising money made by rich shareholders and factory owners.

This is now an issue in developing countries as companies from developed nations set up factories overseas – this helps them maximise their profits because they pay less for labour. Others suggest that the system is vulnerable in times of economic instability, as share market collapses can lead to mass unemployment and a drop in standard of living. Environmentalists argue that capitalism often overlooks environmental damage, as companies focus on making a profit, not on sustainability.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.1

- 1 Explain how population growth was related to the Industrial Revolution.
- 2 Use the internet to research the extent to which industrialisation has occurred in the following regions: Africa, Southeast Asia and South America. Describe your findings in a short paragraph.



Source 6.2 Understanding what capitalism is

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.2

- Copy the table below and analyse the positives and negatives of capitalism. As an extension task, find examples of each of these points through research. Conclude by stating whether or not you think capitalism is a good system.

Positives of capitalism	Negatives of capitalism
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased wealth 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exploited workers

Goods and services

As more factories were built and more products were manufactured, there was a range of benefits, all of which fed the economy and allowed the population to become wealthier and have a higher standard of living.

Fordism

Factories provided employment, which meant people were earning a steady income. This is a significant shift from rural economies, where much of the population is likely to live off the products they grow or tend. As income increased, the general population, for the first

time, had money to spend. Henry Ford, in the 1920s, made sure he paid his workers enough money to, over time, be able to buy his cars. This was known as 'Fordism': if the workers were able to buy the product they were making, there would be more of the product needed, thus increasing the profitability of the company.

This approach was extremely successful in post-war America, during the period known as the baby boom, when employment was high and the economy was expanding.

Savings and investments

As workers accumulated money over time, they had the opportunity to save considerable sums.

This allowed the working class for the first time to buy their own homes. This, in turn, generated more wealth – as the economy grew there was a need for more construction workers, and a need for more factories to produce building materials.

The money accumulated by workers was also invested in shares in companies. Many businesses gave workers special discounts to buy shares in the company they worked for. This ensured that the company would maximise its productivity and provided more money to be invested in equipment.

The rise and fall of heavy industry in developed countries

During the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, industrial centres across the United States and Europe followed a similar pattern of rapid growth and gradual



Source 6.3 Ford Model T, the first mass-produced affordable car



Source 6.4 Location map of Pittsburgh, USA

decline. The reasons for this pattern are almost universal and can be seen through the example of Pittsburgh in the United States.

Pittsburgh is in the state of Pennsylvania, in the northeast of the country. During the early 1800s its position at a **confluence** of two rivers – which then become the Ohio River – led to its development as a trading post.

confluence the point at which rivers meet

Between 1850 and 1950 the population of the city rose from around 60 000 to over 650 000 as heavy industry developed in the region.

The rise of Pittsburgh as an industrial hub was due to a range of physical and human factors, as set out below.

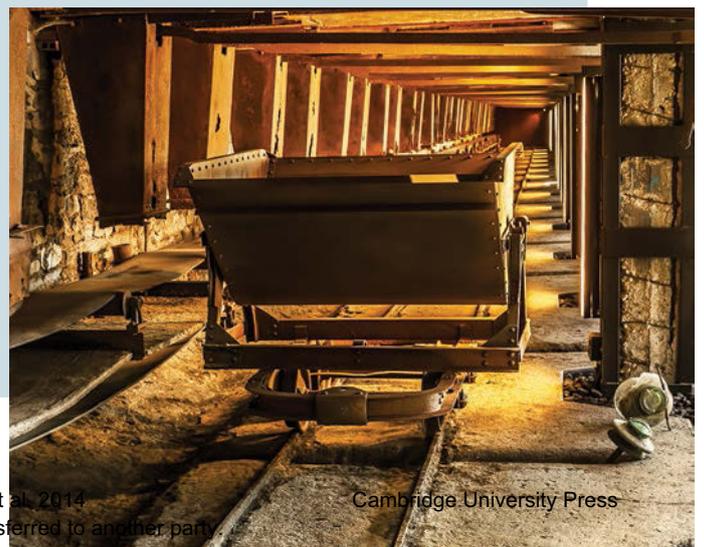


Position on two rivers

Pittsburgh's two major rivers provided a means to transport heavy goods all around the eastern and central United States, and north to Canada. Water was also a vital resource for the steel and glass industries, as millions of litres are required for the production of these goods.

Close proximity of coal deposits and other raw materials

A reliable supply of coal was vital for the development of heavy industry. It provided energy for the iron-smelting process that produces steel. As coal is expensive to transport, heavy industry developed around the coal fields close to Pittsburgh. In 1914, 82 000 people were employed in coal mines around Pittsburgh.





Cheap labour

High levels of immigration to the area from Europe and other regions led to a cheap labour force, willing to work in the unskilled jobs associated with the new iron mills.

When slavery was abolished many African-Americans also headed north looking for work.

6.2 From heavy to hi-tech

As most developed countries have experienced a decline in heavy industry in the last 25 years, new industries, with vastly different requirements in terms of location and workforce, have sprung up. Jobs in heavy industry have been replaced by employment in **hi-tech**

hi-tech products and technology that are complex, and that use or produce the latest advances in computers and electronics

footloose able to relocate easily

companies, including information technology, specialised electronic and advanced manufacturing, and in other sorts of industries, such as financial services and communication-based businesses. These hi-tech industries are described as **footloose**.

While heavy industry was tied to a particular location as a result of the need for raw materials such as coal, modern hi-tech industries, such as software development companies, can be far more flexible in their choice of location. There are, moreover, several key factors that are attractive to these types of industries, as is shown next.



Source 6.5 Hi-tech industries can be flexible in choosing manufacturing locations.



Source 6.6 Heavy industries are tied to a particular location due to the need for raw materials.



Communication

Many hi-tech industry hubs are established along communication routes that allow quick and easy movement of workers and goods. Close proximity to airports is also considered important as many of these companies are global businesses. Fast and available broadband and cable networks are also a necessity for this type of business.



Close to a skilled workforce

Hi-tech businesses are only successful if a suitable workforce of highly qualified employees is available. As a result, these businesses are often located close to major universities.



In or near attractive natural environments

Because attracting the right skilled workers is vital to these businesses, offering the chance to work and live in an attractive environment is also important.



Close to other hi-tech businesses

This allows the sharing of services, greater exchanges of ideas and innovations, and reduced transport costs for components.

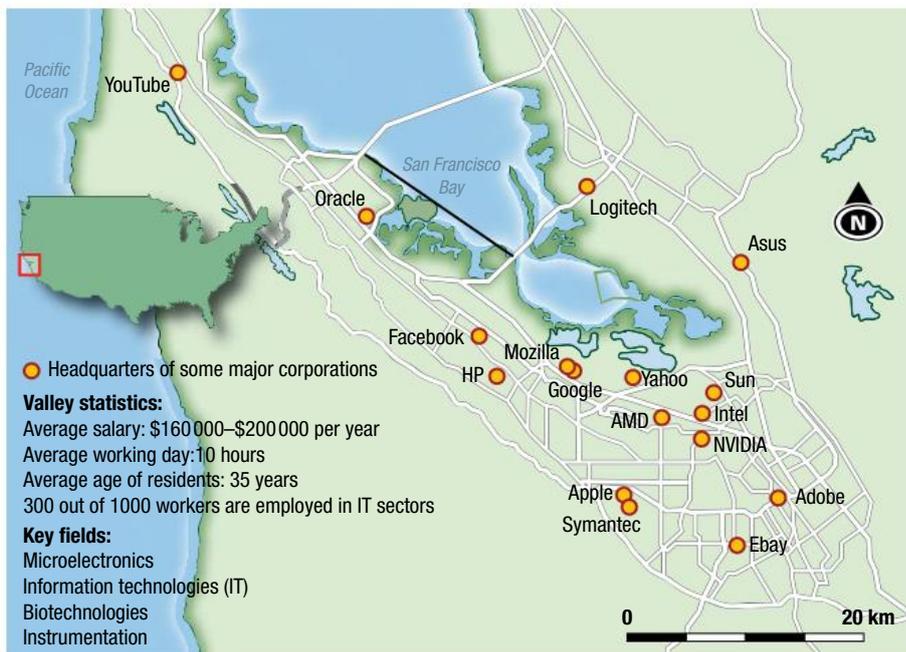
Hi-tech industry in Silicon Valley

The area in California known as Silicon Valley is the biggest and most famous example of an area dominated by hi-tech industry. With around 300 000 workers in these industries generating \$200 billion in turnover each year, this region is vital to the United State's economy.

Silicon Valley has been a key centre of the computer industry since the late 1970s, and the explosion in home computer ownership can be linked directly to its growth. In 1975 around 3000 computers were sold

to the public. In 2012 around 330 million were sold worldwide. Most of these were produced by companies with roots in Silicon Valley.

The massive increase in access to and use of the internet has benefited the region, with many hundreds of companies providing online services, servers and software. But why is this region so attractive to these companies?



Source 6.7 Map of Silicon Valley

Causes of its success

Stanford University, located nearby, is considered one of the main factors in the success of the region.

The university, backed by government funding in the 1950s and 1960s for defence research, founded a research park in the grounds of the university that attracted hi-tech companies. Many of the graduates went on to form highly successful companies in the region. In the 1970s and 1980s, research on computers and the initial development of the internet took place at the university, leading to a large skilled workforce living locally.

The Bay region of San Francisco has an attractive climate and interesting natural scenery, and is well known for its laid-back lifestyle. Many of the companies adopted such a culture, and firms such as Apple and Google became renowned as model employers, attracting the most talented workers from across the globe. Highway 101, running through the valley, provides a fast and direct communication link between the area and San Francisco.



Source 6.8 Headquarters of Oracle, in Silicon Valley – all the buildings are Oracle buildings.

While a number of the companies located in the valley are huge, most are small businesses with few employees. This has led to a culture of sharing and collaboration between companies, and this has helped make this region home to many leaders in innovative technology. It has given them the edge over other regions

venture capitalist
a company or individual that invests large sums of money in small companies to help them start up and grow

that are characterised by larger, more secretive business operations.

With the success of companies such as Apple, Silicon Valley became home to a large number of **venture capitalists**. Because 40% of all venture capital in the United States is invested in the region, small businesses are attracted to the area – the chances of attracting investment are higher there than elsewhere.

Effects of hi-tech industry in Silicon Valley

Impact on regional and national economies

If California were a country, it would have the eighth highest **GDP (Gross Domestic Product)** in the world. This illustrates the size and importance of California's economy both to the United States and globally.

GDP (Gross Domestic Product) the total value of all goods and services produced in a particular country; often used to compare the size of national economies

The technology companies of Silicon Valley are a hugely important sector, contributing roughly \$40 billion of the state's \$168 billion in exports, as of 2012. This huge sum of money,

combined with the fact that the area is home to most businesses attempting to start up, makes its success vital at both a regional and a national level.

Living in the area

Hi-tech industries have had many positive effects on Silicon Valley. Employment rates are higher, and local governments collect large amounts of tax from industries in the area. As Silicon Valley

floating (a company) letting the public buy shares in it; this gives the company money to invest or spend

has developed, the area has become home to a large number of the super-rich. The 2012 **floating** of Facebook instantly created 1000 millionaires in the valley.

The demand for skilled workers has also pushed average wages up. While this attracts workers, demand for housing also pushes prices up. The price of rental accommodation is 78% higher here than the United States average, and the purchase price of a typical house is up to three times the country's average. This makes it

hard for those not working in these high-paying sectors to live in the area.

Traffic congestion and loss of farmland as companies continue to expand in the region are other concerns; this changes the pristine environment that attracted many to live in the area in the first place.

Migration to Silicon Valley

As technology companies continue to hand-pick the best and brightest graduates from around the world, Silicon Valley has become among the most multicultural regions in the United States.

Over half of the scientists and engineers working in the region come from overseas (see Source 6.9). This has given the region a unique cultural identity, as well as a competitive advantage in terms of the level of innovation occurring. However, these workers are more mobile than workforces associated with traditional industries, and they are now moving to other locations, including Pittsburgh, where the cost of living is low.

Silicon Valley and globalisation

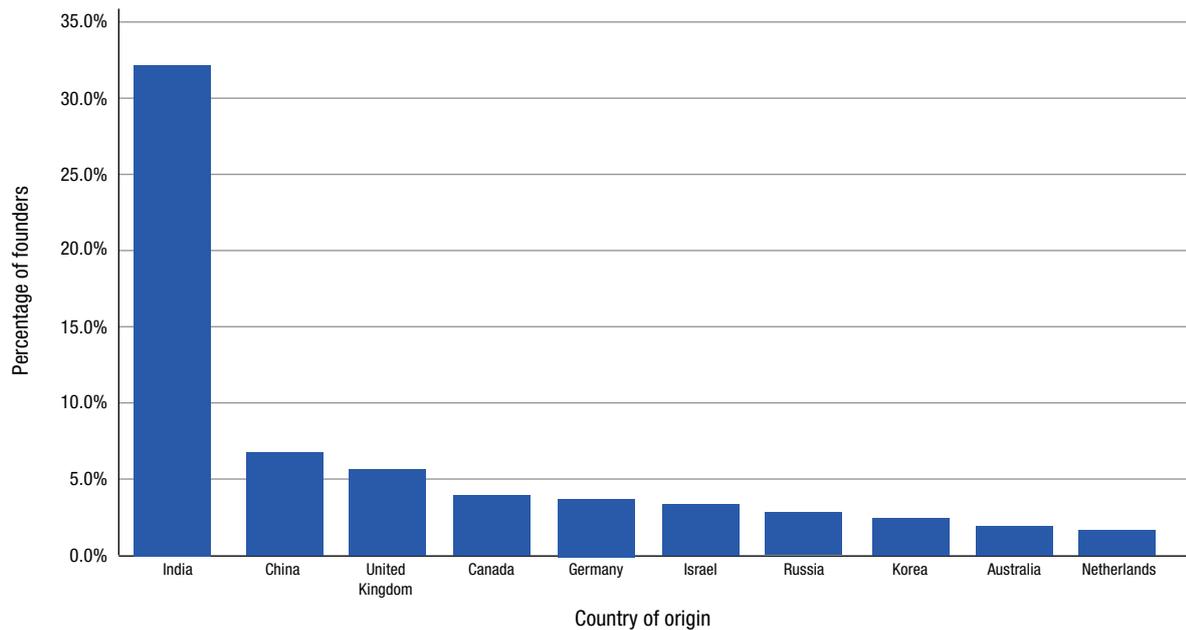
Migration is an important element of the success of Silicon Valley, but the region's relationship with other countries is more complex than just the movement of workers. Many of the larger companies within the area, such as Apple and IBM, are **transnational companies**.

transnational companies (or corporations) companies that operate their businesses in and across more than one country; also called multinational companies

This means that, as wages in the area and the price of land continue to rise, some operations can be shifted overseas. Apple, for example, made all its products in the United States until 2002. It has since shifted production to countries such as China. Apple still employs over 18000 people in the United States, but up to 700000 workers in factories in other countries, subcontracted by Apple, are taking on its manufacturing.

Also, highly skilled engineers and software workers are heading back to their native countries to use the skills learned in Silicon Valley.

Companies in countries such as India are now employing these workers to lead their own hi-tech operations. Conversely, Europeans are coming to Silicon Valley to try to start up operations, taking advantage of the infrastructure and venture capital – they may leave the region later.



Source 6.9 The birthplaces of scientists and engineers in Silicon Valley

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.3

- 1 Summarise the difference between heavy industry and footloose industries.
- 2 Describe and explain two factors that influence the location of footloose industries.
- 3 List key factors for the success of Silicon Valley as a centre of hi-tech industry.
- 4 Explain why Silicon Valley is one of the most multicultural regions in the United States.
- 5 Create a digital map, using Google Earth, that highlights the geographical features that play a role in Silicon Valley's success. Label Stanford University, Highway 101, distance to the CBD of San Francisco, and the location of the headquarters of Google, Facebook and Hewlett Packard. Write your own description of the relevance of each of these.

The future of hi-tech industry in the United States

Export of hi-tech jobs

Many are concerned that the trend of computer-based industry heading overseas will continue, particularly as cities such as Bangalore in India continue to attract investment in these areas. Also, there are millions of graduates emerging from India's and China's universities, which is adding to the concern, as wages and costs are lower in both those countries. Others argue that Silicon Valley's culture of innovation will create new opportunities and markets in the United States. They use the example of social networking websites that didn't

exist 10 years ago and now employ tens of thousands of people.

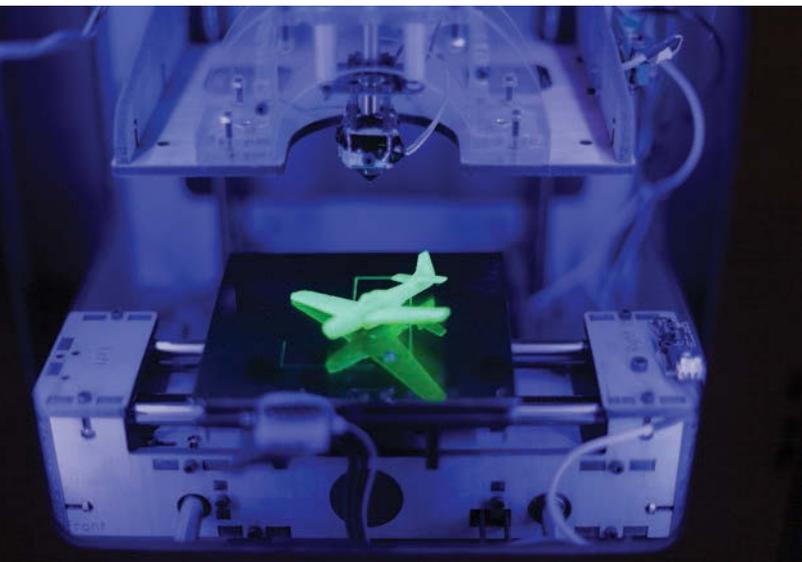
Footloose employees

Advances in technology have increased the ability of people in a variety of jobs in a huge range of sectors to work from home. As fibre optic technology improves communication, this may well make the physical location of a workforce less important. This is particularly relevant in the IT industry, where many of the jobs revolve around the use of computers and the internet anyway.

Global companies may have employees in India, the United States and China collaborating on projects in real time.

Advanced manufacturing

Hi-tech and sophisticated manufacturing still exists in the United States and it is expected to continue to grow. One of the most exciting developments is the emergence of 3D printers.



Source 6.10 A 3D printer creates a model plane.

These machines can 'print' products, and as they increase in sophistication many feel this type of manufacturing may replace traditional factories.

These machines are already being used to make tools for existing factories, so it is possible that they will one day replace the factories.

China: rising giant of industry

In 2011 China took over from the United States as the country with the largest industrial output, producing over 20% of all manufactured goods globally. Its rise in this sector of the economy has been rapid, with spectacular growth in a wide range of industries, most notably in the last 20 years.

Reasons for the growth of Chinese industry

With a population of around 2 billion, China has both a large available workforce and a significant domestic market for manufactured goods. Also, China's position in the centre of Asia means it is close to a large number of strong economies, such as Japan and India, which are valuable trading partners.

Developments in agriculture have reduced the need for large numbers of rural workers, which has led to rural–urban migration.

China is a one-party communist state with a very high degree of central control and, until recently, no private ownership of property or companies. It has planned its industrial growth carefully, with all large investments in technology and infrastructure being made by the state. In the last two decades the government has taken a different approach, trying to attract investment from foreign companies through the establishment of Special Economic Zones (SEZ) where taxes and restrictions on import and export are removed.

Wages are lower in China than in Western countries, and laws regarding the conditions of workers and environmental regulations are generally weaker. These combine to reduce the cost of goods produced, which has made those goods very competitive on the world market.

China's economy

Prior to 1975 China's economy was dominated by agriculture, although there was some manufacturing, with an emphasis on heavy industry such as chemicals – these were used to make fertilisers, which increased agricultural production. In the last 20 years manufacturing has become the dominant force, as a result of government plans to increase this sector.

China now manufactures a huge variety of goods, including clothing, cars and trucks, electronics and, increasingly, advanced technology such as computers and mobile phones.

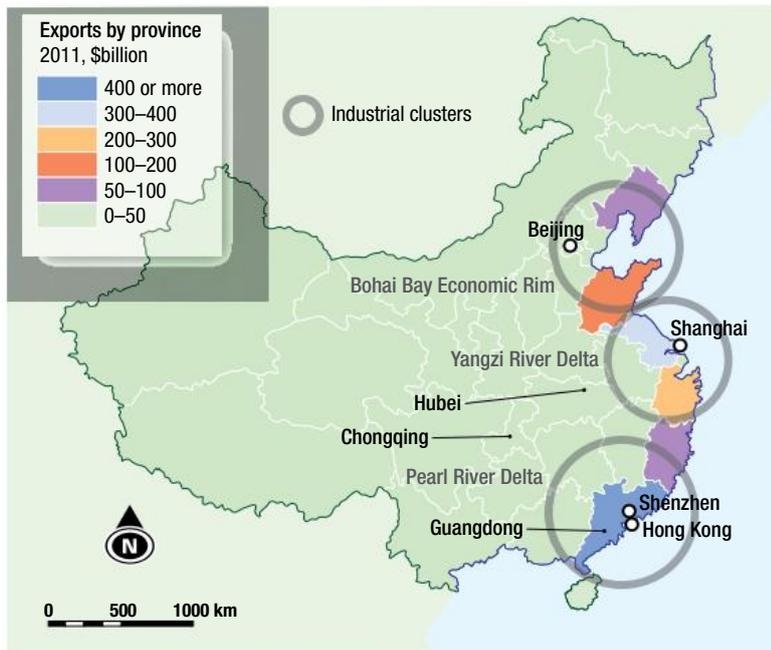
Geographical thought

China produces 50% of all the cameras made in the world.

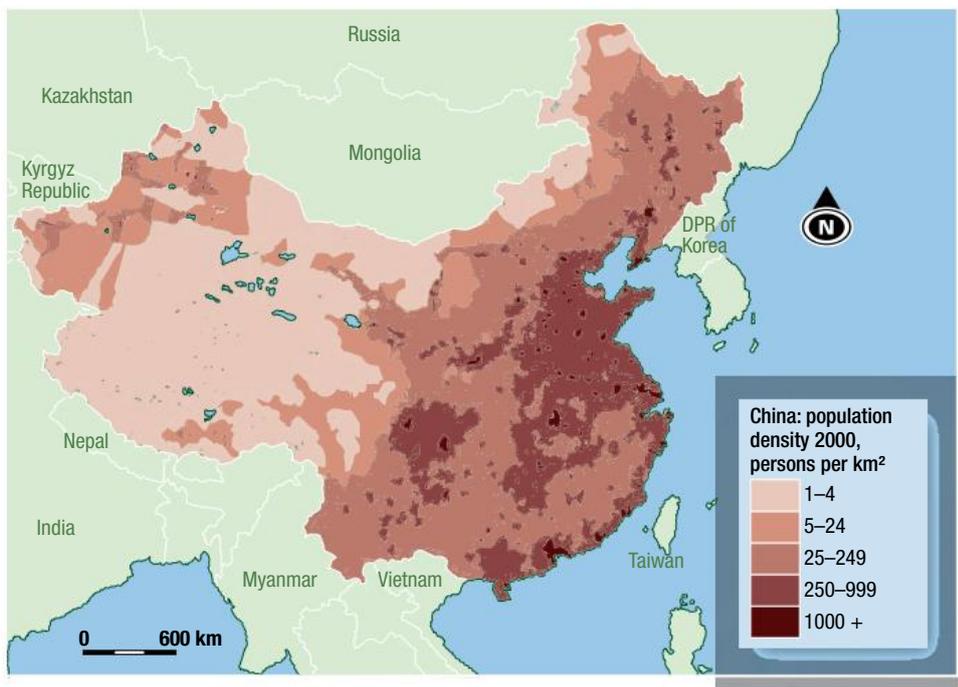
While a lot of goods produced are exported, China's huge population and growing wealth mean there is also a large domestic market now able to afford an increasing range of products.

Manufacturing goods

Most of China's industry is based in the coastal regions (see Sources 6.11 and 6.12). This, unsurprisingly, is where most of the population is to be found. These areas were settled early, before industrialisation, as they provided trading links, fertile soils and a ready water supply. These regions are also attractive to industry, because:



Source 6.11 China's industrial clusters



Source 6.12 Population density map of China

- Coasts provide ports to import raw materials and export goods.
- The east coast is close to major markets such as Japan, and is the start of shipping routes to the United States.
- There are large local populations that provide both a workforce and a market.
- The area has a good water supply for industry and domestic use through major river catchments.
- There is flat land suitable for building factories.

These areas were also targeted in the setting up of Special Economic Zones, largely as a result of the factors outlined above.

Inside a Chinese factory

While conditions in factories vary considerably, depending on the location, owners and the type of goods being made, there are certain characteristics that many of the factories share.

Large numbers of workers

Many factories have thousands of workers, with some huge plants, such as the Foxconn plant in Shenzhen that makes goods for Apple, having in excess of 300 000. These numbers illustrate both the scale of manufacturing that takes place and how cheap labour is. In China it is still often cheaper to employ humans than to purchase the machinery to replace them.

Contracted by Chinese or Western companies

Unlike in Australia and the United States, most of these factories are not owned by the companies that they manufacture goods for. They are owned by other, smaller companies that compete for short-term contracts, which reduces both the risk and the costs for the company offering the contract. It also allows the factories to operate several contracts at once. For example, one US computer company may want 300 000 screens for monitors, and another may order 100 000 laptop screens. These may all be produced in the same factory at the same time. The downside for the factories is that they have to be extremely competitive, which always means increased pressure on workers – longer working hours and low wages.



Source 6.13 A factory in Dongguan contracted to make toys for McDonald's meals

Highly flexible practices

One key reason for the success of Chinese manufacturing is the rate at which they can change their methods of production. Because it is easier to tell humans to change what they are doing than to re-engineer computerised production lines, companies can change the products, and increase or decrease rates of production extremely quickly. When demand for the iPad soared in 2010, the factory contracted to produce parts for them simply increased the number of workers on shifts to meet that demand.

Conditions inside Chinese factories

Compared with what we expect in an Australian factory, conditions in many Chinese factories are extremely hard. Workers do not have the same rights in terms of maximum working hours and safety conditions. They are sometimes made to work overtime, having to sign agreements with the factory that may lead to up to 100-hour working weeks. There have been cases of workers being forced to stand on production lines for up to 11 hours without a break. One factory was caught fining workers for going to the toilet.

Many factories have dormitories and free or cheap meals, with workers effectively sleeping and working at the factory. This is because even now many of the workers come from rural areas, and so need somewhere to live.



Source 6.14 A dormitory at a factory in Beijing: six workers share this space.

Geographical thought

Over 150 million Chinese people work in manufacturing factories.

While the Chinese government has made efforts to improve the working conditions in factories and carry out more rigorous inspections, the factories themselves are often highly secretive about their practices. Some companies from developed countries that produce their

goods in these factories also try to conceal where their products are being made, partly so that the buying public do not find out about the working conditions in those factories. Although the conditions are tough, many workers stay because they feel the conditions and pay are still better than those in rural areas.

Geographical thought

In 2012, 2000 workers at a Chinese electronics factory rioted over working conditions, requiring 5000 police to restore order at the factory.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.4

- 1 Describe how China's economy has changed in the last 20 years.
- 2 State two physical and two human factors that affect the location of China's industry.
- 3 Explain how the working conditions in Chinese factories increase profits for Western companies.
- 4 Discuss the ethics of Western businesses using Chinese labour.

Effects of the growth of manufacturing in China

The rapid and sustained growth of China's economy has had a range of economic, social and environmental impacts on the country.

Rapid increase in wealth of the population

Despite cheap labour being one of the main factors behind China's economic growth, wages paid to manufacturers are roughly three times what they were in 2005. This has led to a rise in living standards for all those working in factories. At the other end of the scale, China is now producing a class of 'super-rich', as owners of businesses profit from the strong performance of Chinese companies.

Geographical thought

In 2013 one in 150 people in Shanghai was a millionaire and there were 90 billionaires living in the city.

As the population gets richer, their demand for goods such as cars and electronics, along with real estate, also increases. Factories and workers are needed to supply this demand, and this increase in production, which means more money is being paid and being spent, makes the economy grow yet stronger.

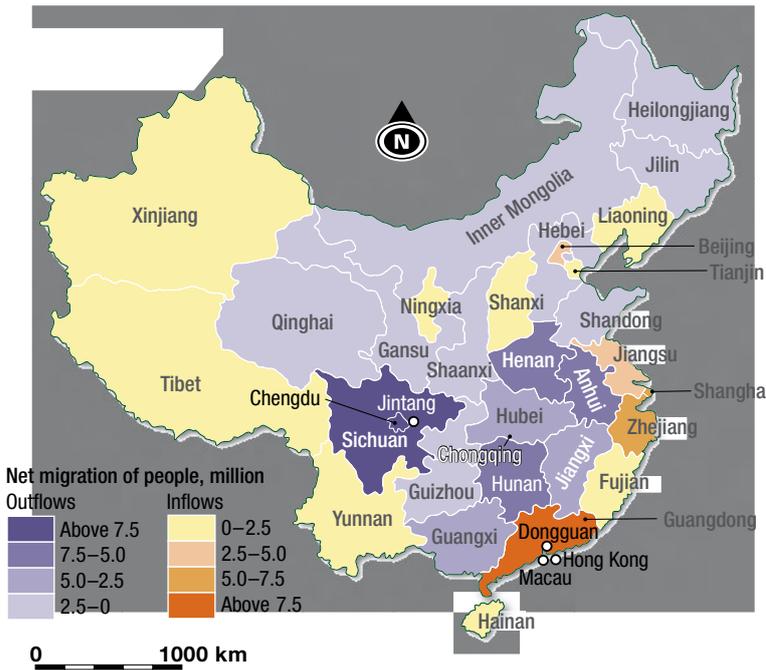
This increase in wealth does not affect the whole of the population, however. Those still in rural areas earn on average less than \$500 per year.

Rural–urban migration

The movement of people from poor rural areas to cities is perhaps the most dramatic effect of China's economic transformation. In China in 2010 there were around 150 million migrants from rural areas living in urban areas – around seven times Australia's total population!

This has a range of effects. A significant number of these migrants are unable to find work, which leads to an increase in the number of urban poor. Most of these migrants are young, between 18 and 35, and may be granted only temporary status to stay in the cities. The government sometimes limits them to stays of between 1 and 3 years: the plan is to manage growth and ensure that there are not too many workers for the jobs available.

The map in Source 6.15 illustrates how dramatic this shift in population can be, with provinces such as Chengdu losing over 10% of its population in 10 years, and regions such as Dongguan increasing at a similar rate.



Source 6.15 Internal migration within China



Source 6.16 Street person in Beijing, China. Twelve per cent of China's population live in extreme poverty (subsisting on less than \$1.25 per day).

Rural–urban migration stories

Liang is 62. He lives in a village in Guangxi province in southern China, where he tends to crops on steep terraces. Liang has two children, but both have headed to cities to work, one to Hong Kong and one to Shenzhen.

Although they said they would return, they are now earning three times what he earns. He is worried that there will be no one to take over the land, or look after him and his wife when he gets too old to work. Almost all the young people in the village have left, although a few have returned with money. His home has no running water and it is a 20-kilometre trip to the nearest doctor.

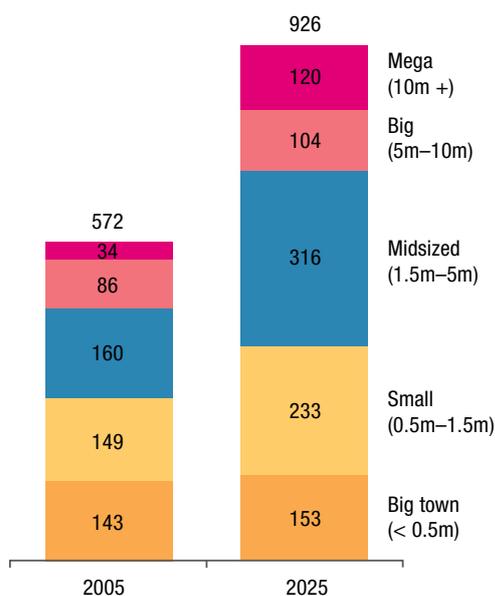


Jiao is Liang's daughter. She is 37. Jiao works in a clothing factory in Shenzhen, and her husband works collecting recycled bottles around the city. They have a son, Hui, who is 17. Most of their spare money goes on school fees for Hui, who they hope will study and become an accountant. Their apartment is cramped, only 15 square metres, and rents have risen a lot in the last few years. Jiao's husband suffers from respiratory diseases as a result of working outside in the pollution. Although Jiao works long hours, she thinks she will stay in Shenzhen as the money is better. However, if she saves enough she may return to her village.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.5

- 1 From the two accounts make a list of 'push factors' (things pushing people away) from rural areas and 'pull factors' (things attracting people) to urban areas.
- 2 From Jiao's account, make a list of advantages and disadvantages of living in the city.
- 3 Suggest why young people should stay in their villages.
- 4 List the benefits of migrating to urban areas.
- 5 Imagine you were living in a rural village and have left it. Write a letter to your father explaining why you left and explain what your life in the city is like. Use the other sections of the chapter to help you.



Source 6.17 China's projected urban population by 2025 (millions of people)

Rapid urbanisation in industrial areas

As migrants move into areas in large numbers, and businesses continue to open up to take advantage of China's industrial strength and development, rapid **urbanisation** has occurred.

urbanisation an increase in the proportion of people living in built-up areas



Source 6.18 New urban development in Shandong Province

As the graph in Source 6.17 shows, almost 1 billion Chinese will live in cities by 2025. That is the equivalent of creating around 400 cities the size of Adelaide in just 20 years. While many of these people will earn higher wages, and some aspects of their life may be improved, there are also a number of negative impacts associated with rapid urbanisation, including pressure on water supplies, issues with pollution, and lack of services such as health care and schools.

Environmental effects of industrialisation in China

The rapid industrialisation that has occurred in China has caused some extreme environmental problems. While these problems also occurred during industrialisation in countries such as Britain in the eighteenth century, the huge scale of industrial output in China has led to more severe problems in terms of air and water pollution, as well as concerns over the burning of fossil fuels and carbon emissions.

Air pollution

Air pollution in China occurs as a result of both emissions from heavy industry and the burning of coal in power factories. Sulfur dioxide and particulate matter are estimated to kill over 600 000 people in China every year.

Air pollution in China is so severe that it has started to change atmospheric conditions in some areas,

reducing rainfall and affecting the ability of vegetation to grow. Acid rain is also an increasing problem – it has been linked to the increasing number of cars in China. Neighbouring countries, including Japan, have seen forests destroyed as a result of acid rain created in China.

Water pollution

Up to 40% of China's river systems are considered to be suffering severe pollution. The main causes of this pollution are industry – chemicals and waste products – and inadequate waste systems in urbanised areas.

Responses to pollution in China

Until recently, China has done relatively little to reduce pollution levels, arguing that other countries industrialised without strict pollution controls and they should be allowed to do the same. In the last 5 years, though, the government has conceded that something must be done and stricter monitoring and restrictions on emissions have been put in place. The Chinese government is also investing heavily in research into renewable energy. However, as factories continue to be built, requiring power which still largely comes from coal-powered electricity, emissions continue to rise.

As the population becomes richer, pollution levels are likely to rise still further through increased car ownership and the use of more appliances.

Pollution in China: are we to blame?

While it is easy to think these environmental issues are entirely the fault of the Chinese and their government, in reality it is more complex than that. Our desire for cheap products means companies in Australia and other countries have their goods made in China. So by buying those goods we are, in some respects, responsible for at least some of this damage. It is important to remember that we live in an interconnected world: the decisions and choices we make have impacts in other countries.

Industry and regional growth in China

As this chapter has already stated, manufacturing has been hugely important to the national economy of China. These industries have also transformed entire regions, raising standards of living and changing the way of life for inhabitants.

While Silicon Valley's growth has been led almost entirely by companies and private investment, with little planning, China's central government has carefully planned the growth of specific regions, providing the conditions for industry to succeed.



Source 6.19 Smog over Shanghai



The future of manufacturing in China

China's rise in terms of industrial output has been spectacular, but it is not clear what the future will hold. There are a range of factors that may affect its performance.

Environmental concerns

The chapter has already explored the problems of air and water pollution in China. Environmental pollution has started to affect productivity in many regions as workers become sick, and the costs of cleaning up polluted areas are immense. The need for cleaner power is also affecting their future.

While giant hydro-electric power (HEP) schemes such as the Three Gorges Dam are meeting some needs,



Source 6.20 Three Gorges Dam. More power will be required to maintain industrial growth.

yet more power will be required – and it is likely to come from polluting sources such as coal.

The threat of other countries

As the level of manufacturing in China has increased, the country has become wealthier and wages have increased. This has led to costs in Chinese factories also rising, which means they have become less competitive compared with poorer nations such as the Philippines, Thailand and India. These nations are increasingly rivalling China in lower technology manufacturing such as textiles and plastics.

Hi-tech industries

Many regions in China are now investing in hi-tech factories that produce goods with much higher retail value. This increases profitability, because of the greater difference in these companies (from Western companies, which pay higher wages) between the cost of production and the price for which the product is sold. China has an increasing number of highly skilled workers who are graduating in fields such as IT and engineering, and they are increasingly employed in these types of industries.

The development of the interior of China

With almost all the major industrial hubs located on the coast, there is potential for more industries to be located in the middle of the country, where there is more land available and cheaper labour.

This may allow China to remain competitive with its rivals.

RESEARCH 6.1

Using the internet, find and list products (other than electronics) that China is a competitive supplier of. Explain, for one of these products, how and why it is cheaper to produce it in China than in Australia. In your answer, refer to working conditions and technology used.

6.3 Where your laptop comes from

As this chapter has explored, where products are manufactured and sold is a complex and everchanging story. An excellent example of these complexities

revolves around where a laptop is produced. This product is likely to have been designed and manufactured in lots of different countries.

Design

Your laptop, if it is made by a company such as HP or Apple, is likely to have been designed in Silicon Valley. These companies keep processes such as designing and research and development in these types of regions to take advantage of the expertise and skills of the workers there.



Sourcing of raw materials

Many parts in your computer are made from silicon chips. Silica for this purpose is mined in a variety of locations, including Nevada in the United States. Other raw materials required may include rubber for keys, which may come from Brazil or Malaysia, as well as copper and other metals. Copper from this mine at Mt Isa may make its way into your laptop.



Manufacturing of components

A laptop has up to 30 components. These components are likely to be made in a wide range of countries.

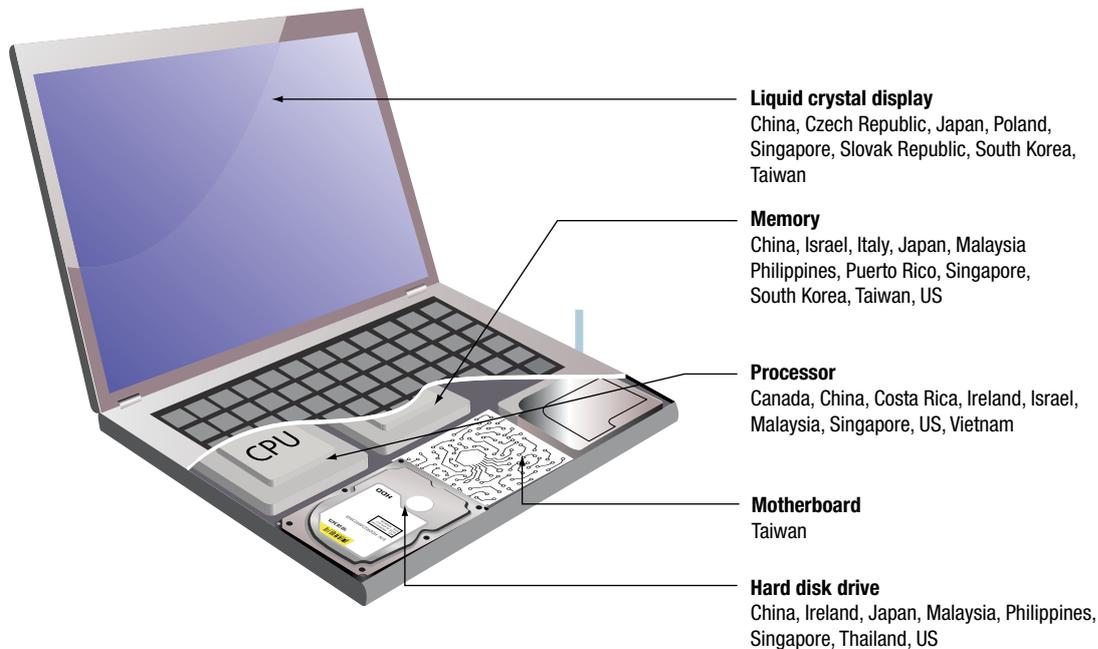
The country of origin is usually dictated by how advanced the manufacturing process is. So some complex items, such as the main CPU, are probably still manufactured in the United States, South Korea or Taiwan, although new hi-tech factories are being built in Southeast Asia. Other items, such as keys, are likely to be pressed out in huge volumes in factories in China, or in countries with low labour costs, such as the Philippines or Thailand.



Assembling the laptop

Chinese factories assemble 70% of the world's laptops. While some companies, such as Toshiba, have their own factories, most businesses **outsource** their assembly lines to companies in China. Many of these assembly lines will be producing computers for a number of companies at the same time. These factories are likely to be near ports and airports so that components can be shipped in and laptops shipped or flown out.

outsourcing contracting part of a business function to another person or business



Source 6.21 Major laptop components and possible country of origin

Selling laptops

Until recently, laptops may have been assembled in China but sold through retail outlets all over the world. Advances in communication and technology are now allowing companies to bypass this process, and sell direct to the consumer. As the diagram above illustrates, computers can be ordered in the finding an external company or worker to produce a product in part or in whole, custom-built in Shanghai with the desired components, and shipped out directly to the customer within 24 hours. This type of process maximises profits for the computer companies, as they cut the retail step out of their costs, while increasing convenience for the consumer. It has, however, affected physical computer shops, which are struggling to compete with the computer companies because of their overheads – such as rent and staff. People are becoming more comfortable buying expensive goods over the internet, so this change in business practice is likely to accelerate.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 6.6

- 1 Explain why computers are still designed in countries such as the United States.
- 2 List the steps in the designing, making and assembling of a laptop and then compare the levels of technology required for each step.
- 3 Discuss why computer companies outsource the assembly of their laptops.
- 4 Create a map of the country of origin for the computer parts used in the HP laptop.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Industrialisation, first seen in the Industrial Revolution and more recently in developments in China, has changed the way people work and live.
- Industrialisation has occurred at different times and at different rates depending on a wide range of factors, including physical location, influence of other countries and advances in technology.
- Capitalism has developed through industrialisation; capitalist countries have grown more, economically, than non-capitalist countries.
- Heavy industry shaped cities such as Pittsburgh, providing wealth and employment, but also producing severe environmental problems.
- Hi-tech industries have grown dramatically in developing countries.
- Regions such as Silicon Valley in the United States have taken advantage of a skilled workforce, venture capital and innovation to create economic growth.
- China has risen as a centre for manufacturing as a result of a range of factors, including a desire for cheap goods from consumers, careful central planning and a cheap and flexible workforce.
- Rapid industrialisation has occurred unevenly, creating wealth in only some regions.
- Products such as computers are designed, manufactured and assembled in a wide range of locations, linking developed and less developed nations. The way we buy items such as computers is also changing as a result of technology.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Using an example, explain how the capitalist system is supposed to work.
- 2 Suggest one cause and one effect of the decline of motor vehicle manufacturing in Australia.
- 3 Summarise the reasons for the success of Silicon Valley.
- 4 Describe and explain the location of China's industrial regions.
- 5 Provide two reasons for why it may be too expensive to construct and assemble a computer in the United States.

Extended-response question

Write a report comparing industry in China (either in the Pearl River region or in Pudong) with that in Silicon Valley. You must:

- describe the different types of industry found in the two locations
- explain the causes of the two types of industry growing in these regions (refer to both the physical and human geography of the two locations)
- evaluate the effects of industry using the terms 'economic', 'environmental' and 'social'.

7

Consequences of consumption

Before you start

Main focus

Decisions about what we buy, use and discard have short- and long-term social and environmental consequences.

Why it's relevant to us

As global citizens, we are connected with all people living on Earth and hold responsibility for the wellbeing of future generations.

Inquiry questions

- What determines our purchasing decisions?
- What do we need to know to make our purchasing more socially and environmentally sustainable?
- How can we influence more sustainable manufacturing, consumer and waste disposal?

Key terms

- Artisan mining
- Conflict mineral
- E-waste (electronic waste)
- Fair trade
- Global citizenship
- Information and communications technology (ICT)
- North–south gap
- Transnational companies (or corporations)

Let's begin

When we buy something, we need to consider more than just how much it costs and what we will use it for. We also need to think about and understand the impact of our purchase on other people's lives and the environment. Where was the item made? Who made it? In what workplace conditions was it made? What is the short- and long-term impact of this on the environment? How did the item get to us? What will happen to the item after we have finished with it? What alternative items are available?

7.1 Globalisation and global citizenship

The increase in trade across the world is part of globalisation. 'Globalisation' is the term used to describe how obtaining raw materials, producing and manufacturing goods and services, trading and markets, financial services, technology and communications have become increasingly interdependent at the world level. The world marketplace is now more influential than national and regional marketplaces.

At the same time, people are becoming much more aware of the links between the economic and social impacts of globalisation and changing global environmental patterns and processes. For example, there are now studies on the relationships between human activities and changing local and global weather and climate patterns.

As consumers of the products of globalisation we are connected with the social, economic and environmental consequences of globalisation. How we

see and understand our rights and responsibilities as connected global consumers, and how we use those rights and bear those responsibilities, is us engaging in **global citizenship**.

Global citizenship includes being interested in and informed about what is happening in our local community, country and other places in the world, and what that means to the world's, other people's and our future. It is also about what actions we are taking, or will take, to make the world a safer and fairer place to live in.

To be wise and responsible consumers we need to understand more about how what we buy is produced, manufactured and transported, about world trade, and about the links between all these things and human rights and environmental sustainability.

global citizenship our rights and responsibilities as citizens of the global community as well as our rights and responsibilities as citizens in our local community and the country we live in

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.1

For a product that you have recently bought, or are looking at buying, find out about:

- the raw materials used – are they mostly:

Renewable	Non-renewable	Do not know

- the environmental impact (on habitat, biodiversity, water and greenhouse gas emissions) of obtaining its raw materials:

Low	Moderate	High	Do not know

- the levels of greenhouse gas emissions associated with processing the raw materials into the product:

Low	Moderate	High	Do not know

- the working conditions in the raw material sites and the processing sites:

Exploitative	Good	Do not know

- where the product was made:

Locally	Australia	Overseas

- how long you think you will use the item for:

0	1	2	3	4+ years

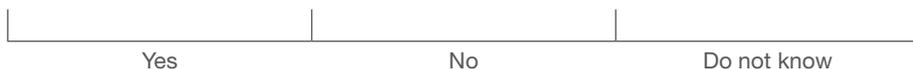
- how you will dispose of the product:

Sell	Recycle	Store	Dump	Other	Do not know

- the environmental impact (on habitat, biodiversity, water and greenhouse gas emissions) in disposing of the product:



- whether or not the company that manufactured the product has policies relating to fair trade, work practices and environmental sustainability:



- where you can find out more about the social, environmental and economic impacts of the product.

Once your class has finished their personal surveys, have a class discussion on the level of pre-purchase awareness of the class. Use the graph below to indicate your opinion on pre-purchase awareness levels in your class.

LEVEL OF PRE-PURCHASE AWARENESS



Mark on the line where you think:

- the class average awareness is (A)
- the person with highest awareness is (H).

In the past this survey would have been a much easier task, as people purchased fewer products, particularly electronic products, than we do today. Also, people were also more likely to have produced a lot of what they used (especially food) themselves or purchased it from within their local area.

Now even a bunch of grapes we eat may have come from California and the garlic cloves we use in a stew could have come from Argentina.

Geographical thought

Research has shown that in the typical Australian household there are 67 items that run on mains power.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.2

- 1 Describe what global citizenship means to you.
- 2 Explain how important global citizenship is to you.
- 3 Compare what you are now doing as a global citizen with what you intend to do in the future.

7.2 Ethical behaviour and the information and communications technology (ICT) industry

information and communications technology (ICT) devices that can electronically receive, store, retrieve and manipulate digital data, and communications technologies, such as the internet and wireless, that transmit information

Information and communications technology (ICT) is a vital driving force behind globalisation because it connects the world.

The ethical use of ICT devices and technologies is more than using mobile phones or Facebook in socially acceptable ways. It also includes being aware of the social and environmental impact of the production, use and disposal of our ICT devices.

In terms of manufactured products, ICT devices, particularly smartphones, are among the fastest growing in numbers in the world today.

A wide variety of minerals are used in the manufacturing of smartphones and other electronic devices. Coltan is an ore that contains the mineral **tantalum**, which is used in the **capacitors** of smartphones.

Tantalum is an essential element in smartphones, laptops and most other electronic goods.

The growth of multifunctional super computers such as smartphones and tablets has been made possible by reducing the size of the capacitors used in them: the smaller the capacitor, the smaller the electronic device can be.

Australia, Brazil, Canada, the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC), Ethiopia and Rwanda are among the world's leading tantalum producers.

Where and how the minerals are mined can have major human rights and environmental impacts. The mining of coltan in the DRC provides a significant example of human rights and environmental abuse.



Source 7.1 Tantalum capacitors

tantalum a heat-resistant powder, refined from ores such as coltan (columbite–tantalite), that can hold a high electric charge

capacitor a passive electronic component – it does not require extra electricity to function – that, in a circuit, holds a voltage, or a charge, for a specific period of time when the electronic device is unplugged from an electrical outlet

Coltan mining in the Democratic Republic of the Congo

While many tantalum-producing countries follow satisfactory ethical, social and environmental practices, there are some, particularly the DRC, where this has not been the case. In the DRC there have been and continue to be major human rights abuses and severe environmental damage.

It is estimated that the DRC holds somewhere between 15% and 30% of the world's reserves of coltan.

Conflict minerals

The tantalum and other minerals being obtained from the eastern provinces of the DRC are mainly **conflict minerals**.

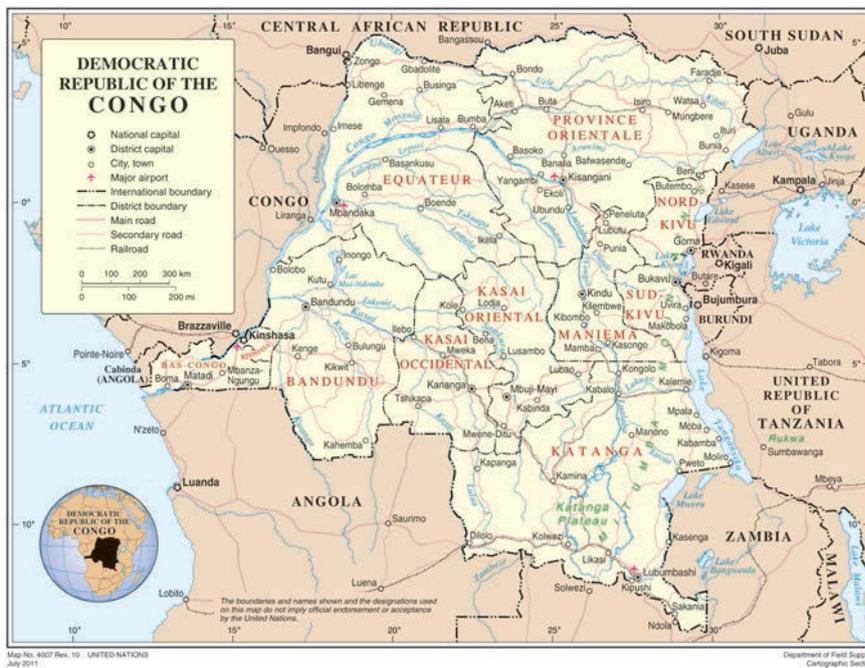
In the DRC, much of the coltan ore mining, along with gold, tin and tungsten (a metal used in smartphone and tablet devices' touchscreen technology because of its hardness, stability and ability to withstand extreme temperatures) occurs in the eastern provinces of Maniema and South and North Kivu.

The mining in these provinces is usually carried out by small groups (less than five people), often farmers, using manual labour and very basic tools.

conflict mineral a mineral mined in areas where there are armed conflict and human rights abuses

Geographical thought

By the end of 2012 there were over 1 billion smartphones in use in the world. The number is currently increasing by approximately 50% each year. If this trend continues, by 2020 there will be more smartphones in the world than people.



Source 7.2 Location of the Democratic Republic of the Congo

There can be thousands of miners in one river bed mining site. Using their hands and crude digging tools they dig down, forming pits in the river bed. Water is poured into the pit and mixed with the minerals and other material in the mud. The coltan nodules are heavier than the other material and sink to the bottom

of the pit, where they are scooped out by hand. This form of mining is called artisan mining.

artisan mining individual or small group mining activity carried out using minimal machinery and very basic tools, such as a bucket and spade

The miners do not have licences to mine. Therefore they have no legal control over what they find. There is no organisation of the miners to manage how they work or to trade their minerals. Therefore they are very vulnerable to the powerful military groups who control much of the eastern provinces.



Source 7.3 Artisan coltan mining

RESEARCH 7.1

Use the internet to find more information on artisan coltan mining, then complete the following tasks:

- 1 Describe some of the physical features of a mining site and the surrounding area.
- 2 Discuss the working conditions of the miners.
- 3 Suggest reasons for the miners working under these conditions.

For over 25 years the eastern provinces have been in armed conflict. There are many armed groups involved. Some are local militia fighting for control of their land. Others are rebels, supported by neighbouring countries, such as Rwanda and Uganda, fighting to take control of the country.

There are also criminal groups from within the Congolese Army. As a result of this ongoing conflict the DRC government struggles for control in the eastern provinces.

The rebel groups and the militias use the taxes, minerals, bribes or other payments they seize from the artisan miners to fund their activities. The miners and their families are powerless victims of these groups, in which child labour, torture and summary executions are commonplace.

Large **transnational companies** have also played a part in this abuse of the miners. The companies have negotiated with the rebel groups and militias to buy the minerals seized from the miners very cheaply. The rebels and militias use the money they make from the companies to buy weapons and further assert their authority over the local population through violence. So the foreign companies, and the global markets for their products, are contributing to the continuation of the wars and human rights abuses in the DRC.

The ore seized from the miners is moved across the borders into countries that support the armed groups or into the foreign companies' supply chain. The transportation and refining of the ore brings wealth to these countries and transnational companies. It also makes it difficult to trace the origins of the minerals – once they are refined, the minerals are moved a number of times through Africa, Europe and Asia. During all this the conflict minerals are mixed with those from legitimate mining sources.

It is therefore difficult to identify if the tantalum in our smartphones' capacitors came from a conflict mining site or a legitimate mine.

There are now a number of moves to prevent conflict minerals from entering the marketplace.

transnational companies (or corporations) companies that operate their businesses in and across more than one country; also called multinational companies

Eliminating conflict minerals trade

The United Nations, working with the DRC government and the African Union, is putting guidelines and regulations into place that it hopes will reduce the trade in conflict minerals in the DRC and its neighbouring countries. The guidelines aim to remove the money supply of the armed groups and reduce human rights violations.

The United States, under the Dodd-Frank legislation of 2010 – which made the most significant changes to financial regulation in the United States since those made after the Great Depression in the 1930s, in response to the Global Financial Crisis of 2008–09 – requires all large public US companies (public companies are those that trade on the share market) to provide information on the source of minerals contained in their products every year.

There are also groups in the ICT industry working to provide guidelines to improve social, economic and environmental conditions in the global electronic supply industry. For example, in 2007 the Global e-Sustainability Initiative (GeSI) and the Electronic Industry Citizenship Coalition (EICC) joined to build expertise in the business processes and issues surrounding extraction of metals used in electronics products. Their work includes identifying conflict-free **smelters**.

smelter a factory where a metal (such as tantalum) is melted under extreme heat to separate the mineral (such as coltan) from the ore containing the mineral; conflict-free smelters use only minerals from lawful sources



Environmental impacts

The artisan mining sites are also having major impacts on the local environment.

The coltan artisan mining sites are often located in or close to nature reserves such as the Kahuzi-Biega National Park and the Okapi Wildlife Reserve. The movement of hundreds of thousands of people into these areas is having a serious impact on the forests, as they are cleared for fuel and building materials, and on the native animals, as their habitat is being reduced in area.

Many animals, including gorillas and elephants, are being slaughtered for food. Because coltan mining occurs in river beds and uses crude methods of extraction, it pollutes the waterways and river banks. It also can create major soil erosion problems.



Source 7.4 Democratic Republic of the Congo national parks and reserves

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.3

- 1 Suggest an alternative for countries obtaining their materials from artisan mining sites.
- 2 Describe other environmental impacts, including impacts on biodiversity, that the miners are having in the areas where they mine.
- 3 Suggest what can be done to reduce these impacts.



Source 7.5 Crude methods of extraction cause pollution.

7.3 Disposal of e-waste

Inappropriate disposal of ICT and other electronic goods creates significant environmental and social harm. Australians, as major consumers of electronic goods, need to be aware of their responsibilities in the disposal of these goods.

With a population of 23.5 million people (as of August 2014) Australia ranks just outside the top 50 nations in population size, but ranks in the top 10 nations in the purchase of electronic goods.

Currently more than 4 million computers and 3 million televisions are bought in Australia annually.

A big issue is that over 80% of our **e-waste** goes into landfill.

Less than 10% of these items are recycled. With the rapid increase in the purchase of electronic goods this problem will continue to grow unless we change our behaviour.

e-waste (electronic waste) rubbish created by throwing away used electronic devices and components, such as batteries; also, the disposal of materials involved in their manufacture or use



Geographical thought

If half the televisions we discard were recycled, an estimated 23 000 tonnes of carbon dioxide emissions would be saved, equating to about 5300 cars off the road for an entire year.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.4

- 1** Copy the table below and complete it by listing the reasons for and against each method of disposal of e-waste.

	For	Against
Put in rubbish bin		
Sell		
Take to recycling centre		
Store at home		

- 2** Read the following questions and conduct a class discussion on them:
- How are consumers of smartphones, tablets and other ICT devices contributing to human rights abuses and environmental damage in many parts of the world?
 - What can we do to be more responsible in our purchase, use and disposal of ICT devices?
- 3** Write a short essay (up to 250 words) explaining what the problems are and the actions you can take to reduce your environmental and human rights impact as a consumer and discarder of electronic goods.

Australian governments have been aware of e-waste problems for several years. One problem has been the dumping of e-waste in less developed countries in Asia or Africa. The e-waste was either just dumped in huge piles or crudely recycled. Toxic chemical wastes are exposed as the products break down and enter the waterways, soil and air.

In 1992 Australia signed the Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes. The agreement places a duty on countries that export waste to ensure that hazardous waste (including e-waste) is managed in an environmentally sound manner in the country that is receiving it.

In 2011 the Australian government established the National Television and Computer Recycling Scheme. The scheme involves a combination of government rules and industry action to take responsibility for the collection and recycling of waste televisions, computers, printers and computer products. The scheme is

continually being improved, but electronic dumping still occurs.

Under the scheme, householders and small businesses can drop off these items free of charge at designated access points, which may include permanent collection sites, take-back events or through a mail-back option.

These are positive steps in responsible disposal of our electronic waste. However, there are still major problems.

An SBS *Dateline* report that aired on 25 September 2011 and titled 'E-Waste Hell Ghana' found that Australian e-waste was being exported to Ghana as working 'second-hand products', rather than as e-waste, to bypass the Basel Convention. It was then 'recycled' by the locals, including by burning wiring to extract the copper, which releases toxic smoke. People were living on or very near to the e-waste dumps. This still goes on in Ghana.

At the core of the problem for Australia is the fact that the cost of recycling e-waste properly can sometimes be more than the cost of buying the product in the first place.



Source 7.6 E-waste will continue to bring problems unless we change our behaviours as users of electronic devices.

7.4 Transnational companies

Along with the ICT industry, transnational companies are major drivers of globalisation. Most of the goods we buy have been touched in some way or other by transnational companies, including most, if not all, of the electronic gadgets we use.

shareholder a person with a financial interest in a company

The main aim of the great majority of transnational companies is to increase their company profits and thus please their **shareholders**.

Shareholders are individuals or organisations who own shares (also called stock) in a company.

In a sense, the shareholders collectively own the company. A shareholder, or a group of shareholders, has a say in what a company does – how much say depends on the number of shares they have in the company. The value of a company's shares is determined by the price at which the shares are sold in the marketplace (the stock market).

Companies gain economic advantages through operating in more than one country. These include:

- having more control over the sources – and therefore the costs – of the raw materials they use
- being able to reduce labour costs, especially in industries that depend on labour rather than machines, such as clothing and assembling electronic goods

- paying lower taxes to governments
- increasing the size of their markets.

These advantages mean that transnational companies can become very large and wealthy.

These very large companies are often much wealthier than the countries they operate in.

This makes them very powerful, because poor countries depend on these companies to employ and provide their people with skills, pay taxes for the mining of their resources, and build factories and road, rail, sea and air transport networks.

Transnational companies can therefore help poor countries develop and protect their environment.

However, as we saw with conflict minerals in the DRC, this is not always the case. Some transnational companies are willing to sacrifice human rights and the environment in order to make a bigger profit.

A **principle** is an underlying value or rule that an individual or organisation uses to guide their decision making in their day-to-day life and work. For example, if the issue for a car manufacturer is to reduce waste, the principle could be: The motor company will design its vehicles so that all components of their vehicles are either reusable or recyclable. (The value is to eliminate waste and the rule is to recycle and reuse.)

principles rules or morals that a person or company/group decides to follow



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.5

An increasing number of companies are following socially and environmentally sustainable principles and practices in all the countries they operate in.

Imagine a transnational company has asked you, as a global citizen, to form a team to write up a list of four social and/or environmental sustainability principles for their company to follow for all the countries they work in.

Work in a small group (up to five people) and complete the following tasks:

- 1 Decide what the main business of the company is – for example, is it a mining company, clothing company, cool drink manufacturer, fast-food chain or motor vehicle manufacturer? Give the company a name.
- 2 Identify two to four human rights issues that are important to the type of company you have chosen. (*Hint: Go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks, then follow the link to the Universal Declaration of Human Rights [UDHR], Articles 23 and 24, for some ideas.*)
- 3 Identify two to four environmental issues that are important to the type of company you have chosen. (*Hint: You could consider biodiversity, waste reduction, impact on carbon emissions or water quality.*)
- 4 Choose four issues the company would like you to write principles for.
- 5 Write a principle for each of the four issues you have selected.
- 6 Check that the principles make sense and then share them with your class.

7.5 Fair trade

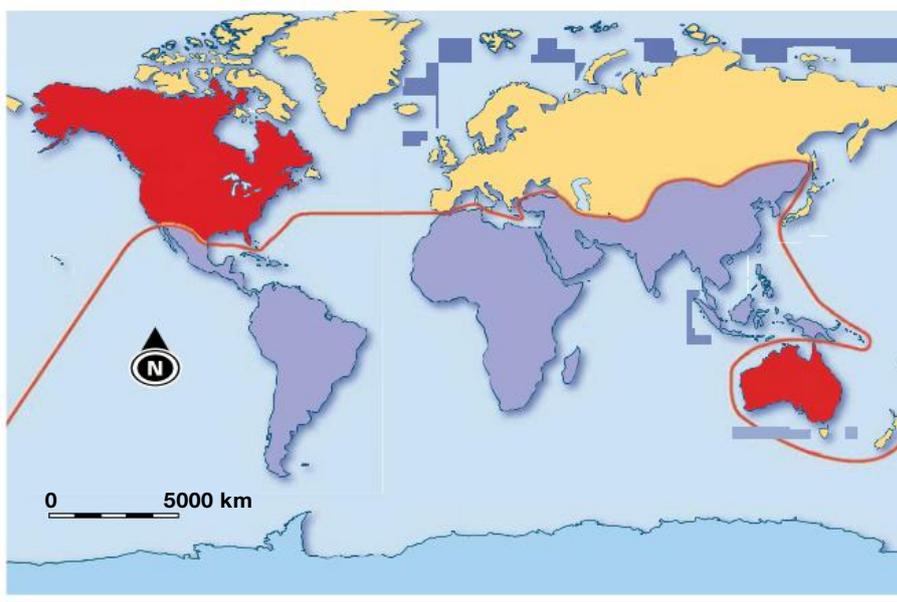
While globalisation and transnational companies are bringing the world together, there is a widening gap between the economically wealthy and the poorer countries of the world.

This gap between the richer and poorer countries is often referred to as the **north–south gap** or divide.

The north (or developed) countries are mainly in the Northern Hemisphere (North America, Europe and Japan) and are the wealthy countries.

These countries have high levels of industrial development, higher

north–south gap the gap between the economically 'richer' and economically 'poorer' countries of the world – the 'haves' and the 'have-nots'



Source 7.7 The north–south divide

standards of living (in health and education, among other things) and are home to most of the transnational companies.

The south (or developing) countries are mainly in the Southern Hemisphere (South America, Africa and

Asia) and are the poorer countries. These countries have less industrial development, lower standards of living and weak workplace protection laws.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.6

As a class:

- 1 Decide whether Australia is a north country or a south country, and provide your reasons.
- 2 Determine whether China is now part of the north or the south. (*Hint:* The concept of the north–south gap originated in 1980 and times change.)
- 3 Investigate where the term ‘north–south gap’ was first used: was it by people in the developed countries of the north or by people in the developing countries of the south?

Trade between north and south countries is seen as an essential way to reduce global poverty and close the gap between the rich and poor countries.

trade the buying and selling of goods and services

fair trade trade based on the buying and selling of products (usually from poorer nations) that have been mined, grown or manufactured under humane working conditions, with appropriate wages for the workers and minimal environmental impact

Developing countries trade mainly in primary goods (food and raw materials such as minerals and cotton) and labour-intensive manufactured goods such as clothing. There are few controls over working conditions and environmental standards. The prices for their goods are largely set by the importing developed countries.

This raises a question – is trade between the south and north countries fair?

The **fair trade** movement says that often the trade is not fair as workers, producers and the environment in the developing countries are often mistreated by transnational companies and restrictions are placed on their trade by the developed countries.

Origins of fair trade

The movement towards fair trade has many origins, and goes back to the 1940s. Initially it was mainly people from economically richer (north) countries buying craft work from handicraft workers in developing countries and selling the craft in their local communities.

Edna Byler, from Pennsylvania, in the United States, was disturbed by the poverty levels she saw in the villages she visited in Puerto Rico in 1946. She was impressed by the high quality of the linen needlework done by women in these villages.

She bought some of the needlework and sold it to her friends and neighbours. In 1952 she and her friend Ruth Lederach displayed and sold the needlework at the Mennonite World Conference in Basel, Switzerland. The project became the Overseas Needlepoint and Crafts Project.

In Europe, the fair trade movement began with Oxfam UK. In 1964 Oxfam began marketing handicrafts from developing countries, aiming to give small-scale producers fair prices, training, advice and funding.

Geographical thought

The name ‘Oxfam’ comes from the Oxford Committee for Famine Relief, founded in Britain in 1942 during World War II. The group campaigned for food supplies to be sent through an Allied naval blockade to starving women and children in enemy-occupied Greece.

The first fair trade certification and labelling system started in the Netherlands in 1988, with ‘Fairtrade’ labelled coffee from Mexico being sold into Dutch supermarkets under the Max Havelaar brand.

In 1997, Fairtrade International, formerly known as the Fairtrade Labelling Organization (FLO), was established as an umbrella organisation for 20 Fairtrade

certification initiatives in Europe, the United States, Canada, Mexico, Japan, Australia and New Zealand. There are currently 586 Fairtrade-certified producer organisations and 469 certified traders in Fairtrade International's network – including TransFair, Max Havelaar and Fairtrade Foundation – and 1.24 million farmers and farm workers from 66 producing countries. Fairtrade International certifies individual products that bear the blue and green Fairtrade mark see Source 7.9).

The World Fair Trade Organization (WFTO), formerly the International Federation of Alternative Traders (IFAT), is a separate global network of Fair Trade Organizations. In 2004, WFTO launched its Fair Trade Organization Mark (FTO), through which organisations that meet WFTO's fair trade standards for working conditions, wages, child labour and environment can receive certification as Fair Trade Organisations. The FTO mark is a company label, or logo, and goes on the company letterhead.

Geographical thought

Since 2001, starting with Garstang in England, there have been an increasing number of towns, especially in the United Kingdom and the United States, that are committed to following fair trade principles. By the end of 2012 there were 554 fair trade towns listed in the UK, and worldwide there were over 1100 fair trade towns spread across 23 countries.

Food Products		Non-food products
Bananas	Juices	Cotton
Cocoa	Nuts/oil seeds and purees	Cut flowers
Coffee	Quinoa	Ornamental plants
Cotton	Rice	Sports balls
Dried fruit	Soya beans and pulses	
Fresh fruit and fresh vegetables	Sugar	
Herbs and spices	Tea	
Honey	Wine	

Source 7.8 Products covered by the Fairtrade mark (in the UK)

Geographical thought

Fairtrade certified products are part of a growing ethical certification movement that aims to support consumers in richer countries to purchase products from poorer countries that have been produced under sound social, economic and environmental ethical conditions. For example, UTZ-certified coffee, tea and cocoa are based on acknowledging and supporting more sustainable farming methods, improved conditions and opportunities for farming families, and a sustainable planet now and in the future.

Where to now with fair trade?

The fair trade movement over the past 30 years has done a lot to raise the awareness of consumers in the developed world of the need to improve the working and living conditions of farmers, producers, other workers and their families, and their environment in developing countries. The fair trade movement has also made us aware that we, through our purchasing choices, can be part of the solution.



Source 7.9 The Fairtrade International Fairtrade mark

The success of the fair trade movement can be seen by the mainstream shops and transnational companies joining it. In Australia, supermarkets are now selling some Fairtrade certified products, such as coffee.

In December 2009 Nestlé announced that it would be using Fairtrade certified cocoa in its four-finger KitKats in Britain and Ireland. This was extended to the two-finger KitKats in January 2013.



In Australia KitKats are produced using Rainforest Alliance certified cocoa. For further information on Fairtrade certified and other ethically certified chocolates on sale in Australia, go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to *The Good Chocolate Guide to Australia*.

The Ethical Consumer Guide also provides information on Fairtrade certified or other ethically certified (or not certified) chocolates on sale in Australia. A web search for a 'list of fair trade products Australia' will provide information about the types and sources of other fair trade products available in Australia.

Issues with the fair trade certification of products

Are transnational companies using fair trade certified products because of their commitment to human rights and environmental standards? Or because they see that it is a good way to market their products in places where consumers are committed to ethical buying?

When a fair trade certification or another form of social or environmental ethical certification is used as a marketing tool rather than as a commitment to ethical behaviour, it is referred to as 'cleanwashing'.

There are now many ethical certifying organisations. For example, coffee can be certified under a number of certification organisations, including UTZ, Fairtrade, Rainforest Alliance and Fair Trade United States.

While the sale of fair and ethical trade certified products is growing, they make up only a small fraction of total sales of these products. For example, in 2010 world coffee production rose to 7000000 tonnes, with approximately one-third being consumed in the producing countries and approximately 4700000 tonnes being exported.

In 2010 global sales of Fairtrade coffee reached 88000 tonnes.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.7

Reflect on the following statement: 'The fair trade movement has been able to make trade between richer and poorer countries fairer.'

- 1 Divide the class into small groups with each group taking either a positive or a negative position on the statement. Each group needs to identify three to five arguments to support its position.
- 2 Debate, as a class, the statement above.
- 3 Write two paragraphs summarising your opinions on the outcome of the debate.

7.6 Palm oil and responsible consumerism

Often we are not aware of the ingredients in the products we buy and therefore are ignorant of the environmental and social consequences of our purchases. Palm oil is one such ingredient.

Geographical thought

Palm oil is found in many of the products we buy at the supermarket. These include cooking oil, chocolate, cosmetics, chips, instant noodles, biscuits, margarine, shower gel, shampoo and soaps.



Source 7.10 Fruit from the palm oil plant being dragged

What is palm oil?

Palm oil comes from the fruit of the *Elaeis guineensis* species of palm, which originates in the equatorial (between 10°N and 10°S of the Equator) coastal regions of West Africa. It has been used by humans for over 5000 years.

Palm oil has a high resistance to oxidation, and therefore to decaying, so it is used in the production of margarine, sweets and baked goods to increase their shelf life.

Palm oil contains a balanced mix of saturated and unsaturated fats and as a result is considered healthier than many other vegetable/plant oils, especially for people concerned about high cholesterol levels.

Palm oil is also a relatively stable product, and remains solid at room temperature (its melting point is 35°C); this makes it well suited for soap and similar products.

Because it originates in the wet equatorial region of West Africa, palm oil is ideally suited for growing in other equatorial regions of the world, especially in Southeast Asia. Four West African Deli Dura palm oil seedlings were planted in Buitenzorg's (Java) botanic gardens in 1848. The descendants of these four seedlings became the breeding stock for the first commercial plantings in Indonesia and Malaysia in the early 1900s.

Southeast Asia has both a favourable growing environment and a lack of pests and diseases, so these plants produced oil that was superior in quality to that from West Africa.

Since the 1980s there has been a rapid increase in the production of palm oil, particularly in Indonesia and Malaysia, which together produce over 80% of the world's palm oil.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.8

- 1 If you can work it out, make a list, over one week, of all the products that contain palm oil that your family buys.
- 2 At the end of the week share your list with the class and draw up a list of the top five products.
- 3 Discuss your findings with your family or friends and find out if they knew that palm oil was used in so many products.

Country	2009	%	2010	%	2011*	%
Indonesia	21.00	46.00	22.20	48.40	23.90	48.79
Malaysia	17.56	38.79	16.99	37.04	18.00	36.75
Thailand	13.10	3.00	1.34	2.92	1.45	2.96
Nigeria	0.87	1.90	0.89	1.93	0.90	1.84
Colombia	0.80	1.80	0.75	1.64	0.85	1.74
Papua New Guinea	0.48	1.00	0.50	1.09	0.53	1.08
Ecuador	0.43	0.90	0.36	0.78	0.40	0.82
Cote d'Ivoire	0.35	0.80	0.30	0.65	0.32	0.65
Cameroon	0.34	0.70	0.35	0.75	0.35	0.71
Honduras	0.28	0.60	0.28	0.60	0.29	0.59
Costa Rica	0.22	0.50	0.24	0.51	0.25	0.51
Brazil	0.24	0.50	0.25	0.54	0.27	0.55
Others	1.39	0.30	1.44	3.13	1.49	3.04
World	45.27	100.00	45.87	100.00	48.99	100.00

* predicted production: the table was developed in 2011, before the figures were finalised.

Source 7.11 World palm oil production 2009–11 in millions of metric tonnes

Environmental impacts

The expansion of palm oil production is leading to the clearing of the natural rainforest in large areas of Indonesia and Malaysia. The clearing of the forest usually also involves large wildfires and illegal logging operations.

This clearing is the major cause of deforestation in these countries. This deforestation results in a loss of habitat for animal and insect species and a reduction

in plant biodiversity. The United Nations Environment Program (UNEP) has predicted that by 2022 the palm oil industry could wipe out 98% of Indonesia's remaining rainforests.

The reduction of habitat in the southern Malaysian peninsula has resulted in an over 70% reduction in bird numbers, and in Indonesia it could result in the loss of the orang-utan and Sumatran tiger.

The extensive deforestation also has major climatic implications, as mature tropical rainforest acts as a store or sink of carbon. When the forest is burnt or logged, carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. As the life cycle of a palm oil plantation is very short (less than 30 years) compared with that of rainforests, plantations contribute to carbon emissions into the atmosphere rather than acting as carbon sinks.

The threats of deforestation and greenhouse emissions from oil palm plantations are so grave that the World Bank has now suspended lending to palm oil producers until safeguards are developed and implemented to ensure that such lending doesn't cause further social or environmental harm.

Social impacts

The destruction of the rainforests and the creation of large palm oil plantations, many of which are owned by transnational companies, has had a considerable impact



Source 7.12 Clearing land for palm oil production is a major cause of deforestation.

on the lifestyle and rights of the people who have lived with the forests for hundreds, if not thousands, of years. Their sources of food have been removed and the use of pesticides and weedicides in the plantations has had adverse health effects, especially for those who work in the plantations.

The plantations have, however, improved the opportunities for employment in often very poor communities.

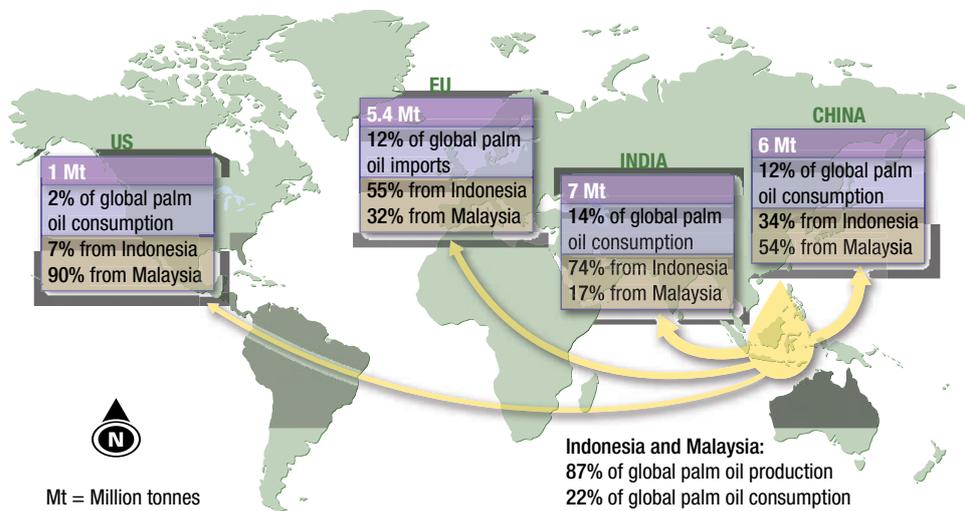
The certified oil debate

The exploitation of the traditional landowners and the natural environment has led to movements to establish ethical palm oil production methods. The establishment

of the Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO) in 2004 to promote more environmentally and socially sustainable palm oil products is a major step towards ethical palm oil production.

RSPO's members include palm oil growers, palm oil processors and/or traders, consumer goods manufacturers, retailers, banks and investors, environmental/nature conservation non-government organisations (NGOs) and social/developmental NGOs. Note that the traditional owners of the land are not included.

It remains to be seen how well the RSPO will be able to meet the economic demands of the palm oil industry while at the same time reducing, even eliminating, social and environmental harm.



Source 7.13 Major trade flows of palm oil

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 7.9

- 1 Describe the advantages of using palm oil.
- 2 List the countries that are the major producers of palm oil.
- 3 Identify the regions or countries that are the major consumers of palm oil.
- 4 Describe the major environmental issues of the palm oil plantation industry.
- 5 Explain what we can do to encourage environmentally and socially sustainable palm oil production.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Global citizenship requires us to understand how our views of the world and the actions we take in our everyday life have consequences for the economic, social and environmental sustainability of our world.
- The decisions we make on our purchase, use and disposal of electronic devices should be informed by our principles and our research into the social and environmental impacts of these decisions.
- Through understanding what transnational companies are and how they operate in and across countries, we are better able to influence these companies to adopt and follow more responsible human rights and environmental sustainability principles.
- The fair trade movement is an important movement trying to improve the working conditions and income of workers in poorer countries by making consumers in the richer countries more aware of the working conditions in the poorer countries and the purchasing choices available to them.
- The rapid expansion of palm oil production provides a powerful example of the significant consequences of not understanding the interdependence of economic, social and environmental sustainability in the mass production of goods, and of what can be done to adopt more sustainable practices.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Describe what determines your purchasing decisions.
- 2 Discuss what is meant by the ethical use of ICT devices and technologies.
- 3 Explain why transnational companies are so powerful.
- 4 Explain what the north–south gap is.
- 5 Evaluate whether or not fair trade is fair.

Extended-response questions

- 1 Explain what your responsibilities are as a global citizen and a consumer of world products.
- 2 Describe how you carry out these responsibilities.





8

Technologies

Before you start

Main focus

This chapter focuses on the effects of information and communications technologies (ICT) on development in low- and middle-income countries.

Why it's relevant to us

Rapid changes in ICT create both opportunities and challenges.

Geographic inquiry should go beyond issues of access to the effective use of these technologies in order for people to gain their potential benefits.

Inquiry questions

- What is ICT?
- How does the access and use of ICT vary over space?
- To what extent does ICT contribute to economic development in low- and middle-income countries?
- How does the location of ICT services impact on places such as India?

Key terms

- Appropriate technology
- Cloud computing
- Digital divide
- Economic development
- Gross national income (GNI) per capita
- Internet
- Megatrend
- World Wide Web (WWW)

Let's begin

Technologies that allow people to communicate across the world are changing our perception of space. An exploration of the nature and global patterns of ICT provides a basis from which to analyse its impacts on development in middle and low-income countries. The increasing use of mobile technologies and social media is creating new relationships – at local, regional and international scales. Case studies from Africa and India are used to evaluate the impacts of ICT.

8.1 What is ICT?

internet a worldwide interconnected network of computers

World Wide Web (WWW) the sites and pages that are connected across the internet

Information and communications technologies (ICTs) are the tools that help us connect with each other. At a local scale this may involve linking computers in a school or accessing the global community using the **internet**.

The internet and the **World Wide Web (WWW)** are not the same thing.

The internet is all the networks of computers that are linked together; the World Wide Web is the linked pages that are accessed using the internet and web browsers. The internet combined with the World Wide Web enables file sharing, social networking, gaming, research, email, telephone and video calls, and more.



Source 8.1 From abacus to smartphone: the increasing sophistication of ICT

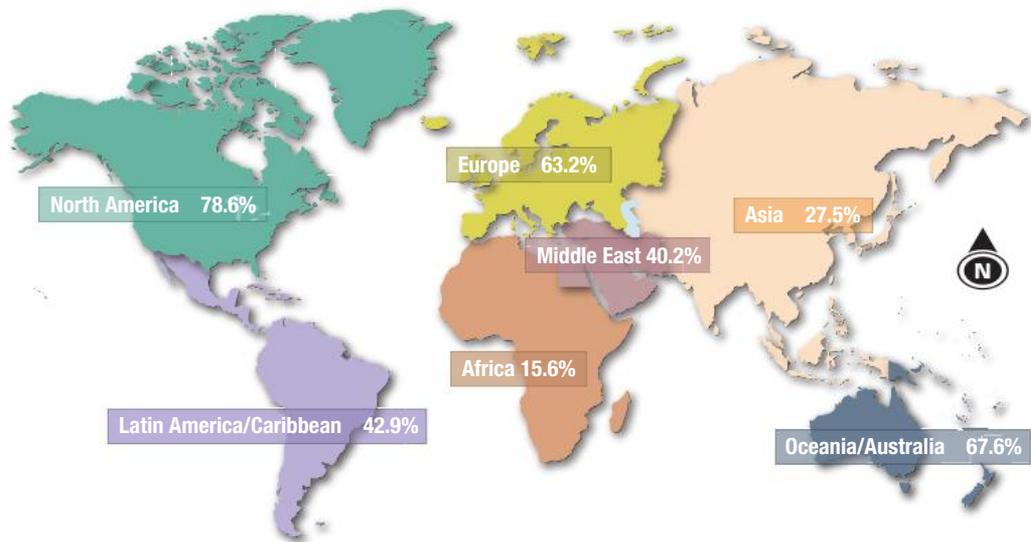
Information

Information must be meaningful to people. The presentation method chosen will vary depending on factors such as age, educational level and cultural

background. For example, a table of statistics about internet use around the world may be easier to interpret if it is presented as a graph or map.

World regions	Population (2012 est)	Internet users 2000	Internet users 2012	Growth in internet users 2000–12 (%)	Internet penetration 2012 est (% pop'n)
Africa	1 073 380 925	4 514 400	167 335 676	3607	16
Asia	3 922 066 987	114 304 000	1 076 681 059	842	28
Europe	820 918 446	106 096 093	518 512 109	393	63
Middle East	223 608 203	3 284 800	90 000 455	2640	40
North America	348 280 154	108 096 800	273 785 413	153	79
Latin America/ Caribbean	593 688 638	18 068 919	254 915 745	1311	43
Oceania/ Australia	35 903 567	7 620 480	24 287 919	219	68
World total	7 017 846 922	360 985 492	2 405 518 376	566	34

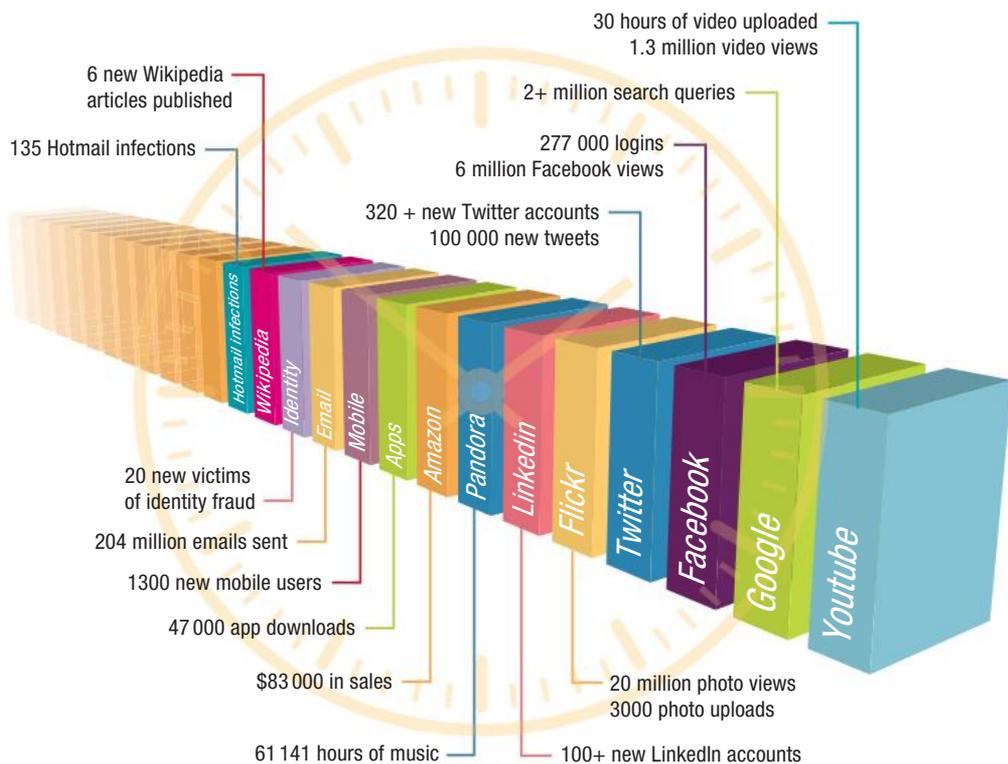
Source 8.2 World population and internet users 2000–2012



Source 8.3 Distribution of internet penetration by world regions, 2012

Communications technologies

Communication involves the transfer of information using technologies or tools. In order to connect to the internet, infrastructure is needed – it may include cable, wireless, microwave or satellite technologies.



And future growth is staggering

<p>Today, the number of networked devices =  the global population</p>	<p>By 2015, the number of networked devices =  2 × the global population</p>	<p>In 2015, it would take you 5 years to view all video crossing IP networks each second.</p>
--	--	--

Source 8.4 The internet is host to a vast number of communications every minute.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.1

Refer to Source 8.2 for Questions 1 to 3.

- 1 Name the region with the largest number of internet users and the one with the smallest.
- 2 Explain how the internet penetration figures are calculated.
- 3 Compare the number of internet users with the internet penetration figures.
- 4 Discuss which information source – Source 8.2 or Source 8.3 – is easier to understand. Suggest reasons.

Benefits of ICT

In general, the aims of using ICT are to complete tasks better, faster and with less effort. Predictions suggest that existing technologies will continue to merge, in the same way that the telephone and internet access have merged using mobile phone technology.

Any reference to a digital divide should also consider other factors that affect the provision and use of ICT, such as cost, speed and quality of internet connections, personal skills, maintenance of equipment, privacy issues and the threats of computer viruses.

Analysing spatial data using interactive mapping

Go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to the website IndexMundi. It gives access to statistics, graphs and mapped data about many countries worldwide. The site collects data from many sources and allows users to explore those data at a global, regional and country scale.

The following activities relate to ICT and mobile phone usage in Africa. There are other development indicators, such as electricity consumption per capita or GDP per capita, on the site that you may wish to explore. Purchasing power parity (PPP) allows international comparisons to be made: it is a conversion factor for calculating how much foreign money would be needed to buy the same goods or services in the US market.

Global use of ICT

Change in the field of ICT is rapid and ongoing.

According to the Secretary-General of the United Nations International Telecommunications Union, the number of internet users increased from 250 million in 2000 to 2.1 billion in 2011. The number of mobile phone subscriptions has also increased globally from 500 million in 2000 to an estimated 5.28 billion in 2011.

The **digital divide** refers to variations in access to the internet between and within countries.

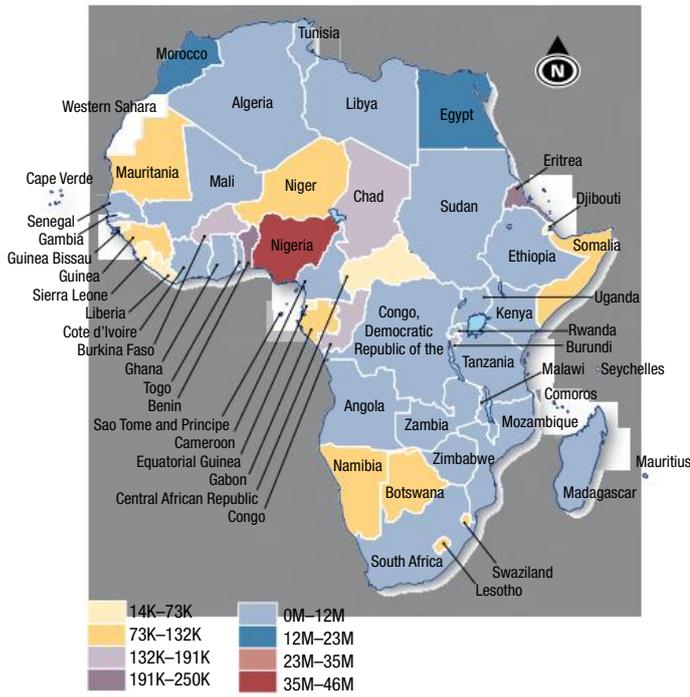
It is generally believed that access to the internet varies both within countries (especially between rural and urban regions) and between countries according to their level of **economic development**.

digital divide inequalities in access and use of technology between countries, or between rural and urban regions, and even between men and women

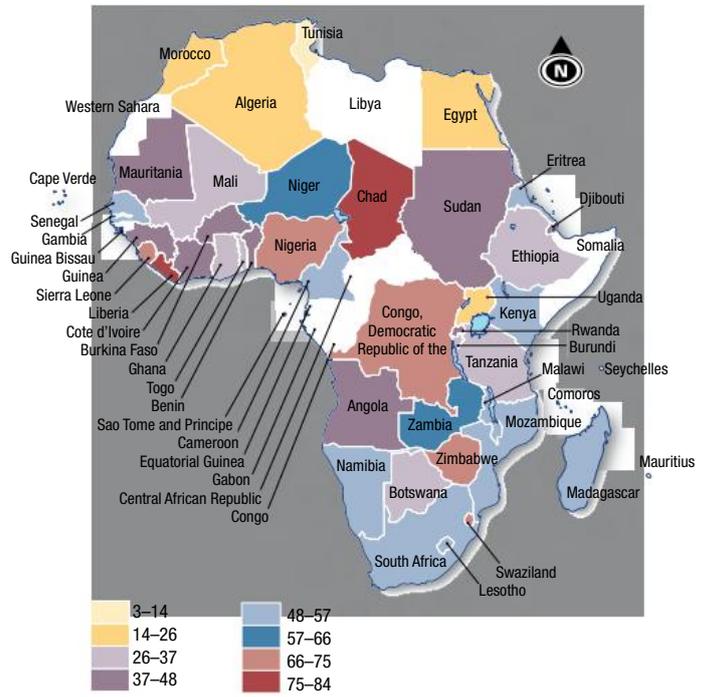
economic development improvement in the standard of living in a region as measured by financial indicators



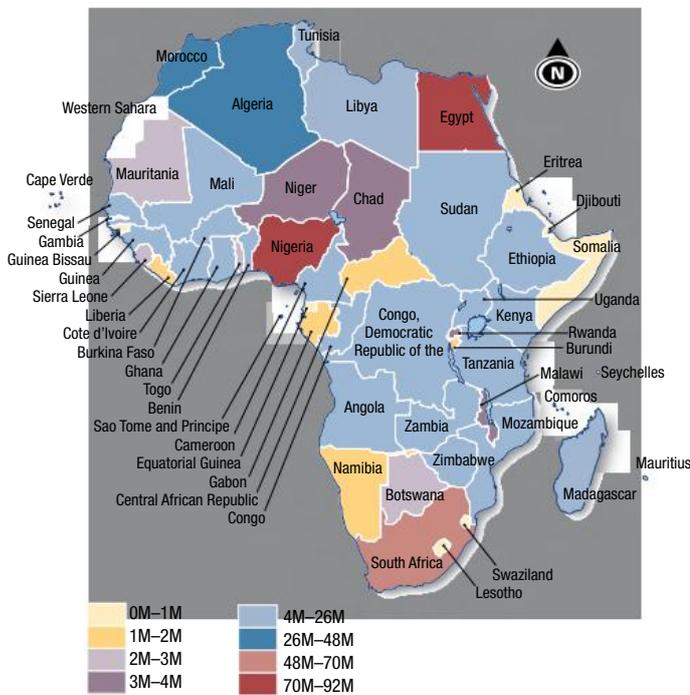
Source 8.5 The internet and World Wide Web are essential communications technologies.



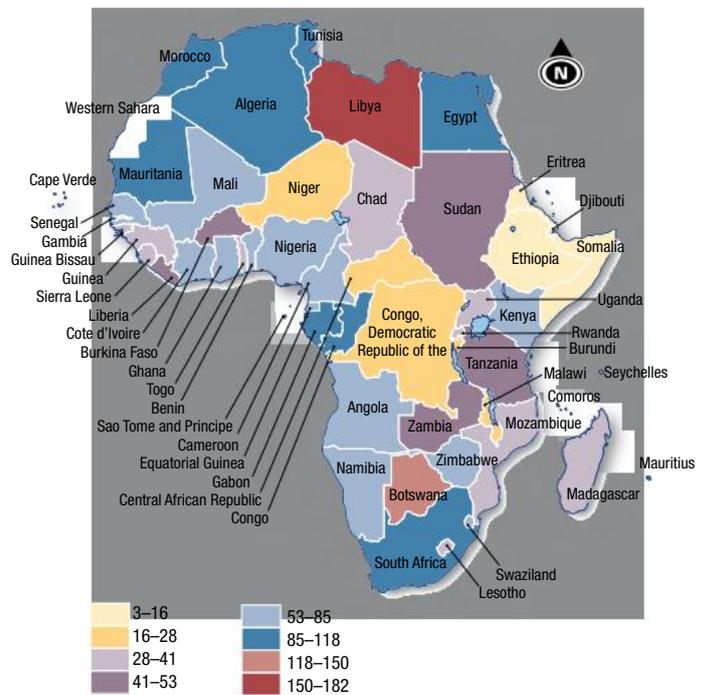
Source 8.6 The distribution of internet users in Africa



Source 8.7 Percentage of the population below the poverty line in Africa



Source 8.8 Mobile cellular telephones in Africa



Source 8.9 Estimated number of mobile phone lines per 100 people in Africa

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.2

- 1 Define PPP (purchasing power parity).
- 2 List the problems associated with interpreting statistics relating to the internet.
- 3 Describe the distribution of internet users in Source 8.6:
 - general trend
 - examples
 - exceptions.
- 4 Describe the spatial association between the distribution of internet users in Source 8.6 and population below the poverty line in Source 8.7.
- 5 From the evidence suggested in these maps and your investigation of the websites for IndexMundi and the World Bank (follow the link to these through www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks), to what degree does ICT correlate with other economic development indicators across Africa?
 - a What does 'per capita' mean?
 - b Compare Sources 8.8 and 8.9, which show the pattern of mobile use and mobile phone lines per 100 people in Africa.

Cloud computing – helping to overcome ICT barriers

cloud computing broadly, programs and services available via the internet; the 'cloud' is a metaphor to symbolise the worldwide and intangible character of the internet

Recent developments, including **cloud computing**, may provide opportunities for less economically developed regions to access software and services (such as data storage, applications or file sharing) via the internet and help countries become less reliant on physical infrastructure.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.3

- 1 What is cloud computing?
- 2 Suggest the benefits of ICT for low- and middle-income country users. Identify any limitations of cloud computing.

8.2 ICT and economic development

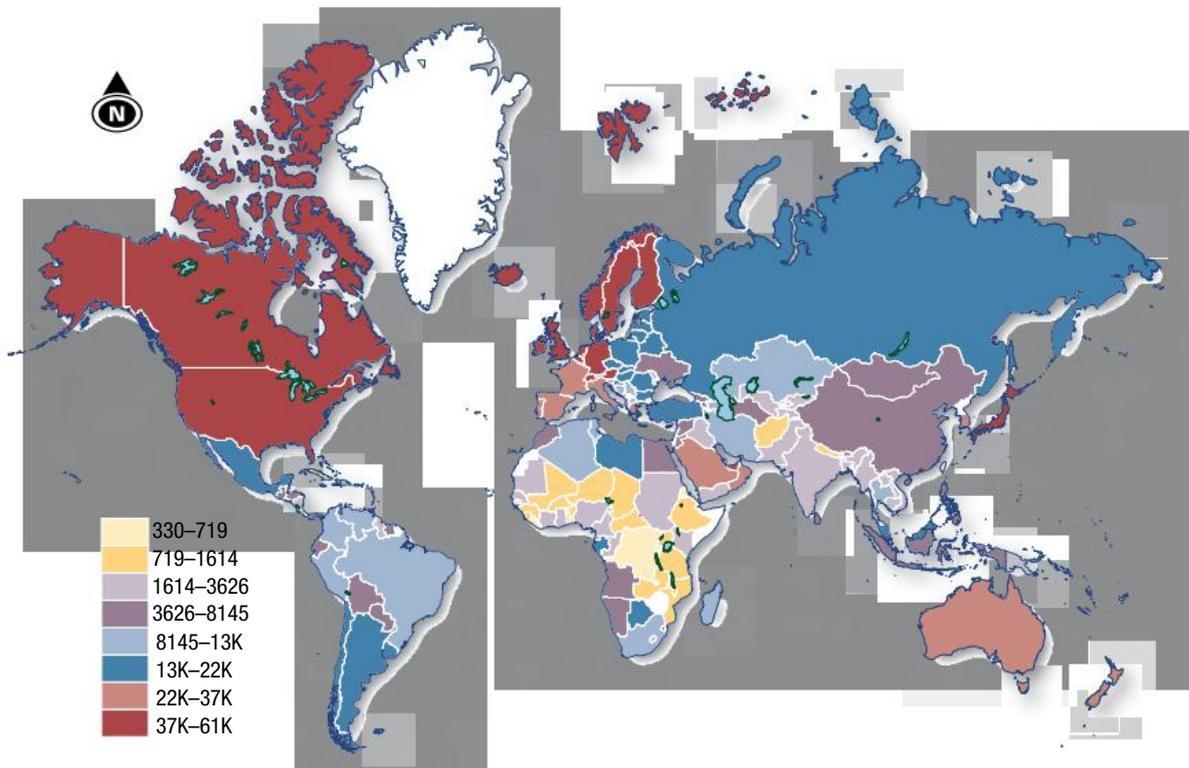
low- or middle-income country a country that has a lower GNI per capita than wealthier countries

gross national income (GNI) per capita the average total annual income of each person in a particular country

Over the past two decades, ICT has played an important role in creating economic development in **low- and middle-income countries**. The World Bank classifies a country as low or middle income according to its **gross national income (GNI) per capita** (per capita means per person). However, this is only one economic indicator, and in order to understand the development of a region a range of indicators should be used.

The World Bank releases updates each year; the following categories are for 2012:

Low income	US\$1025 or less
Lower middle income	US\$1026 to \$4035
Upper middle income	US\$4036 to \$12 475
High income	US\$12 476 or more



Source 8.10 Gross national income (GNI) per capita in international dollars (PPP)

Geographical thought

The international dollar is the hypothetical currency used to represent the purchasing or buying power of a US dollar.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.4

- 1 Explain what an international dollar represents.
- 2 Refer to Source 8.10 and name three low-income countries and three middle-income countries. Go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to the *Global Finance* magazine website (for the actual interactive map) and the UN data site.
- 3 List one example for each development indicator type using the following categories:
 - social – for example, number of doctors per capita
 - historical
 - economic
 - environmental
 - political
 - technological.

8.3 The rise of mobile phones

In recent years the increasing use of mobile technology and social media has changed the way people use the internet, which has implications for low- and middle-income countries.

Vodafone and Oxfam International are examples of a business and a non-government organisation working collaboratively to reduce the impacts of rural poverty. Mobile phones can play a role in this by helping overcome infrastructure barriers. For example, mobile technologies can give isolated and poor farmers access to information and to services, such as micro-banking and insurance.

One example is the Kenyan Farmers Helpline, known locally as Huduma Kwa Wakulima, which allows farmers to access assistance for immediate issues, such as weather information and pest control. M-Farm is another example: it allows farmers in Kenya to buy and sell their produce or obtain information about market prices via their mobile phones. The introduction of solar-powered recharge devices has reduced the need to walk (sometimes long distances) to a power source, but the rate of change in technology, compatibility issues and affordability are still problems.

A recent report relating to mobile phone use and gender in low- and middle-income countries by the GSMA (Global System for Mobile Communications Association) revealed the following data in 2010:

- Males are 21% more likely than women to own a mobile phone.
- Women in rural areas are 23% less likely to own a mobile phone than women in urban areas.
- There are estimates of US\$13 billion in future business opportunities in these countries.

- Women are two-thirds of the potential market for mobile phones in the next 5 years.
- Ninety per cent of women feel safer when they have a mobile phone.

Socio-cultural factors are significant when seeking to explore the gender gap in mobile phone use and ownership: the traditional role of women, rural living, education and income levels all make a contribution. Also, the introduction of any new technology needs to include respect for cultural differences. For example, an online database may be useful to record health details of people living in rural communities, but inconsistencies with data may arise if a person's date of birth is given as 'the day of the torrential rains'.

Mobile technology – issues for consideration

The following are some of the challenges for the future:

- lack of computers and equipment
- difficulty of teaching skills needed to make effective use of equipment in terms of accessing and evaluating information
- lack of teachers with ICT skills
- breakdowns and maintenance of devices, software and network connections
- lack of electricity and other infrastructure
- cost of computers, mobile phones and internet connection
- theft of equipment
- cyberbullying and other forms of anti-social or criminal behaviour on the internet, such as viruses and scams.
- inadequate personal skills to make effective use of equipment in terms of accessing and evaluating information.



Source 8.11 Using a mobile phone to take photographs in rural Zambia

Geographical thought

The World Bank reported in 2009 that there was a 1.3% increase in economic growth for every 10% increase in broadband internet connection.

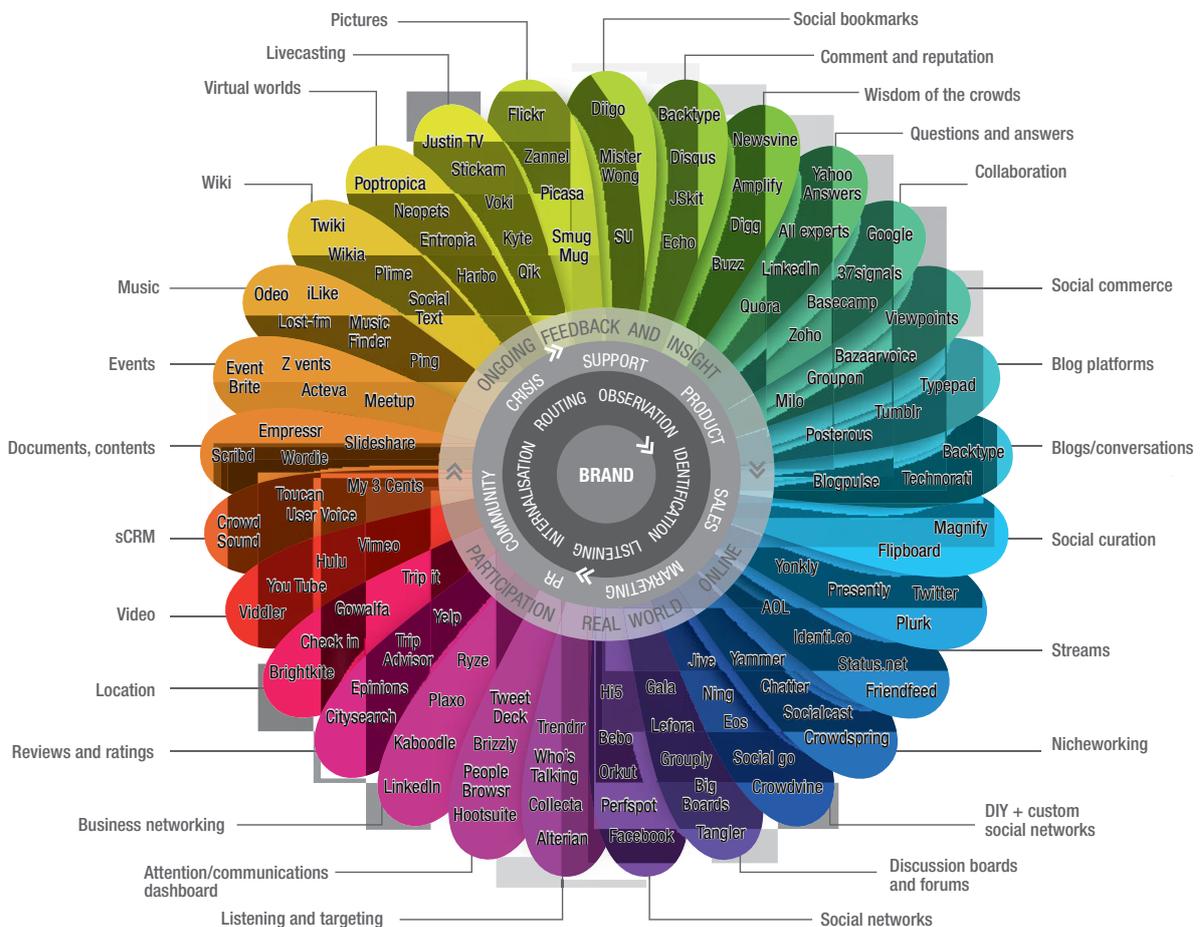
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.5

- 1 Investigate the access, cost and use of mobile phones in the poorer regions of Nairobi (Kenya) or Mumbai (India). Present a written report, using subheadings to organise your findings.
- 2 Take action! It is estimated that there are 22 million disused mobile phones in Australia alone. Organisations such as Mobile Musters (go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to the website) provide opportunities for mobile phone recycling. Investigate the environmental costs of unrecycled electronic waste (e-waste). Create a poster for a campaign to recycle mobile phones in your school or local community. Include in the poster the environmental costs of unrecycled e-waste in Australia.

8.4 The rise of social media

Social media use and sophistication have increased dramatically during the last 10 years. It is enabling new ways of map making and understanding relationships across virtual space. While social networking originated

as a means of maintaining relationships between already established friendship groups, the use of the likes of LinkedIn and Twitter are now also considered part of social networking.



Source 8.12 A visual representation of social media

Source 8.12 shows how people are starting to conceptualise space differently and organise their relationships differently.

In general, social media involves internet-based applications that allow users to create and share content that is in a variety of multimedia formats.

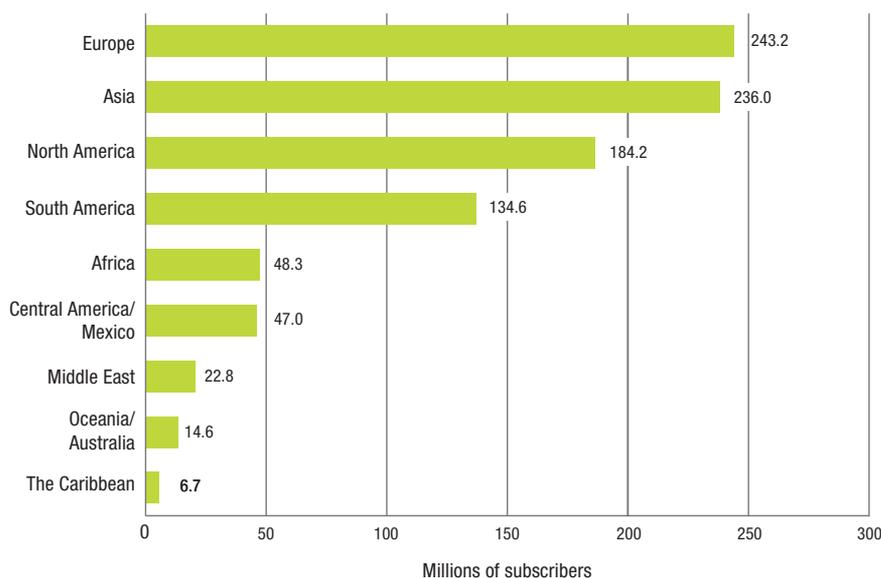
The following are some examples of social media:

- collaborative projects and content communities where users add or delete information in a continuous manner via wikis and/or that are interest specific – such as Flickr for photographs or YouTube for videos
- blogs, which can range from personal travel diaries to a discussion forum about a product or company
- social networking, which generally involves making connections between people
- virtual gaming and social worlds using avatars, such as *Second Life*.

In January 2009, Facebook had over 175 million users. According to Website Monitoring, it now has over 500 million users; Africa is the region with the fastest growth in users.



Source 8.13 Facebook now has over 500 million users.

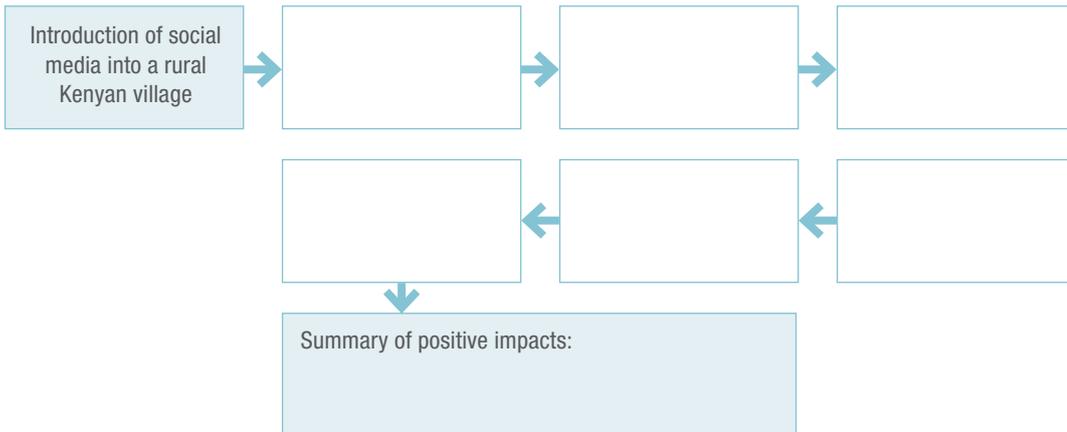


Source 8.14 Facebook users by world regions, 2012

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.6

- 1 Predict how the distribution and number of Facebook users as shown in Source 8.14 may change in the next 10 years.
- 2 Copy the graphic organiser below and analyse the flow-on effects of using social media in a rural Kenyan village. Repeat the procedure for the negative impacts.

Positive impacts of social media



8.5 ICT as development tools

appropriate technology the idea that technology used in low- and middle-income countries should meet the community's needs, be compatible with local socio-cultural traditions, and be cheap, small and promote independence by using local natural and human resources

The following are examples of how ICT can be used as development tools that use the concept of **appropriate technology**.

Leading innovation and technology for a sustainable future: Siemens Ltd Australia

Siemens is a German-based multinational organisation that has existed for 165 years and now operates in around 190 countries (go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to its website). The company aims to provide technology-based solutions

SIEMENS

Source 8.15 Siemens is a multinational technology organisation working in the areas of energy, health care and city infrastructure.

in the areas of energy, health care, industry and city infrastructure (such as transport).

Siemens commenced business in Australia during 1872 and with its affiliates, including Siemens New Zealand, has over 3200 employees. In order to work successfully across many countries, quick and efficient sharing of information using communications technologies has been crucial.

Siemens' focus is on government and business customers. The company is proud of its long history and reputation as a reliable and trusted brand in the global market.

Business related to the environment and sustainability has been increasing over time, and in a recent Siemens financial year (1 October 2011 to 30 September 2012), the company earned €30 billion (approximately A\$40 billion) from its environmental portfolio globally. Siemens is currently one of the world's major suppliers of 'ecofriendly' technologies.

The four global megatrends

Siemens places great importance on research and design. It has used four global **megatrends** that reflect

megatrend a major movement, pattern or change emerging in the global environment

challenges facing our world and created business solutions to guide the company:

1 *Urbanisation.* In 2009 more than 50% of people around the world lived in cities, and UN estimates suggest that this may increase to 70% by 2050. This places enormous pressures on existing resources and increases the need for more sustainable and energy-efficient design of urban buildings, transport and water supply.



Source 8.16 The United Nations estimates that 70% of the world's population will live in cities by 2050.

2 *Changing demographics.* The world population is expected to increase from 7.06 billion (July 2012) to 9.2 billion in 2050. There will be a need for more preventive and early diagnostic technologies to cope with the dual trends of ageing and growing populations in various regions.



Source 8.17 The average age of the world's population is expected to dramatically increase by 2050.

3 *Globalisation.* Technology is one factor that has helped the world become more interconnected; growing international trade and movement of workers are examples of the globalisation process.



Source 8.18 International trade has made the world more interconnected.

4 *Climate change.* There is a need for more efficient and renewable energy options to deal with the projected impacts of rising average global temperatures, and the world's reliance on non-renewable fuels such as coal.



Source 8.19 The world will need to find renewable sources of energy to limit the effects of climate change.

Working to improve rural health care in India

Siemens currently employs over 17 000 people in India and has 23 major factories. Nearly 5000 employees are involved in research and development.

Siemens uses the concept of sustainability in terms of building the knowledge and skills of its workers. Empowering local people with leadership skills encourages an ongoing and collaborative work culture.

In 2001, Siemens developed the 'mini-clinic on wheels' with the aim of increasing access to and affordability of health services to rural areas in India. The Sanjeevan is a bus providing diagnostic equipment such as X-rays, ultrasound, a basic testing laboratory and some refrigerated medicines. These vehicles have been sold to local governments, private health providers and non-government organisations throughout India.

Experts at the Siemens Corporate Technology Centre in Bangalore are now investigating other high-quality but reasonably affordable options to improve the health of rural communities, such as CT (computed tomography) scans or MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) equipment.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.7

- 1 Explain the term 'megatrend' using an example.
- 2 Discuss why the four megatrends listed are used by Siemens Ltd.
- 3 List other megatrends that Siemens Ltd could consider. Include reasons for each suggestion.



Source 8.20 The Siemens Sanjeevan bus or 'mini-clinic on wheels' in India

Geographical thought

During the 2011-12 Siemens financial year, the company's products and services enabled its customers to reduce carbon dioxide emissions by 332 megatons. This amount is equal to 40% of Germany's total carbon dioxide emissions.

The One Laptop Per Child (OLPC) project

The general goal of the One Laptop Per Child project (OLPC) is for children in the least economically developed regions to gain empowerment using a laptop as a learning tool and as a means of connecting them with the wider world. The non-profit organisation based in the United States began providing laptops to children in 2007 (go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to their website). The green and white XO laptops are generally sold to governments and then allocated within the country by the Ministry of Education. The XO laptops use a wireless broadband connection. They can be used with electricity or other

renewable energy options such as solar, wind, hydro or even 'human power'.

According to the Project Coordinator Nkubito Bakuramutsa, the 2012 shipment cost about US\$200 for each laptop: the aim was to allocate 200 000 by the end of the year to upper primary school children. Given that the laptops were designed for children, the processing speed is slower, but estimates suggest that they are about five times more energy efficient than conventional laptops. They are also robust, so they can cope with student use. The key advantage of the laptop is its mobility. Students can take them home and therefore involve the family in shared learning.

The philosophy of the project is that the computer should be regarded as a tool, like a pencil or paper. It

is also important that students take ownership of – and care for – the technology.

Over 1500 teachers have been trained, which is another benefit in terms of the transfer of knowledge within these predominantly rural communities. The

President of Rwanda introduced the project in 2008 to build the capacity of young learners and promote the country's future development as a knowledge-based rather than a rural-based economy.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.8

- 1 Discuss why the laptops need to be robust.
- 2 Contrast a laptop with a mobile phone in terms of increasing learning opportunities for children in rural communities in Africa.
- 3 Suggest other benefits of the XO laptops for the students at school and at home.

Geographical thought

If India followed the World Health Organization's recommendations of a 1:25 ratio of doctors to patients, India would require 4.8 million doctors.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.9

Copy the table below and evaluate the One Laptop Per Child project.

Develop a list of six criteria in order to make comparisons, and use the criteria to evaluate them.

	One Laptop Per Child
Aim or goal of project	
Criterion 1: cost to produce	
Criterion 2:	
Criterion 3:	
Criterion 4:	
Criterion 5:	
Criterion 6:	
Preferred example of innovative and appropriate ICT – summary of findings	

8.6 ICT: a global service

outsourcing contracting part of a business function to another person or business

offshoring moving a business activity or part of a business activity to an overseas location

There is a growing trend to both **outsource** and **offshore** ICT services. The broad terms used in industry (mentioned next) help classify the type and role of ICT services.

Information technology outsourcing (ITO)

Examples of ITO are:

- information technology support, which may include designing computer networks or help-desk assistance
- software development, which involves creating programs to help businesses manage their finances, use video conferencing or manage websites.

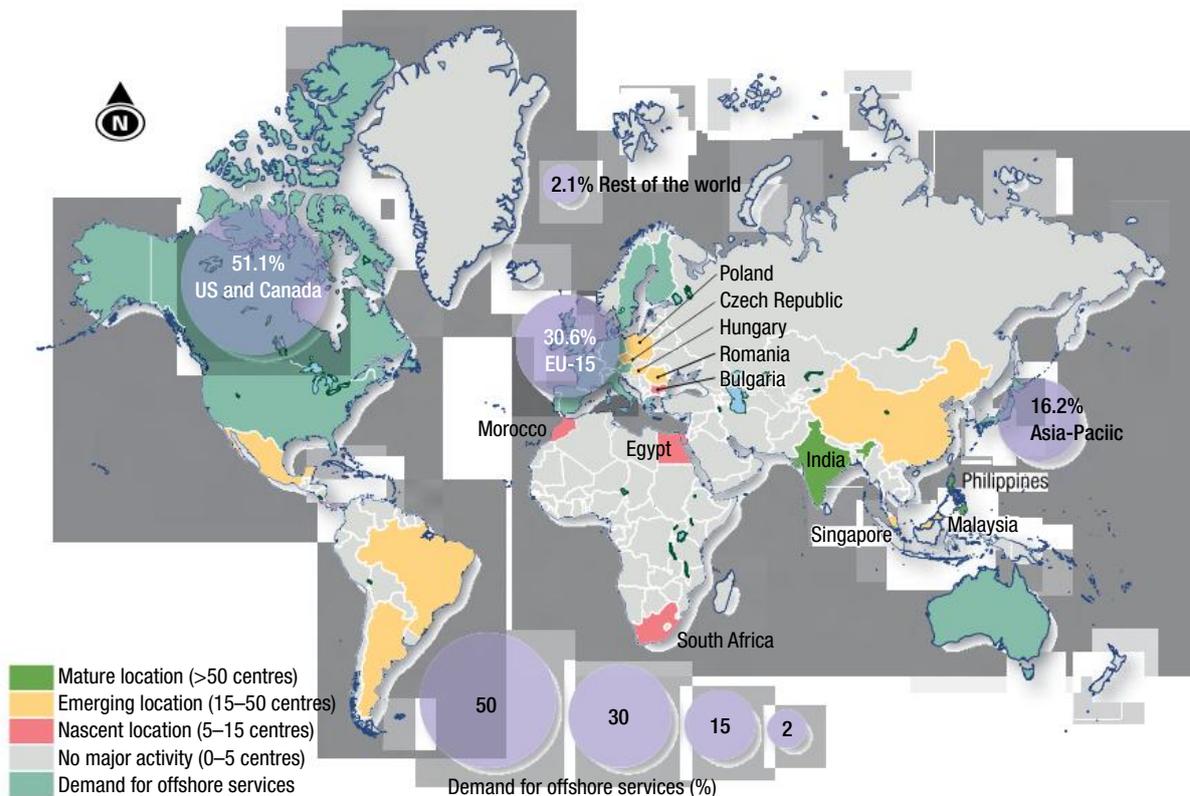
Business process outsourcing (BPO)

Examples of BPO are:

- data processing, which may consist of maintaining a company's financial records or customer lists using a database
- employee services, which refer to some human resources activities that relate to payroll or job applications.

Knowledge process outsourcing (KPO)

Knowledge process outsourcing relates to areas that are more specialised, and that require a higher level of knowledge and skills; examples include the legal, medical and financial consultancy or animation and design areas. Pay rates are significantly higher.



Source 8.21 Distribution of global offshore services

In 2010, the OECD (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development) estimated that the general offshore market for services was US\$252 billion. The ICT industry is a significant and growing contributor to this market. Global outsourcing is not a new

process. It started in the 1960s and 1970s largely in the manufacturing area – for shoes, clothes, electronics and toys. Transport and travel evolved next, but now the growth is in business services that generally have an ICT basis, such as telecommunications.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 8.10

- 1 List three offshore and three outsourced products or services.
- 2 Refer to Source 8.21 and select a country that has emerging offshore activities. Suggest reasons for this trend.



8.7 Problems with ICT

While renewable energy options have sometimes been successful at a local scale, the following situation in India highlights the problems that occur when the electricity network fails.

Geographical thought

According to the Asian Development Bank, 700 million people across Asia do not have access to electricity.

One of the world's biggest power blackouts affects India

A failure in India's northern and eastern electricity grid on 30 July 2012 left over 600 million people without power. The initial outage lasted for 15 hours, and despite repairs a second breakdown occurred the following day. In New Delhi, the rail network – which caters for approximately 1.8 million people per day – was closed and traffic lights were down, creating major delays on the roads. Hospitals were generally able to function using generators, but the banking sector reported closures. Even mining operations ceased: lack of power meant the equipment that pumps oxygen to miners who work underground could not operate.

It was believed that a high demand for electricity meant that power was being shared between electricity grids, which caused the collapse of the system. The breakdown highlighted the country's reliance on electricity, and questions were raised about the adequacy of the power infrastructure in India.

Analysing spatial patterns from electricity use

Source 8.22 was taken by a crew member using a digital camera on board the International Space Station during 2011 as it was moving in a south-easterly direction over northern India and Pakistan. The largest clusters of lights are the capital cities: Islamabad in Pakistan and New Delhi in India. The lines of the highways and the cloud-covered Himalayan mountains are also visible. The unusual feature in this image is the orange line of lights across the centre. This is the border zone between the two countries, and



Source 8.22 Night image of northern Indian border region taken from the International Space Station

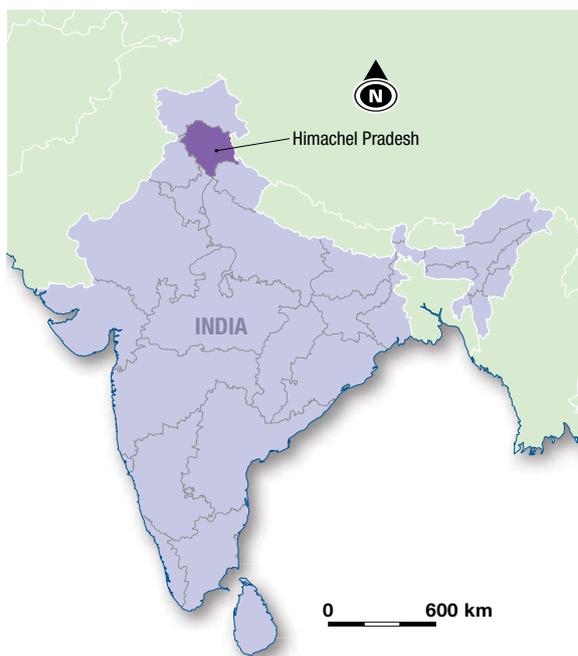
it is floodlit and fenced to help prevent arms trading and smuggling between India and Pakistan.

ICT and economic development in rural north India

Historical and geographic background

Dharamsala is located in the province of Himachal Pradesh in north India. It has a population of approximately 1 149 744 and a land area of 5739 square kilometres. Temperatures range from 0°C in January to 38°C in June and average rainfall is 290–380 millimetres per year, which is considered semi-arid. The altitude ranges from 1250 metres to 2000 metres and the blending of cultures here has created a diverse human environment. It is well known as the headquarters (Gangchen Kyishong) of the exiled Tibetan government and home of the fourteenth Dalai Lama (at the Namgyai Monastery). This means there is a visible Tibetan influence and a large settlement of Tibetan refugees.

The population of the region is also affected by conditions in neighbouring Rajasthan. Rajasthan is a large and predominantly desert state. It has a majority Hindu population and most of the rural families are farmers. Encroaching desert and the degradation of common lands (mainly due to harvesting firewood and growing grass for animal fodder) have led to reduced agricultural productivity. Traditional inheritance practices of dividing land between the male children has led to smaller and smaller land holdings, which are less and less able to support family groups.



Source 8.23 The location of Himachel Pradesh in India

Some sons may seek work elsewhere to increase the household income, and some whole families move. In the city of Kangra, for example, there are many families from farms in Rajasthan; they live in the slums near the tourist regions such as Dharamsala. Families also come from other states in northern India, including Maharashtra and

Punjab, for similar reasons. There are an estimated 10000 environmental refugees living in Himachel Pradesh, mainly along the access roads to towns.

In Dharamsala there are many people living in temporary hand-made housing, which provides little protection from the weather. Families find work in construction, collecting rubbish or mending shoes. Children can be seen trying to make a living by begging in the streets. Poor hygiene and general health, malnutrition, lack of education and disease are all prevalent in these slum communities.

Tong-Len is a small charity established to help the families living in the slums of Dharamsala (go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to their website). A new hostel opened in 2011 to house children from some of the poorest families and to give them a private school education. The children now have an opportunity to break the cycle of poverty through education.

The use of ICT gives these children access to information and to online learning programs. A computer room is available in the hostel for all the children.

Tong-Len works with a particular community of about 250 families. Most have neither the means nor the opportunity to establish stable homes for themselves. In addition, they are in an environment that can at times be hostile – the threat of eviction is a constant fear. The following are some images from people living in the slums of Dharamsala.



Source 8.24 Housing conditions in the slums of Dharamsala



Source 8.25 Children from the hostel



Source 8.26 Children from the hostel working in the new computer room



Source 8.27 Project between volunteers and the children of Tong-Len hostel to present their messages to the world



Source 8.28 The five eldest children living at the Tong-Len hostel.



Source 8.29 Completion of 'the wall'



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- ICT is rapidly changing, with increasingly merging and wireless tools that enable easier connections between people to be made.
- The distribution of ICT around the world, as measured by internet-related use, is uneven.
- Internet-enabled mobile phones and social media are changing the use of the internet.
- Generally, people have greater access to ICT, but access is not universal: it is more limited in rural areas, for example. The poorest sectors of society remain excluded, and there is a possibility that the 'digital divide' may widen, increasing the gap in living standards between these people and those who are better off.
- ICT has the potential to assist development, as is evident in the many successful (and generally small-scale) initiatives of government, non-government and corporate organisations, but barriers remain in terms of cost, pace of change, infrastructure and research data.
- Outcomes for ICT should be integrated with development goals relating to education, health and employment.
- The ICT service industry has generated economic gains in terms of standards of living (incomes), but the evidence as to whether or not this translates into improvements in quality of life is not conclusive.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Marshall McLuhan (1911–80) was a Canadian philosopher with an interest in media and communications who coined the phrase 'global village'. How could the increasing use of ICT create a 'global village'? (*Hint: Use the concepts of distance and movement in your answer.*) Include a sketch to assist your explanation.
- 2 The *Future Geographical Careers* report by Fast Future (commissioned by the UK government in 2010) made some suggestions about employment options that may be popular in 2030. These include a waste data handler, vertical farmer, weather modification police officer, alternative vehicle developer, classroom avatar manager and old age wellness consultant.
Select one of these possible future careers and discuss with a partner the following:
 - a the knowledge and skills that may be involved in this occupation
 - b the value of studying geography for this future role.
- 3 Evaluate the role of mobile phones in the development of low- and middle-income countries.
- 4 How could social media be used to enhance development in rural Africa?
- 5 Outline the problems that can occur when a country has a heavy reliance on electricity.

Extended-response question

Claims are being made that ICT is 'revolutionising' the development opportunities for low- and middle-income countries. Research is currently being undertaken, and while there are many examples of positive outcomes for people, questions remain about the equitable access to technology and the uneven distribution of projects in rural communities. Even in regions with reliable internet access, uncertainty remains as to whether the use of the technology is leading to improvements in the people's standard of living and quality of life.

Evaluate this statement using evidence from independent research.

9

Global mobility

Before you start

Main focus

People have the freedom to choose where and how to live in a highly mobile world.

Why it's relevant to us

Mobility influences people's identity, attachment to place and perceptions of other places, and transforms the world.

Inquiry questions

- Why do people move?
- What attracts people to places?
- How does the mobility of people impact on places?
- In what ways does mobility influence the character of a place?

Key terms

- Diaspora
- Expatriate
- Immigrant
- Landscape aesthetic
- Migration
- Personal mobility
- Sea changer

Let's begin

Our daily survival depends on food gathering or finding some other means of acquiring food and shelter. For most Australian citizens, basic everyday needs are achieved by working in order to earn a wage or salary with which to purchase goods. Finding employment is a major motivating factor in where people choose to live.

Australia's history of settlement reflects a process of migration, starting with Indigenous people thousands of years ago, and followed by waves of arrivals from near and distant places after the first European settlers landed in 1788. This has changed the landscape of the continent irrevocably, adding towns and cities, farms and mines, factories and shops, and roads, railways and airports. The flow of people from other places continues, with arrivals from all parts of the world; also, Australian citizens leave the country, sometimes permanently. Generally, people on the move are seeking better lives. A multitude of reasons help explain these movements.

9.1 To move or not to move

People move from rural to urban areas for education and jobs, travel to remote mining settlements for employment, cluster around the coasts for easy access to other places, and seek warmer climates during winter – all within Australia. Movement can be short term (such as holidays), medium to long term or fairly permanent. Access to transport means Australian citizens can choose, at relatively low cost, a variety of holiday movements – nearby, further away in Australia or, increasingly, overseas.

To understand why people move requires some thinking about the important elements in our lives and the qualities that attract us to a place.

All of us have a feeling of attachment to place and familiar surroundings. When we move around we are likely to seek places that provide us with a degree of connection to familiar features.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 9.1

In small groups, reflect for a moment on what it is that you think attracts people to where they live or wish to live. The following list of features will help start this process:

- The people are friendly.
- It's quiet and peaceful.
- The shops and cafes are good.
- There are plenty of sports facilities.
- It's easy to get around.
- The houses all look the same.
- It's safe.
- People speak many languages.
- There's no violence.
- I feel at home because ...



Source 9.1 Chinatown in Sydney

As well as finding those features in a place, we can also create them. People are social beings. We share language, values and beliefs, plus food and clothing customs, literature, music, recreation activities, work and education. We probably are not aware of how much our thinking and our behaviour are shaped by these aspects of our personal histories. Here is an example

of how important they are: when the first European settlers arrived in Australia from England, they cleared the native trees and replaced them with trees from the Northern Hemisphere, such as pines and deciduous species. They also built houses and planted gardens like English ones. Their **landscape aesthetic** governed their decision making in their new homeland.

Many Australians today live in places or suburbs that have developed unique cultures through a series of **migration** waves. Particularly in the bigger cities – Melbourne, Sydney, Brisbane and Perth – there are significant concentrations of people from particular ethnic backgrounds. In Melbourne, for instance, the suburb of Carlton is synonymous with post-World War II Italian immigration; Caulfield with Jewish people; Richmond with Vietnamese; and Box Hill with Chinese. The shops and the cultural practices of business in each area reflect the customs and cultural practices of the migrant group who settled there and made that location 'home'. Each of these communities, along with many others dotted around Australia, are illustrations of **diasporas**.

landscape aesthetic the way a person responds to their environment

migration movement from one location to another

diaspora a community of people who have had to leave their homeland but wish to return or remain connected to it

Diaspora

In its strictest sense a diaspora is a group of people who are forcibly exiled from their homeland.

They maintain their sense of belonging to that homeland, and their wish to return to it. The longer the period of displacement, though, the more the diaspora is likely to lose connection with the homeland and become rooted in the place where they live. However, for many Australian diasporas there is a lingering connection to a far distant 'home'. This is well illustrated by the Irish celebrations on St Patrick's Day (17 March) and the Chinese celebration of the lunar New Year in February.

Members of a diaspora often feel they have two homes – where they actually live, in Australia, and the land sometimes long since left and now mainly sustained by dreams, myths and legends.

This lingering desire for the past is not simply a desire for a lost life; it can be also be associated with

feelings of loss of personal power. Leaving behind all the memories of growing up and the attachments that were formed to a nation, home, school, street, town and set of daily rituals is painful. At the same time, finding a place or community in a new and welcoming homeland can offset the loss, particularly if it also creates new wealth and a comfortable lifestyle.

To better understand the complexity of the Australian people, their origins and their customs, we need to know more about the Australian government's migration policy and how this has impacted on settlement in the past and today.

One interesting starting point for finding out about the local population would be a local migration museum, if there is one near where you live. These have rich sets of resources, including recorded stories of immigrant settlers, memorabilia from past 'homes' in other lands and images of courageous journeys into the unknown.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 9.2

- 1 Identify areas near where you live that have features associated with another country. These could be food shops and restaurants.
- 2 List any languages other than English spoken by you, your family or anyone else you know.
- 3 Imagine that you have migrated to another country. Write a letter to a family member or friend and tell them about your new 'home'.

9.2 Immigration in Australia



Source 9.2 Immigration has transformed local landscapes.

Prior to 1788

The first waves of **immigrants** were the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people.

They arrived via island and land bridges from the north over 50 000 years ago. As they spread across the continent

Aboriginal people developed close connections with the lands that supported them, and ways to communicate the meanings they attached to events and places through language and cultural practices. Passed down through generations of younger Aboriginal people is the notion that their ancestors should be accorded great respect and that this will contribute to their spiritual wellbeing. This layer of occupancy of Australia is best understood through listening to and talking with Aboriginal people

immigrant a person who has left their country of origin and settled in a new country

in your local area. One of the many important things non-Indigenous Australians can learn from them is the interrelationship between Aboriginal people and their lands: the power of attachment to place.

Colonial settlement, convicts and early ‘free settlers’

Most of the nineteenth century is marked by British colonial influence. Waves of convicts, primarily from the working classes of Ireland and England (mostly London), transported here because the English jails were full, were used as labourers, and constructed the roads, bridges and early buildings for the expanding settlements. The military presence dominated this early period. They were there to guard the convicts and make sure that the grand vision for the settlement created by the politicians back in London was fulfilled. Sydney and Hobart were the first settled colonies; they were followed by Melbourne, Brisbane, Perth and finally Adelaide, which was the first planned and ‘free’ (no convicts) colonial city. All are named after military or political leaders.

By the mid-1800s news of Australia’s rich resources and prosperous lifestyles had filtered back to Britain, and a steady stream of free settlers started to arrive. Access to land attracted farming communities, and mineral wealth soon emerged – gold was discovered. The English, Scottish, Irish and Welsh were the dominant migrants during this phase, but were soon joined by Chinese prospectors and other European migrants, notably from Germany. Each group brought specialities that transformed local landscapes.

German influence in the Barossa Valley, South Australia, dates back to the 1830s. The Barossa Valley is recognised today as a leading wine-producing area,

and the local population is largely made up of families of German origin. The names of the towns and local produce reflect this.

With the discovery of copper in the 1840s Cornish miners flocked to South Australia’s Yorke Peninsula.

Soon to be known as ‘Little Cornwall’, the region dominated the copper trade and the Moonta–Walleroo region became the copper capital of the British Empire.

Population statistics today indicate that the region remains dominated by families of Cornish descent. Celebrations of Cornish traditions such as the famous Cornish pasties are part of that heritage.

Following the end of convict transportation in the 1840s, Chinese workers were contracted as replacement labourers. Many stayed on, and were soon joined by significant numbers of Chinese who sought their fortunes through gold. The gold rushes of the 1850s to 1870s in Victoria especially attracted large numbers of Chinese immigrants. Many Chinese-born people remained after the gold rushes and settled as market gardeners or set up businesses trading in Chinese products.

The twenty-first century

While Australia has remained a land of opportunity and a safe, friendly place to settle, other parts of the world have endured internal conflict, economic hardship and political upheaval. A steady stream of immigrants from troubled regions – including east African countries, the Balkans (including Albania and the former Yugoslavia), Lebanon and Iran, and Chile and Argentina – have sought refuge in Australia. The changing profile of the Australian population is evident in the Australian Bureau of Statistics’ (ABS) census data. Source 9.3 shows the region of birth for overseas-born Australians in 2001 and 2011.

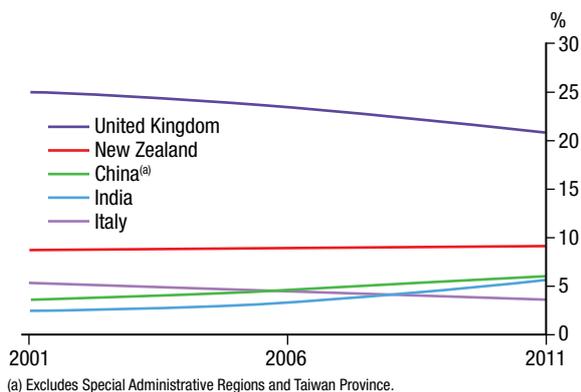


DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 9.3

Copy the graphic organiser below and complete a timeline of immigration in Australia. How do you explain the pattern?

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people arrived via islands and land bridges from the north over 50 000 years ago





Source 9.3 Top five countries of birth as a proportion of total overseas-born population, 2001–11
(a) Excludes Special Administrative Regions and Taiwan Province.



Source 9.4 A refugee camp in Somalia

Refugees

Immigration policy has two major components.

One is the program for skilled workers and families who seek a new way of life in Australia. The other is based on humanitarian aid for refugees and people who are forced to leave their homeland and seek asylum or resettlement in new lands.

Source 9.5 shows the number of humanitarian visas granted in Australia by the top 10 countries of birth. Notably, in this 2010–11 period ‘women at risk’ received specific attention.

Countries	Number of visas granted
Iraq	2151
Burma	1443
Afghanistan	1027
Bhutan	1001
Congo (DRC)	565
Ethiopia	381
Sri Lanka	289
Iran	271
Sudan	243
Somalia	190

Source 9.5 Humanitarian visas by country of birth, 2010–11

RESEARCH 9.1

One way to grasp the significance of Australia’s changing population profile is to conduct a class census. You can design your own questions along the lines of the official Australian Census (go to www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and follow the link to the Australian Bureau of Statistics’ Census at School pages). Questions might include the following:

- What country were you and your parents born in?
- What languages (if any) other than English are spoken at your home?
- How long has your family lived in the place you live in now?
- What other places have you lived (if any) in the last 10 years? Why did you move?
- During the past year, what places did you visit outside your home location?

This list could be pooled and categorised into numbers of visits to relatively close places (local capital city), interstate places and overseas places.



Geographical thought

According to the Australian Department of Immigration and Citizenship, in 2010–11 759 visas of the Refugee category were granted to 'Woman at Risk' visa applicants, exceeding the nominal annual target.

Multiculturalism

The nation's most recent policy statement on multiculturalism, from the Department of Immigration and Citizenship (2011), shows the development in acceptance of our cultural diversity. There are four major policy principles:

Principle 1: The Australian Government celebrates and values the benefits of cultural diversity for all Australians, within the broader aims of national unity, community harmony and maintenance of our democratic values.

Principle 2: The Australian Government is committed to a just, inclusive and socially cohesive society where everyone can participate in the opportunities that Australia offers and where government services are responsive to the needs of Australians from culturally and linguistically diverse backgrounds.

Principle 3: The Australian Government welcomes the economic, trade and investment benefits which arise from our successful multicultural nation.

Principle 4: The Australian Government will act to promote understanding and acceptance while responding to expressions of intolerance and discrimination with strength, and where necessary, with the force of the law.

(Source: Department of Immigration and Citizenship)

The transition from the White Australia Policy to the current position on multiculturalism reflects a new phase for a country that is still moving away from its colonial past. While reparation has in part been made to our Indigenous people, there is still a wide gap in health, education and wealth between Indigenous and non-Indigenous peoples.

There are also challenges ahead with the second generation of immigrants. These minority groups are being integrated into the employment and lifestyle patterns of the modern nation, and there is a sense that all Australians are in a transitional stage of identity. Music, theatre, television, literature, film and painting are all means of self-expression for these groups to contribute to the ongoing evolution of Australian culture.

RESEARCH 9.2

Think about all the annual events in your local community that illustrate connection to place – both near and far. Create an event calendar with illustrations of related art, craft and other representations of culture, including Indigenous, diaspora and older Australian cultures.

9.3 The 'pull' of the cities

Where people live in Australia is largely linked to settlement history. The major cities along the east coast provide sea links for trade and the movement of people. Sydney, Melbourne and Brisbane alone account for more than 40% of Australia's total population; if we add two other state capitals – Adelaide and Perth – it

totals more than 50%. With the addition of all other significant urban areas, the population resident in cities is estimated to be around 90% of Australia's total population. Source 9.6 shows the percentage change in rural and urban growth since 1950, with projections to 2025.

Indicator	1950	1970	1990	2010	2025
Rural population	1 881 000	1 876 000	2 496 000	2 439 000	2 428 000
Urban population	6 297 000	10 853 000	15 601 000	19 829 000	22 813 000
% urban	77	85.3	85.4	89.0	90.4
Rural annual growth rate (over 5 years)	0.22%	0.84	-0.40	-0.50	-0.04
Urban annual growth rate (over 5 years)	2.98%	1.90	1.49	1.49	1.14
Major cities					
Adelaide	429 000	792 000	1 046 000	1 181 000	1 535 000
Brisbane	442 000	798 000	1 329 000	1 993 000	2 627 000
Melbourne	1 332 000	2 334 000	3 117 000	3 896 000	4 962 000
Perth	311 000	611 000	1 160 000	1 955 000	2 121 000
Sydney	1 690 000	2 667 000	3 632 000	5 254 000	5 646 000

Source 9.6 Rural and urban population figures including major cities

The figures indicate the gradual decline in rural population and the increasing percentage of people living in the major capital cities. Factors that help explain these outcomes include declining rural employment and consolidation of small farms into large ones;

redistribution of infrastructure including services and employment; migration from rural areas to cities; and expansion of the major cities by the addition of job-seekers and new arrivals.

Source 9.7 It is estimated that there will be 5 646 000 people living in Sydney by 2025.



One of the consequences of this trend is urban sprawl. Accommodating the new arrivals is difficult, and affects both rental and home ownership costs and

personal mobility one's ability to move around

options. Many new settlers – and others – have to move to the city fringe, where housing is more affordable.

This requires **personal mobility** to get to work and access services – often through car ownership – because of poor public transport locally.

There are positive effects of increased population on urban areas: more people helps create growth economically, including housing, schools and services. There can be negative consequences if there are problems in constructing those services for expanding

suburbs; also, communities can suffer through having limited access to support services and to parks and green spaces.

Geographical thought

In 2001, eight out of 10 people born overseas lived in a capital city and just over half were in Sydney or Melbourne.

9.4 Internal migration

So far in this chapter our attention has been on movements of people in the workforce – those moving internally and those migrating here from overseas. The push factors in most of these contexts revolve around the difficulty of having a successful and satisfying way of life. The pull factors are usually connected with work and settlement opportunities. There are, however, groups of people who are on the move all the time, for short-term purposes or to find another place that appears to offer additional lifestyle quality or meet changed personal standards of what constitutes a liveable place. The desire 'for a change' and the ability to do something about it are usually associated with affluence – relocation can be expensive.

Sea changers

Local councils having to deal with the influx of **sea changers** have established a National Sea Change Task Force to share information and strategies.

sea changer the colloquial term for a person who opts for what they perceive as an improved quality of life by the coast

Local councils estimate that the growth rate of these towns is 60% above the national average. In 2006 their Sustainability Charter was published. It makes a commitment to:

- develop innovative and best practice strategic planning at regional and local levels
- preserve local character and sense of place
- provide for the timely provision of resources to meet the needs of high growth communities for infrastructure and services
- integrate coastal management and conservation objectives with economic development

- support community wellbeing
- ensure community ownership and participation in key planning decisions affecting the coast.

Retirees are the group most commonly associated with this pattern of movement, which can be for the annual visit to coastal resorts in northern latitudes or for permanent settlement – typical of the Gold Coast and Sunshine Coast towns of southern Queensland, and of northern New South Wales towns. Demographically, this is an important group for study. Retirement villages in attractive coastal locations are a lucrative source of investment income. So are caravan parks, used by the 'grey nomads' who circle Australia in their retirement years. These are the 'baby boomers', now on the move and doing things that were not possible in their earlier years of working and child rearing.

Young people

The most common internal movements are associated with the capital cities. A large percentage of the movements between cities are young people or recent arrivals. For young people, moving from country locations to the cities is generally associated with training and higher education, which in turn can lead to city-based employment opportunities. However, most young people do not move out of their local areas or shift states.

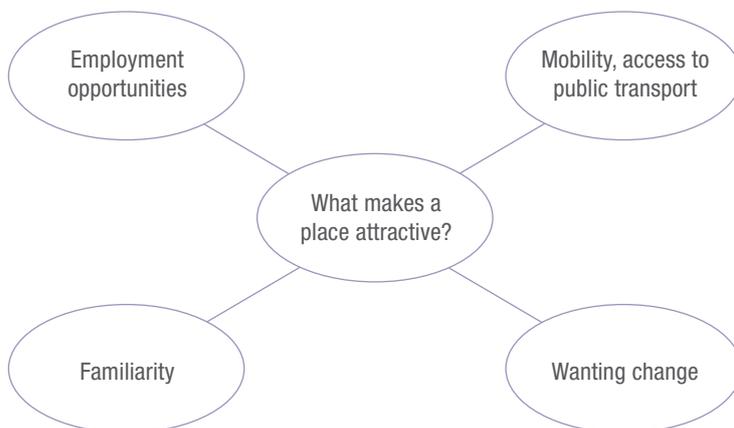
Similarly, new arrivals generally seek to remain in the major cities. This pattern applies particularly to people of Asian background. The ABS reported in 2001, for instance, that people of Vietnamese origin lived almost exclusively in the major cities (97%). The same applied to people from China (96%), India (91%) and the Philippines (85%).



Source 9.8 Boat Harbour, a seaside town in Tasmania

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 9.4

Copy the graphic organiser below and explore the reasons why people are attracted to a particular place.



Geographical thought

Young people (people aged 15–24 years) make up one of the most mobile population groups. Mobility rates increase from the mid-teens through the young adult years, peaking at age 27, and falling sharply from that point, through to age 75.

9.5 Overseas migration

The final movement trends discussed here relate to Australians moving away from the country.

International holidays or short-term trips have become increasingly affordable. However, the major shift has been in the numbers of people now seeking to leave the country to work internationally. The ABS

figures show that for 1991–2003, around three in every 100 Australian-born people aged 15 or over were living in another Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) country. The consequences are described by the ABS as follows.

International migration has increased markedly as a result of the rise of the global labour market, more affordable international transport and sophisticated communication technologies. The movement of Australians overseas is an important issue not only because of its impact on the size of the Australian resident population, but also through its impact on the labour force and the economy.



Generally, **expatriate** Australians have high educational levels, as do the expatriate populations from other OECD countries, including those who seek to come to Australia.

expatriate a person who lives and works outside their native country



Source 9.9 A growing number of Australians are working overseas.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- People on the move in Australia reflect changing policies and opportunities for travel as well as international pressures from regions in conflict.
- Liberalising the immigration policy – the shift away from European countries of origin and the increased intake of people born in Asian countries in particular – has led to a culturally changing profile, as has the humanitarian intake program.
- Movement within Australia reflects job opportunities, especially for younger people.
- The same is true of international movement, with increasing numbers of Australian citizens leaving the country for short and longer periods.
- Expatriates tend to be better educated and may return following an extended period overseas.
- Our increasingly diversified cultural identity is transforming the Australian nation.

Short-answer questions

- 1 What does the term 'diaspora' mean? Give an example.
- 2 Discuss how transport has influenced the mobility of Australian citizens in the last two decades.
- 3 Suggest the major motivating factors for people seeking permanent resettlement.
- 4 What evidence is there of changed thinking about travel from people of different ages in your local area – younger people, your parents and grandparents, say?
- 5 Reflect on how you see migration changing the profile of Australian citizenship in the future.

Extended-response question

Explain the concept of internal migration. Suggest why it occurs and outline the benefits of moving internally.



Civics and citizenship

Government and democracy

The structure of parliament

representative democracy where people elect others to represent them in a decision-making process

electorate an area with a member of parliament representing it

parliamentary majority held by the political party with the most amount of seats in the House of Representatives

Opposition the political party which has most seats, but does not have enough to hold a majority

hung parliament an even division of seats between the two major political parties

minority government a government that is formed when a party does not have a majority of seats in parliament, but is sworn into government by outside support

The Australian parliament is based on the principle of a **representative democracy**, in which every Australian citizen has the right to choose a person who will best represent their interests in political decisions. Australia is divided into **electorates** which are based on the number of people living within a particular area. For example, in federal politics, electorates are worked out by dividing the population of Australia into the 150 seats in the House of Representatives (also known as the lower house). There are approximately 150 000 people in each electorate, of which around 91 000 will be eligible to vote. As the electorates are based on population, some states have a large amount of electorates (Victoria has 37) and some will have fewer (Tasmania has five). The political party which wins the most amount of seats in the House of Representatives will hold a **parliamentary majority**.

The leader of the party with the most seats becomes the prime minister. The party which did not receive enough seats to hold a majority is called the **Opposition**. Sometimes there is an even division of seats between the two major political parties, with no clear winner. This is called a **hung parliament**. In this situation, the major political parties will try to make an arrangement with any independent members of parliament. In 2010, the Australian Labor Party (the ALP) formed a minority government with Greens member Adam Bandt and independent members to form a **minority government**. This meant that the Gillard government gained power not through having a majority of seats but by having support from the independent members.



Source 9.1.1 Former Prime Minister Julia Gillard with former Australian Greens leader Bob Brown in 2010. The Labor Party could not have reached a parliamentary majority without the support of the Greens and some independents.

Political parties in Australia

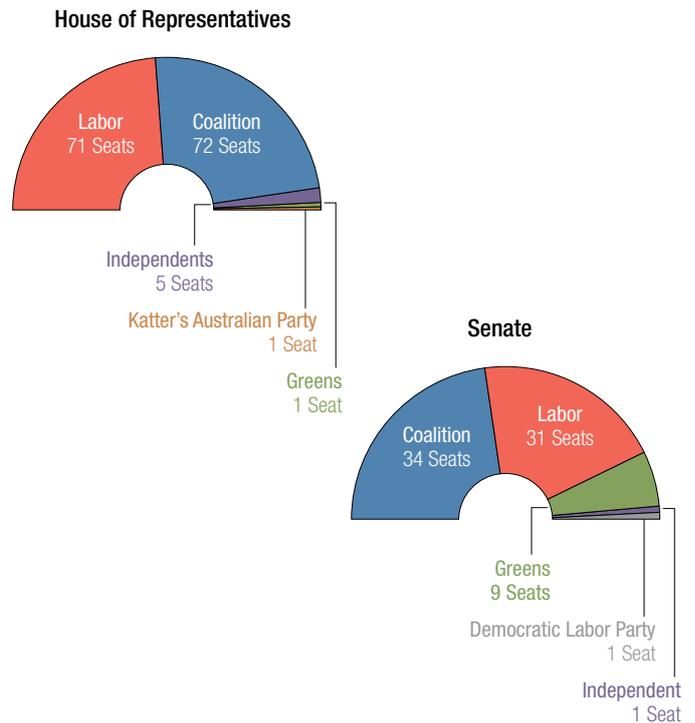
Australia has two major political parties: the Australian Labor Party (ALP) and the Coalition. The Coalition is an alliance between the Liberal Party and the National Party, the Liberal National Party and the Country Liberal Party. Traditionally, the ALP has represented the needs of workers and is considered to be more socially progressive than the Coalition. The Liberal Party has traditionally represented economic growth and traditional values. However, both parties have evolved over the decades to represent the contemporary issues and needs of Australians.

Despite the dominance of the major parties, there are many other smaller political parties in Australia. The Australian Greens is a well-known party that represents people who are concerned about the environment and are socially progressive. The Greens won the party's first seat in the lower house in the 2010 election.

Some people choose to run for election as an independent (without a political party). For example, Bob Katter held a seat in federal parliament as an independent for 10 years before forming his political party, 'Australia's Katter Party'.



Source 9.1.2 Bob Katter held a seat in federal parliament as an independent for over 10 years.



Source 9.1.3 The makeup of federal parliament before the 2013 federal election.

Currently, the Coalition holds 90 of the 150 seats in the lower house and so holds the parliamentary majority.

Shaping political choice

The person a citizen chooses to vote for can be influenced by lots of different factors. Strong ideological beliefs can influence a decision at an election; for example, environmental sustainability or border protection. However, the media are considered to have a significant influence on the outcome of an election. The way in

which a person or a party is reported may influence the decision on the voters. The Australian media are meant to present the news without any personal biases, but some newspapers and TV stations have been accused of favouring one political party over another. Similarly, social media technology has been used as a tool to influence young voters. Many political parties include social media as part of the broader campaign. Some parties will use Facebook, YouTube and Twitter to send their political message to young voters.

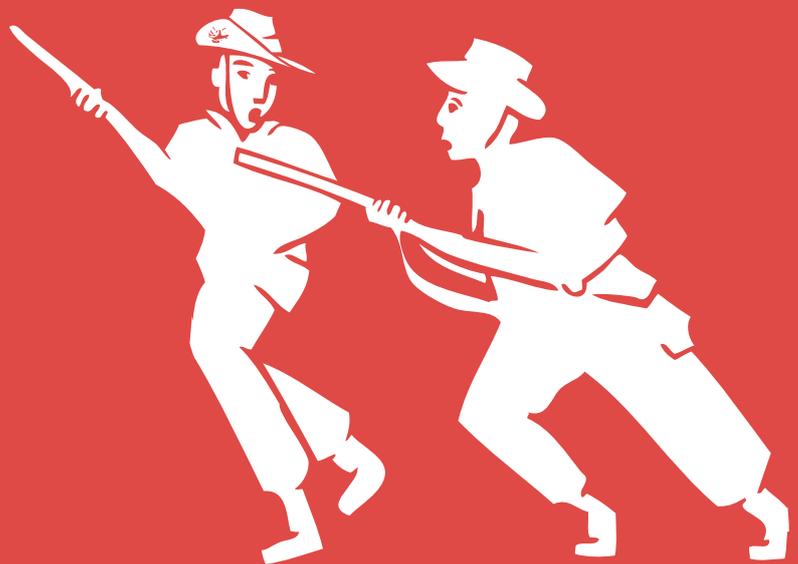
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 9.1.1

- 1 Explain the terms 'parliamentary majority' and 'hung parliament' in your own words.
- 2 Explain the federal electoral system for the House of Representatives and how a parliamentary majority can be reached.
- 3 Conduct some research into the ALP and the Coalition and compare the parties using a Venn diagram.
- 4 Imagine you were running for school captain or class president. Outline how you would use social media to inform your classmates of your political opinions.



Source 9.1.4 The Palace of Versailles, France

History





10

Overview: the making of the modern world (1750–1918)

Before you start

Main focus

Between 1750 and 1918, new political ideas of equality, human mobility, industrialisation and expanding empires all created a very different, modern world.

Why it's relevant today

We live in a globalised world that continues to industrialise, particularly in countries like China, India and Brazil. Constitutional democracy based on principles of equality is an increasingly powerful political model. Studying the making of the modern world enables us to understand these broad patterns of change.

Inquiry questions

- How did industrialisation change economic patterns and people's lives?
- What systems of unfree labour and reasons for migration caused the mass movement of people?
- Which ideas led to political revolutions and what were their consequences?
- Which countries were imperial powers and which areas became their colonies?

Key terms

- Absolute monarchy
- Colony
- Egalitarianism
- Enlightenment
- Imperialism
- Mechanisation
- Penal colony
- Suffrage
- Unfree labour

Significant individuals

- Adam Smith
- Catherine Helen Spence
- John Locke
- Mohandas Gandhi
- Thomas Jefferson

Let's begin

The invention of the steam engine, mechanisation, factories and mass production created new industrial economies and living conditions. At the same time, systems of unfree labour, including slavery and convict transportation, built colonies in the Americas, Australia and elsewhere. New political beliefs in individual rights and human equality sparked revolutions and led to new systems of constitutional democracy. Settlers and migrants moved around the world on a new mass scale. This modern world was captured by artists and writers, and in the new media of photography and film.

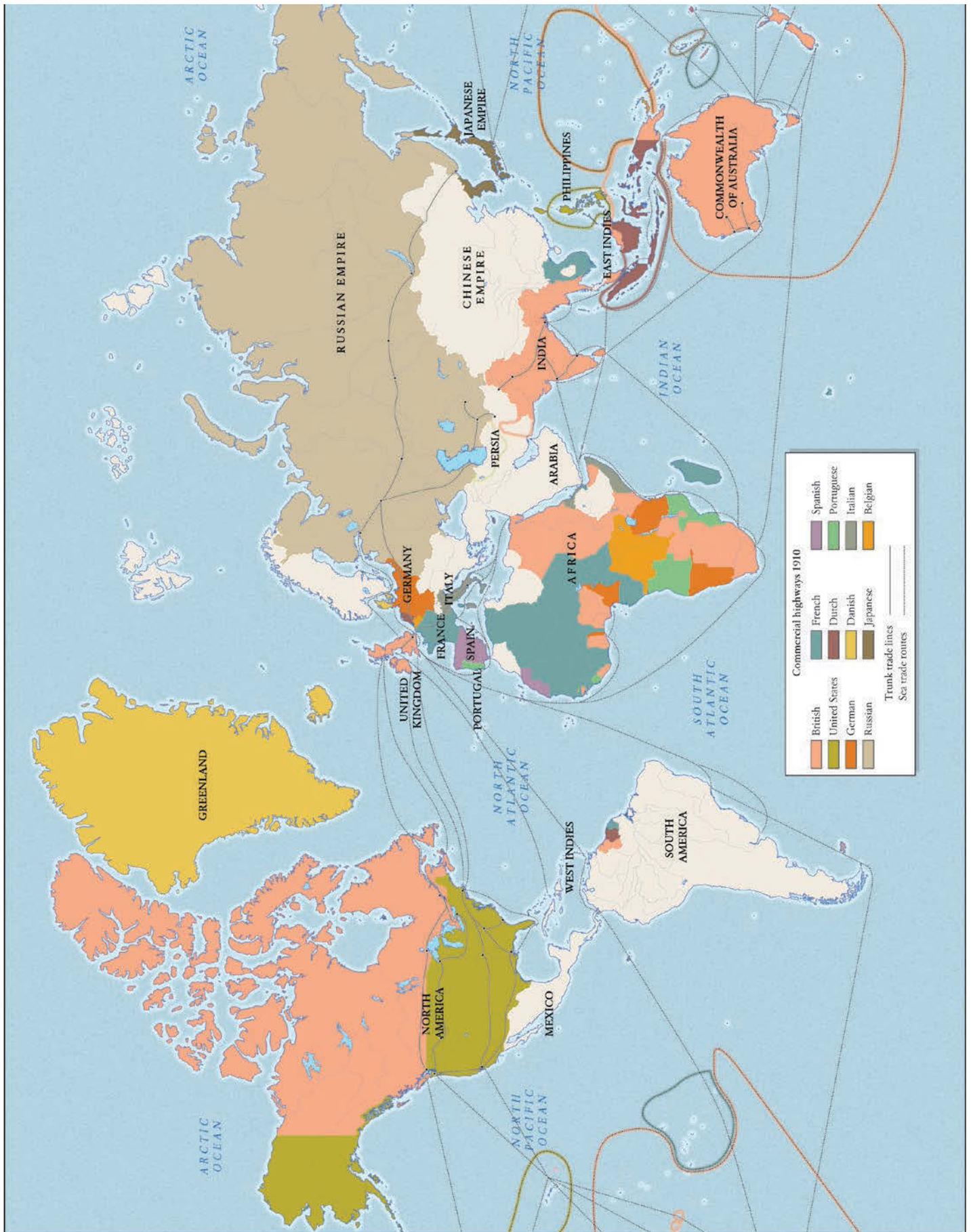
Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS

1775–83 American Revolution	1788 Britain begins to colonise Australia
1789–92 French Revolution	1807 Slave trade is abolished in the British Empire
1833 Slavery is abolished across the British Empire	1857–58 Indian Rebellion against British rule is suppressed
1901 Australia's states are joined in a federation	1902 Australian women are granted suffrage and the right to stand for parliament
1914–18 World War I	

OVERVIEW: THE MAKING OF THE MODERN WORLD





Source 10.1 The world: commercial highways, 1910

10.1 The Industrial Revolution

Since the eighteenth century, industrialisation has been a major force in the modern world. It has driven large-scale economic changes that have shaped relations between industrialised countries (such as in Europe) and other countries – often colonies – that the wealthier countries came to depend on as sources of raw materials and as markets for manufactured goods.

mechanisation the invention and use of machines for farming, production and transport

Mechanisation, mass production and new forms of energy such as steam and electricity transformed the production of goods, the market economy based on those goods, the standard of living of many people, and the way of life of even more. They also affected everyday aspects of life such as transportation, the structure of the household, and the nature of men and women's work. Prior to the Industrial Revolution, households were relatively self-sufficient.

A wide variety of goods was produced on farms and in **rural** households, and most items consumed by households were produced within their region and sold locally at regional markets. With industrialisation from the eighteenth century, production became specialised. Whole factories, cities, regions and countries came to produce limited ranges of goods, and to be dependent on their ability to market those goods over distances in exchange for other goods or money.

rural of the countryside

The capability to market and trade goods over long distances has evolved gradually since the late eighteenth century, with improvements in transportation such as canals and better roads in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, railways and steamships in the nineteenth century, and cars and aeroplanes in the twentieth century. The invention of refrigeration and the introduction of refrigerated ships in the late nineteenth century made possible the marketing of fresh and frozen food over distances previously unimaginable.

For a country like Australia, refrigerated ships could send frozen meat to Britain and elsewhere.

Long-distance transportation also led to bigger markets, and bigger markets encouraged large-scale production. Changes in the production and distribution of goods have meant that more goods have become available to more people around the world, creating an appearance of a **homogeneous** Westernised culture based on materialism and

homogeneous similar or of the same type

consumerism. But inequalities of wealth and power between nations have continued, and there has not been a blanket effect of cultural change.

Indigenous cultures around the world have absorbed Western material goods in different ways, and have adapted them to their own ends.

In the period from 1750 to 1918, industrialisation in Europe, America and elsewhere was driven by a combination of technological, economic and social factors. It had broad-ranging consequences for European economies, political and social structures, and the daily lives of Europeans. The drive for raw materials, new markets and cheap labour was a major factor in European global **imperialism** from the eighteenth century, and the expansion of the United States in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

The social consequences of industrialisation included the large-scale migration of peoples: slaves, **indentured labourers**, settlers and migrants. European colonies around the world felt the impacts of these changes throughout the period, and by the twentieth century industrialisation had taken off in East Asia.

indigenous native to, or belonging to, a particular land or region

imperialism the domination of one or more nations by another, which seeks to use the wealth and people of the dominated nation for its own interests

indentured labour a system in which workers enter contracts to perform labour at reduced wages for a certain period of time, usually at a place far from their home

The Industrial Revolution in Australia

By the second half of the nineteenth century, most Australian colonies had gained self-government and were free settler societies with growing economies based largely on wheat, sheep (for both wool and meat) and cattle, and mining for gold, copper and other ores. Cities grew with a rapidity that astonished observers. Colonial governments oversaw the building of roads, railways, ports, gas lighting, the postal system, the telegraph and other utilities. But it was not only infrastructure that was quickly built; Australian cities and towns also soon came to boast theatres, sports grounds, parks, libraries, museums and art galleries.

By 1901, the capitals of the Australian states had become flourishing cities, and Australia as a newly federated nation needed a national capital.

Federal parliamentarians carefully selected an inland site between the two rival cities Sydney and Melbourne.

In 1913, American architect Walter Burley Griffin and his wife Marion Mahoney Griffin won the international competition for Canberra's design with a plan for a city centred on a lake, with separate governmental and civic sections, garden suburbs, parks and trees.

Canberra's planning and construction would continue to be a national project for the rest of the twentieth century.

10.2 How the Industrial Revolution affected living and working conditions

For those who worked in domestic service or the expanding number of factories, textile mills, mines and breweries, life could be a hard daily grind. Before industrialisation, the household was the centre of production and all members of the family participated in work, including children.

Child labour in factories was therefore not new in and of itself, but the conditions and the hazards for child workers were new. As countries industrialised, the middle classes expanded and there was greater demand for education.

Throughout the nineteenth century, schools grew in number in industrialised countries, and legal requirements were introduced for children to be kept at school until they were 12 or 14. In some poorer and colonised countries, access to education also improved, but in limited ways and often with racial restrictions. In settler societies like Australia, a few Indigenous people attended mission schools, but education was fundamentally for the white settlers.

Industrialisation meant the separation of home and work, with the introduction of workshops, factories and office buildings. It also introduced a new gendered

division of work that cast men as the 'breadwinners' with the important jobs and main incomes, and rendered women as dependants who kept house or, if they did work, deserving of only low wages. For many working-class women who had to support themselves and their families, this created limited opportunities and real hardships.

Domestic service was a major area of women's work. Some women ran small businesses like boarding houses and shops; others worked on farms, perhaps with their husbands. Some sewed on machines in factories, or at home in poor conditions, and became known as 'sweated labour'.

In Australia, industrialisation meant that men worked in tough and dangerous conditions down mines and in factories, and in hard construction labour on roads, buildings, railway lines, water and sewerage pipes, and telegraph and telephone systems. Some men drove drays and wagons; others worked as **drovers**, shearers and agricultural labourers on the pastoral stations and farms expanding across the continent.

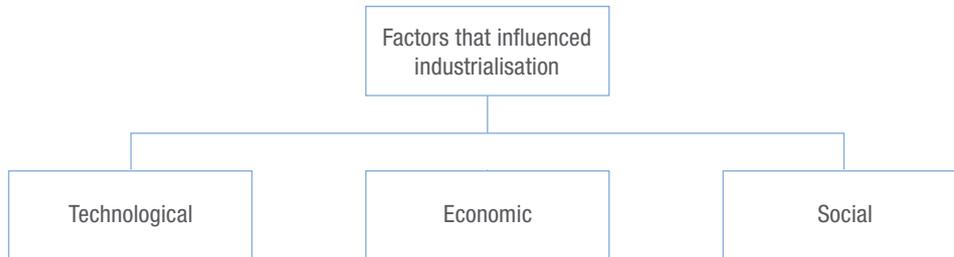
drover a person who drives a herd of animals long distances



Source 10.2 Working-class families often lived in extremely cramped conditions. This 1890 photograph shows a family living in one room in a poor area of New York.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 10.1

Copy the graphic organiser below and list the factors that contributed to industrialisation in Europe, America and elsewhere in the period from 1750 to 1918.



Modernity and representation: art and photographs

As industrialisation changed ways of production, the places of production (from home to workshop or factory) and the conditions of work, it also changed the way the modern world was depicted and recorded. The

printing press was invented as early as the fifteenth century. In the nineteenth century, cheap newspapers and books revolutionised the flow of information around the world and helped to rapidly raise levels of literacy. From the end of the eighteenth century,

lithography enabled the mass production of the older art form of etchings.

From the 1830s, the first kind of photographs, called ‘daguerreotypes’ after inventor Louis Daguerre, enabled what must have seemed the miracle of capturing actual images of people and scenes. Photography advanced and spread rapidly in the nineteenth century. In the early nineteenth century, prosperous families who wanted images of themselves would commission artists to paint portraits. By the late nineteenth century, photography studios sprang up in towns and cities, and people began

to have their photos taken – at first in set poses with the background supplied by the photographer.

The emergence of photography in the mid-nineteenth century coincided with the rapid development of Australian cities, and the photographic record allows us to see their expansion and changes. A striking example is the Duryea Panorama, a circular series of 14 photographs of Adelaide in 1865 taken by photographer Townsend Duryea (see Source 10.3).

Changing nature of sources and depictions of life

By the end of the nineteenth century, photographs had captured the vast gulf in the standards of living between rich and poor. While they recorded the amazing growth

lithography the process of making a drawing or design on a stone or metal plate, so that multiple impressions in ink can be taken from it

Source 10.3 A photograph of King William Street, Adelaide, taken from the Adelaide Town Hall in 1865 by Townsend Duryea. It is one of a series of 14 that comprise a full panorama of the growing city.





Source 10.4
Allegro con brio, Bourke Street West c. 1885–86
 by Tom Roberts

of cities and the rise of bigger and taller buildings, bridges and other industrial triumphs, along with the splendour of the large houses of the wealthy, they also recorded the appalling living conditions of workers. In various industrialised countries, concern about the conditions of life for workers prompted some photographers to record the cramped and unsanitary conditions of poor people living in slums and tenements.

In Australia, painting increasingly became a recognised part of national culture. In the late nineteenth century, artists of the Heidelberg School (a group of painters associated with Heidelberg, which was then just outside Melbourne) and others captured scenes of life in the bush and at the seaside, along with scenes of daily life, especially in and around Melbourne and Sydney.

In the twentieth century, painting and other art forms increasingly recorded and reflected the Australian environment, life and culture.

At the end of the nineteenth century, French brothers Auguste and Louis Lumiere were the first to turn still photographs into the moving world of film. Their first film footage, recorded in 1895, showed workers leaving their factory. In the early twentieth century, silent films quickly became a huge part of popular culture around the world, with cinemas appearing in towns and cities.

Silent films were often melodramatic, with many featuring aspects of modern life and technology such as cars, trams, factories and bustling cities.

Australia soon had its own film stars, such as the swimmer and diver Annette Kellerman, whose first major film, *Neptune's Daughter* (1914), was an international success.

Historical thought

Some of the famous Australian artists of the Heidelberg School, including Tom Roberts and Arthur Streeton, produced some of their iconic paintings of the Australian bush in their studios in London. Since the 1850s, steamships had made travel between Australia and Britain faster and more comfortable. Artists often painted from drawings they had made on location.

10.3 Movement of peoples

Central to the changes of the modern world was the mass movement of people. In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, free migrants and settlers chose to leave their homelands – particularly China and European countries – in the hope of more land and space, and better lives. Destinations ranged from North and South America to European colonies in Africa, Southeast Asia and Australasia. Before the rise of free migration, however, increasingly large numbers of convicts and indentured labourers from Europe and enslaved Africans were shipped to the Americas, starting in the seventeenth century. By the

unfree labour a system in which labourers are compelled to work and are not paid wages

colony a settlement formed in a conquered territory

late eighteenth century, slavery was a large-scale global system of **unfree labour** exploitation in the Americas, South Africa, Mauritius and elsewhere.

Britain shipped convicts to the Australian colonies for 80 years, from the founding of Sydney as a penal **colony** in 1788 until the end of the convict system in Western Australia in 1868. After slavery was abolished in the British Empire in 1833, schemes to transport indentured labourers from India and China to various parts of the world rose dramatically. Slavery, convict transportation and indentured labour were interconnected systems of unfree labour, and the economic basis of colonies and plantation societies around the world.

Slavery and indentured labour

Slavery, the enforced and unfree labour of some people for others, was practised from ancient times in Rome, Egypt, elsewhere in Africa and other places. When Europeans first sailed to sub-Saharan Africa in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, the slave trade there was long established.

Europeans took advantage of this trade, and greatly expanded it as they bought slaves to perform the hard labour of building their colonies around the Atlantic Ocean. Portuguese traders and plantation owners used enslaved Africans in the Azores, Madeiras, Cape Verde islands and Sao Tome, and from the 1530s in Brazil. Spanish settlers and officials introduced slaves into the Caribbean, Mexico, Peru and Central America.

From the early seventeenth century, English settlers imported slaves into their North American colonies. The slave trade provided labour to all of these colonies and was enormously lucrative to the **merchants** who bought slaves in Africa and sold them in the Americas, then took sugar, tobacco and other commodities from the Americas and sold them in Europe. Conditions for enslaved Africans who survived the ‘middle passage’ across the Atlantic were horrifically cramped and vile.

Work on plantations was back-breaking, and punishment harsh. In the eighteenth century, around

merchant a person who buys and sells goods



Source 10.5 *The Slave Trade* by Auguste Francois Biard (1840)

60 000 slaves annually were taken to the Americas. By the mid-eighteenth century, dominance of the slave trade had passed in turn from the Portuguese, the Dutch and the French to the British and the Americans, and the Portuguese who supplied slaves to Brazil.

By the late eighteenth century, humanitarian opinion condemned slavery. The slave trade was abolished by Denmark in 1803, Britain in 1807, the United States in 1808 and Spain in 1845.

Slavery as a system was abolished in British territory (South Africa and the West Indies) in 1833, French colonies in 1848, the United States in 1865 and Brazil in 1888. Centuries of the Atlantic slave trade did much to build the Americas, while it had long-term disastrous effects on Africa.

Indentured labour schemes had brought labourers to the Americas before the system of slavery eclipsed them. As slavery was outlawed in the nineteenth century, indentured labour grew rapidly because indentured workers were paid less than those receiving full wages. Indentured labourers from India, China, Africa and Melanesia were taken by recruiters to pastoral properties and plantations (often sugar) in places ranging from the Caribbean to Mauritius, South

Africa, Fiji and the Australian colonies.

In Australia, Chinese and Indian indentured labourers suffered high **mortality rates**, loneliness and racial discrimination. In the late nineteenth

century, large numbers of Melanesian islanders did the hard work on Queensland's sugar plantations.

mortality rate the measure of total deaths in relation to a total population

Historical thought

In the early to mid-nineteenth century, indentured labour schemes brought workers to Australia from India and China. Some died, some returned home and others stayed.

Convict transportation

In the eighteenth century in British North America, indentured labour, convict transportation and slavery all coexisted as a means of providing labour from Britain and Africa to the colonies. Up until the American Revolution in the 1770s, the British government sold convicts to shipping contractors, who transported them to the southern colonies in America and the Caribbean,

where they were sold to the planters as indentured labourers to work, for example, in rice and tobacco fields. In the first half of the eighteenth century, about 30 000 people were shipped to America in this way.

With the revolt of the American colonies, Britain lost this system and in the mid-1780s British officials cast around for alternatives, considering places like Canada, the Falkland Islands, West Africa, the West Indies and the East Indies. A few men were actually transported to Africa in 1784. This was the context in which the British government decided that the little-explored land on the other side of the globe was the best solution, and to establish **penal colonies** in Australia.

The system of transportation in the Australian penal colonies lasted from 1788 to 1868. Over the whole period of transportation, the British government shipped more than 160 000 men, women and children to Australia. The convicts were distributed among government, military and civil institutions, as well as settlers, with the government having first choice. Up to 1810, the needs of the government for convict labour were overwhelming. Convicts worked on government farms, built roads and erected public buildings.

In the 1830s, the British government was persuaded by the argument that assignment of a convict to a private farmer was a form of slavery – which they had just abolished. So in 1839 the British government ordered the abolition of the assignment system in both New South Wales and Van Diemen's Land. Then in 1840 it abolished transportation to New South Wales, although it continued to Van Diemen's Land.

After a large increase in the numbers of convicts in Van Diemen's Land, settlers there protested and transportation was stopped in 1853. Convicts were still sent to the Swan River Colony (Perth) until 1868.

Not all of the convicts transported to the Australian penal colonies between 1788 and 1868 were political radicals or from the white labouring classes. Perhaps up to a thousand convicts in Australia were slaves, former slaves and free blacks from the Caribbean; free blacks and former slaves from Britain; indigenous Africans sent from the Cape Colony and via Britain; African-Americans; and Malagasy slaves, former slaves, Indian convicts, and Indian and Chinese indentured labourers transported from Mauritius.

penal colony a colony that serves as a prison





Source 10.6
Ruins at the
Port Arthur
convict site,
Tasmania

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 10.2

- 1 List the Australian states that began as penal colonies.
- 2 Research which towns, cities or islands in particular began as penal colonies. During what years did they serve in this way?
- 3 Discover whether your city or town had a convict station or was close to one. If not, did emancipated convicts move there in its early period of settlement? Are there any remains of buildings or other evidence of convict days?

Settlers

Slaves and convicts were shipped around the world by force. Indentured labourers had some choice, but were often compelled by starvation or tricked into entering their contracts. Those who chose to leave their homeland and try their luck in a colony or new country were settlers or migrants. Convicts who served out their terms and chose to stay, and indentured labourers who did not return home, could become settlers.

From the sixteenth century onwards, millions of Europeans spread around the world, including the Portuguese settlers who went to Brazil; the Spanish who went to Mexico, Argentina and other parts of Spanish America; and the Dutch who went to South Africa and the Dutch East Indies. British settlers went first to the North American colonies and the Caribbean, while British merchants also headed to South and Southeast Asia. From the late eighteenth century, settlers chose to make new lives in what would become the settler dominions of the British Empire: Canada, South Africa, Australia and New Zealand. Even more British migrants continued to sail across the Atlantic to the United States, along with immigrants from Southern and Eastern

Europe, especially in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

Canada had both British and French settlers, and came under full British control only after wars in the mid to late eighteenth century. Steps towards self-government in British settler colonies began in the 1830s in Canada, where the French settlers particularly sought representation.

Like in the United States, European settlement spread across western Canada in the nineteenth century through violent dispossession of First Nations people, along with a vast program of railroad building. More British settlers chose to go to Canada than Australia and New Zealand, partly because it was closer. In turn,

Year	Population
1820	30 000
1850	400 000
1888	3 000 000
1914	4 500 000

Source 10.7 Growth of the Australian population

more people migrated to Australia and New Zealand than to South Africa, although British colonies in Africa expanded rapidly in the late nineteenth and early

twentieth centuries. Mobility was key to the modern period. Some migrants returned home to Europe, while others moved on from their first destination.

RESEARCH 10.1

Divide the class into six groups. Assign each group to one of the following countries of origin of migrants: Britain, Spain, the Netherlands, Italy, Ireland and China. Using the school library and the internet, each group is to research the high period of migration from the country of origin, and the migrants' major destinations. Present your findings to the rest of the class as either a poster or PowerPoint presentation. Be sure to answer the following questions:

- 1 Identify what drove the migrants to move.
- 2 Consider what was happening in their country or region of origin at the time.
- 3 Explain why they chose their major migration destinations.
- 4 Reflect on whether those destination countries still have significant numbers of people of that ethnic group. Why or why not?

10.4 European imperial expansion

Globalisation is currently a hot topic, yet it has been occurring for centuries, not least because of European imperial expansion from the sixteenth century onwards. Spain, Portugal, the Netherlands, Britain and France all acquired large empires in the early modern period of world history, as they sought spices in the East Indies, navigated and charted their way around parts of the globe unknown to Europeans, established trading posts and then expanded and defended the territories they acquired. The goal of Christian missionaries, both Catholic and Protestant, to convert indigenous peoples

around the world was allied to the desires of traders and the ambitions of armies. These European powers grabbed colonies in the Americas, South and Southeast Asia, Australia, the Pacific, East Asia and Africa.

European colonies in the Americas, including the Caribbean, soon had economies based on sugar, cotton, tobacco and coffee plantations.

Industrialisation and imperialism were interconnected. Profits made in the colonies were invested in Europe in stately houses and grand buildings, and in finance, business and industry.



Source 10.8 'Sugar growing in Mauritius', Empire Marketing Board poster (March 1927)

commodity an item that is bought or sold, especially a raw material or something that is manufactured, for which there is a commercial demand

Commodities from the colonies were shipped to Europe for food and manufacturing. For example, cotton grown in the Americas was turned into clothing and ‘manchester’ (household textiles) in the British industrial Midlands which Britain then exported (including to its colonies) while sugar from the Caribbean and Mauritius was consumed in Europe, along with tea from India, Ceylon and Malaya. Australian wool, wheat,

meat and fruit, timber from Burma, cocoa from the Gold Coast in Africa, New Zealand butter and apples, South African fruit and wine, tobacco grown in Africa, and Canadian timber and furs all found markets in Britain and elsewhere. Profits from trade sustained European imperial armies and colonial administrations in Asia and Africa.

European industrialisation also provided their armies with superior military technology, including steamships and machine guns, which were critical to imperial conquests and control.



Source 10.9 The extent of the British Empire, 1886

European imperialism in Asia

In 1800, Europeans occupied or controlled one-third of the globe's land surface. By 1870 this had leapt to two-thirds and by 1913 had become an overwhelming 84%, including much of Africa, South America, Asia and the Pacific. Some parts of Asia came under formal imperial control and direct administration of European powers, while others such as China mostly remained independent but ceded small zones and were buffeted

by European and American expansionist desires. From the seventeenth century, Britain increasingly established its hold on the Indian sub-continent. By 1763, the British East India Company controlled significant parts of India, and had defeated their French rivals; British control in India grew through the nineteenth century. The French turned their attention to Indochina.

The European imperial powers sought trade, profits and territorial control; they also introduced Christianity, turning it into a worldwide religion.

Missionary societies based in Europe and America funded the work of missionaries across Asia, Africa and the Pacific. Missionaries sought to convert colonised peoples, and did much to destroy indigenous cultures, but they also provided practical help in the form of medicine, agriculture and education. Mission schools and hospitals spread across European colonies, and missionaries taught cricket, football, athletics and Western music, along with other subjects.

European colonies suffered from economic exploitation designed to benefit the imperial powers. For example, Britain suppressed cotton textile production in India in order to protect sales of cloth made in the British Midlands. In Java, Dutch colonial rulers forced farmers to sell certain parts of their crop to the colonial government at a low price; the Dutch made huge profits from this system. Colonial regimes also relied on racial hierarchies and discrimination in education, employment, official languages and public spaces, and used violence and harsh punishments to stay in power.

By the late nineteenth century, anti-colonial nationalist movements emerged, especially among the educated and professional elite of the indigenous people. Elite Indians, for example, attended British universities before returning to India as lawyers, doctors, journalists and other professionals. Anti-colonial movements gained support in the twentieth century, both domestically and globally, and were a major reason for the dismantling of the European empires in the mid-twentieth century, often through bloody warfare. Gandhi's nationalist movement in early twentieth century India helped to spread the ideas and practice of non-violent resistance around the world, while some of the religious and philosophical values of, for example, Buddhism and theosophy entered Western culture.

of the Indonesian archipelago. During World War II, the Dutch were ousted by the invading Japanese, and then temporarily regained control before being forced to cede Indonesian independence in 1949.

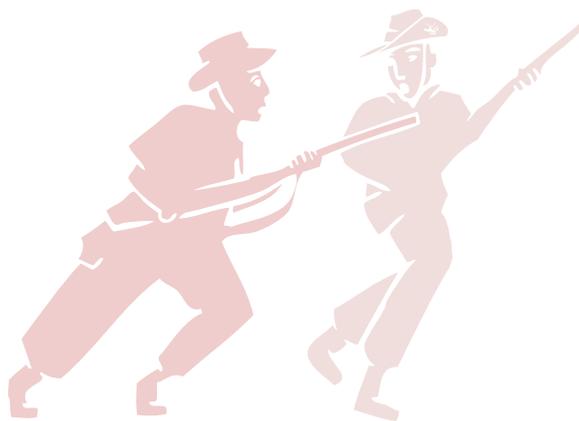
In Indochina, the French gradually expanded their influence and control over Vietnam, Cambodia and Laos until they became French colonies in the late nineteenth century. Early twentieth century anti-colonial nationalist movements were violently suppressed by the French. After World War II, the war for independence in Vietnam was initially against the French, before it became a civil war between North and South in which the United States, Australia and other countries became involved.

Spanish traders and missionaries arrived in the Philippines in the sixteenth century and their interest in the islands spread until they were under Spanish control by 1570. In 1898, the United States purchased the Philippines from Spain, as it expanded its imperial control in the Caribbean and the Pacific, which would include Hawai'i. The Philippines gained its independence from the United States after World War II, though some military bases remained. China, long an imperial power in East Asia, did not fall under formal control of the European empires, though in 1842 Britain took Hong Kong as its victory prize from the Opium War. As China weakened internally in the nineteenth century, European and American demands for trade and influence resulted in open treaty ports such as Canton and Shanghai. Europeans and Americans established their own zones of residence and business in Chinese ports, and Christian missionaries arrived, but China maintained its sovereignty. Japan also remained independent, but in 1853 was forced by the United States to open itself to contact and trade, which had profound effects on its internal politics and economy.

Colonies and independent states in Asia

By the late nineteenth century, Britain exerted control over all India, though in some princely states that control was indirect. In 1857–58 the **British Raj** suppressed a major uprising that began in the army, and India remained under British control until 1947, when on 15 August India and Pakistan (the latter divided into western and eastern sections) became independent nations. In Indonesia, the Netherlands established trading posts in the early seventeenth century, which expanded by the nineteenth century into full colonial control of Java and parts of Sumatra, Borneo and Timor – an effective dominance

British Raj British rule in India



10.5 Economic, social and political ideas

Revolutions, independence and equality

In Europe in the seventeenth century, a period of religious warfare was followed by an era of absolute monarchy, with an ideology of the divine rights of kings and queens, and expanded control by the monarch's central government.

Absolute monarchy was linked to strong royal armies. Monarchs sought to expand their territories, while emerging nation-states were represented by their king or queen.

absolute monarchy
a political system in which monarchs have complete power, including over armed forces

Enlightenment
a philosophical movement that placed emphasis on reason rather than tradition and gave rise to many progressive ideas

In England, after a bloody civil war in the 1640s, a bloodless revolution in the 1680s produced a new constitutional agreement between king and parliament. During this 'Glorious Revolution', the political philosopher John Locke developed his theory of liberalism. Locke suggested that power emanated from the people, not from a monarch's supposedly divine right to rule, and that there were basic rights to freedom of person and property.

Locke's political liberalism spread through the **Enlightenment** of the eighteenth century, and was

dramatically enshrined by the American Revolution of the 1770s and the French Revolution of 1789–92. The American Revolution began with the American War of Independence against Britain.

Britain's American colonies rebelled against British control, particularly in the form of duties and taxes. Tensions escalated into war in 1775. The American colonies established their own Continental Congress, which approved the Declaration of Independence on 4 July 1776.

The American colonies finally won independence from Britain in 1783, and their principles of political liberty gained global influence.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed.

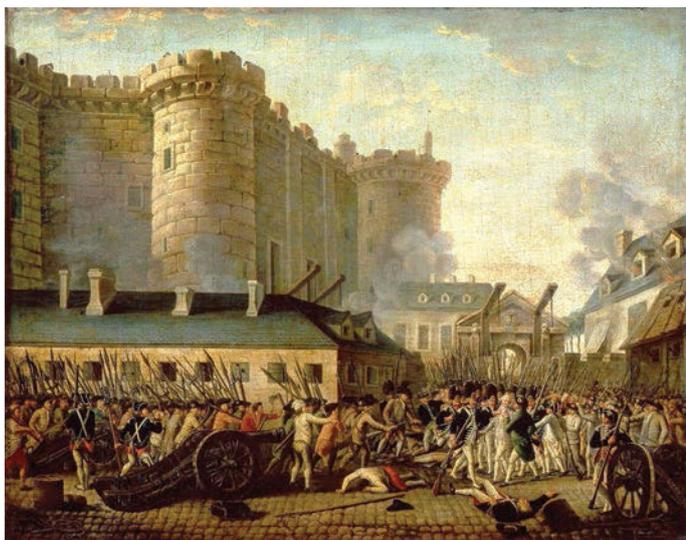
Source 10.11 A section of the American Declaration of Independence, drafted by the future president Thomas Jefferson



Source 10.10 Painting of King Louis XVI of France by Antoine-François Callet (1789)

The French Revolution, which erupted in 1789, gained attention worldwide and has reverberated across the centuries since. The cry of 'liberty, equality and fraternity' that was the catchphrase of the French Revolution echoed around the globe, not least in France's own colony of Saint Domingue (Haiti), which rebelled against French control and rang a death knell for the system of slavery there. The French Revolution asserted the political power of the masses, and the political ascendancy of the middle class, in a direct challenge to the feudally derived power of the monarch and the aristocracy. In 1789, the self-proclaimed National Assembly stood up to King Louis XVI, while crowds took direct action such as storming the Bastille prison and burning tax offices. Then there were widespread revolts by the peasants in the countryside. On 27 August 1789, the Assembly passed the 'Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizen', a manifesto of political liberalism that began: 'Men are born, and remain, free and equal in rights.' In 1792, the French Revolution entered a new and bloody stage, in which the ideals of liberalism became overshadowed.

The French Revolution set the agenda for the nineteenth century in Europe, and had ramifications



Source 10.12 Painting by an unknown artist of the storming of the Bastille prison in Paris by a revolutionary crowd (1789)

for the rest of the world. The power of the monarch and the aristocracy was curtailed, but in the decades that followed the differences in the demands of the middle class and the working class became increasingly apparent. In the nineteenth century, conservatives (supporters of the old order) struggled against liberalism (represented by the first stage of the French Revolution) and socialism, which was spawned following the French Revolution. These political struggles would be waged around the globe in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, as liberalism gained power and was contested by socialism and communism (from the 1840s). In the twentieth century, communist regimes would become locked in global ideological struggle with capitalist democratic powers led by the United States and Britain. The struggle between capitalism and communism also would become important for anti-colonial movements in various parts of the world.

Democratic values

Liberalism and political philosophies based on the rights of the individual spread globally from the eighteenth century. To some extent these ideas drew on ideals of democracy from ancient Greece and Rome, particularly those that originated in the Greek city-states from the eighth to the fourth centuries BCE. Because of the revolutions of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, ideas of constitutional democracy spread through the Western world. They included the consent of the people to be governed; the contract between the government and those governed; the balance of powers between legislative, executive and judicial arms of government; and basic civil rights.

Differences emerged between, for example, Britain's Westminster system and its unwritten conventions, and the American system of a republic with a president (instead of a monarch) and a bill of rights.

Capitalism as an economic philosophy gained popularity in the mercantile world of the eighteenth century and later. In 1776, Scottish philosopher Adam Smith outlined his ideas on capitalism in his book *The Wealth of Nations*, emphasising individual choice, private enterprise and the operation of markets as opposed to state control of the economy. In the early nineteenth century, the opposing theory of socialism gained followers, with its principles of the ownership of land, capital and means of production being vested in the community or the state. French philosopher Charles Fourier and British industrialist Robert Owen put forward their theories of communal cooperation. Socialist movements and parties grew in the late nineteenth century based on concern for working people.

The creation of nation-states from former regions, empires and colonies has been a central development of the modern world. Many countries have struggled to achieve nationhood and sovereignty. Our concept of the nation dates from the eighteenth century, when it came to refer to a state in which citizens claimed collective sovereignty and a shared political identity. The idea of the nation emerged along with political rights and constitutions, instead of loyalty to monarch or church. **Nationalism** fuelled anti-colonial movements for independence from imperial powers, but it has also been linked to racism and hostility to

capitalism an economic system based on private ownership and free-market enterprise

nationalism devotion to national identity, or patriotism



Source 10.13 An Australian passport issued in 1973

foreigners. The roles and rights of nations have changed over time, as has national belonging. It was only in 1948

that Australians, for example, started to be issued their own passports separate from British ones.

Egalitarianism: social and political equality

In the nineteenth century, Australia became one of the world's social laboratories, with various early steps in political progressivism. Following Canada's lead, in the 1840s and 1850s the Australian colonies fought for self-government in evolving stages. Most Australian colonies received Responsible Government (constitutional self-government with bicameral legislatures) between 1855 and 1859. At the same time, well ahead of Britain and

other countries, the Australian colonies introduced manhood **suffrage**; that is, the right to vote for adult, white men.

In 1858, the secret ballot was first introduced – a progressive reform that meant voters would not be intimidated by having to vote publicly. In the 1890s, members of parliament were first paid, which meant that working-class people who depended on a wage could now stand for parliament. In 1894, South Australia was the first Australian colony to grant women suffrage, and by 1902 all white women in Australia could vote and stand for parliament.

However, at the same time, the White Australia Policy restricted the entry of non-European immigrants and represented the subordination of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples. Not everyone was equal in Australia.

The organised women's movement in South Australia helped to win the early suffrage. One of the leaders was Catherine Helen Spence, who had arrived

in the colony in 1839, when it was 3 years old and she was aged 14. Although always aware of her Scottish heritage, Spence became a strong advocate of South Australia and what she saw as its reformist role. When Spence became a vice president of the South Australian Women's Suffrage League in 1891, she was 66 years old, and a very well-known figure in the colony. She had come to prominence through her social work with orphans and the destitute, her fiction writing and work as a journalist, and her advocacy of the proportional representation system of voting.

Spence spurred the debate about women's issues through her novels, including *Clara Morison* (1854) and *Mr Hogarth's Will* (1865).

Education was crucial to Australian **egalitarianism**. In the 1870s and 1880s, a system of primary schools in the various Australian colonies introduced elementary education and school leaving ages. It was not until the mid-twentieth century that most Australians could also attend high schools, and even then only a small proportion of high-school graduates could go on to university. Around the turn of the twentieth century, for many Australians, public libraries, schools of art, mechanics' institutes and public concerts were important sources of education and culture, as well as part of the fabric of the new nation's blossoming towns and cities.

suffrage the right to vote in political elections

egalitarianism the idea that everyone should have equal rights and opportunities



Source 10.14 Kapunda Primary School, South Australia, c. 1900

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Industrialisation changed both the ways of production and the places of production from home to workshop, factory and office. Many workers had a hard daily grind and lived in cramped conditions.
- Slavery, convict transportation and indentured labour were systems of exploited labour that helped to build colonies and new countries.
- Settlers and migrants moved around the world in huge numbers, partly because of steamships and railroads.
- Cities sprang up and expanded quickly. The world's population grew.
- New technologies included photography and film, which recorded these dramatic changes along with art and literature. Films and cinemas became very popular forms of entertainment.
- Ideas of individual rights and human equality sparked political revolutions and led to new forms of government.
- The Australian colonies gained self-government, mostly in the 1850s, and federated as one nation in 1901.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Explain how the daily labour for workers changed with the Industrial Revolution.
- 2 How did Australian cities grow and change in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries?
- 3 Describe why so many settlers and migrants moved around the world in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.
- 4 What benefits did the imperial powers receive from their colonies?
- 5 Identify the main constitutional changes in Australia in the mid-nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

Source analysis

Study Source 10.15 and answer the following questions.

The English have taught us that we were not one nation before, and that it will require centuries before we become one nation. This is without foundation. We were one nation before they came to India. One thought inspired us. Our mode of life was the same. It was because we were one nation that they were able to establish one kingdom. Subsequently they divided us ... I do not wish to suggest that because we were one nation we had no differences, but ... our leading men travelled throughout India either on foot or in bullock carts. They learned one another's languages and there was no aloofness between them. What do you think could have been the intention of those far-seeing ancestors of ours who established Shevetbindu Rameshwar in the South, Juggernaut in the South-East and Hardwar in the North as places of pilgrimage? You will admit they were no fools. They knew that worship of God could have been performed just as well at home. They taught us that those whose hearts were aglow with righteousness had the Ganges in their own homes. But they saw that India was one undivided land so made by nature. They, therefore, argued that it must be one nation.

Source 10.15 Mohandas K. Gandhi, *Hind Swaraj or Indian Home Rule* (1908), p. 32

- 1 Based on your reading of this document, interpret what Gandhi is arguing for and what is he refuting.
- 2 What case is he making for Indian independence from Britain?
- 3 Discuss the aspects of Indian culture and society that Gandhi hopes will inspire Indian nationalism.



Extended-response question

Undertake research on the American, French and Bolshevik Revolutions. Present your findings in a report and be sure to answer the following questions:

- What political goals did they have in common?
- What political principles were different?
- Did the earlier revolutions influence the later?
- Who were the main leaders of each revolution?
- Did slaves benefit from the American or French Revolutions?
- Did women gain any rights from any of the revolutions?
- How was each revolution shaped by its specific circumstances and time period?
- Which revolution would you regard as the most successful?





Depth study 1

Making a better world





11

The Industrial Revolution (1750–1914)

Before you start

Main focus

The Industrial Revolution was one of the most dramatic examples of how new technological developments can completely change the ways we work and live.

Why it's relevant today

In our own times we have become used to new technology, but studying the beginnings of industrial society helps us to understand many of the environmental and societal problems the world faces today.

Inquiry questions

- What were the conditions in Britain that preceded industrialisation?
- What were the main inventions and innovations that drove the Industrial Revolution?
- How did the Industrial Revolution change the pattern of human settlement?
- How did the Industrial Revolution change the lives of ordinary men, women and children?
- How did the Industrial Revolution change the world in the longer term?

Key terms

- Domestic system
- Factory system
- Global warming
- Infrastructure
- Settler colony
- Standard of living

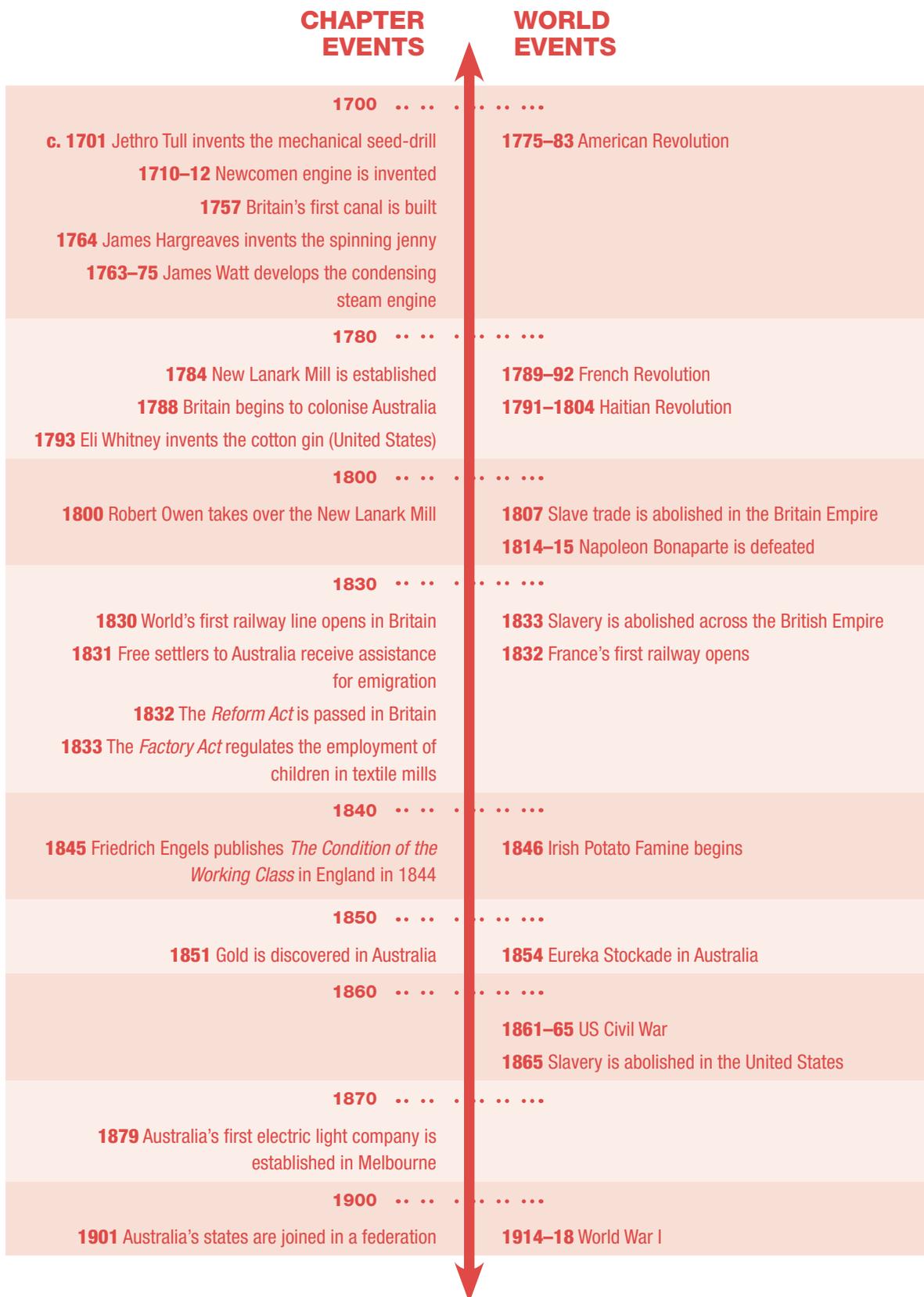
Significant individuals

- Edmund Cartwright
- James Watt
- Jethro Tull
- John Kay
- Richard Trevithick
- Robert Owen

Let's begin

The Industrial Revolution not only changed industry in Britain, Europe, America, Australia and elsewhere; it also changed society itself, and the way people lived. In just 100 years, the Britain of farms and country estates transformed into a modern industrial society. In the following years, industrialisation spread to other countries in Europe, and transformed places as distant as America and Australia. The Industrial Revolution broke society's reliance on animals, wind and water. Scientists discovered new forms of power and new machines. Businesspeople invested in new technologies and with them dramatically increased production. This increase created demand for more efficient ways of transporting the raw materials for factories. The invention of the railway and the canal system meant that people, as well as goods, were more easily transported. In thousands of traditional villages, craftspeople were no longer needed and they moved to cities to work in the new factories.

Timeline





Source 11.1 This map of Britain's industrial economy c. 1815 shows that factories were built in areas where there were good supplies of coal and iron, and good ports. These allowed raw materials to be brought in by ships, and completed goods to be sent out to foreign markets.

11.1 Causes of the Industrial Revolution: society and innovation

The British Empire

colony a settlement formed in a conquered territory

colonial system arrangements made for the successful operation of colonies

merchant ship a ship designed and used for commercial purposes (trading, buying and selling)

Perhaps the central reason for Britain's rapid economic growth at the time of the Industrial Revolution was the success of its overseas **colonies**. The British were experts in developing a **colonial system**. Using their powerful navy and their **merchant ships**, they created colonies in countries like America, India, Jamaica and Australia, often displacing and subjugating the native populations.

Britain drew massive resources from its empire.

By the year 1800 this empire was enormous, and Britain could obtain goods such as sugar from Jamaica, and wheat and wool from Australia.

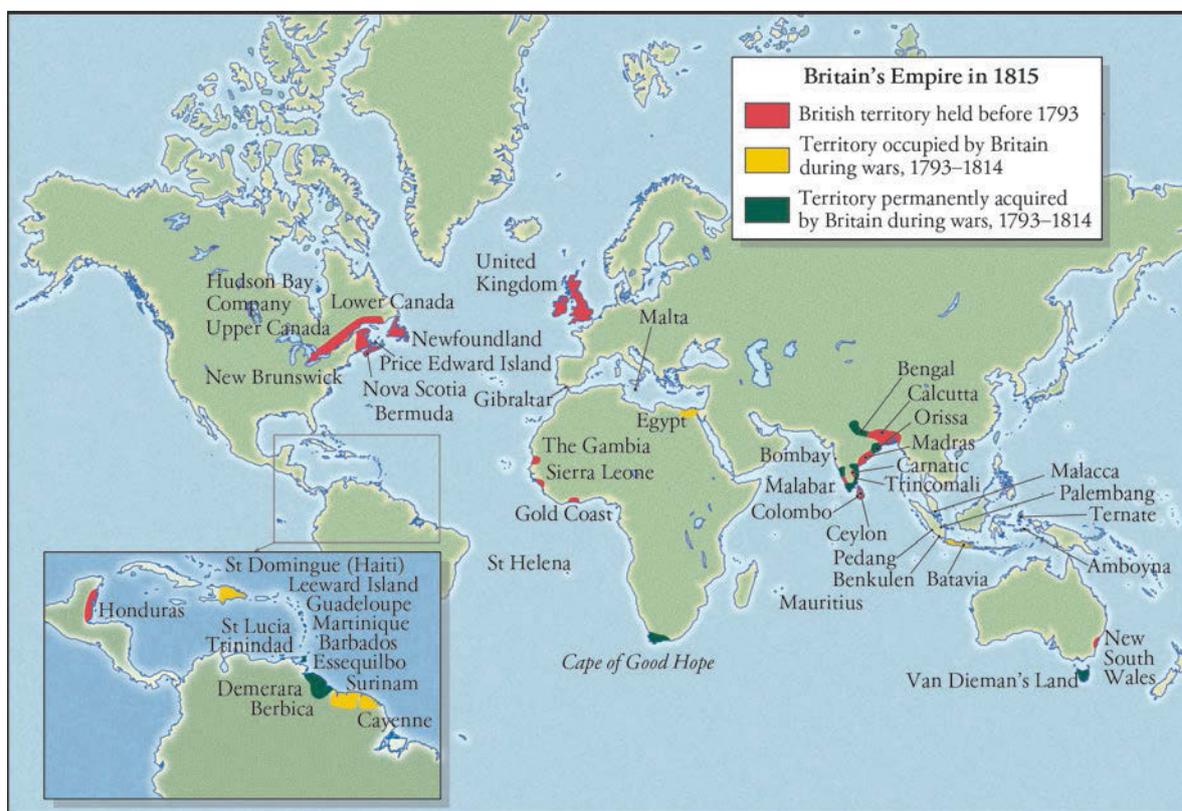
Through the exploitation of slaves and native workers, the British could produce these items very cheaply and sell them for vast profits in Europe.

British **merchants** also made a great deal of money by the slave trade, which involved buying slaves in Africa and selling them to the tobacco plantations in the American colonies. This soon developed into a three-way shipping route, because the ships then sailed back carrying American tobacco and cotton that could be sold at good prices in Europe.

All of the wealth generated by the British colonies meant that there was plenty of money available for investment. As settlers in places such as Australia made money in industries such as wool, they tended to invest their new wealth in British industries. This in turn allowed British industrialists to borrow money to buy new machines and to expand their factories.

These colonies also provided new markets for British manufactured goods. In Australia, people bought machinery, furniture and clothing from 'the home

merchant a person who buys and sells goods



Source 11.2 The spread of the British Empire meant that British industrialists had access to new products, new markets and cheap labour.

country'. In some cases, people were even forced by law to buy British goods, even though they could make such goods themselves.

loom a machine on which thread is woven into cloth

For example, the people of India were already able to spin cotton themselves on small **looms**, but British laws prevented them from doing so.

As a result, millions of Indians had to buy British cotton. This quickly had an effect. Between 1750 and 1770, the amount of goods produced to be sold within Britain increased by only 7%; at the same time, the amount of goods produced to be sold to the colonies increased by 80%.

'Explosion of invention'

The wealth generated by the empire fuelled innovation and invention, the drivers of the Industrial Revolution. Between about 1750 and 1800, many important inventions transformed industrial production, especially in metal and textiles.

The first great change was to energy: human labour and animal labour were replaced by steam, then gas and electricity, giving people power such as they had never had before.

The second great change was to machinery: there was an unstoppable flow of new inventions and new techniques that transformed the way important things such as coal and steel were made.

The third great change was to the scale, or size, of production. There had been a few large factories before 1750: as early as the 1600s, Ambrose Crowley was running a large iron-making factory at Winlaton. In the 1700s, however, many more industries – but not all – changed from many small workshops to large factories employing hundreds of people.

The fourth great change was to transport: the creation of a railway system and a canal system allowed the rapid movement of resources into industrial areas, and the efficient movement of their products to markets.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.1

- 1 List some of the goods produced in the different parts of the British Empire.
- 2 Assess the impact of slavery upon the success of British trade.
- 3 Draw a graph contrasting the increase in goods sold in the colonies with those sold within Britain over the period 1750–70.

Technology of movement

infrastructure structures (for example, roads, railway lines and canals) needed for the operation of a particular service

Assisting the worldwide movement of goods, money and technological development was a revolution in transport **infrastructure** and technology. Britain is criss-crossed by rivers, which were extended in this

period by a network of canals.

New forms of transport – railways and canals – were particularly good for moving heavy goods over long distances.

As an island nation, Britain possessed a powerful navy and a large merchant fleet. It also had a long coastline, with many ports. It was also strategically located: its ships could reach Europe to the east and America to the west. These geographical advantages meant that Britain was in a good position to conduct trade with its colonies and other nations.

By the year 1850, Britain was one of the most important industrial economies of the world. For

example, it made some 90% of the steam engines produced in Europe.

Population growth

From about 1800 onwards, Britain enjoyed an increasing population. In 1770, the population was 7.4 million; by 1840 it had doubled to 15.9 million. This happened quite simply because people were generally healthier than previous generations; with higher wages and better food, the birth rate increased and the death rate steadily decreased.

This led in turn to some increase in the **standard of living**. This further increased the demand for goods and services, thus speeding up economic growth. However, this increase in the standard of living was unevenly shared, with some areas (such as the industrial Midlands) remaining poor.

standard of living a measure of how well people live, with regard to their diet, housing, education and health

The agricultural revolution

Over the course of the eighteenth, nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, millions of British workers moved from the country to the cities.

This population shift meant that the factories of the Industrial Revolution had the workers they required. One of the central causes of this shift was a revolution in agriculture.

New machines

Jethro Tull invented the seed-drilling machine in about 1701, which scattered seed into the soil.

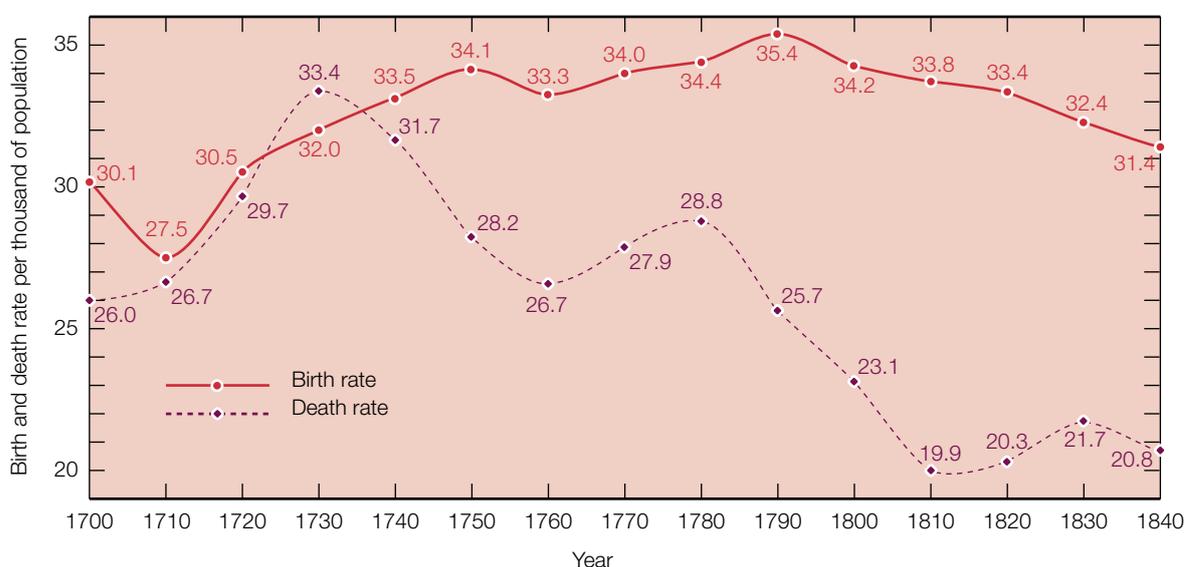
Before long, inventors designed mechanical ploughs, reaping machines and threshing machines. The Rotherham triangular plough (1730), for example, turned over the soil more effectively before planting a crop. Andrew Meikle invented a threshing machine in 1786. The only task that people could not do by machine was hay making, which was done by hand. As the new machines became available, many farm workers became unemployed. Some went to the industrial cities to get jobs in the new factories. Some formed bands under a leader they called Captain Swing, which broke up the new machines and attacked farmers who used them.

Changes in the use of the land

People also realised that they would need to make more efficient use of the land. This led to a new system that helped rich landowners but harmed poor farmers and people without land. This was known as the 'Inclosure' Movement (now spelt 'enclosure'), which started with an early Act of Parliament in 1773, and was completed by fifteen more Acts between 1845 and 1882.

For centuries, most parts of central England had common lands that could be used by all members of each village. In addition, the landowners did not fence off their fields, and there was a traditional, unwritten agreement that villagers could make some use of their land. For example, a poor villager could let their cattle feed on the land at times when there was not a crop growing there.

There were other understood 'rights': a poor farmer could let geese feed on the land and could let pigs search for food. People could pick wild berries, chop wood for the fire and 'glean', which meant picking up pieces of wheat left over after the harvest had been finished. These might sound unimportant, but they actually meant a lot to poor farmers who struggled to make a living.



Source 11.3 The population in Britain grew between 1700 and 1840 for two reasons: the birth rate (the number of children born per 1000 of population in 1 year) steadily increased until 1790. At the same time, the death rate steadily decreased from a high of 33.4 in 1730 to a low of 19.9 in 1810.

From 1773, people could ask parliament's permission to 'enclose' land. Enclosure meant putting a fence around an area of land. It was then 'deeded' (legally given) to one or more people. It became completely private property, and nobody else could

use it. Those who had lost the use of the common land were given some strips of land as a replacement, but it was often of poor quality. By the end of the nineteenth century, 28000 square kilometres of land – about 21% of the land in England – had been locked up in private

ownership. Many poor farmers and people without land could no longer make a living, and left the countryside to work in the factories of the industrial cities. There was no doubting the effect on the population: as early

as 1770 the writer Oliver Goldsmith had written a book called *The Deserted Village*, warning that the English countryside was being emptied of people.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.2

- 1 Analyse the advantages that the locations of Britain's ports gave it when conducting trade.
- 2 Describe why the increase in the standard of living during the first half of the nineteenth century was unevenly shared among the population.
- 3 Discuss why Captain Swing's bands tried to break up the new farming equipment.
- 4 Think about what your life would be like without quick and reliable transport – without cars, trains or buses. Write a short paragraph that describes what your day would be like without these technologies.

Limitations of cottage production

The Industrial Revolution did not create Britain's industries – they already existed – but it completely changed the way they worked. By the eighteenth century, Britain was already a leading industrial nation. It sold large amounts of iron, coal, wool, copper and tin to other countries. Several cities already had important industries: Birmingham, for example, specialised in producing goods made of iron or brass, such as nails and kitchen utensils. The city of Stourbridge specialised in glass making.

In some industries, however, production was limited by the simple techniques being used. One of the most valuable industries was textiles, which includes the weaving of cotton cloth and the making of items such as stockings. The domestic system meant that a family in a country village might have a loom or a stocking knitting frame in their own cottage. Often the woman of the family spun the wool or cotton and wove the cloth.

Her husband then took the fabric to the nearest town to sell at market. In some places, such as Lancashire, households were more organised, with clothiers providing the raw material to a number of households, paying them for the fabric they made.

In English cities, production took place in a small workshop run by a master. He, too, was supplied raw materials – wool from a clothier or iron from an ironmaster – and made an agreed number of items at a set price.

Conditions were poor in both the cottage industries and city workshops. Businessmen kept wages low by encouraging young men and women to come to the city,

creating crowds of workers desperate to be employed at any price. Many had to work 14 hours a day. The businessmen refused to buy basic equipment such as chairs: often tailors had to sit cross-legged on the floor.

They did their fine work by candlelight, and many finally went blind.

Revolution in energy: new forms of power

Until the eighteenth century, the power needed to do work came from humans, from animals such as horses or from natural forces like wind and water. To complete more work, people needed a new and more powerful form of energy. They found it in the power of steam.

The discovery of the power of steam goes back to the ancient Greeks, who understood that when water is turned into vapour by heat it expands 1800 times, releasing an energy that can be captured and used. Thomas Savery designed an industrial steam engine as early as 1698, which Thomas Newcomen improved upon with a more powerful steam pump in 1710–12. James Watt invented and developed the modern condensing steam engine between 1763 and 1775 by improving the existing Newcomen steam engine. It was so powerful that it could haul coal up mineshafts and drive the heavy machines in cotton mills, breweries, paper mills and other factories. Once it was harnessed to locomotives, it had the power to haul heavy loads such as iron over long distances. Later, it would be harnessed to shipping, creating the modern 'steam ship'.

Australian cities were greatly improved by the introduction of city lighting, first by gas and then by electricity. The cities seemed transformed: the weak and



flickering gas light was replaced by the strong, steady blaze of electric light. The first electricity company was the Australian Electric Light Company in Melbourne in 1879; by 1886 an enormous generator had been built under the General Post Office and was capable of lighting two thousand bulbs in the building. In Sydney, Brisbane and Hobart, the introduction of electric lighting was delayed by the resistance of the gas companies, but electricity was increasingly used to power factories. By the 1890s, the first electric cables were raised in the streets of Perth.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.3

- 1 Discuss how businessmen were able to convince so many people to move to the city during the Industrial Revolution.
- 2 Describe a common feature of the industries that were strong in Britain at the beginning of the eighteenth century.
- 3 Explain why it was the husband, not the wife, who usually sold the finished cloth at the market.

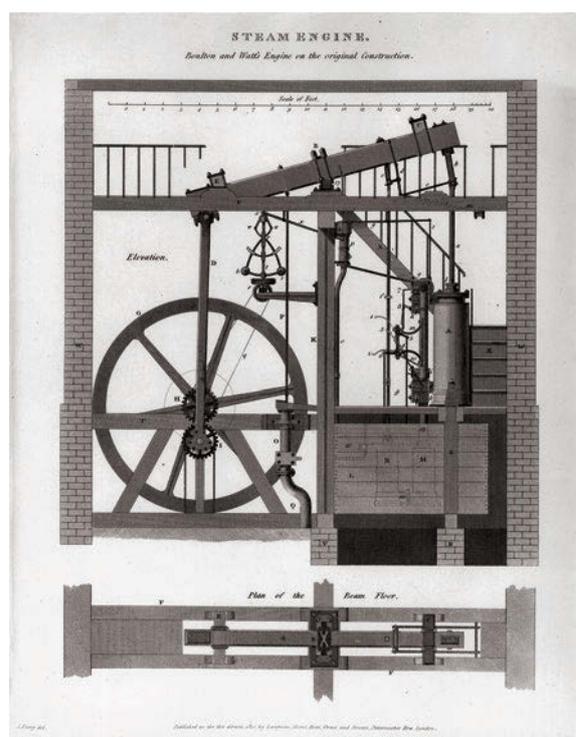
Transformation of the coal industry

After the introduction of the steam engine, the demand for coal increased rapidly. Britain had many coalfields, ranging from Northumberland and the Scottish Lowlands to Yorkshire, Nottinghamshire and the Midlands, along with large deposits in Wales (see Source 11.6). These coalfields were already being used to provide fuel for heating in large cities and to power existing industries.

After 1750, coal was needed mainly for the manufacture of iron. Iron was needed for the making of bridges, railways, locomotives and weapons. Coal was also used for baking bricks, making pottery, tiles and glass, and for the brewing of beer.

Dangers of deep coalmining

A persistent problem with coalmining was that existing techniques were limited by the dangers of digging shafts. These shafts could collapse or fill up with water or explosive gases. As late as 1760, most mines could not go deeper than 200 feet. Another problem was that the work down in the mines was done by human labour. Men crawled along the shafts to the coalface and

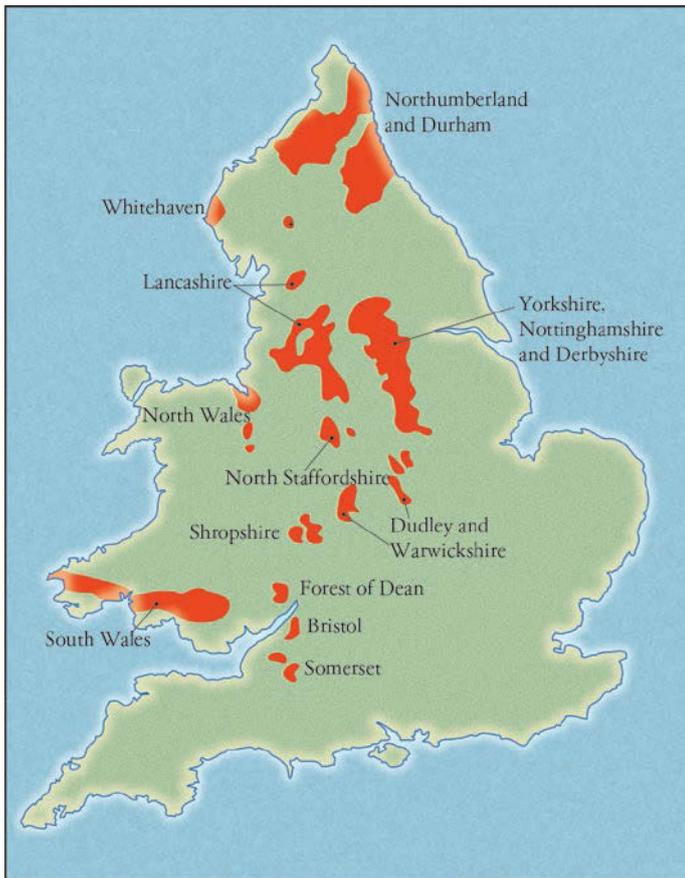


Source 11.4 James Watt's steam engine provided enough power to drive large factory machines and heavy trains.

dug the coal with pickaxes and crowbars. They threw the coal into baskets, which were put on wooden sleds or trolleys and dragged back to the surface by women or children. Accidents were common, and when a shaft collapsed many people could be trapped underground,



Source 11.5 The first electric cables were installed in the streets of Perth in the 1890s.



Source 11.6 The location of the main coalfields in England and Wales, c. 1830

with little chance of being rescued. The tragedy of these deaths captured the imagination of artists such as John Longstaff, who showed their effects on the families of the dead miners (see Source 11.7).

The coalmines employed many women and children for the heavy task of carrying the coal up to the surface. Children had to crawl on hands and knees, pulling a small trolley that was harnessed to their backs. Women had to do the heavy task of carrying baskets of coal up ladders to the surface high above. In 1842, a Parliamentary Commission into the issue published its shocking findings, accompanied with pictures, resulting immediately in a new law forbidding the use of children under 10 years of age in coalmines.

New technologies and the growth of coalmining

The Industrial Revolution provided solutions to some of these dangers. In 1800, the Newcomen steam pump was modified to draw water out of the mines. In 1807, engineers designed an air pump to push fresh air into the shafts. By 1842, there were strong wire cables available, which allowed lifts to bring both coal and miners up out



Source 11.7 Australian artist John Longstaff depicts the moment that all miners' families feared: the foreman has come to tell a worker's wife that there has been a mine accident. We can see the mineshaft in the background, through the open door. Outside, a number of men wait with a stretcher.

of the deep shafts. Production began to increase to meet the steady demand: in 1700, British mines produced only 2.5 million tonnes of coal. By 1760, this had doubled to 5 million, and by 1800 it had doubled again to 10 million tonnes. Coal became the lifeblood of the Industrial Revolution, and for the first time supply met the demands of hundreds of new factories.

Transformation of the textile industry

Of all Britain's industries, the cloth industry was most transformed by the new machines of the Industrial Revolution. Britain already produced large amounts of wool, but the new technology now allowed it to produce cotton. By 1823, Britain exported more cotton than wool. This industry was located in areas such as Lancashire and Derbyshire, where the damp atmosphere helped spinning. There was also plenty of clean water for cleaning the cotton.

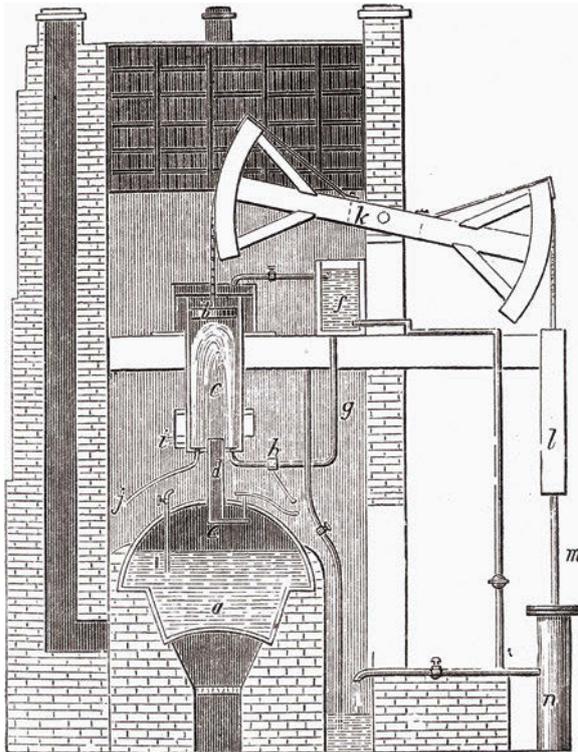
The slave trade also had a great impact on the cotton industry. Traders bought slaves in West Africa and sold them in America, where they worked on cotton plantations. The extremely cheap slave labour put vast profits in the hands of cotton merchants and the owners of cotton plantations and factories.

When machines became available, cotton traders gradually moved away from the old **domestic system** towards

domestic system a system of production in houses, cottages and villages, using hand-operated tools

factory system a system where many workers gather in a factory to operate large-scale machinery

the **factory system**, in which they built the factory, bought the cotton, and brought the workers to one central place. It was not an immediate change: there were many more cotton-spinning mills after 1780, but they did not take over completely until 1850.



Source 11.8 A Newcomen steam engine in use near Dudley Castle in 1712: Newcomen's pumps were important to the coal industry because they drew water out of mineshafts much more quickly and efficiently than human labour could.

New machines, new solutions

Once the factory system was set up, the new machines quickly solved the central problem of cotton manufacture: that the spinners who made the thread could not work quickly enough to supply the weavers who wove it into cloth. The first improvement was made by John Kay, who invented the flying shuttle in 1733. He intended to use it to weave wool, but it was quickly applied to cotton. In 1748, Lewis Paul invented a machine for **carding**, the process of combing the raw cotton to remove tangles and to make it smooth. Next, James Hargreaves invented the spinning jenny in 1764. He found the idea simply by watching his wife using a traditional spinning wheel, which could only produce one thread at a time. He created a new wheel that could operate eight **spindles** at once.

carding the process of combing raw wool or cotton to make it smooth and to remove impurities

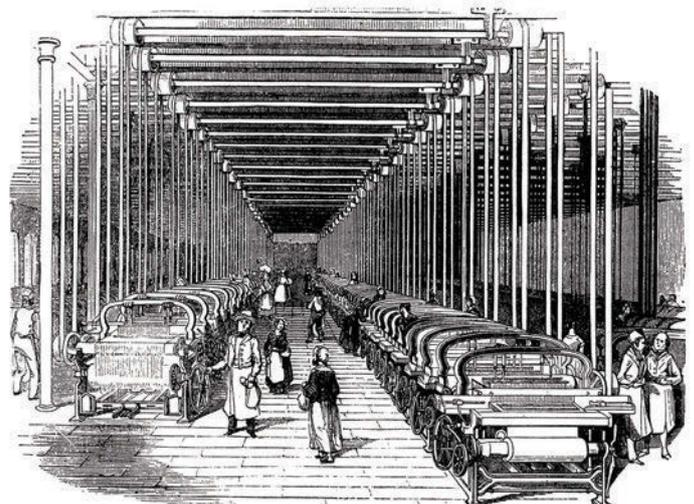
spindle a circular rod on which raw wool is twisted and formed into a thread

He then used this to create a spinning factory in Nottingham. He in turn was soon outstripped by Richard Arkwright, who invented a thread-drawing frame powered by water, called a water frame.

These two machines then inspired Samuel Crompton to invent the spinning mule in 1775.

It used features of both the previous machines and was able to spin very long and fine thread, making it possible to weave fine muslin fabrics.

By now, the problem had been reversed: yarn could be spun more quickly than the weavers could turn it into cloth. In 1785, Edmund Cartwright invented a power loom for weaving, although this invention took longer to perfect.



Sources 11.9 and 11.10 These images depict the gradual change from producing cotton in thousands of small cottage workshops to producing cloth in very large factories, where new machines could spin and weave much more quickly.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.4

- 1 Discuss the advantages of the factory system compared with the domestic system.
- 2 Research the spinning jenny on the internet or in the library. Draw a diagram of it, including its eight spindles.
- 3 Explain why the production of cotton in Britain outgrew the production of wool. Think about where each of these products came from.

New forms of power

As well as inventing new machines, new types of energy were used to power them. At first, the powerful rivers of the area drove the machines.

Later, steam power was used. James Watt's steam engine was introduced into the cotton factories in 1789; by 1815 power looms were widely in use. The use of steam-powered machinery was concentrated in areas close to the coalmines of Yorkshire.

Success of the cotton industry

These changes meant that the cotton industry grew remarkably rapidly. In 1700, Britain only imported one million pounds weight of cotton; by 1789 the figure was 5 million pounds, and by 1795 it was 11.5 million pounds. By 1815, the cotton industry employed 100 000 workers in factories, backed by another 250 000 weavers working outside the factory system.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.5

- 1 Explain why steam-powered machinery was concentrated in areas close to Yorkshire's coalmines. Think about the transportation available in Britain at the time.
- 2 Determine why slave numbers increased after the invention of the labour-saving cotton gin.
- 3 Describe what English consumers of cotton might have thought about slavery.
- 4 Imagine you are an English worker, and have just been informed about the use of slaves on United States cotton plantations. Write a paragraph describing your thoughts.

Effects on the southern states of the United States

The explosion of cotton production in Britain affected other countries. Britain now needed massive amounts of raw cotton, which was first imported from the West Indies and then from America. Plantation owners in the southern states of the United States were keen to supply it. The only problem holding back production was the process of cleaning cotton: slaves had to pick the seeds out of the cotton by hand.

In 1793, Eli Whitney, a schoolteacher, invented his cotton gin. This machine had rollers fitted with metal spikes and brushes that lifted the seeds out much more quickly than humans could. The first machine was turned by hand, and allowed the worker to clean 50 times as much cotton as before. Later, the machine

was powered by water, and allowed a thousand times more cotton to be produced in a day. Even later, the Americans found that they could also use the seeds to make cottonseed oil for lamps and feed for cattle.

By about 1800, the cotton industry had replaced the tobacco industry as America's main export. The states of Georgia, North and South Carolina, Virginia, Tennessee and Alabama were heavily involved in cotton plantations. The owners referred to their crop as 'King Cotton'. However, because of this growth Americans now used even more slaves than ever to work their plantations. In 1790, there were 700 000 slaves in these southern states; by 1860, there were 4 000 000 – a human tragedy on an enormous scale.

Transport revolution: railways and canals

Roads of steel: the railway network

The idea of the railway already existed in a simple form before the Industrial Revolution.

Rails were used to move carts of coal from mines, but the rails were made of wood and the carts were pulled by animals. It took the inventor Richard Trevithick to realise that the new steam engine could be placed on a vehicle and made to turn wheels. By 1801, he had designed a simple vehicle called 'the puffer' to run on roads. Then, in 1804, an owner of an ironworks made a bet that it was possible to design a vehicle that could run on tracks, pull carts containing 10 tonnes of iron and run for about 15 kilometres. Trevithick designed the first locomotive, and proved that a steam engine could pull carts.

Others took up his invention. William Hedley built a train called *Puffing Billy* in 1814 at Wylam, Northumberland. George Stephenson built another train, the *Blucher*, to pull coal wagons at the Killingworth coalmine.

Stephenson first became famous for building a railway from the coastal port of Stockton to the coal town of Darlington. In 1825, some 40 000 people saw the grand opening of the railway. They were amazed

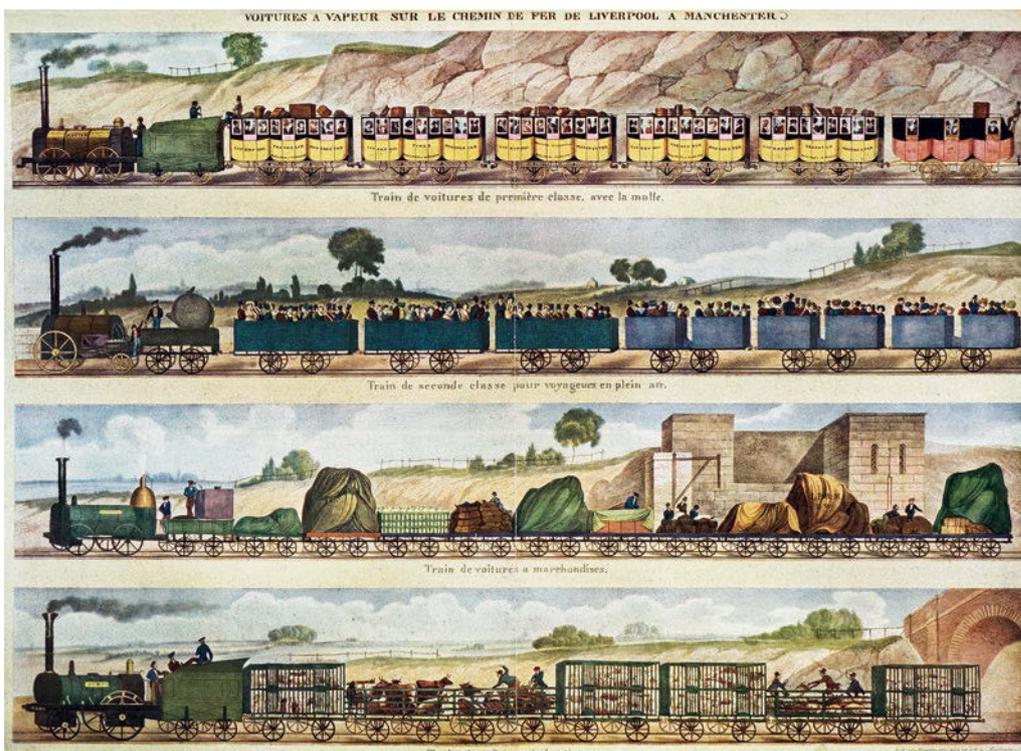
to see an engine, the *Locomotion*, pulling six cars of coal, a carriage for the railway's committee and 20 more carriages for the people who had invested their money to support the project. Because of fears for safety, the train travelled slowly behind a man carrying a red flag!

The great age of the railway really began in 1826, when the British parliament gave permission for the building of a railway line from the industrial port of Liverpool to the manufacturing town of Manchester. By 1829, the line was completed. It was time to test whether a locomotive could travel efficiently over such a long distance. Stephenson used his *Rocket* and covered the 30 miles at a speed of 14 miles per hour. The line opened in 1830.

This provided the basic idea for the steam train.

Historical thought

The arrival of the first trains caused a scare campaign, with claims that the high speed of the train would cause the two sides of the human brain to fall apart. This was of course rapidly disproved!

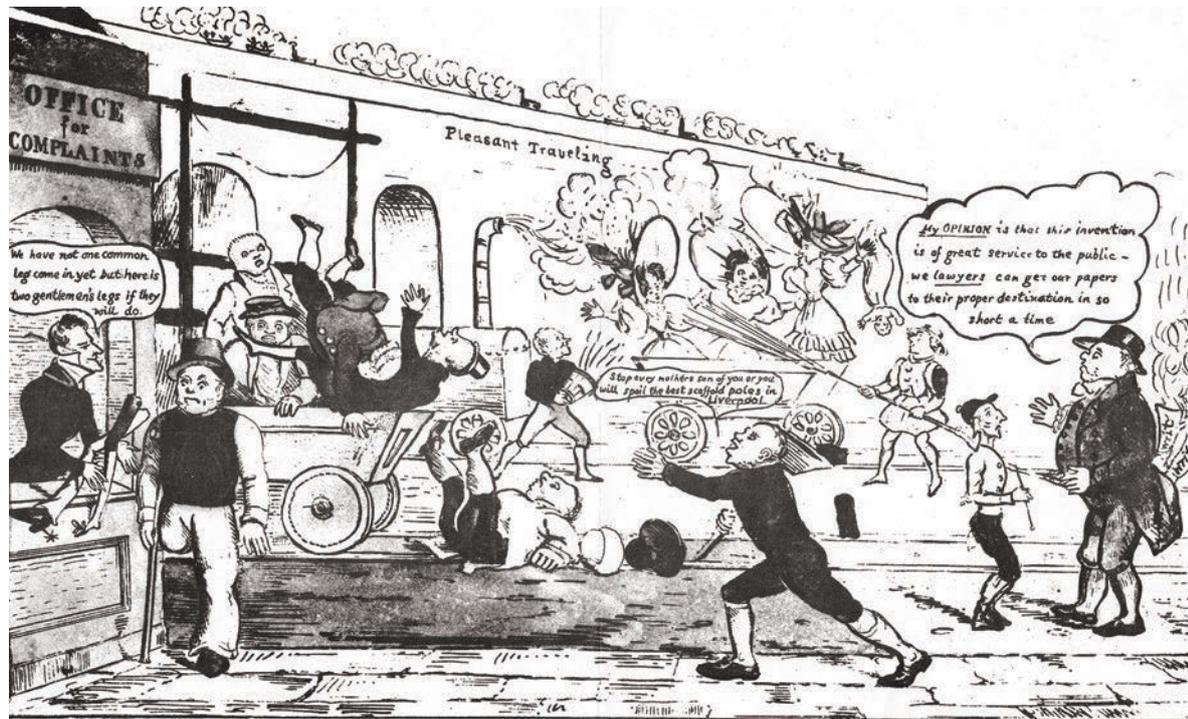


Source 11.11 The Liverpool–Manchester Railway. The text translates as: 'Steam trains on iron tracks from Liverpool to Manchester. First class carriage train, with the baggage. Second class train for travellers in the open air. Goods wagon train. Cattle wagon train.'

Fear of new technology

The pace of social change caused many to become frightened and upset. The public reaction to the emergence of the steam train is a good example of the fear that new technology caused. Farmers argued that

their cows would be frightened and not give milk, and that their horses might run in terror. Others hated the way the railway lines cut across the countryside, and said that the smoke would kill birds.



THE RAILING COMPANY AT LIVERPOOL.

London Publ'd by R. Lloyd 40 Gibson Street Waverley Road

Source 11.12 The Railing Company at Liverpool: a comical representation of the confusion caused by railways. On the right, a well-fed lawyer argues that the railway is 'of great service to the public' because he can deliver his documents more quickly. Humorously, he is not aware that the documents in his back pocket have caught fire because of sparks from the train.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.6

Examine Source 11.12 and then complete the following tasks:

- 1 Articulate whether you feel that cartoons published in newspapers at the time are a good way of understanding how people felt about a particular issue. Explain the reasons for your answer.
- 2 Explain what the cartoonist meant by drawing four trains end-to-end up on the bridge.

Another cause of criticism was financial.

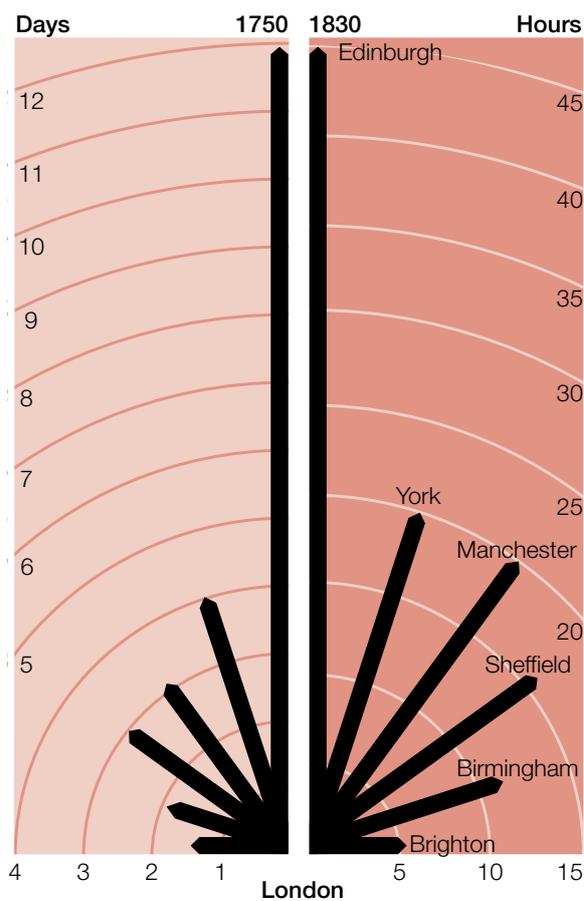
Businessmen who owned canals, roads and coaches all charged high fees for transport.

They saw that if the railways succeeded, their own businesses would make less money. Not surprisingly, they contributed to the scare campaigns against railways.

People often express their feelings and their fears through cartoons. This is a two-way process.

Cartoonists often highlight events of the day, summing up what people are thinking and saying; that is, successful cartoons recognise the way many people feel about a particular subject.

At the same time, cartoons might strengthen the feeling of fear by confirming it. Source 11.12 is a good example of this.



Source 11.13 How space was shrunk by rail travel: on the left, the journey from London to a city such as Manchester in 1750 was measured in days; by 1830, it could be measured in hours.

Triumph of the railways

The scare campaign did not stop the railways.

First, businessmen realised that there was a fortune to be made in transport. In 1838, a group of businessmen opened a new line from London to the northern city of Birmingham. By 1840, dozens of companies, financed by thousands of investors, had built lines between London, Brighton, Exeter, Leeds and Manchester. By the 1860s, new lines had reached out to the farthest parts of Britain, including Cornwall in the south, Wales in the west and Scotland to the north.

Canal network

The businessmen of the Industrial Revolution realised that they could not increase their production and sales without a better transport network across England. The existing roads could not carry heavy traffic efficiently. Roads were supplemented by small ships carrying coal and other cargo along the coastline. The businessmen needed more: they needed to carry heavy loads to

inland factories. They found that the rivers – the Thames, for example – could be made suitable for cargo boats. They arranged for the riverbanks to be widened, and the channels deepened. However, this did not help factories that weren't close to a river. In 1753, a group of businessmen in Liverpool made an important discovery: if there wasn't a river where you needed it, you could create one. They paid the engineer Henry Berry to create a **canal** from the coalmines at St Helens to the town of Warrington. This first canal was called the Sankey Brook Navigation, and was open for business by 1757.

canal an artificial waterway large enough for boats to travel upon

The idea caught on. The Duke of Bridgewater, who owned a coalmine at Worsley, also wanted to avoid moving his coal by road, due to the high costs. He asked parliament permission to build a canal from Worsley 15 kilometres overland to join a river near the industrial town of Manchester.

Australians did not merely copy English technologies: they proved to be excellent inventors themselves. In Adelaide, for example, people marvelled at the cleverness of the inventor Alfred Upton (AU) Alcock, who demonstrated how to use a steam engine to quickly unload coal from a ship, moving 40 tonnes in just 1 hour.

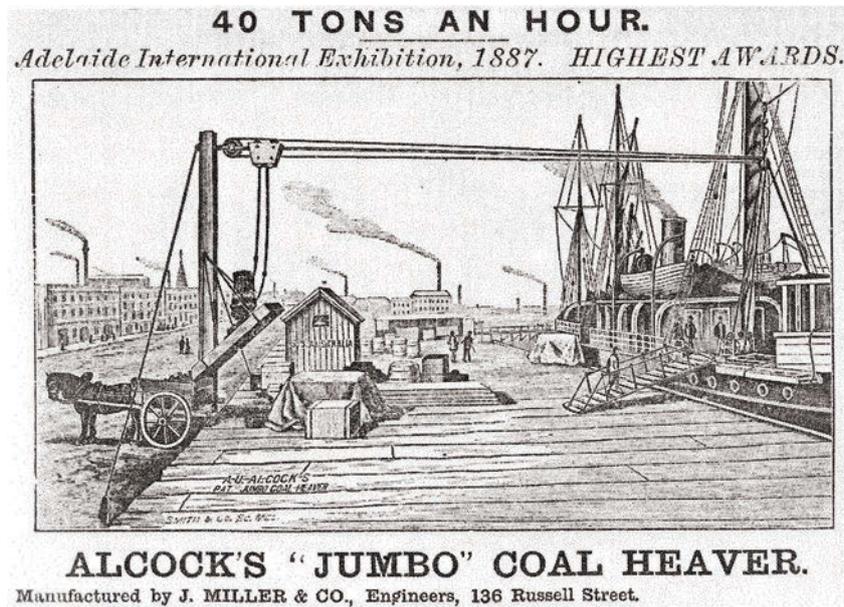


Railways in Australia

The Industrial Revolution made an important difference in a vast continent such as Australia because it helped to shrink space and distance.

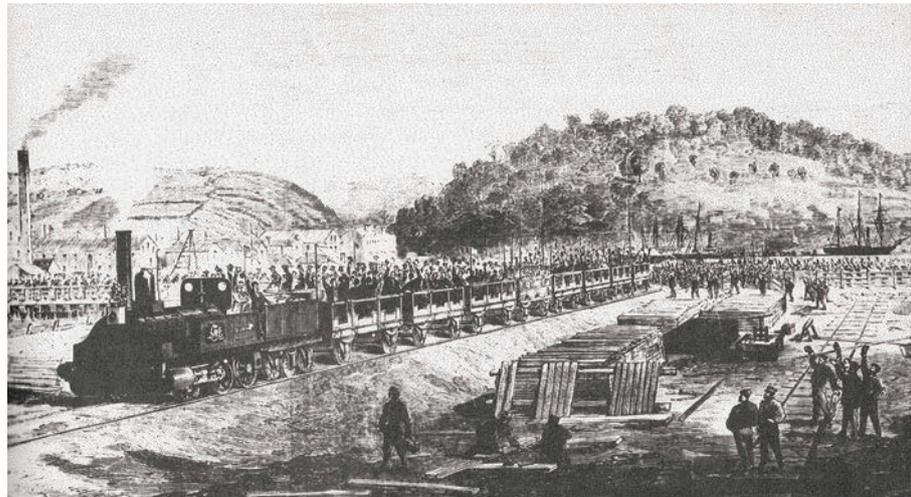
In every colony, the city was linked to its suburbs and to the countryside. Australians started work early on the railways, and they developed quickly. In New South Wales, England's railway boom in the 1840s almost immediately inspired Australians to build a network. As early as 1846, businessmen formed the Sydney Tramroad and Railway Company to build a line from Sydney to Goulburn. The line was begun in 1850 and finished in 1855, with the help of 500 rail workers imported from England. In Victoria, the Melbourne and Hobson's Bay Railway Company was opened in 1854, becoming the first steam train service to operate in Australia. In South Australia, a line from Goolwa to Port Elliott was opened in 1854. In Queensland, a line from Brisbane to Toowoomba was opened in 1864. In Western Australia, a railway from Northampton to Geraldton was opened in 1879. During the rest of the nineteenth century, the large network of tracks was extended, especially when colonial governments took over from private companies the expensive business of building railways.

The steam engine also transformed life within Australian cities. The existing horse-drawn trams were replaced by steam-driven machines, which provided faster travel around the town and out to the expanding suburbs.



Source 11.14 The Melbourne-based inventor AU Alcock designed this Jumbo Coal Heaver to unload coal much more quickly than human labour could.

Source 11.15 The opening of Tasmania's first railway from Launceston to Deloraine in 1869

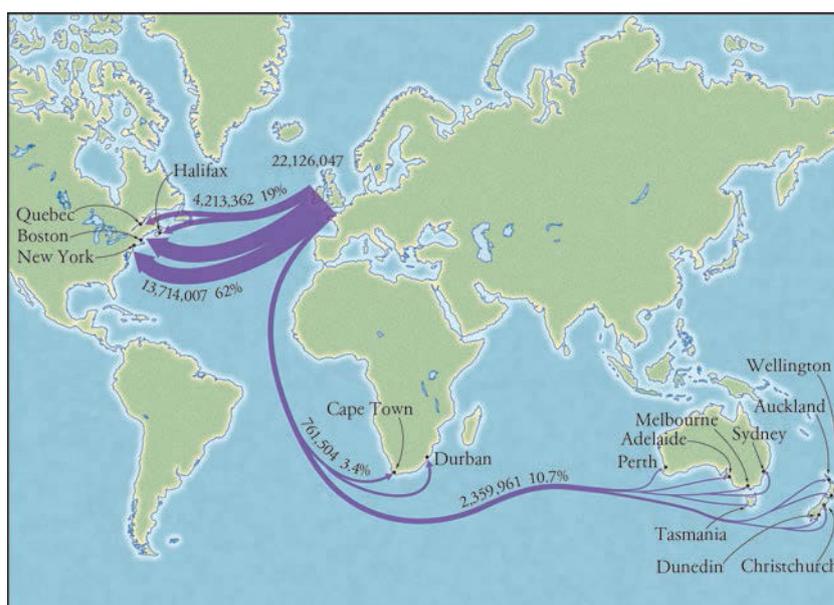


11.2 Population movement and settlement

The Industrial Revolution caused whole populations to move across the world. Emigration from Britain began almost as soon as it gained its colonies. By the nineteenth century, British citizens could consider going to Australia, the United States, British North America (Canada), India, South Africa and New Zealand. By the 1840s and 1850s, the flood of migrants was so great that it caused public debate and concern in the government. The United States was originally the most popular destination: in 1849, 219 450 people went to America, while only 32 091 chose Australia

and New Zealand. Later, more migrants chose to go to Australia, partly because the transportation of convicts was ended (1840 in New South Wales; 1853 in Tasmania) and partly because gold was discovered in 1851.

By the 1840s, it was clear that the Industrial Revolution brought wealth only to the middle classes and to the businessmen who owned the great factories. In 1841–42, a harsh winter caused unemployment and hunger for the working classes. In 1846, the Irish Potato Famine began.



Source 11.16 Emigration patterns from the UK over the period 1815–1914

Thousands of starving Irish people flooded to England, America and to the colonies in search of work. In 1848, there was a cholera epidemic that killed thousands more people. After 1851, the clearance of poor agricultural workers from the Scottish highlands drove many Scottish people to migrate as well. There was no hiding it: the Industrial Revolution had brought misery to working people. Among educated people, there was real concern about 'the condition of England'.

From the early nineteenth century onwards, British people were encouraged to go to the colonies in Australia, where there was the promise of cheap farming land and a decent living.

The Industrial Revolution transforms the way of life in Australia

The Industrial Revolution wasn't limited to just England: it gradually transformed Europe, America and Australia. We can still see its effects in the cities, towns and country areas we live in. There is also much visual evidence of early industry in hundreds of photographs and engravings.

The Industrial Revolution began to affect Australia as early as the eighteenth century. This was partly because England's industrial cities, with their problems of unemployment and poor housing, turned many ordinary people into criminals, often for crimes as minor as stealing a loaf of bread to feed their families. The loss of the 13 American colonies in 1783 in the American War of Independence meant that the British could no longer send prisoners there. With Britain's jails

overflowing, the government decided to use Australia as a **penal colony**. Cities such as Sydney and Hobart came into existence to contain the social problems caused by the Industrial Revolution.

While the idea of setting up a vast prison was an important reason for settlement in Australia, it was not the only one.

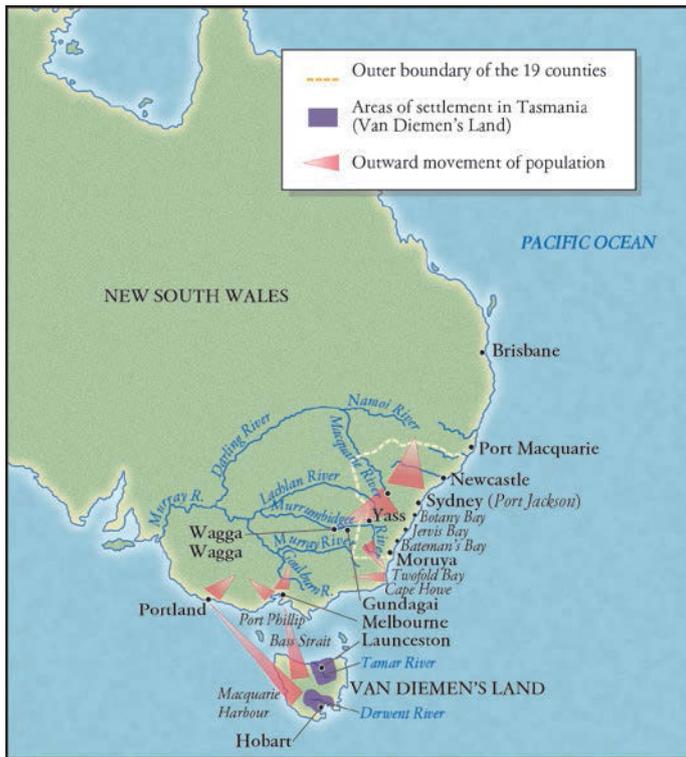
From an early stage, the British government had wondered whether Australia could also serve as a **settler colony**; that is, a place to which people who were not criminals could freely go and start a new life by setting up farms and industries. The first free settlers arrived in Australia as early as 1793, and 1000 had arrived by 1810. The small settlement in Australia also gained settlers by giving grants of land to people who were already there and serving as officers in the army.

People such as John and Elizabeth Macarthur proved to be very capable settlers, and both were important in setting up Australia's wool industry, which would soon become a major part of Britain's trade with its empire. In 1823, the idea of settlement was helped by the Bigge Reports, which said that Australia needed more free settlers.

In 1831, the British government arranged to help settlers emigrate by paying the cost of the journey, using money from the sale of government-owned land. Later, the British government encouraged women to emigrate to help balance the numbers of males and females, and about 3000 arrived between 1832 and 1836. By the 1830s, there were large areas of the south-east coast of Australia under settlement (see Source 11.17).

penal colony a colony that serves as a prison

settler colony a colony developed by free individuals, usually with the protection and assistance of a parent government



Source 11.17 Settlers in Australia rapidly spread up and down the eastern coast of Australia.

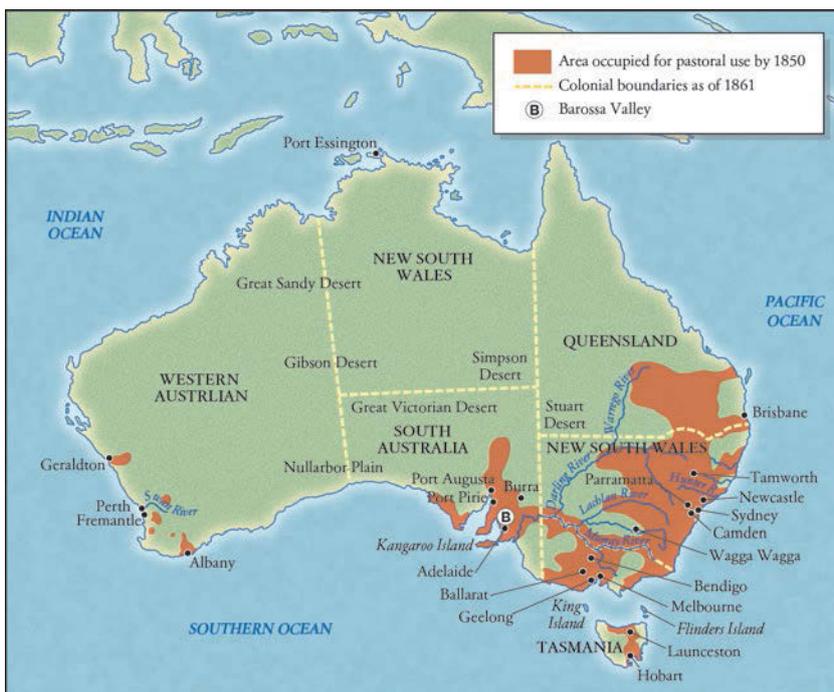
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.7

- 1 Explain why the rate of migration to Australia increased in the second half of the nineteenth century.
- 2 Research the Scottish highland clearances on the internet or in the library. Why were these poor agricultural workers cleared from the land?
- 3 Describe some of the differences between a settler colony and a penal colony. What are some of the similarities?

Australia, which ended the practice in 1868. During the 1830s and 1840s, pastoralists (settlers who wanted to set up farms) began settling land in the areas now known as New South Wales and Tasmania. In 1835, some pastoralists from Tasmania also set up farms in what they called the Port Phillip District, which was renamed the colony of Victoria in 1850.

There were two other events that helped the settlement of Australia. In 1840, the transportation of criminals to Sydney was halted, helping to soothe people's fears that Sydney was just a prison. The last colony to stop transportation of criminals was Western

Elsewhere, people had other reasons for making settlements. In 1834 the British parliament had established the colony of South Australia to create a settlement free of convicts. In 1829, a group of settlers had joined together to form the Swan River Settlement in Western Australia, in order to create a new society



Source 11.18 By 1850, farmers and pastoralists had spread into inland Australia.

and way of life. Finally, the great movement of settlers out of New South Wales to land in the north broke away from the home colony in 1859, and formed the colony of Queensland.

During the 1840s, 15 000 people migrated to Australia each year, reaching the peak of 33 000 in 1841. By the 1850s, it was clear that Australia could indeed be another 'new Europe', and serve as a useful settler colony to the British Empire.

As early as 1821, Australia was sending 175 000 pounds weight of wool (almost 80 000 kilograms) to Britain, but by 1850 this had risen to 39 000 000 pounds (17 690 tonnes). Australia alone was supplying about 50% of Britain's needs in wool.

The discovery of gold in Victoria in the 1850s also provided great encouragement to migration.

The gold rushes of the 1850s had a dramatic effect on Australia's industrial development. First, the population of the colonies grew from 500 000 in 1850 to 1.2 million in 1860. Second, the new wealth created by gold created more demand for products, leading to a rapid growth in Australia's industry. The effects of this were still felt in the economy as late as the 1880s. Third, between 1860 and 1890, economic growth was also fed by strong migration from Britain and Ireland, which created one-third of all population growth in this period.

Finally, Australian governments borrowed heavily from Britain in order to build the services such as transport that Australians were demanding.

British investors were keen, until the 1890s, to invest their money in Australia, which they felt was a familiar culture and one made 'safe' by the wealth created by gold.

Transformation of Australia's cities

Australia's cities grew quickly during the nineteenth century, especially after the gold rushes of the 1850s. Melbourne was perhaps the main boom city of the nineteenth century, growing from a population of 30 000 in 1850 to 500 000 by 1900.

Sydney reached the same population by the end of the century. Adelaide was smaller, but still grew to 160 000 by 1900. Both Brisbane and Perth grew more slowly, but developed suddenly in the 1890s, with Brisbane reaching a population of 120 000 by 1900. An engraved view of Queen Street, Brisbane in about 1886 shows broad, well-paved streets with stately buildings and a tram system (see Source 11.19). Perth was late in growing to a population of 60 000 by 1900.

Australia's ports: hubs of the industrial world

Australia had important ports, such as Sydney, as early as the eighteenth century, but these grew as they became busy centres of trade for the industrial world. Australian wool was exported to meet the needs of the British textile industry. In return, British manufactured goods and luxuries were imported to meet the demands of the colonies. Within a few years during the Industrial Revolution, sailing ships also began to be replaced by modern steam-powered ships.



Source 11.19 Queen St, Brisbane, as it appeared c. 1886

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.8

- 1 Determine why the discovery of gold in Australia caused a population boom.
- 2 Explain how the Australian gold rush created an increased demand for new products.
- 3 Look at the image of Brisbane depicted in Source 11.19. How does this view of an Australian city compare with images of English cities of the same time? Think about the relative width of the streets and compare the population levels.

Experiences of ordinary men, women and children

Life in England

For the millions of people who left their country villages to come to the city, the Industrial Revolution seemed to promise good work and a good wage. In many cases, these hopes were quickly dashed. For most, work in this new world meant very long hours in dangerous conditions for inadequate pay. For others, the new cities offered only unemployment and poverty.

The industrial city

The Industrial Revolution created large cities and towns, in which the living conditions for ordinary people were very poor. The need to accommodate all of the new workers in the factories forced the rapid construction of cheap housing, resulting in new suburbs of extremely poor quality. Government officials noticed these problems, and frequently sent observers to report on living conditions.

Factories

The new factories seemed enormous compared with the small workshops people were used to.

This was depicted in the paintings of Eyre Crowe, who went to Wigan to study the people who worked in them. His painting, *The Dinner Hour, Wigan*, accurately shows known buildings such as the Victoria Mills owned by the industrialist Thomas Taylor. Artists often sold their paintings to wealthy industrialists, who expected them to be accurate. If you look online for this painting you will see that the painting still has some limitations as a source for the historian. It only shows the factory girls resting, not working. They are taking a meal break, and seem happy and relaxed. They are well dressed – only one is barefoot – and clean and healthy. A policeman patrols the street behind them, suggesting that everything is in order.

The painter might have depicted a very different scene if he had gone inside the factory. In most factories, people

worked long hours and received low pay. If the workers demanded better wages, the owners dismissed them and took on other desperately poor workers instead.

Moreover, the factory you see probably lacked safety equipment. The industrialists argued that safety equipment cost money but made no profits, so there was no point buying it. In the cotton mills, for example, young women like those in the painting worked for years in a factory where the air was full of fine cotton dust. When they breathed it in, it filled their lungs, causing lung disease and finally death. It was possible to buy large extractor fans to remove the cotton dust, but many industrialists argued that it was cheaper to hire new workers to replace those who died.

Child labour

One of the worst problems in the new factory was the use of child labour. By law, a child was not allowed to work until the age of six, but few factory owners obeyed this rule.

Once they were employed, children worked very long hours. Those who fell asleep were whipped by their employers to stay awake; some were so exhausted they fell forward into the working machinery and were killed. In some factories, children were employed to use their small hands to clean out the machines while they were still operating, and many were injured when their hands got caught in the moving parts.

Warning voices

Some of the strongest warning voices of the Industrial Revolution came from the industrialists themselves. Many were businessmen who believed that making profits was the only thing that mattered.

They thought social problems only occurred because working people were lazy or drunk.

Others saw the truth. The Industrial Revolution itself was creating bad working conditions, low pay, bad housing, poverty and unemployment.

Robert Owen was a rare industrialist who bravely stated that bad working conditions were the main

cause of the dirt, violence and crime in the industrial cities. He suggested that if owners improved the conditions in the factories, workers would also improve their behaviour.

To prove his point, he built a mill at New Lanark, near Glasgow in Scotland. He paid for large windows to let in light and air, plus proper toilets, drainage and even baths. He cut down working hours. He made sure that workers had free time, and encouraged them to read or to exercise during that time. He refused to

employ children under the age of 10. He hoped that industrialists would see his successful factory and copy his reforms. When that did not happen, he went straight to the English parliament and persuaded Sir Robert Peel, the then Prime Minister, to pass laws to improve conditions in factories.

He even showed working men how to form a trade union. He was so committed to reform that he spent his fortune on ideas to improve the lives of working people.

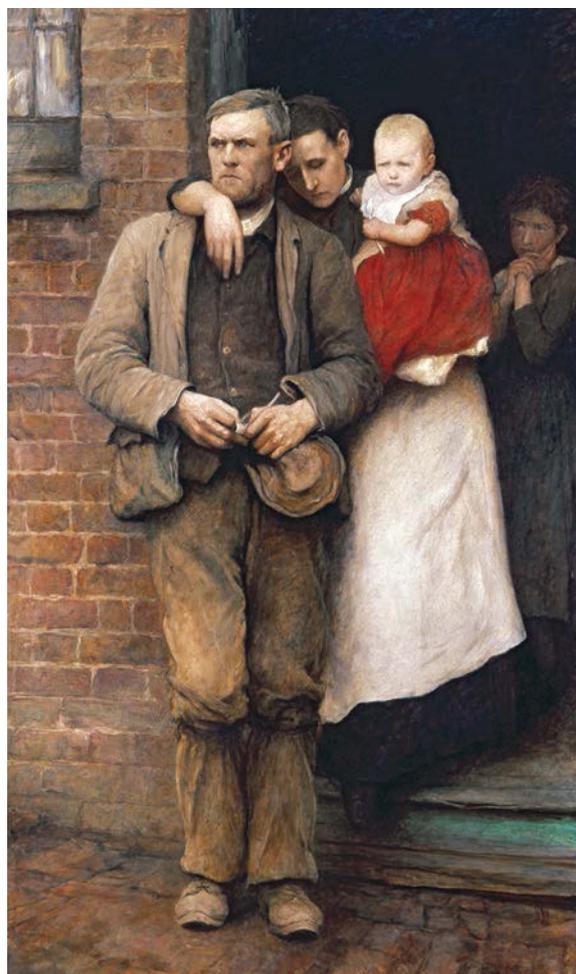
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.9

- 1 Assess why many industrialists during the Industrial Revolution avoided buying safety equipment.
- 2 Determine the age at which children should be allowed to start work. Include your reasons in your answer.
- 3 Imagine you are a child working in a coalmine during the Industrial Revolution. In a short paragraph, describe your day.
- 4 Explain why Robert Owen's reforms affected the output of his factories.

Conflict: 'capital' versus 'labour'

Workers' conditions during the Industrial Revolution were shaped by the desire of the owners of the new factories to make as much money as possible. Employing hundreds of workers, some owners thought that they needed to pay as little as possible in wages to their workers. The workers often had to work long hours, in dangerous conditions, for a wage that was hardly enough to live on. Sometimes workers tried to go on strike, refusing to work until they were given better wages. The employers fought back by dismissals (getting rid of workers), lock-outs (shutting down their factories for a time) and importing labour (getting other workers from areas where there was unemployment). The workers fought back by forming trade unions, in which all members of a trade promised to strike together and support each other. By the 1840s, thinkers like Karl Marx were saying that there was a sort of war between

Source 11.20 This painting by Hans Herkomer captures the battle between workers and owners in 1891. The man has gone out on strike, because he supports his trade union. However, it is clear that the strike has not worked, and that the owners are holding out. As weeks go by, the worker's family suffers because he is not earning money. The troubled expression on this man's face shows his conflict between his duty to his trade union and his duty to his family.



the ‘capitalists’ who owned the factories and the ‘labour’ who worked for them.

For all working families, life was a struggle and could be ruined by just one event such as the death of the male wage-earner. A fatal accident in a mine or a textile mill could leave a woman and her child without enough money to pay the rent or to buy food. In these situations, families were often evicted from their homes, and left to descend into a life of poverty.

The Poor Law of 1834

The group called ‘the poor’ was made up of the destitute – or those who could not work because they were elderly, sick or injured – and the unemployed, meaning those who were able to work but could not find a job. Until 1834, there was some support available for both types of poor.

In 1834, a new Poor Law stated that only the ‘sick poor’ – old people, orphans and the seriously ill – should be given money. The ‘able-bodied poor’ – healthy unemployed workers – should be forced to search for work. The problem was that this assumed that people were unemployed because they did not want to work. It ignored the fact that all economies have an amount of unemployment. The able-bodied poor were forced to live in workhouses, and received only the bare minimum of food.

Poor Law Commissions controlled the workhouses across the country. These commissions instructed that the workhouses must be less attractive than living in poverty and be made more like prisons. People were humiliated, given harsh discipline and were badly fed. The aim was to make life so miserable that the poor would learn their lesson and go and find work. Many preferred to starve in a cottage than to go to the workhouses, seeing it as a fate worse than death.

These ideas cut the cost of poor relief, but at the price of human misery and suffering.

Life in Australia

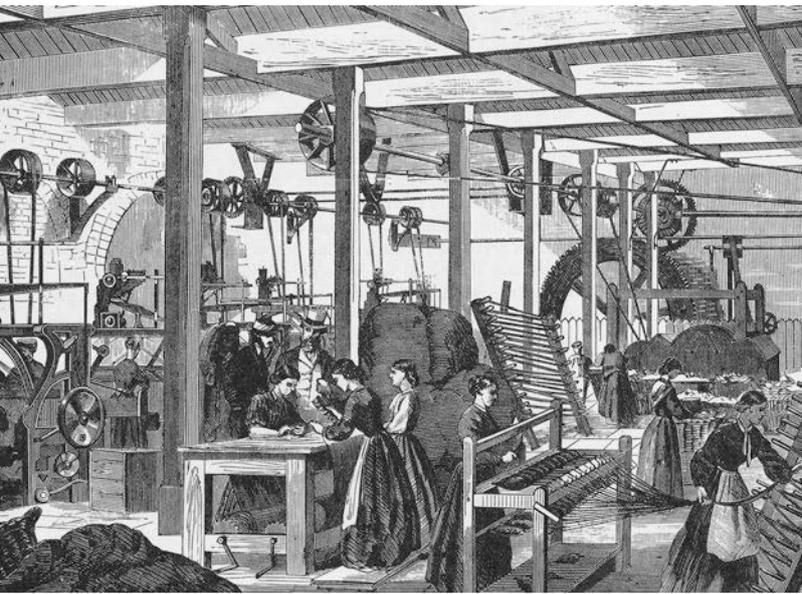
The Industrial Revolution transformed the world of work for many Australians. The textile and clothing trades, for example, quickly became large industries. By the 1870s, there were several large textile mills in New South Wales and three in Victoria. As in Britain, the growth of these industries in Australia caught the attention of artists, who made images of the great new workplaces and their machines. The engraving reproduced in Source 11.22 depicts the large workshop, its many machines (all driven by the new power of steam) and the top-hatted owner visiting to talk to the foreman.

This picture gives us little information about the lives of the human beings who worked here. These women worked long hours for a small wage. At the Victorian Woollen and Cloth Manufactory in Geelong, for example, all worked a 60-hour week; men were paid a low wage of 35 shillings per week, but women received only 10 shillings. The mill illegally employed children who had run away from school, paying boys 7 shillings and girls 4 shillings a week. Poor families could not resist signing all their members up for work, but their children received no education, and were committed to factory work forever.

In these conditions, a worker’s health was seriously affected. A little girl was brought to me three days ago by her mother, a little worn-out looking thing. She had been in the factory twelve months ... already, and she is only thirteen now. She is like a little old woman, pale and shrivelled, and suffers from palpitations of the heart.

Source 11.21 A doctor reporting on the state of health of a child patient





Source 11.22 A typical Australian factory of the period: note that the focus is on machinery rather than people.



Source 11.23 Philip James de Loutherbourg's *Coalbrookdale by Night*: de Loutherbourg visited the iron works and was impressed by the size of the works and the fiery furnaces.



11.3 Impact of the Industrial Revolution

Effects on the environment

By the nineteenth century, it was clear that the Industrial Revolution was having a serious effect on the environment in many parts of England.

We know about the environmental impact of the Industrial Revolution because it was recorded by both writers and painters. The quiet countryside of England had been transformed wherever industry had sprung up. Nonetheless, people had quite different ways of seeing the transformation.

The English artist Philip James de Loutherbourg, for example, was thrilled by the massive shapes of the new factories, and particularly by the great fires of the furnaces and the energy of the machines. He was one of many painters who went to Coalbrookdale to observe industry at work (see Source 11.23). He showed the factory at night, when the buildings stood out against the red-orange glare of the flames from the furnaces.

The result is very dramatic. Even so, he still shows the land in front of the factory as being littered with all sorts of broken machinery.

Long-term impacts

We are all children of the Industrial Revolution. We live in the cities it created, we work in its factories and we use its products. We share the excitement of the inventors and businessmen of that period about

technological progress. Many people were aware of the impact of the Industrial Revolution on human beings and on the environment, and some such as Robert Owen were actively concerned about this. Since that time, we have become more aware that increases in production also mean the greater use of the Earth's resources. In particular, production on a large scale requires energy, which originally came from **fossil fuels** such as coal, oil or gas.

In our own time, the emission of **greenhouse gases** has begun to affect the climate of the whole Earth in a process known as **global warming**. It might be said that the people of the eighteenth century created the machines and techniques of the Industrial Revolution, and that it is up to our own generation to manage their effects.

Our growing consumption also meant an increase in waste. In the developed countries of the Western world especially, every household creates a large amount of rubbish that becomes **land fill** in rubbish dumps. In Australia, we are only just beginning the process of reducing waste and of recycling wherever possible. If the first chapter of the story of the

fossil fuel a non-renewable fuel formed by geological pressure over a long time span

greenhouse gas a gas, such as carbon dioxide, that contributes to the insulating effect of the Earth's atmosphere

global warming a rise in the Earth's average temperature due to the atmosphere's inability to release heat because of the growth of greenhouse gas emissions

land fill buried waste

Industrial Revolution was written by the inventors of the 1750s, it may well be that the last chapter will be written by your own generation.

At the start of the Industrial Revolution, people focused on the wonderful opportunities provided by technology to produce more, and therefore to consume more. Since resources seemed almost endless, both within Britain and across its vast empire, there seemed little need to question how we used them. It is only in more recent times that we have had to face the real possibility that resources such as iron ore and fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas are finite, and will run out one day.

This story will be completed when we reach the final stage of the Industrial Revolution: **sustainability**, or the ability to make careful and reasonable use of the limited resources

on Earth. Human beings first used modern technology to make greater use of the Earth's resources; it is now our task to develop technology so that we may make more intelligent and responsible use of those resources. In the year that this book was written, the population of the Earth reached seven billion, reminding us again how urgent it is to try to develop technology to provide a decent living for all humans.

sustainability the ability to replace resources as we consume them

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 11.10

- 1 Explain why painters like Philip James de Loutherbourg were attracted to Coalbrookdale.
- 2 List some of the ways we can achieve sustainability:
 - as individuals
 - as a society.
- 3 Describe some of the technologies that are helping to make the world more sustainable today.



Source 11.24 Industrial pollution contributes to global warming.



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Changes in technology can improve our lives, and can also completely change the way we live. The period in Britain between about 1750 and 1850 is known as the Industrial Revolution, because it dramatically altered the lives of millions of people in Britain and across the world.
- The greatest change was in the creation of energy.
- Until then, energy came from human labour, animal labour or from the power of wind or water. When people harnessed the power of steam, and developed a steam-driven engine, they made more power available than ever before.
- Another great change was the increase in the size and efficiency of industries like coalmining and iron making. A number of clever inventors created a series of new machines to increase the speed of production and the quality of output. This coal and iron became the raw materials for further industrial growth.
- A third change occurred in the textile industry, where the introduction of steam engines could drive great machines for the spinning of thread and the weaving of cloth.
- Millions of people left their villages and farms to find work in the new industrial cities. Many workers laboured long hours in dangerous conditions for poor wages. Others found only unemployment and poverty.
- The Industrial Revolution also had an impact on the environment. Existing cities grew larger, and developed poor suburbs known as slums. New industrial cities sprang up near factories, and also had bad living conditions.
- The Industrial Revolution caused social problems that raised debate about issues of social justice and the responsibility of governments to regulate industry with laws such as the *Factory Act*. Writers, artists and analysts all tried to make social problems visible to the general public, and had some success in mobilising public opinion to force governments to take action.
- The Industrial Revolution also transformed life in Australia. Australians were quick to pick up the promise of the steam-driven train and tram, to apply steam engines to their factories, and to use gas and (later) electrical lighting.
- We are still living with the effects of the Industrial Revolution, and are still learning to manage it properly. It is one thing to massively increase production, but another to use resources sustainably and to recycle scarce materials. The final triumph of the Industrial Revolution will occur when coming generations manage to make sustainable use of the Earth's resources.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Discuss why the invention of the steam engine allowed a whole revolution in industrial production.
- 2 Discuss why the invention of the industrial canal made such a big difference to the development of the Industrial Revolution.
- 3 Explain the move from the cottage system to the factory system.
- 4 Why did the Industrial Revolution cause social problems in Britain? Provide examples to explain your answer.
- 5 Explain how the Industrial Revolution changed life and work in Australia.



Source analysis

In the 1880s, the English writer George Sims began to explore the poor areas of London, and was horrified by the misery he saw. He published his notes in his books *How the Poor Live* and *Horrible London*.

To the particular door ... there comes a poor woman. White and thin and sickly looking; in her arms she carries a girl of eight or nine with a diseased spine; behind her, clutching at her scanty [thin] dress, are two or three other children. We ask to see the room. What a room! The poor woman apologises for its condition. The walls are damp and crumbling, the ceiling is black and peeling off, the floor is rotten and breaking away in places, and the wind and the rain sweep in through gaps that seem everywhere. The woman, her husband and six children live, eat and sleep in this one room, and for this they pay three shillings a week. As to complaining about the filthy condition of the room, they know better. There are a dozen families who will jump at the accommodation, and the landlord is well aware of the fact.

Source 11.25 Sims describes visiting a filthy room in which a whole family had to live.

- 1 Why would living in this room have been unhealthy for the family Sims visited? In your answer, quote evidence from his notes.
- 2 Consider why the 8-year-old girl might have had a 'diseased spine'.
- 3 Why does the landlord (owner of the building) know that he does not have to make any repairs?
- 4 In modern Australia, identify what sorts of laws try to protect people from bad living conditions like this.

Extended-response question

Despite appearing to promise great benefits by industrial progress, the Industrial Revolution has done more harm than good.

Do you agree with this statement? Explain some of the benefits of the Industrial Revolution. Explain the problems it caused. Decide whether it has in fact done more harm than good. In your answer, quote facts and figures, names and dates, and statistics.



12

Movement of peoples (1750–1901)

Before you start

Main focus

This period saw millions of people – enslaved people, convicts and free settlers – moving from Europe, Africa and Asia to the New World, where they developed new wealth and new markets. Growing racist ideas led to laws restricting the movement of Chinese, Indian, indigenous, Melanesian and Japanese people.

Why it's relevant today

Studying the history of migration helps us to understand the distribution of peoples in the world today, and why people migrate or become refugees. With this understanding, we can learn how ordinary people built the world economy, and how migration affected racial prejudice.

Inquiry questions

- What differences were there between the causes for various peoples migrating and the different ways (free and unfree) they travelled? How were they similar?
- How did the movement of slaves, convicts and free settlers contribute to the economic development of the world?
- How can we know about the feelings and experiences of the migrants?
- What is the legacy of these population movements for the world today?

Key terms

- Boycott
- Chattel
- Diaspora
- Emancipist
- Girit
- Indentured labour
- Muster
- Pogrom
- Xenophobia

Significant individuals

- Mackay family
- Mary Prince
- Olaudah Equiano
- Susannah Watson
- Totaram Sanadhya

Let's begin

The Industrial Revolution led to a demand for raw materials for European factories and to a great demand for labour to produce those raw materials in the New World of the Americas, and the European colonies in Australasia, Africa and Asia. The Atlantic slave trade saw millions of Africans captured and forcibly deported to the Americas. With the abolition of British slavery in 1833, cheap labour was supplied by Indian indentured workers, who signed up for 5 years' work, often on a sugar plantation. Gold seekers, many of them Chinese, flocked to the goldfields in California and Australia. Later millions of Europeans left lives of poverty to seek their fortunes in the New World. They developed agriculture, commerce and industry in the New World. The goods they produced were vital to the development of capitalism on a global scale.

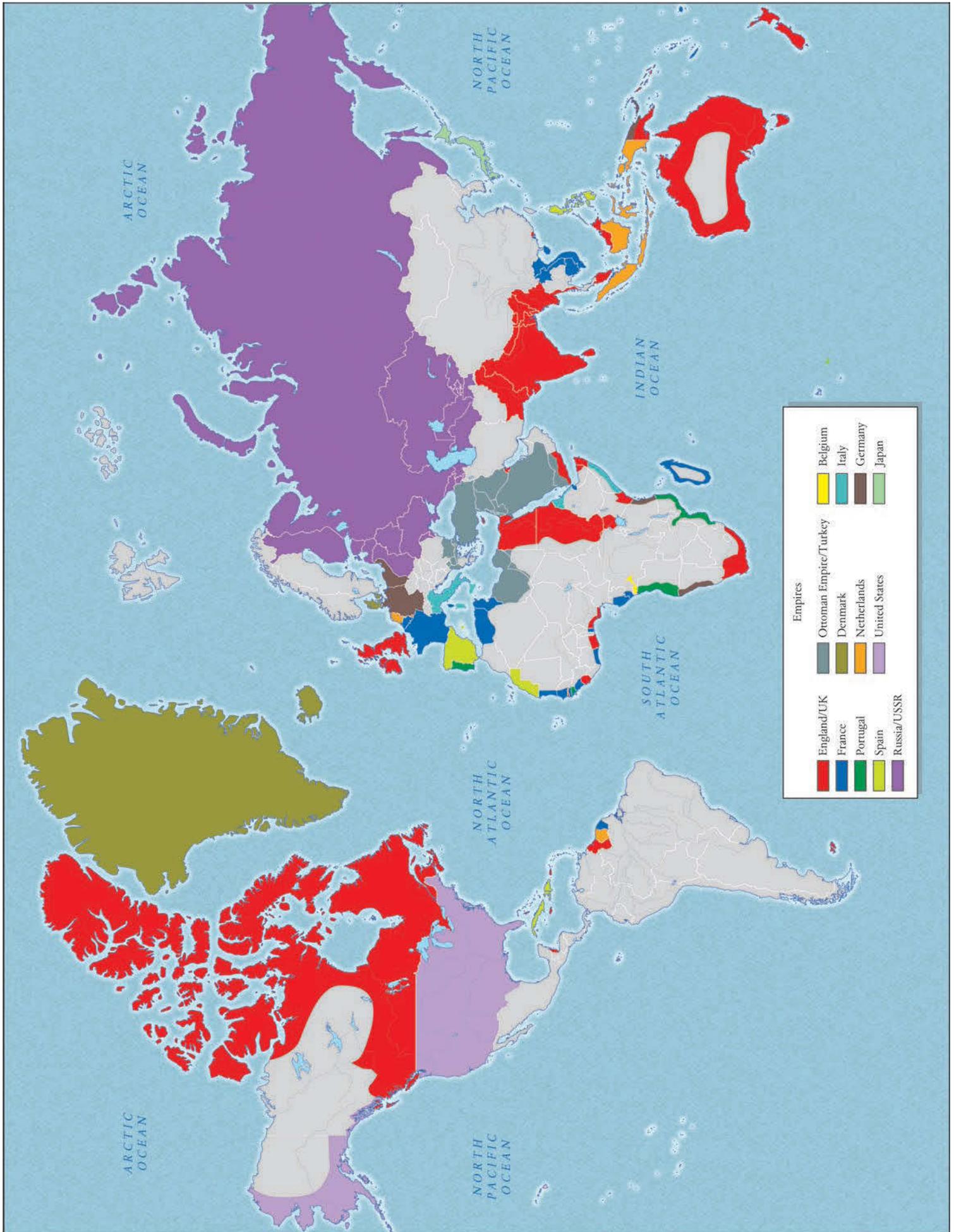
This helped to devastate the cultures and economies of indigenous peoples in the New World. The migrants created multicultural societies around the world.

Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS	WORLD EVENTS
<p>1700</p> <p>c. 1770 Ottobah Cugoano is transported to England</p> <p>1788 Britain begins to colonise Australia</p>	<p>1775–83 American Revolution</p> <p>1789–92 French Revolution</p> <p>1791–1804 Haitian Revolution</p>
<p>1800</p> <p>1800 Mary Prince is sold at auction</p> <p>1804 Haiti becomes first black-led republic in the world</p> <p>1807 Slave trade is abolished in the British Empire</p> <p>1833 Slavery is abolished across the British Empire</p> <p>1834 First Indians are indentured for overseas labour</p> <p>1836 <i>Africaine</i> brings free settlers to South Australia</p> <p>1846 The Irish Potato Famine begins</p>	<p>1814–15 Napoleon Bonaparte is defeated</p> <p>1839–42 First Opium War between Britain and China</p>
<p>1850</p> <p>1850s Highland crofters like the Mackay family come to Australia</p> <p>1863 Kidnapping of South Sea Islanders to work in Queensland begins</p> <p>1865 Slavery is abolished in the United States</p> <p>1882 <i>Chinese Exclusion Act</i> is passed in the United States</p>	<p>1850–64 Taiping Rebellion in China</p> <p>1850s Gold rushes begin in the United States and Australia</p> <p>1854 Eureka Stockade in Australia</p> <p>1861–65 US Civil War</p> <p>1894 Women gain the vote in South Australia</p>
<p>1900</p> <p>1880–1910 Southern and eastern Europeans begin mass migration to the United States</p> <p>1917 Indentured labour is abolished across the British Empire</p>	<p>1901 Australian states are joined in a federation</p> <p>1901 The <i>Immigration Restriction Act</i> is passed in Australia</p> <p>1914–18 World War I</p>

DEPTH STUDY 1 MAKING A BETTER WORLD





Source 12.1 The territories of nineteenth-century imperial powers

12.1 Influence of the Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution saw Europe grow in wealth and power relative to the rest of the world.

The European population grew rapidly at this time and with industrialisation generated a demand for raw materials such as cotton, and for food such as sugar and grains. These were produced in the Americas, often with slave labour, and also in Australia and New Zealand. Metals, such as copper from Chile and Australia, were imported to Europe for industrial use.

The Atlantic slave economy, which grew from the sixteenth century, helped to create the wealth that enabled Britain to become the first industrial nation. The demand for cotton to make clothing stimulated production. United States cotton production grew from 1.5 million pounds weight in 1790 to 35 million pounds in 1800, and then 160 million pounds in 1820.

This brought new areas such as Alabama, Mississippi and Texas into production and saw more Native Americans lose their lands.

capitalist a business person who seeks profit by using others' labour

indentured labour a system in which workers enter contracts to perform labour at reduced wages for a certain period of time, usually at a place far from their home

After the abolition of slavery, **capitalists** looked elsewhere for cheap labour and the system of **indentured labour** was expanded.

More land was also used for food production.

Between 1860 and 1920, more than 1 billion acres of new land in the United States, Canada, Australia and Argentina was brought into agricultural use. This deprived indigenous peoples of the use of the land, damaging their

cultures and causing large numbers of deaths. In the new settler societies growing in Australia, Canada, Argentina and the United States, there were great opportunities for Europeans – especially the poor – to migrate and to make a better life for themselves and their descendants. Between 1850 and 1914, net migration from Europe amounted to 50 million people; half of them went to the United States, which by the later nineteenth century was becoming an industrial giant.

European exports of cotton goods, guns, metal goods and other items grew and flowed to Africa, Australia and the Americas. The export of cotton goods was important for both the buying of slaves in Africa and for the clothing of enslaved Africans toiling in plantations in Cuba, Brazil, the Caribbean and the United States.

imperialism the domination of one or more nations by another, which seeks to use the wealth and people of the dominated nation for its own interests

European **imperialism** brought great areas of the globe under European political control. The demand for cheap raw materials for industry – such as copper, cotton, rubber, palm oil,

cocoa, diamonds, tea and tin – saw great areas of Africa grabbed by European powers in a late-nineteenth-century colonial scramble. These colonies also became markets for European manufactured goods, which resulted in the extinction of local goods production. By 1900, 80% of the world was under direct European control or the control of people of European backgrounds, such as in Australia and the United States.

As European wealth and political power grew, Europeans began to believe that they were unique or special. They developed ideas that Europeans, and especially northern Europeans, were superior to peoples from other parts of the world. European thinkers worked out a table of the value of humanity, which placed Europeans at the top and indigenous peoples in their colonies at the bottom. Indigenous peoples' inability to withstand the force of the modern European weapons was seen as a sign of their inferiority. By the end of the century, it was seen as the destiny and the right of white men and white women to dominate the world. This way of thinking was useful to Europeans as it justified their subjection of African and Asian peoples in European colonies and the devastation of indigenous peoples.

Historical thought

In 1700, the average annual British sugar consumption was 1.8 kilograms. This grew to 8 kilograms in 1800, 16 kilograms in 1850 and over 45 kilograms in 1900.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.1

Examine the map of the world (Source 12.1) and identify the places discussed in this chapter from which migrants departed – for example, West Africa, India, South Sea Islands (Melanesia), Europe and China. Also identify the places to which migrants went – for example, North America, South America, the Caribbean, Fiji, Malaya, Natal (South Africa), East Africa, Sri Lanka, Europe, Australia and New Zealand.

12.2 Era of mass migration

Types of migration

diaspora the forced or voluntary movement of people from their homeland to new regions

The period 1750–1901 was one of great **diasporas**, as people moved across the globe.

Enslaved people were taken from Africa to the Americas, North and South, and the Caribbean islands.

Millions of Indians migrated as indentured labourers, agreeing to work with the right of return and freedom after some years. Many were free settlers who chose when and where to migrate and could travel in relative comfort. But many seen as free settlers had no real choice and left lives of poverty and hardship, political oppression or religious persecution for the hope of a better life. On arrival, many had to repay all or part of their fares from their earnings before they could start to build new lives.

The Atlantic slave trade

The Atlantic slave trade saw millions of Africans enslaved and shipped to a life of servitude in North and South America (the Americas). It began in the sixteenth century and continued until the mid-nineteenth century. In the eighteenth century about 6 million Africans were enslaved, along with another 4 million during the nineteenth century. The trade was part of a triangle of capitalist shipping around the Atlantic. Manufactured goods such as guns and textiles were shipped to the west

coast of Africa and traded for slaves. The slaves were loaded into ships and sent across the Atlantic to provide labour for plantations in the Caribbean and the Americas. These plantations produced sugar, cotton, tobacco, rice, indigo and coffee. In turn these raw materials, particularly cotton and sugar, were taken to Western Europe for refining, manufacture and consumption, and then sent on via the trade triangle to Africa.

Capture

Slavery was long established in Africa. Slaves were commonly taken to Arab countries, and from the mid-fifteenth century to Portugal and other parts of Europe. But the huge demand for labour in the Americas in the eighteenth century intensified African slavery and changed it to a harsher and more brutal system. Africans were captured by other Africans, chained and forced to walk many kilometres to the coast, where they were branded with hot irons and imprisoned in forts before leaving for America. Many died after capture and in the forts. Strong and healthy young people were valuable to the slavers as they could have a long working life ahead of them.

The Middle Passage

Slaves were crowded onto slave ships where they were chained and made to lie on their backs.



Source 12.2 The triangular trade

The trip across the Atlantic Ocean was long and dangerous. Conditions were often filthy and when disease spread among the slaves, the living could stay

chained to the dead for days on end.

mortality rate the measure of total deaths in relation to a total population

There was a high **mortality rate** on these voyages and the sick could be thrown overboard to stop the disease spreading among the other

slaves. Those who survived this horrific journey were then prepared for sale. They were washed and shaved and sometimes oil was put on their skin to make them appear healthy.

Some treated the slaves better, but only to attract a higher price for them at sale.

Oludah Equiano was born in 1745 in a village in what is now Nigeria. At 11 years of age he was captured and sold into slavery, ending up on the Caribbean island of Barbados. He managed to buy his own freedom when he was aged about 21 years and then worked as a writer, **merchant** and explorer in the Caribbean, South

merchant a person who buys and sells goods

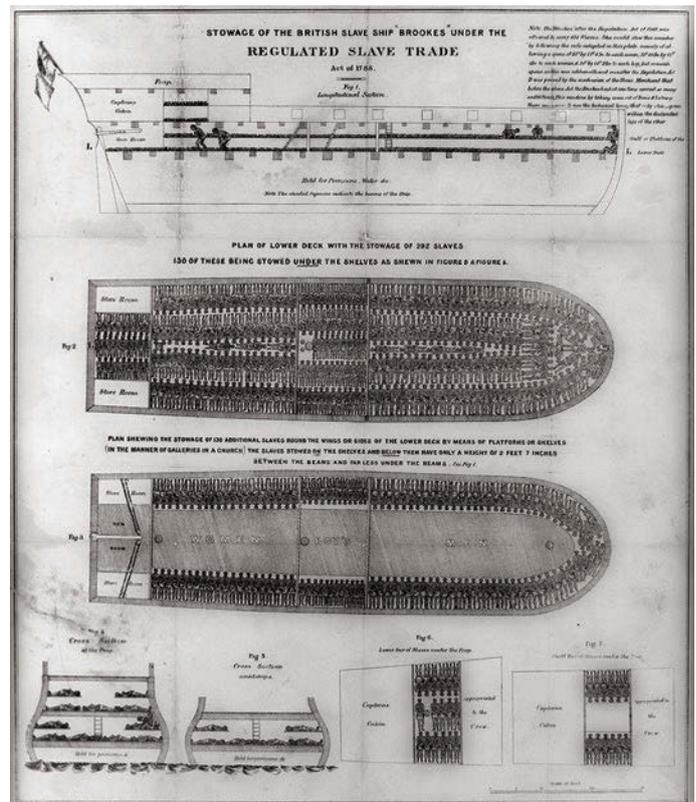
America, the Arctic, the American colonies and in Great Britain. In Britain he was a popular speaker about the evils of slavery. His autobiography *The*

Interesting Narrative of the Life of Oludah Equiano, of Gustavus Vassa, the African (1789) was important in converting people to the antislavery movement. In later life he worked for the good of African people.

Equiano recalled that when he arrived in the West Indies, 'many merchants and planters came on board



Source 12.3 Portrait of Oludah Equiano



Source 12.4 Slaves tightly crowded in a late-eighteenth-century slave ship

and examined us. We were then taken to the merchant's yard, where we were all pent up together like sheep in a fold. On a signal the buyers rushed forward and chose those slaves they liked best'.

Working lives

Sugar plantations needed lots of labourers to do heavy manual work: clearing the forests, planting, harvesting cane and processing the sugar. Field labourers had the hardest jobs and could work 18 hours a day, 6 days a week in the fields, watched by the slave driver. Children and pregnant women worked at **hoeing**, weeding and carrying water. In Brazil they were on the coffee plantations, while in Peru slaves worked as miners. House slaves lived in the master's or mistress' house and were on duty all day and night; they would cook, clean and look after children.

hoeing using a long-handled tool to dig the earth

Chattel slaves

Slaves had no rights; they had become things or **chattels** owned by others. They could not even keep their family with them. They and their children could be sold or given away. Mary Prince was born into

chattel a movable property or slave

an enslaved family in Bermuda in about 1788. When she was aged 12, she and her sisters were sold.

The sale master:

took me by the hand, and led me out into the middle of the street, and, turning me slowly round, exposed me to the view of those who attended the sale. I was soon surrounded by strange men, who examined and handled me in the same manner that a butcher would a calf or a lamb he was about to purchase. The bidding started at a few pounds, and gradually rose to 57.

The people who stood by said that I had fetched a great sum for so young a slave. I then saw my sisters led forth, and sold to different owners.

When the sale was over, my mother hugged and kissed us, and mourned over us, begging us to keep a good heart. It was a sad parting; one went one way, one another.

Punishment

Her new owner made Mary Prince work in the house and the fields, and she was often flogged: 'To strip me naked – to hang me up by the wrists and lay my flesh open with the cow-skin, was an ordinary punishment for even a slight offence.' Slave owners severely punished any slaves who were disobedient, careless or tried to escape.

Those suspected of plotting a revolt were treated brutally. This is how the slave owners kept control.

Abolition of slavery

colony a settlement formed in a conquered territory

Slaves had always resisted their condition and had revolted against their owners from time to time. In 1804, slaves in the French **colony** of

Saint Dominigue rebelled and set up the republic of Haiti, the first black republic in the world. The Haitian

rebellion stands out in history because it achieved permanent independence for its enslaved peoples. In Britain and the United States, former slaves wrote and spoke about their experiences. These included Mary Prince, Ottobah Cugoano and Olaudah Equiano. Their publications and their activism in anti-slavery organisations, such as the Sons of Africa, were important in changing public opinion.

In the United States, Harriet Beecher Stowe's best-selling novel, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, published in 1852, was an important tool for the abolitionists.

Antislavery activists campaigned against the sugar that slave owners sold. James Wright, an English **Quaker**, announced in 1791 that he would sell no sugar grown by slaves.

Quakers, Unitarians and some other Christians argued that slavery was immoral.

William Wilberforce told the British parliament in 1789 that they were all responsible for slavery: 'I mean to take the shame upon myself, in common indeed with the whole Parliament of Great Britain, for having suffered this horrid trade to be carried on under their authority. We are all guilty – we ought all to plead guilty.' Women formed anti-slavery societies, putting anti-slavery slogans on their handbags and mottos on their sugar bowls such as 'sugar not made by slaves'. This led to **boycotts** of slave-grown sugar.

Although many Europeans and Americans profited from slavery, gradually public opinion turned against slavery. Industry and changes in the economy were most important. Slavery was seen as no longer profitable; free and more mobile labour was required. The British government abolished the slave trade in 1807, but slavery itself was only abolished in the British Empire in 1833. Other powers like France (1818), the Ottoman Empire (1847) and the United States (1865) abolished slavery at various dates.

Quaker a member of a Christian group, the Society of Friends, often involved in humanitarian campaigns and opposed to war

boycott the refusal to buy goods, usually for political reasons

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.2

- 1 Construct a list of the dangers the slaves had survived by the time they arrived in the Americas.
- 2 Both Olaudah Equiano and Mary Prince describe being sold. Compare and contrast their accounts.
- 3 Write an account from the point of view of either Olaudah or Mary.

Costs and benefits

Slavery debased all involved: those who were sold and brutalised, and those who owned the slaves and whipped them. Africa lost millions of young and strong people over the centuries. This affected the economic growth and development of the continent and the standards of living of the African peoples. African slavers also benefited from selling slaves.

The New World of the Americas benefited greatly from the supply of free labour. The slaves cleared forests and jungles, developed agriculture and worked to process raw materials in sugar mills, tobacco mills and cotton factories. These were particularly fruitful crops in the southern United States, but required back-breaking work, which allowed the slave trade to thrive. The clearing of the land helped to destroy the way of life of Native Americans.

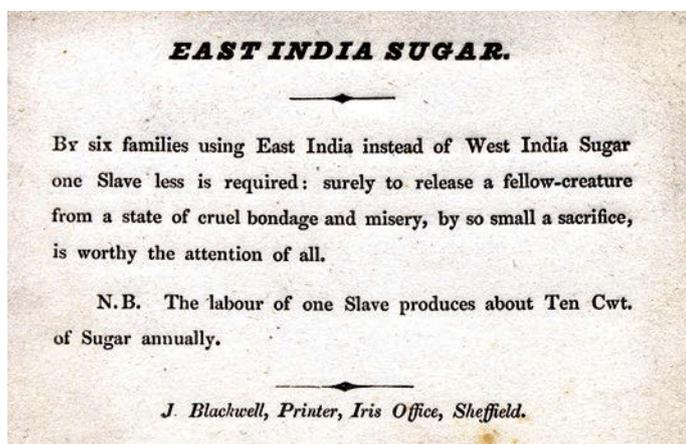
In Britain and Europe, factory owners acquired a good supply of raw materials and bankers' profits grew as they financed the building of new ships and factories. Ship-owners could make a profit of 20–50% on supplying and selling slaves, and ports such as Bristol, Liverpool and Lisbon prospered on the slave trade. Ordinary people could afford to buy sugar and cheap cotton clothing.

The 200th anniversary of the abolition of the British slave trade in 1807 was celebrated in 2007, and prompted historians to research the economic benefits of centuries of slave labour to countries like Britain and the United States. They are coming to understand how it

has contributed to the dominance and power of Western countries.

To remember the slaves' suffering, some people have organised pilgrimages and processions.

pilgrimage a journey to a place of particular religious, personal or political significance



Source 12.5 A copy of an historical anti-slavery advertisement, issued 1825–33

Queensland slave trade

Even though slavery was abolished in the British Empire in the 1830s, people were still being captured and enslaved. In the early 1860s, Polynesians in the eastern and central Pacific were captured and taken to Peru to work in the guano mines. During the 1860s, there was a demand for cheap labour for plantations in the colonies of Fiji and Queensland. Ship captains could profit from capturing South Sea Islanders, especially young men, and taking them to Fiji and Queensland to sell them to sugar planters. Their ships operated in Melanesian waters, around the New Hebrides and Solomon Islands. This was termed 'blackbirding'.

From 1863 to 1875, about 10 500 islanders were kidnapped and taken to work in Queensland.

How were islanders kidnapped?

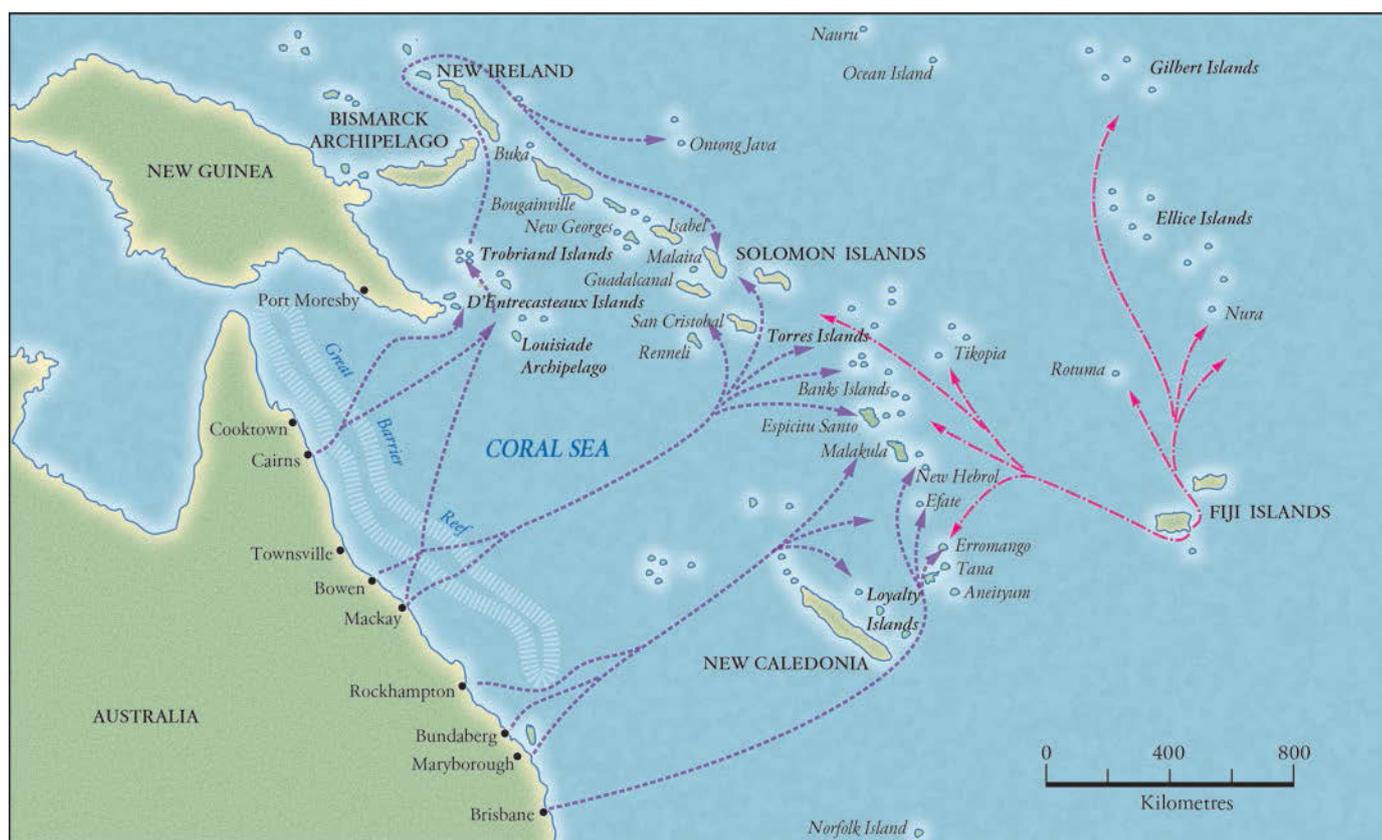
The 'blackbirders' used force and trickery to get the islanders on board their ships. Islanders were often curious about the ships that appeared off the coast, and paddled canoes out to see the ship and to sell fruit and fresh fish. European sailors would smash or sink their canoes and take the islanders on board, or they might entice them with beads and axes. Sometimes sailors would show islanders over their ship and, once they were in the hold, lock them in. Where people had been visited by missionaries, they were sometimes tricked to come out to the ship with news that there was a bishop on board. Raiding parties would go ashore and take people from the beaches or near their villages. When people tried to defend themselves and escape, the superior firepower of guns usually won out. On a few occasions, when ships came later on, some islanders tricked the recruiters by enticing them away from the shore and then attacking them with guns. In 1883, Captain Belbin of the *Borough Belle* was murdered on Ambrym (today part of Vanuatu) by islanders angry about the kidnapping of a young boy.

Dangers of the voyage

Once imprisoned in the hold, the terrified islanders had no idea where they were going. It was 1600 kilometres to Queensland. They could not speak the English of their captors nor the languages of captives from other islands. The food on board was strange and the drinking water might be foul.

Some captives were injured and others became sick. The dead were just thrown over the side.

The recruiters were greedy and brutal. In 1871, James Patrick Murray, a Victorian doctor and owner of the brig *Carl*, and the ship's Captain Armstrong captured people from different islands.



Source 12.6 Slave recruiters' routes in the Pacific Ocean, including ports in Queensland

When these men began to fight and tried to set the boat on fire, Murray fired into the hold, killing 60 islanders and injuring others. The dead and wounded were thrown overboard. When news of this voyage became widely known, Captain Armstrong and some crew were put on trial.

Armstrong was sentenced to death, which was decreased to penal servitude for life. Murray escaped prosecution by presenting as a witness against his own employees.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.3

- 1 List the ways in which the islanders were captured.
- 2 Discuss why slavers wanted to recruit young people.
- 3 Recall what sentence Captain Armstrong received for killing and injuring islanders.

Arriving in Queensland

In Queensland, the islanders were sold to planters and forced to work long hours in the cane fields.

They had to learn English and get used to different foods. Those who worked for **pastoralists** inland struggled to cope with the different climate, especially the cold nights.

pastoralist a person who runs sheep and cattle on large landholdings

They had no way of contacting their families and had to try to survive in an alien place.

Being indentured

From the mid-1870s, the Queensland slave trade of Pacific Islanders was replaced by a more regulated system of indenture, where islanders agreed to work in Australia for a fixed period of time. Many people

argued that it continued some of the worst features of slavery. Some Queenslanders, whose grandparents were indentured, have stories of their capture that are stories of kidnapping. Between 1859 and 1900, more than 100 000 Pacific Islanders were recruited. Most (62 500) went to Queensland, and others went throughout the Pacific Ocean to Fiji, New Caledonia, Tahiti, Samoa and Hawaii, while about 5000 went to Peru and Guatemala in South America. Unlike slaves, indentured workers were free once their period of indenture had ended and their children were born free. Indentured workers were supposed to be able to return to their homes at the end of their contract.

Transportation of convicts to Australia

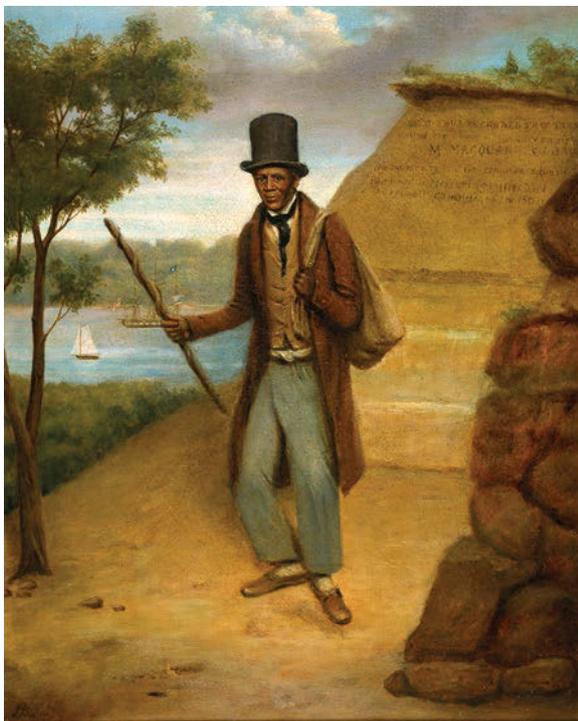
In 1788, the British established the colony of New South Wales at Botany Bay. This was a convict or penal settlement and the 759 convicts and their jailers were the first non-Indigenous settlers of the southern continent. In all, 162 000 convicts were sent to Australia by the British government between 1788 and 1868. Prisons in England were overpopulated and those not belonging

to the middle or upper classes were often unable to survive due to a lack of employment opportunities that arose out of the Industrial Revolution. Only 15% of the convicts were women. In 1804, convicts were sent to Van Diemen's Land (now Tasmania) and later to Victoria, Queensland and Western Australia.

The convict system was the basis of British colonisation of Australia and changed the lives of Australian Indigenous peoples. Transportation halfway around the world also had a great impact upon the lives of the individual convicts. For some it led to a life of misery, and even resulted in death, and for others it led to a more comfortable and happy life than they could have had in Britain.

The settlement led to the taking of Indigenous land. With the convicts, soldiers and settlers came diseases to which Indigenous people had no defence – including typhoid, influenza and smallpox – and which caused many deaths. Many other Indigenous people were killed in brutal clashes with the military, convicts and explorers.

The next hundred years saw Indigenous peoples thrust out of their country, driven out of habitable land, and shot, poisoned and massacred as British settlers claimed land for building, agriculture, grazing and mining.



Source 12.7 Billy Blue (c. 1738–1834) was a freeborn African-American who served in the British navy from the 1850s in Quebec, in Europe and in the American War of Independence. Later convicted of theft in Britain, he was transported to New South Wales in 1801. Freed in 1803, he ran a ferry service across Sydney Harbour, where Blues Point is named after him.

Who were the convicts?

Most convicts were from England and Wales, with about a quarter from Ireland. Many of the convicts were young urban people who were convicted of theft and were sentenced to 7 or 14 years' transportation to Botany Bay. For stealing a coat, you had to leave home and your family, perhaps forever. Before going to Australia, prisoners were kept on old ships, or hulks. There, some made a keepsake or love token for those they were leaving behind. On a coin, one person engraved the message, 'Dear Wife When you this see remember mee [sic] When I am far away from the[e] John 1836'.

Not all the convicts were English, Welsh or Irish. Around 800 convicts were of African or Indian descent. Australia's first bushranger, Black Caesar (1764–96), was probably born a slave in the American colonies, leaving with the British forces that freed him. But he was sentenced in Kent in 1786 and arrived in New South Wales with the First Fleet on the convict ship *Alexander* in January 1788.

Convict ships

Convicts made the long journey to Australia confined for up to 159 days in small ships such as the *Surry*, which was only 36 metres long and 9 metres wide. The

voyage was a strange experience for convicts who had not been at sea before. Most were angry and sad at leaving family and home, but a few were happy to join relatives or sweethearts already transported.

Convicts were usually allowed on deck for short periods. However, the conditions on the Second Fleet, which arrived in 1790, were terrible. The ships were damp and disease raged among the prisoners, who were confined below decks. Many were not given enough food, and 247 men and 11 women died before the ships finally arrived at Sydney. Most of the remaining passengers were very sick on arrival.

Government regulations required that prisoners should be fed adequately and allowed to exercise on the deck, and that they and the ship should be cleaned and fumigated regularly. Where officers were negligent and careless, standards were inferior. Ships stopped for more provisions at Rio de Janeiro or the Cape of Good Hope. The sight of land must have been welcome, but prisoners were not allowed ashore.

After 1815, naval surgeons were appointed to each ship, and on well-organised ships conditions were better. Naval surgeons refused to take sick, frail and elderly prisoners who could not stand the rigours of the trip. Surgeons' pay and return passage were dependent on the delivery of healthy convicts. Prisoners were divided into groups to receive rations and do their own cooking. Many prisoners ate better and more regularly than before their imprisonment. The weekly rations for the women prisoners on the *Princess Royal* in 1829 included beef, pork or plum pudding for dinner each day, pea soup several times, a pot of gruel with butter and sugar for breakfast, 350 grams of biscuit each day, and tea and sugar. Lime juice and red wine were given to combat scurvy.

These women were allowed on deck from time to time.

Discipline was strict and harsh on all convict ships. Where mutiny was threatened or prisoners were disobedient, they could be chained and flogged. Where male and female convicts were transported on the same ship, many formed sexual relationships and women could arrive pregnant in the colony. After 1829, male and female prisoners sailed on separate ships.

Sometimes female prisoners formed relationships with sailors. Often there was no protection for female prisoners from sailors who forced their attention on them. Some women convicts formed relationships with sailors because they could provide them with rum or extra provisions.

Sometimes they had families with these sailors when they settled in the colonies.

Work and punishment in the colonies

Convict labour was used to establish colonies in Australia. Shortly after arrival they would be assigned to an employer. They might work on a farm under the orders of the farmer and receive food, clothing and accommodation. They also worked for the government – for example, making bricks and building roads and harbours. Women might do farm work or house work. If they failed to follow orders or stole, they might receive further punishment. Women could be punished by having their heads shaved. Sometimes women were flogged. In 1791, Lieutenant Ralph Clark ordered Catherine White and Mary Higgins to be flogged 50 times. After 15 strokes, Catherine fainted and the doctor said she should have no more. Mary Higgins was flogged 26 times, but Clark excused her from the rest because she was an old woman.

Women who committed a crime also could be sent to the Female Factory in Parramatta, which was like a prison. Convict women were also sent there to have their babies. On arrival, women were often sent directly to the Female Factory where they worked all day and lived communally at night in sparse surroundings. Later, they might be employed as domestics and taken from the factory to live as a mistress or even marry and raise a family with a settler. There was no sentence to serve; instead they were taken as needed to work by the male population.

Male convicts could receive severe floggings.

Alexander Harris witnessed this at Bathurst Court House in the 1820s: 'I had to go past the triangles, where they had been flogging incessantly for hours. The scourger's foot had worn a deep hole in the ground by the violence with which he whirled himself round on it to strike the quivering and wealed back, out of which stuck the sinews, white, ragged and swollen ... I know of several poor creatures who had been entirely crippled for life by these merciless floggings.' Indigenous people were disgusted at the intracultural violence, which could be described as savage, barbaric and primitive.

Secondary punishment

Male convicts who re-offended could be sent to a place of secondary punishment such as Norfolk Island, Newcastle, Macquarie Harbour or Moreton Bay. One of the worst places was at Macquarie Harbour in south-west Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania), where the narrow entrance to the harbour was known as 'Hell's Gates'. The punishments were severe and a cat-o'-nine-tails (see Source 12.8) was used to flog the prisoners.



Source 12.8 The cat-o'-nine-tails, a whip of nine plaited cords, was used to flog convicts.

Historical thought

One of the most frequently flogged prisoners was Thomas Brookes, a convict at Port Jackson, Newcastle and Moreton Bay. He received eight separate whippings – a total of 1025 strokes – upon his body. He said, 'They were not comfortable to take'.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.4

- 1 Explain what happened to prisoners when mutiny was threatened or prisoners were disobedient on convict ships.
- 2 Recall another form of punishment for women besides being flogged.
- 3 On a map of Australia, mark the places where convicts were sent and the places of secondary punishment.

Convict records

muster gathering together a group of people to check their identity against a list or roll

Most convicts were not locked up but rather lived and worked in the colonies for private employers or for the government. From time to time a convict **muster** was held in order to find out where they all were. All

this information was written down in large books. The authorities kept very good records about the convicts, including details of height, colouring and distinctive scars and tattoos.

Recently historians have used these detailed records to find out more about the convicts. We now know that the women convicts had many useful skills as general servants, cooks, launderers, kitchen hands, needle workers and house maids.

These skills were valuable in the new colony.

Almost one-third of these women could read and write, and many who could not write could read. Until the 1970s, many Australians were embarrassed about having convict ancestors, but now people are more eager to find out about their forebears through these records.

Babette Smith was able to find out about the experiences of her ancestor, Susannah Watson.

Experiences included marriage, losing a child, and being arrested for shoplifting.

Smith also found letters Susannah sent back to England. She wrote to her daughter Mary Ann in 1868, when she had been almost 40 years in Australia (see Source 12.9).

My dear and affectionate daughter, I received your ever welcome and affectionate letter and indeed I cannot tell you how glad I was to hear from one of my dear children so many thousands of miles away from me. Dear Daughter, you cannot tell what happiness it gave me to receive your likeness. To think that I should live to gaze upon that dear face again, although so altered since I parted from you all.

Source 12.9 In B. Smith, *A Cargo of Women*, UNSW Press, 1988, pp. 155–6

A tattoo was a way in which convicts could remember their loved ones in Britain. Eleanor Swift had a tattoo: 'Patrick Flinn I love to the heart.' Signs had particular meaning; for example, an anchor signified hope and

constancy. But such personal statements could also be used to identify runaway convicts. It was difficult for convicts to escape, as each penal colony was virtually a prison, but some tried to escape by crossing the Blue Mountains, or stealing a boat and sailing to Java.

Others stowed away on ships leaving for Kolkata or went and lived among Indigenous people.

There are accounts of positive interactions between convicts and Indigenous people, including escaped convicts living within or being helped by Indigenous communities. An example of this is the story of William Buckley, who met with a group of Wathaurung women several months after his escape. He was given the name Murrangurk, which literally meant 'returned from the dead'.

Emancipists

When convicts finished their sentence, some people still saw them as disgraced. But Lachlan Macquarie, Governor of New South Wales in 1810–1821, believed

emancipist a convict who served their term of imprisonment and became a free member of colonial society

these **emancipists** should be socially accepted. He said: 'Some of the Most Meritorious Men of the few to be found, and who were Most Capable and Most willing to Exert themselves in the Public Service, were Men who had been Convicts!'

Many became more prosperous than they ever could have dreamed when they left Britain in chains. Simeon Lord, transported for 7 years for theft, became a wealthy merchant, international trader and a pastoralist. He became a magistrate and regularly dined at Government House. Mary Reibey was transported for stealing a horse when she was only 13 years old. She became a wealthy businesswoman.

Indentured labour – a new form of slavery?

With the abolition of slavery in the British Empire in 1833, planters of sugar and other tropical crops were eager to get access to more cheap labour to toil on their great estates. Pressured by these planters, the British government devised a system of indentured labour to send Indians to work abroad. Under this system, the worker would sign on for 5 or 10 years to work for a low wage, after which the worker would be able to return home.

Many anti-slavery activists saw this system as just a perpetuation of slavery, especially as workers were often tricked into signing up and could be badly treated by their employers. Between 1834 and 1920, more than 1 million Indians were sent across the globe as workers.

They helped develop the sugar and other industries and contributed to British wealth. Those who never returned to India helped to create new cultures in various corners of the world.

Where did they go?

Almost 150 000 Indian workers were sent to Mauritius between 1834 and 1854. From 1844, Indians were taking the long journey of 20 weeks via the Cape of Good Hope and St Helena to Jamaica and other parts of the West Indies. In Natal, South Africa, the system of indentured labour began in 1860. Late in the nineteenth century, workers were being dispatched to Kenya in East Africa to build the Ugandan Railway.

They also went to German, Dutch and French colonies. This scheme went on for years and the last indentured labourers were sent to the West Indies in 1916.

Who were they?

The labourers, known then as **coolies**, were young, active and able-bodied people accustomed to performing hard labour.

Indians from all communities – Hindus, Muslims and Christians from high and low castes – were recruited.

coolie an insulting term for Indian and Chinese indentured workers in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries

Did these people have any choice about going?

Indentured labourers were from overcrowded agricultural districts beset by famine. Sometimes convicts and prostitutes were forcibly sent overseas by the authorities. Gullible and illiterate peasants were easily tricked by clever recruiting agents. Parts of India were hit by famine and many poor people agreed to do a job, but had no idea about where they were going or how long the voyage would take. They did not realise they would be away for 5 or 10 years.

Widows and abandoned wives were recruited and women were often kidnapped. Sometimes, however, recruits were happy to leave behind friction and trouble at home. In the novel *Sea of Poppies*, Amitav Ghosh describes the escape of Deeti, a widow. She was rescued from her husband's funeral pyre, and joined the **girmits** going to Mauritius.

Bhagvana, a member of the low-caste 'untouchables', was very poor and his landlord would beat him every day. Due to her low status his mother was not able to go into the village temple. She cried, as she wanted to see the statue of Lord Ram, so Bhagvana took her inside. He

girmits a term for an Indian indentured labourer; derived from the word 'agreement'

was beaten by high caste villagers for offending them. He feared more beatings, ran away and registered to go to Fiji.

A regulated system?

The indentured labour system was more regulated than the slave trade.

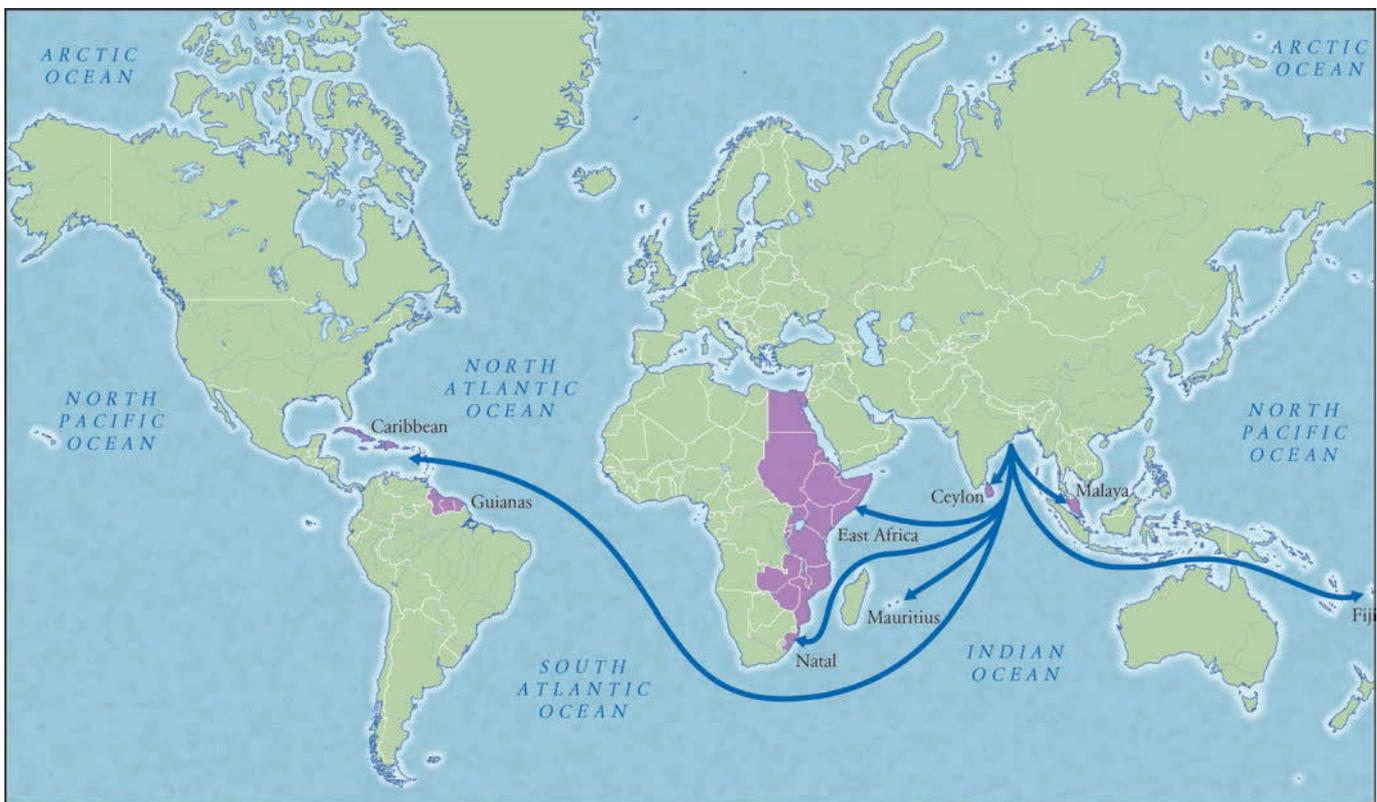
embarkation going on board a ship or plane

The labourers had to testify before a magistrate that they understood the contract, and their health was checked before **embarkation**.

However, this system was frequently abused.

One recruit was told that if he did not say ‘yes’ to everything the magistrate asked, he would be put in jail. Little care was taken and this magistrate registered 165 people in only 20 minutes.

At each Indian port there was a Protector of Emigrants, who was to ensure that the ship was seaworthy and well fitted out. The workers were supposed to be supplied with all their dietary needs, including rice, dhal and chillies, as well as the medicines they might need on their long voyage. These regulations were designed to protect the emigrants, but could be evaded.



Source 12.10 Major destinations of Indian indentured labourers

The voyage

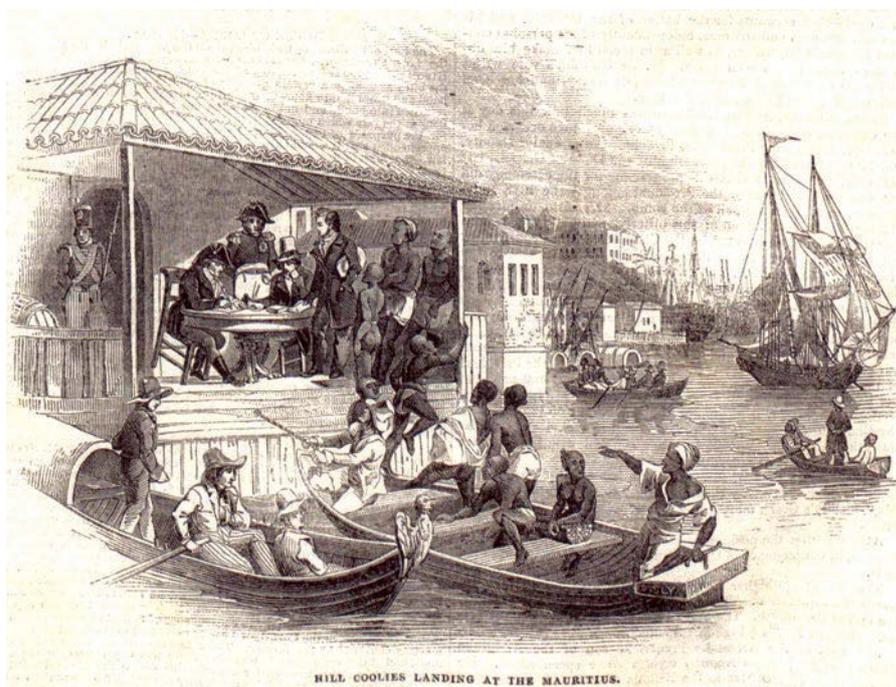
The labourers had to endure very long voyages.

Sailing ships were still used to transport these recruits until early in the twentieth century. The West Indies trip could extend to 27 weeks. From Kolkata to Natal took 12 weeks, and it was 10 weeks to Mauritius. Workers had to endure crowded conditions and unfamiliar food. Even trivial acts of disobedience were punished by confinement. Still, they did have more freedom than the slaves who had been chained below decks. They could amuse themselves by playing drums, and sometimes they could watch singing and dancing concerts or wrestling displays. But the ships

could be dangerous, and disease could spread quickly. In 1856–57, the average death rate for Indians travelling to the Caribbean was 17%. The *Salsette*, for example, left Kolkata in 1858 with 323 recruits, but 124 died en route and 13 were sent to hospital on arrival. Many died from diarrhoea, dysentery, cholera, measles and the adverse conditions of the voyage. Later a doctor was required to accompany each ship.

On arrival, workers were placed under the control of colonial officials and remained for about 1 week in the local **depot** before being sent to their new employer.

depot a station for assembling recruits



Source 12.11 Indians arrive at immigrant steps, St Louis, Mauritius in 1842.

Abolition of the indenture system

Totaram Sanadhya was born in India in 1876. When he was a year old, his father died and his father's assets were taken over by dishonest money lenders. When he was 17, he left home to look for work and met a man in a local market who told him about an easy, well-paid job. He was taken to Fiji.

Totaram worked as a bonded labourer in Fiji for 5 years, and was not afraid to uphold his rights. After finishing his indenture, he set himself up as a farmer and Hindu priest. He spent a lot of time helping others who were still indentured. He also campaigned to get Indian teachers and lawyers to migrate to Fiji, so they could also help the Indian workers, and enlisted help from Indian freedom fighters and missionaries. He returned to India in 1914 and wrote a book, *My Twenty-one Years in the Fiji islands*, about his experiences.

Totaram's story was very important in informing Indian people about the lives of indentured workers. Early in the twentieth century, Indian people protested against the inhumanity of the system. They formed organisations to oppose this in India and also in places like Natal. They informed possible recruits, saying things like, 'They take you overseas', 'They are not colonies but jails' and 'It is not service but deception'. In Natal, Gandhi organised one of his first campaigns around this issue and worked with GK Gokhale, the political reformer in India.

Totaram Sanadhya in Fiji also supported this work.

Gandhi sent Charles Freer Andrews to investigate conditions in Fiji. In 1917, indentured labour was abolished across the British Empire.

Fiji Indians today

The British government and the colonial planters in Fiji imported Indian labourers and used them to build their wealth. Descendants of Indians who remained there were well educated and prosperous in business. When Fiji became independent in 1970, 52% of the population were Fiji Indians.

Some indigenous Fijians feel they are on the margins of their country and resent the success and the authority of Fiji Indians. Life in Fiji has become very difficult for Fiji Indians, with military coups in 1987 and in 2000 against democratically elected governments led by Fiji Indians. These coups were supported by some indigenous Fijians. Now the descendants of the girmits see no future for themselves in Fiji. Many have left, with about 50 000 resettling in Australia. They see themselves as 'twice banished'.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.5

- 1 Identify who campaigned against the indenture system.
- 2 Discuss why some Fijian Indians see themselves as 'twice banished'.

Free settlers

White settlers to Australia

Free settlers coming to Australia travelled in much better circumstances than did the convicts. Janet Snodgrass travelled to Australia from Glasgow in 1886 on the *Loch Long*. She travelled with her five young children to join her husband who was building a home for them. They hoped to improve their lives in Australia.

As the long voyage began, she and all her children were seasick and vomiting. Her little son Matt 'got very cross and wanted me to stop the ship, and not let it go on that way'. Such middleclass passengers were well looked after, as Janet experienced when the steward made a plum pudding for her son Alan's birthday. She passed her days talking to other passengers. Religious services were held on deck and passengers also enjoyed concerts and other entertainment. As they crossed the Equator, her sons Matt and Hugh had great fun with King Neptune; they 'were both shaved, then they have to swallow a big pill and are pitched head first into a big sail filled with water, and ducked three times'. On arrival, her husband met her and the family went out to his farm at Colac in Victoria, where they were building 'a nice little weatherboard house'. With the steward looking after her family, this was a comfortable trip. During the nineteenth century, there were several different classes of travel, largely based on the class of the passengers themselves and the lives they had been accustomed to living in their old country.

Free settlers?

Many of the Europeans who migrated to the New World and Australia in the nineteenth century were destitute and had no real choice to stay in their homelands. Scots from the impoverished Highlands were assisted by emigration societies who paid part of their fare to Australia or Canada during the 1850s. The highlands and the western islands of Scotland were overpopulated. Families were being evicted from their land or crofts as they could not pay their rent. Many were close to starvation. Donald and Effy McFarlane had seven children. After their croft was lost, Donald tried to earn money catching lobsters and other shellfish.

They lived in one room and had little food. Such a family, with so many children who would grow up to be workers, would be an asset in Australia.

In Scotland they were just a charity burden. Once in Australia they would have to save to pay back £44 3s 1d, which was part of the cost of the trip to Australia.

The food supplied for the voyage was high in carbohydrates, with some protein. Many ate better on board ship than they had for years. The *James Fernie*, bound for South Australia, left Liverpool with 350 assisted Scots and Irish migrants in 1854.

While the food was plentiful on this ship, some of the passengers carried cholera on board and 28 passengers died during the voyage.

Rations provided per week per adult passenger over the age of 14 years on the *James Fernie* were as follows (note that 1 ounce equals 28 grams and 1 gill equals approximately 140 millilitres):

- 56 ounces of biscuit
- 6 ounces of beef
- 18 ounces of pork
- 24 ounces of preserved meat
- 42 ounces of flour
- 21 ounces of oatmeal
- 8 ounces of raisins
- 6 ounces of suet
- $\frac{3}{4}$ of an ounce of peas
- 8 ounces of rice
- 8 ounces of preserved potatoes
- 1 ounce of tea
- 1½ ounces of ground coffee
- 12 ounces of sugar
- 8 ounces of treacle
- 4 ounces of butter
- 21 ounces of water
- 1 gill of mixed pickles
- ½ ounce of mustard
- 2 ounces of salt
- ½ ounce of pepper.

Children aged between 10 and 14 years received two-thirds of this allowance and children aged between 2 and 10 years received half.

The potato famine and the Irish diaspora

During the nineteenth century and the first two decades of the twentieth century, around 8 million people left Ireland for the New World, chiefly North America and Australia. As well, many settled permanently in England and Scotland. In relative terms, more people left Ireland than from any other European country.

Poverty-stricken Irish peasants depended upon the potato for their survival. When the crop failed in 1845 due to a disease, thousands of people were desperate. Landlords evicted those who could not pay their rent. Many people were starving and had no choice but to leave in the hope of finding a better life. Landlords and

pauper a very poor person



Poor Law guardians often paid fares to get rid of these **paupers**. The famine set off a huge tide of emigrants from Ireland. Between 1846 and 1855, 2.5 million people emigrated, and between 1856 and 1914 another 4 million departed.

Migrant ships and coffin ships

Due to the potato famine, many migrants were destitute; they came to the ships in rags, bareheaded and often without shoes. Many were malnourished and sick. The conditions on the ships were very crowded and unhealthy. Bunks were shared with four people on a bed 1.8 metres long and 1.8 metres across. Ship owners could evade regulations – one ship to Canada in 1847 had 276 people sharing 36 berths. Passengers had to provide much of their own food, or try to survive on the 3 kilograms of food and 2 litres of water that ship-owners were required to supply weekly. On the worst ships, typhus and dysentery spread. Vomit and excrement dripped through the tiered bunks on to passengers below.

So many died on the voyage to North America in the 1840s that these were called ‘coffin’ ships.

Over the years, the standard of shipping improved, but wherever they went, the Irish – who often spoke

only Gaelic, and who were fleeing from the famine – were looked down upon as ignorant ‘savages’.

Many Irish fled the famine and made the long journey to Australia. In 1849, 16 orphan girls, some only 14 years old, were sent to Australia on the *Ballyshannon* in the hope that they would become servants, marry in Australia and make a better life. Certainly these girls were fitted out with new clothes for the trip, and given better food.

While waiting for work they stayed in Hyde Park Barracks in Sydney and at depots in Melbourne, Adelaide and Brisbane. Many in Australia opposed their migration, seeing them as poor servants with no domestic training. They were seen as disobedient, users of bad language and potential prostitutes. Some made good lives for themselves, while others, broken by the hardships of their young life and the loss of family, found it hard to adapt.

Prejudice

In both Australia and the United States, there was a lot of prejudice against the poor Irish migrants.

Members of elite Protestant groups saw them as ignorant, dirty and responsible for crime. In the United States, Irish were told they need not apply for certain jobs, as they were not wanted.

One Chicago newspaper wrote: ‘The Irish fill our prisons, our poor houses ... Scratch a convict or a pauper, and the chances are that you tickle the skin of an Irish Catholic. Putting them on a boat and sending them home would end crime in this country.’



Source 12.12 Hiring immigrants at the Depot in Hyde Park. Potential employers dressed in fashionable clothes look over possible servant girls who sit in a line by the wall. After signing up for a job, the girl farewells her friends. Her large handkerchief, strange hat and big feet suggest that she is uncultured, but she must have felt sad saying goodbye to her few friends in the world.

Historical thought

When an Irish person was migrating to America, their family and friends held an American wake for them. This was a farewell to the migrant, whom they never expected to see again. Like a wake after a funeral, a **eulogy** was given about the migrant. In more prosperous homes there would be singing and dancing, but often there was only wailing and despair.

eulogy a speech praising a person, usually given at their funeral



Chinese settlers to California and Australia

During the nineteenth century, many Chinese people left China in search of work and a better life. Many hoped to return to China someday, but could not. Their descendants live in a number of countries across the world today. In the nineteenth century, life and security in China were threatened by the Second Opium War (1856–60) and the Taiping Rebellion (1850–64). These led to the disruption of agriculture and other economic activities. High taxes and floods forced many off the land, especially in the southern provinces.

Peasants lost their livelihoods and looked for new opportunities. Many Chinese people travelled to nearby countries in Southeast Asia, often as indentured labourers. With the end of the transportation of convicts to Australia, pastoralists were looking for cheap labour and about 3000 Chinese men travelled as indentured labourers to New South Wales between 1848 and 1853. They worked as shepherds and fence-makers, and did other heavy work.

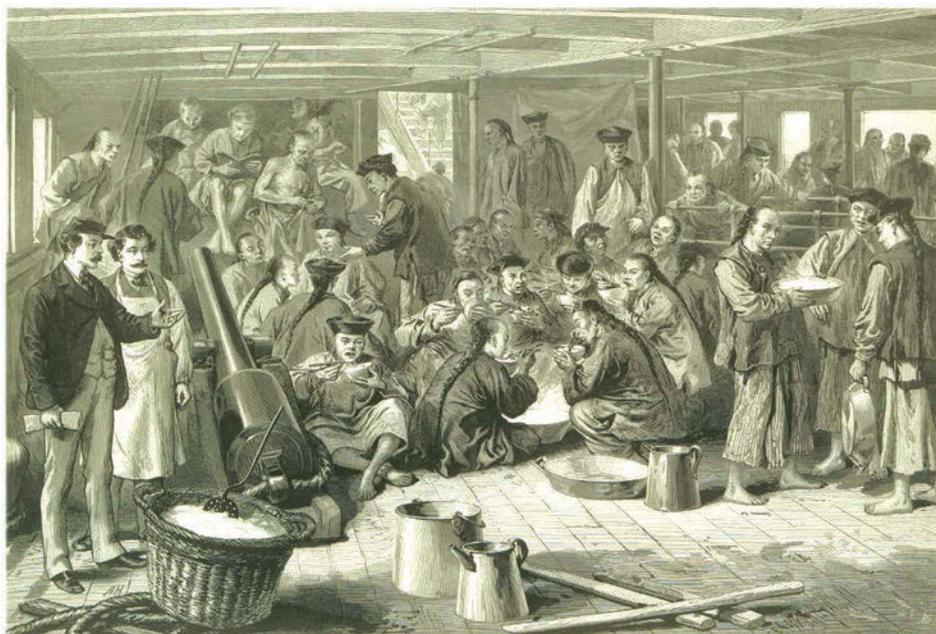
Gold mountain (Gam Saan)

In the late 1840s, when Chinese sailors told them of the discovery of gold in California – that this was Gam Saan, or a gold mountain – many Chinese men set off to make their fortunes. Many could not read, but like the goldminers from Europe, South America and Turkey who were also flooding into the gold fields, they hoped to do well. Very few Chinese women went to California as their husbands planned to return home and a woman was needed to care for her parents-in-law.

Migrants often purchased a credit ticket, which required them to pay back their fares from their earnings from the ‘gold mountain’. If they did not pay the money back, they would be threatened with violence by the lenders and would not be able to buy a ticket back to China.

Self-help organisations

When they arrived in California, many of the Chinese people spoke no English and did not know how to get to the goldfields. Organisations like the Sze Yup Society could meet them at the ship and assist them



Source 12.13 Chinese migrants on the steamship *Alaska* bound for California in 1876

with accommodation and advice on how to set out for the diggings.

Members came from the four counties around the Pearl River Delta in southern Guangdong province and had a duty to protect and help one another.

Chinese camps at the diggings

Chinese miners tended to live in groups and work claims the other miners had abandoned. At first, miners were curious about the Chinese miners with their pigtailed, conical hats and chopsticks.

But as the Chinese people became successful on the diggings, often working sections that the other miners had abandoned, white racist jealousies grew. White miners felt they deserved to be lucky and resented Chinese success, attacked Chinese camps and drove the people away.

Height of the Californian Gold Rush

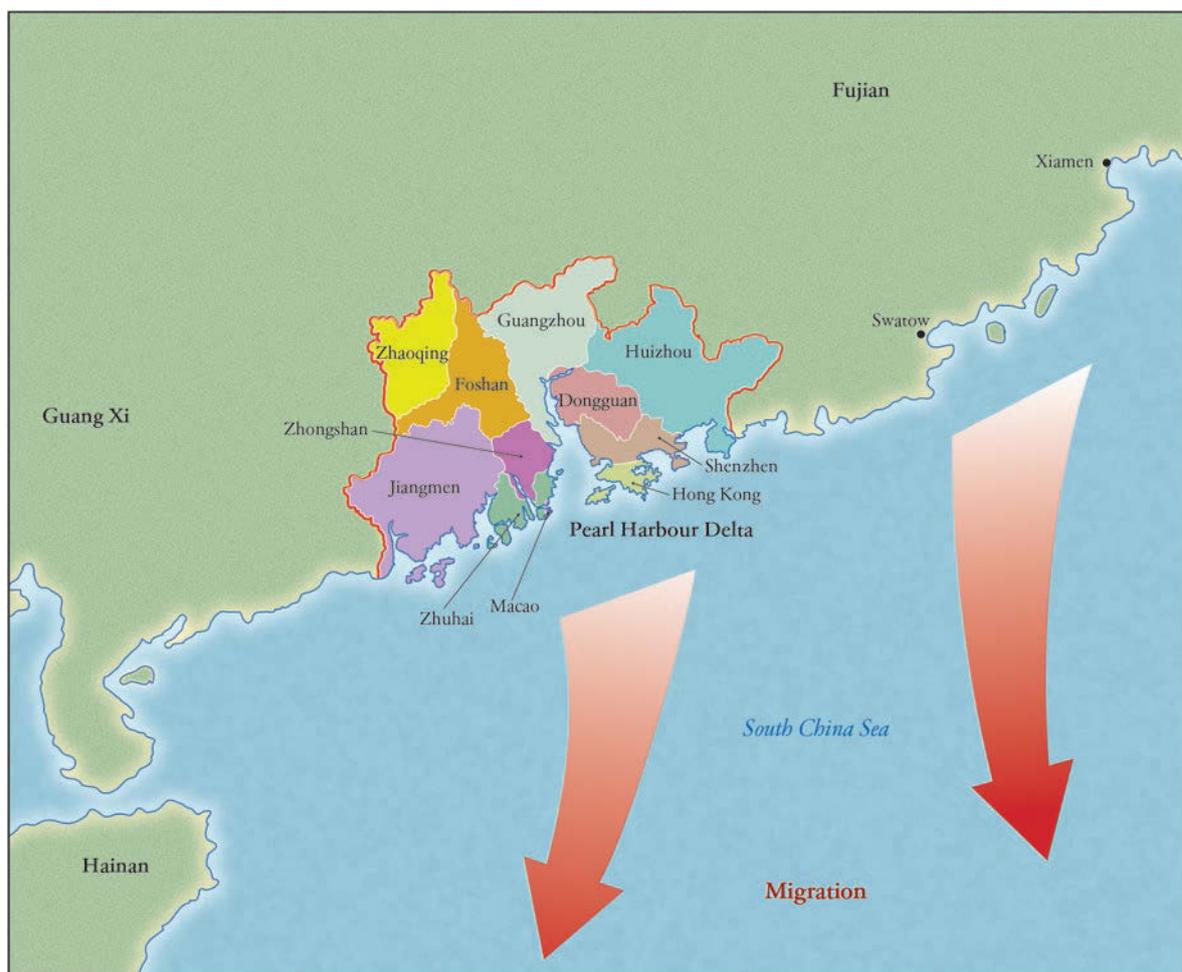
In 1852, 67 000 gold miners arrived in California.

Of these, 20 000 were from southern China where there had been a serious crop failure. Americans became

alarmed as the Chinese people continued to come through the port of San Francisco (on a single day, 2000 Chinese gold seekers arrived by ship). Previously there had been few Chinese people in the area. In 1851, there were about 2700 Chinese people living in California, but by the late 1850s Chinese immigrants made up 20% of the population in mining areas.

Discrimination, taxes and laws

While other miners physically attacked the Chinese people, the government introduced harsh laws and taxes. In 1850, California introduced a Foreign Miner's Tax aimed especially at the Chinese people. It was \$3 a month: about half of what the Chinese people were earning. They thus contributed large amounts to state finances. In 1870, the 48 000 Chinese supplied almost a quarter of the state's revenue. In 1854, a legal judgement held that Chinese people and others deemed not to be 'white' could not testify against white people in court, meaning Chinese people became even more vulnerable to white murderous attacks.



Source 12.14 The Pearl River Delta showing the regions from which Chinese people left

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.6

- 1 Explain why the Chinese left their country.
- 2 Discuss how they financed their travel to the United States.
- 3 Calculate what proportion of the gold miners who went to California in 1852 were Chinese.
- 4 Describe how the American people and their government discriminated against the Chinese.

In 1862, California passed an Act 'To Protect Free White Labor Against Competition with Chinese Coolie Labor', although the legislation was not very successful in curbing Chinese immigration.

When the mines ran out

As the Californian mines ran out, some of the miners – including the Chinese people – went to Australia to the new gold rushes beginning there.

They called this the 'new gold mountain'. In the United States, Chinese men moved into other occupations, including the laundry business, vegetable gardening, domestic service and later railway building. Some became a partner in a store in the mining areas that became very profitable, but many were employed on building the Central Pacific Railroad.

Rail tracks across the Sierra Nevada

From 1865, Chinese labourers worked on building the railway, which went up and across the steep and snowy Sierra Nevada mountains.

This track was to join up the west coast of the United States with railways coming from the east.

This transcontinental railway was important to economic development. Thousands of Chinese people worked on the railway. The work was dangerous as they had to blast through the mountains: falling rocks, collapsing tunnels and snowdrifts killed many, and Chinese workers were also paid less than other workers. Finally, in May 1869, the Central Pacific met the Union Pacific in Utah and the transcontinental railway was open.

This was important in connecting national and world markets.

Chinese workers built other railways in the United States, but they were to suffer further discrimination when they were excluded from naturalisation as United States citizens in 1870.

Further, the entry of Chinese labourers and those employed in mining was prohibited by the *Chinese Exclusion Act* in 1882. One critic said this was the legalisation of racial discrimination.



Source 12.15 Chinese railroad workers in the snowy Sierra Nevada greet a Central Pacific train.

Historical thought

Chinese workers were lowered in baskets down a cliff face to chip away at the granite where they would plant explosives to make way for the railway track. Sometimes the explosive would go off before they were pulled to safety.

Italians and Eastern Europeans to the United States

In the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, Eastern Europeans and Italians went to the United States in large numbers. Many of them travelled in modern steamships. These were much larger than sailing ships and much more comfortable.

Journeys were shortened from 5 weeks to 2 weeks; eventually, Liverpool to New York took just 1 week. Refrigeration allowed food and water to be kept in more hygienic conditions, and the death rate on the Atlantic crossing dropped by 90%. The Inman Steamship Company introduced improved services for migrants, providing separate berths for each passenger, a women's compartment, a ship's doctor, three cooked meals a day, and soap and towels. Even though the fare was double that of a sailing ship, Inman dominated

the British–American and Irish–American routes from the 1860s.

Migrants from Eastern Europe and Italy found their lives were greatly changed as they moved from agricultural to industrial settings. Many Americans were **xenophobic** and feared the arrival of what they saw as hordes of foreigners, whom they viewed as dirty, strange and likely to undermine their way of life. Nevertheless, these people made the United States more multicultural.

xenophobia having a hatred or fear of foreigners or foreign cultures and customs

Period	Proportion (%)
1870–80	5
1891–1900	33
1914	Almost 70

Source 12.16 Proportion of new immigrants to the United States from Southern and Eastern Europe

Period	Number
1871–80	70 000
1880–1900	250 000
1900–10	2 million +

Source 12.17 Russian and Polish departures from Eastern Europe

Migrants often wanted to escape poverty or religious and political oppression. They left high unemployment, rural backwardness and overpopulation to enter the vast new factories in Chicago, Detroit, Pittsburgh and New York.



Source 12.18 'Welcome to the Land of Freedom': European migrants on the deck of their ship as it passes the Statue of Liberty in 1889

They worked as manual labourers in meat works, coalmines, iron and steel production, construction and the textile and clothing industries.

anti-semitism prejudice against or hatred of Jewish people

pogrom a violent mob attack, often on Jewish people, that may be government-sanctioned

The fear of being conscripted into the Russian army drove many to America, as did the discrimination and persecution suffered by minority groups (especially Jewish people) at the hands of the Russian government.

Anti-semitism was rife across Eastern Europe and Jewish communities

had the bitter experience of **pogroms**, in which they were attacked, sometimes even by their neighbours. In America they felt they could be free.

Wonderful letters and amazing photographs

The first arrivals sent letters home to family members encouraging them to travel to the United States, a land of gold and freedom. They spoke of wages seven or even 10 times higher than at home and of the great freedom of American life.

Millions of letters, often with photographs of the migrants in new city clothes, made Polish and Russian peasants want to become *Amerikanci* too.

Migrants often sent money, known as remittances, home to help their families to survive or even to repair their homes. Migrants would arrange tickets for relatives, friends and sweethearts, so often these letters would also contain a ticket for travel to the United States and hopefully a life of prosperity and happiness. These letters formed a 'chain' to enable more migration. These people believed in the great legend that there was no poverty in the United States.

Italians

Between 1876 and 1914, more than 17 million Italians left their homes and migrated to other places in Europe and to the Americas in search of a better life. Most went to Britain, France and Germany, while many others sailed to South America. Between 1880 and 1920, more than 4 million Italians went to the United States. After farewelling family and friends they set off for the port with all their possessions. One woman recalled leaving: 'We left in a two-wheeled cart that carried a big home-made trunk, my mother, two of my brothers, my sister and also a cousin from Palermo, which was forty miles away.' Most of the migrants were male and of working age – between 15 and 45 years. Around 80% of these people were from the depressed rural regions in the south of Italy. Like so many regions from which migrants left at this time, this was an overpopulated and economically backward area.

These people dreamed of an easier life. 'America' was for them anywhere where they did not have to struggle so hard for a living.

They travelled in steerage class in the modern steamships, which plied the Naples–Philadelphia–New York route.

Little Italies

Most Italians who migrated to the United States were peasants; they often spoke only their Italian dialect and had little education. They had little experience of city life, but they usually settled into the poor crowded districts of the great American cities such as New York and Philadelphia. The districts were known as 'Little Italies' where people could speak to and get support from other migrants. They lived in tenement buildings, which were crowded, poorly heated in the winter and stuffy in the summer heat. On arrival, Italian men generally carried out unskilled and heavy jobs, such as building roads, bridges and subways.

Women worked at sewing and ran businesses selling Italian foodstuffs. They expected to make their fortunes in America, but many found that the streets weren't paved with gold! Migrants often did the dirty jobs that no one else wanted to do, but slowly pulled themselves up into better positions in society and the labour market. They helped to build America. Many Italian–Americans told the joke: 'First, the streets weren't paved in gold; second, they weren't paved at all; and third, we were expected to pave them!'

Hard-luck stories such as these disheartened many migrants, who then felt caught between wanting to stay and work at making a new and better life, and being pulled back to what they knew by returning to their homeland.

In Italian–American neighbourhoods, people organised a social life around their churches and celebrated religious feast days with processions and festivals. They organised concerts, theatre performances and social clubs, which helped them adapt to life in the United States.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 12.7

- 1 Construct a list of the improved services that the Inman steamships offered to migrants crossing the Atlantic.
- 2 Discuss why some Americans were hostile to the Southern and Eastern European migrants in the late nineteenth century.
- 3 Explain why people left their homes in Eastern Europe and Italy and why they were attracted to the United States.

RESEARCH 12.1

Use the internet to research information on Francis A. Walker. Develop a PowerPoint presentation on his achievements and include commentary on his anti-immigration views, as well as citing possible reasons he held such views. Justify your response.

‘Unsuitable immigrants’

As large numbers of Eastern Europeans and Italians arrived in the United States, some Americans began fearing the new migrants would change their society in unfamiliar ways. They found the new migrants strange, and decided that people who were not of Anglo-Saxon origin were inferior to them. Some developed ideas that people who were from north-western Europe – that is, Anglo-Saxons, Aryans and Teutons – were superior to what they called inferior races, such as Southern and Eastern Europeans and people from Asia and Africa. They felt these newcomers would change the social, political and economic wellbeing of the American nation. People like Francis A. Walker, a leading economist, journalist and educator, wanted their government to make laws to restrict the entry of

such people. In 1896, he wrote: ‘The problems which so sternly confront us to-day are serious enough without being complicated and aggravated by the addition of some millions of Hungarians, Bohemians, Poles, south Italians, and Russian Jews.’

The 1880s, for a variety of reasons, saw an increase in strikes, unemployment, alcoholism, illiteracy, prostitution and crime. These problems more than likely would have occurred even if immigrants from Southern and Eastern Europe had been excluded, simply because this period was a time of **urbanisation**, industrialisation and political corruption, and Americans were having a difficult time adjusting to the new social climate. However, many Americans were eager to blame migrants from south-eastern Europe as the culprits behind the new problems.

urbanisation the growth of cities

12.3 Changes in the way of life

Free settlers on the Australian frontier

From Skye to the Western Australian frontier

In 1854, Samuel and Janet Mackay and their family left the Isle of Skye, Scotland for Australia. A poor family with nine children ranging in age from 6 to 24 years, they could not survive on their income, let alone pay the rent of their tiny 1-acre (0.4-hectare) croft.

They were seen as ‘poor but respectable’, but landlords wanted to run sheep on their estates and to clear such people off their land. The Highland and Island Emigration Society helped to pay their fare and they arrived in Australia owing about £50 for their passage. While the young ones looked forward to life in Australia, the older ones must have been heartbroken at leaving their beloved Skye, the home of their ancestors.

A strange wailing sound reached my ears ... I could see a long and motley procession winding along the road that led north from Suishnish ... There were old men and women, too feeble to walk, who were placed in carts; the younger members of the community on foot were carrying their bundles of clothes and household effects, while the children, with looks of alarm, walked alongside ... Everyone was in tears.

Source 12.19 An eyewitness records the tragic scene during the Skye clearances in 1854.

Samuel had hoped that he would be granted farmland, but the family was seen as suitable only as station hands and farm servants. They were sent to the south-east of South Australia and began working for pastoralist Robert Lawson on Padthaway station near Naracoorte. The older sons began to learn Australian bush craft while their parents were hut-keepers at a distance from the station homestead. They had to look after the sheep and make sure they had water. The change from the crowded misty Scottish island, with relatives and friends all around them, to the isolated hut in the summer of Australia was difficult for Samuel. In January 1856 he died from dysentery.

The older sons Roderick, Donald and Donald McDonald (Dody) worked as drovers, stockmen and overseers in the pastoral industry in South Australia and western Victoria. Two of the daughters, Catherine and Mary, helped their mother to run a school in Mount Gambier, where they were seen as respectable members of the community and in their Presbyterian church.

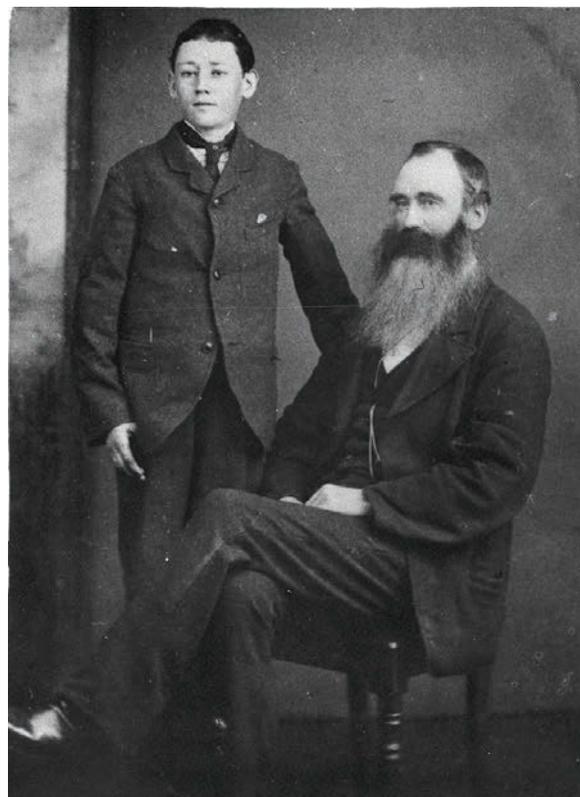
The lands of the south-east had been wrested from the Buandig peoples in the years before the Mackay

family arrived. As the Mackay family grew in prosperity, the Buandig peoples were becoming beggars. The missionary Mrs Smith wrote about the decline of this 'once numerous and powerful tribe of South-Eastern natives' due to 'the new mode of life forced upon them by the advent of European colonists in their midst, assisted too often by the cruelties practised upon them by the early settlers'. Other Indigenous people were dying from diseases introduced by the Europeans, along with the loss of their families and the land of their ancestors. Where they were employed on the stations, they were paid only with food and clothing.

The Mackay brothers were keen to get rich and were saving up their wages from doing station work. Even 12-year-old Donald drove a bullock team loaded with wool bales for 110 kilometres to Guichen Bay. In 1864, Roderick was part of a group of ambitious young men of Scottish background who wanted to get pastoral land in the north-west of Western Australia. They formed a company and sailed to the region to explore and take up land. This was a harsh country and a number of times Roderick had to return to South Australia to get more stock and start again. Dody joined him and by 1872 they were doing well at Maitland River, but then a cyclone swept away 1400 of their 2000 sheep.



Source 12.20 An Aboriginal girl and woman working as water carters for the Mackay family at Mundabullangana, 1898



Source 12.21 Donald Mackay with his son Roderick

They set off to find new land and established Mundabullangana, near present-day Port Hedland.

They selected more than 1 million acres, with a frontage of 30 miles along the Yule River. The plains of the Kariara people were of 'rich chocolate soil, covered with various succulent grasses and fattening shrubs, with a large proportion of soft spinifex' – good land for sheep. Donald joined his brothers and by the year 1879 they ran 18000 sheep, 'all shepherded by the aborigines'. Soon their wool was sold in London, bringing them great profits.

They used the land and the labour of the local Aboriginal people, whom they paid with food rations and clothing. Aboriginal people built 800 kilometres of fences by 1890 and did all the shearing and drove the bullock teams.

Indentured labourers from Manila, China and Malaya also worked for them, sinking wells, growing vegetables and cooking. The Mackay brothers bought other stations in the Pilbara – Roy Hill, Sherlock, Mallina and Croydon – and their landholdings grew. The Mackays built a fine homestead to live in with their wives and children.

The homestead is a mansion, built mostly of a kind of bluestone, and is so constructed as to provide the most comfort during all seasons. On approaching the homestead the visitor imagines he has discovered a miniature town, so numerous are the buildings.

Source 12.22 A visitor describes the homestead at Mundabullangana, 1907

The Mackays were described as 'a strong, violent family'. They also had pearling luggers (boats) working off the coast, and Dody hired 'depraved and vicious' men to capture Aboriginal people from inland to dive for pearls. This was seen as 'a system of organised slavery'. In 1887, Donald and his son Samuel were accused of shocking treatment, such as whipping the Aboriginal people on their luggers and stations.

In 1879, tragedy struck the Mackay family when Roderick Mackay was lost at sea in his pearling lugger during a cyclone. Donald and Dody kept the stations. But during the 1890s drought, Dody sold his share and went to Perth. In 1896, he was elected a member of the Western Australian Legislative Council to defend the interests of the northern pastoralists. When Donald and Dody died they left a large amount of money to their families. Dody's funeral in 1904 was in grand Scottish style and was attended by the important citizens of Western Australia. The Mackay family had come across the world from a life of poverty on Skye and had become wealthy and powerful in Australia, but at great cost to the Aboriginal people they had exploited and displaced.

RESEARCH 12.2

1 Research the life of one of the following convicts:

- Edward Davis
- Francis Abbott
- Francis Greenway
- Hannah Rigby
- John Black Caesar
- John Davies
- Margaret Catchpole
- Maria Lord
- Mary Bryant
- Mary Reibey
- Maurice Margarot
- Molly Morgan
- Simeon Lord
- William Blue
- William Buckley.

Use the *Australian Dictionary of Biography*, the State Library of New South Wales and the State Library of Tasmania (www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and other online sources.

2 Use the internet and other sources to research the situation of Aboriginal people in the Roebourne area today.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Between 1788 and 1868, the British government sent 162 000 convicts to Australia as punishment for their crimes. These formed the basis of white settlement of the Australian continent, which had drastic consequences for the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.
- As plantation owners and industrial capitalists searched for cheap labour supplies, cheap raw materials and new markets for their manufactured goods, millions of people moved across the world – as slaves, indentured labourers, assisted migrants and free settlers.
- Many left homes of poverty in order to seek their fortune on the goldfields or on streets they believed were paved with gold. These migrations changed the world.
- Personal accounts of these migrants can give us fresh understandings of their experiences.
- The spread of Europeans around the world and their colonisation of many countries made them believe that they were different from and superior to other peoples in the world, and allowed for the belief in white European superiority to flourish.
- The spread of migrants to the Americas and Australasia led to the decimation of indigenous peoples. As settlers became prosperous and even rich, indigenous people lost their lands, and many lost their lives.

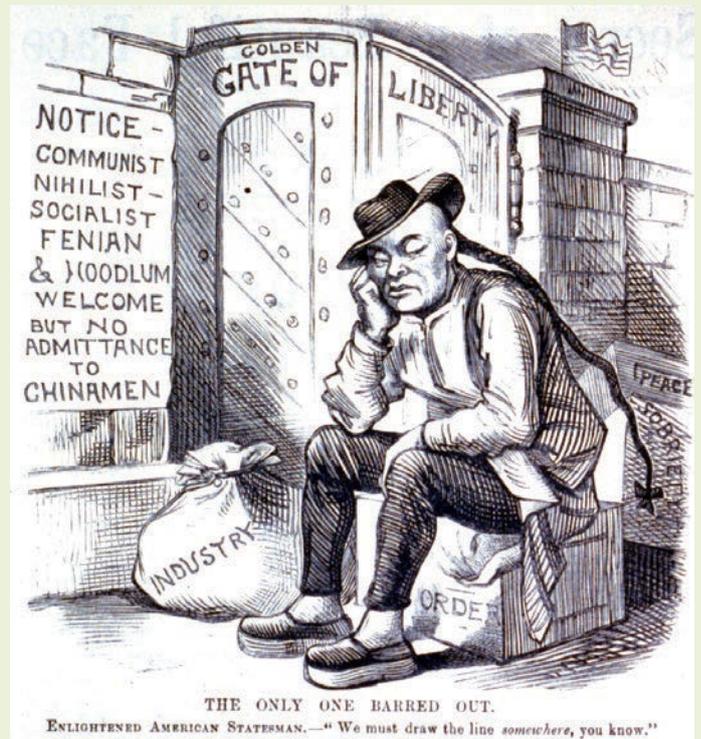
Short-answer questions

- 1 Discuss why slaves were sent to the Americas.
- 2 What were the conditions of indentured labourers?
- 3 Outline why the potato famine led to mass Irish migration.
- 4 What happened to convicts after they were freed?
- 5 Explain why Highland Scots left Scotland.

Source analysis

Study Source 12.23 and answer the following questions:

- 1 Why are the words 'industry', 'order', 'peace' and 'sobriety' put around the Chinese man?
- 2 Do you think the cartoonist believes that the closed gate is the 'Golden Gate of Liberty'?
- 3 What view is the cartoonist putting forward here?



Source 12.23 A Chinese man is barred from entering the United States in 1882, even though political radicals and hoodlums are allowed to enter.

Extended-response question

In what ways did the migration of people from Europe and Asia to Australia and the New World lead to the economic development of the world, and to the destruction of the way of life of many indigenous people?

13

Progressive ideas and movements (1750–1918)

Before you start

Main focus

Progressive ideas and movements during this period frequently caused turmoil and conflict, but they also improved people's lives in countless ways.

Why it's relevant today

With their origins in the 1700s, progressive ideas still inspire movements in the contemporary world, most recently the 'Arab Spring' in the Middle East.

Inquiry questions

- How did progressive ideas develop and where did they come from?
- What are the major progressive ideas that have shaped Western and non-Western societies over the last two centuries?
- Who were the major thinkers and activists associated with each of these ideas?
- How have they become embedded in social movements?
- Why are they called 'progressive'?
- What is the significance of these ideas and movements today?

Key terms

- Anti-colonialism
- Anti-racism
- Capitalism
- Chartism
- Collectivism
- Egalitarianism
- Enlightenment
- Feminism
- Individualism
- Nationalism
- Social Darwinism
- Socialism

Significant individuals

- Adam Smith
- Charles Darwin
- Karl Marx
- Marie Olympe de Gouges
- Mary Wollstonecraft
- Mohandas Gandhi
- Robert Owen
- Tom Paine
- Toussaint L'Ouverture
- W.E.B. Du Bois

Let's begin

In contemporary Australia we may take for granted certain aspects of our lives, such as the right to vote for our leaders and to express our religious views or challenge religion, as well as the right to education, work and a decent standard of living. We expect to have those same rights whether we are male or female.

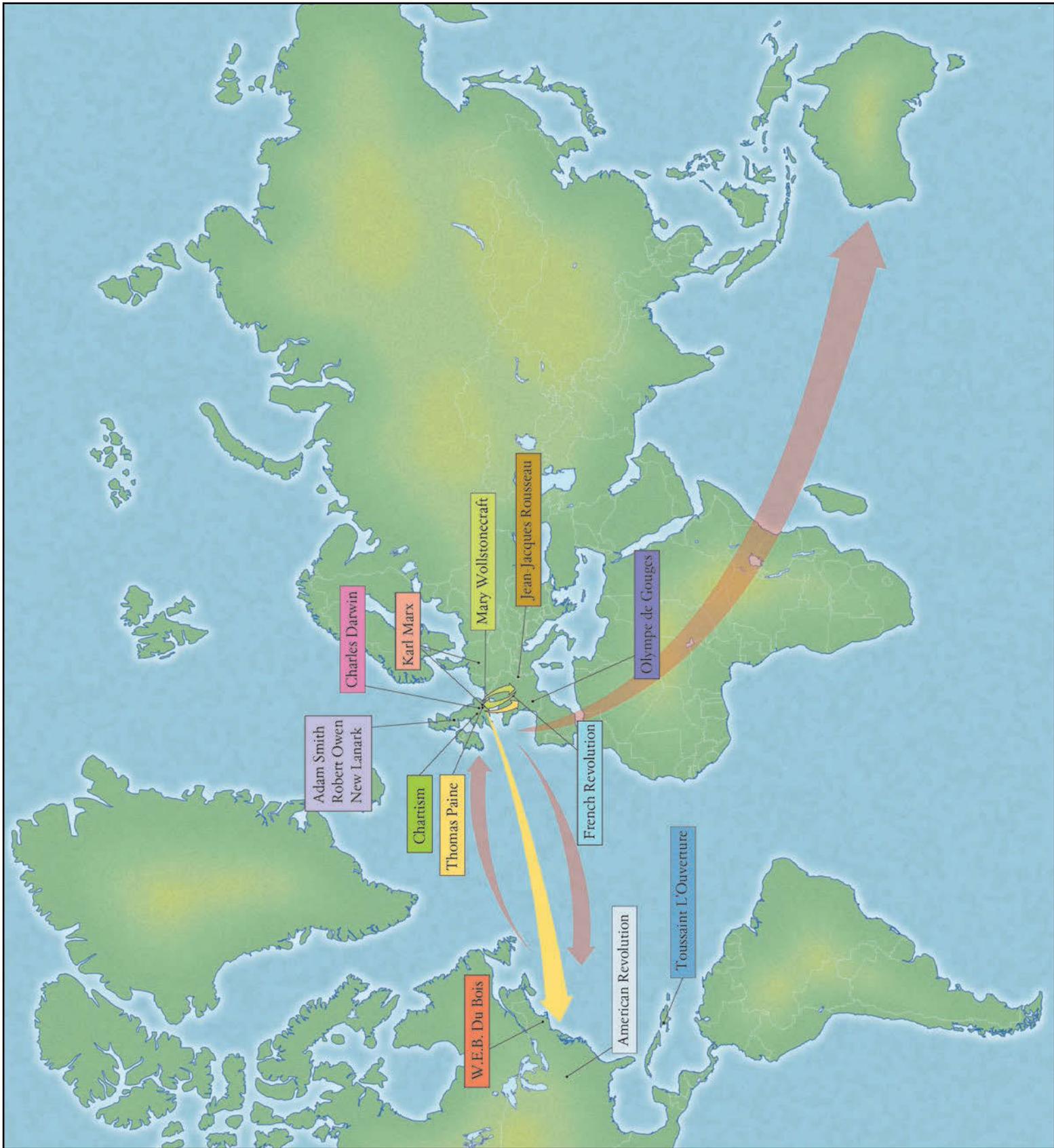
Yet these rights have not always been present. Indeed, they remain non-existent in parts of the world today. In this chapter we look at some of the people who first defined and sought these rights, who formed movements to fight for them and whose names are linked with them. Some of the thinkers have had such a broad personal impact that their names have become associated with the ideas they expressed (for example, Marxism and Darwinism). We look briefly at a wide range of ideas, focusing on one in particular: egalitarianism. The basic idea of egalitarianism is that everyone is born equal and free. This apparently simple idea has caused many wars and revolutions. The desire for equality was a key factor in the French Revolution, in the American War of Independence, in many anti-colonial struggles and, in a less violent but equally progressive context, in what is known as the women's movement.

Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS	WORLD EVENTS
1600	
1650 The Enlightenment begins in Europe	1683 Decline of Ottoman Empire
1700	
1775–83 American Revolution	1788 Britain begins to colonise Australia
1776 Adam Smith writes <i>The Wealth of Nations</i>	c. 1790 First working-class reform organisations in Britain are founded
1789–92 French Revolution	
1791–1804 Haitian Revolution	
1792 Mary Wollstonecraft writes <i>A Vindication of the Rights of Woman</i>	
1800	
1834 Trial of Tolpuddle Martyrs	1830 World's first railway line opens in Britain
1838 The rise of Chartism in England	1839–42 First Opium War between Britain and China
1859 Charles Darwin publishes <i>On the Origin of Species</i>	1854 Eureka Stockade in Australia
1867 Karl Marx writes <i>Das Kapital</i>	1865 Slavery is abolished in the United States
	1893 Women gain the vote in New Zealand
	1894 Women gain the vote in South Australia
	1898 The Boxer Rebellion in China
1900	
1917 Russian Revolution	1901 Australia's states are joined in a federation

DEPTH STUDY 1 MAKING A BETTER WORLD





Source 13.1 Enlightenment ideas spread across Europe, the North Atlantic and beyond to colonies such as Australia.

13.1 Emergence of key ideas

The Enlightenment (1650–1770)

Enlightenment a philosophical movement that placed emphasis on reason rather than tradition and gave rise to many progressive ideas

The seventeenth to eighteenth century **Enlightenment**, sometimes known as ‘the age of reason’, was a major seed bed for progressive ideas. This was a period when scientific knowledge flourished.

A range of thinkers – including John Locke, David Hume, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Voltaire – began to draw on reason rather than religion or myth to uncover the ‘rules’ of the human and natural worlds.

Their focus on reason and the ability to think for oneself led to fertile debates between reason and faith. They threw off superstition and sought to throw light on the supposedly dark world of medieval religion. They

questioned the authority of the church and state and the absolute right of monarchs to rule. Many developed a concern with ‘natural rights’, the forerunner to the current concern with ‘human rights’.

The ideas of the Enlightenment spread widely through many different countries. In Britain, the United States and, later, Australia, many of these views were discussed in groups such as literary and philosophical societies and mechanics institutes.

Enlightenment ideas also underpinned two major upheavals of modern times: the American War of Independence and the French Revolution.

Thomas Paine and Mary Wollstonecraft, two well-known English writers, lived and breathed Enlightenment ideals and wrote influential works that contributed to the spread of those ideas.

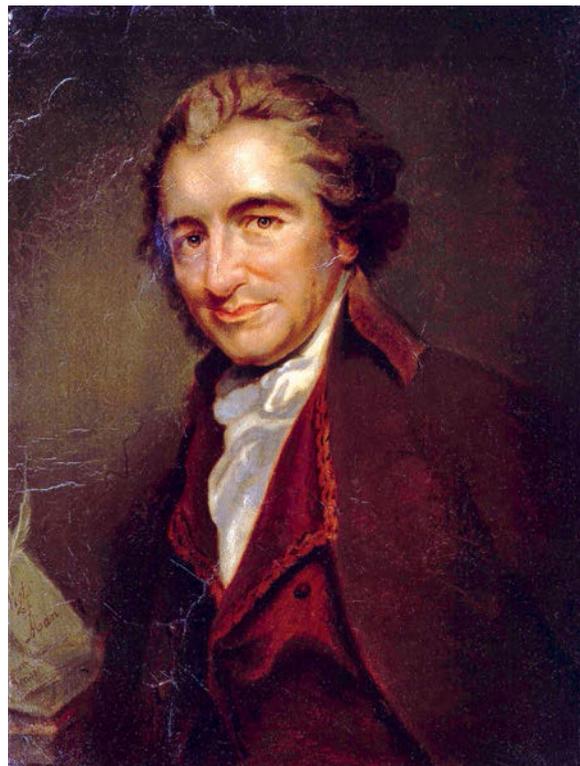
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.1

Look up the word ‘progressive’ in a dictionary.

- 1 Identify any ‘progressive’ movements in your community.
- 2 Suggest a progressive idea that would make your community a better place.

Thomas Paine (1737–1809)

Thomas Paine, the son of an English Quaker and corset maker, had a profound effect on the American Revolution. After a meeting in London with the American ‘Founding Father’ Benjamin Franklin, Paine migrated to America in 1774 where he wrote the revolutionary pamphlet *Common Sense* (1776). This widely read pamphlet offered a strong defence of American independence from England and argued for the establishment of a republican constitution. Paine’s writing was often called ‘the voice of the common man’ and his work was widely circulated. Paine’s book *The Rights of Man*, written in 1791 as a response to the French Revolution, was strongly anti-monarchist. It argued that all men are equal in the eyes of God and therefore they should all have political rights. His strong democratic republican views forced him to flee England for France and he became a French citizen in 1792.



Source 13.2 Thomas Paine was an advocate for the rights of man.

He opposed the most radical aspects of the French Revolution, however, and did not support the execution of King Louis XVI. Imprisoned, he wrote *The Age of Reason* (1793), a strong and fiery case against the established Christian church.

Paine later returned to America where he died, shunned by many former supporters because of his anti-Christian stand. 'My country is the world,' he wrote, 'and my religion is to do good.'

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.2

Role-play a conversation between Thomas Paine and Benjamin Franklin over coffee in London in 1773 about what should be done on the British colonies in America.

Mary Wollstonecraft (1759–97)

While men such as Paine wrote about the equality of all men, hardly any considered women to be their equals. Mary Wollstonecraft, however, felt strongly that women should have the same rights as men, particularly in relation to education.

Mainly self-educated, she became a lady's companion, school teacher and **governess**, which were occupations typical for women of her class.

A position as an editorial assistant to the radical publisher of the magazine

Analytical Review enabled her to focus on writing and

governess a female teacher, usually teaching children in a private house

to develop her literary skills. Her work as a governess gave her an abiding hatred of the situation of intelligent women dependent on the rich and uneducated, and led to her book *Thoughts on the Education of Daughters* (1787).

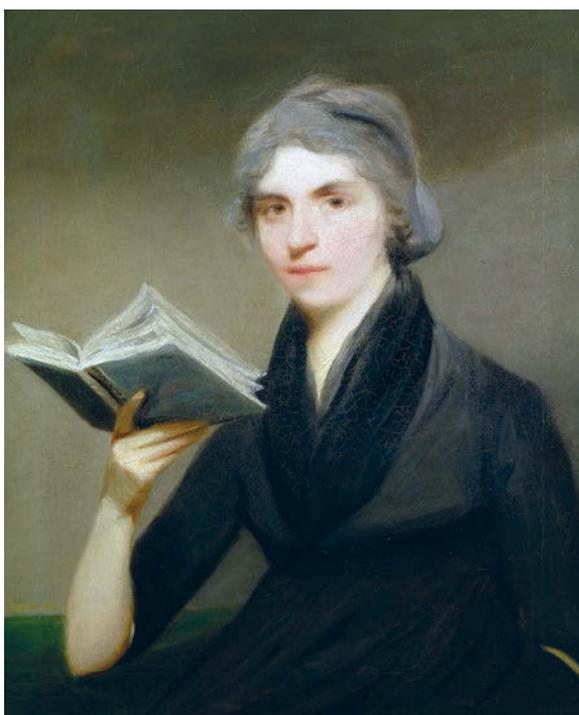
In it she stressed the importance of reason in the education of both girls and boys, and deplored the focus on instinct and sentimentality for girls.

Wollstonecraft also wrote *A Vindication of the Rights of Men*, followed by her best-known work, *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* (1792).

Like Thomas Paine and other English intellectuals, Wollstonecraft was enthusiastic about the possibilities of the French Revolution and travelled to France in 1792, where she lived with the American, Gilbert Imlay.

Wollstonecraft is one of the 'founding mothers' of **feminism**: the belief that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men, and that men and women are basically equals. This flew in the face of the thinking of her time, which viewed women as 'the weaker sex', inferior to men and dependent upon them. Wollstonecraft advocated equal educational opportunities as a right for girls, claiming that well-educated women would make better wives and mothers.

feminism advocacy for the belief that men and women are equals and should enjoy all the same rights



Source 13.3 Mary Wollstonecraft was a fighter for the rights of women.

13.2 Role of progressive ideas in major social upheavals

The War of American Independence (1776–83)

The war between Great Britain and its American colonists sent shock waves throughout Europe.

Here were people putting into practice Enlightenment ideas, such as those spread by Tom Paine, claiming that everyone was created equal and seeking the right to representation in their own government. Colonists refused to pay taxes without representation. France aided the American revolutionaries, which led to the

spread of revolutionary ideas in France, such as the notion of republicanism and liberal freedoms. As a result of the American War of Independence, America became a democratic republic, thus offering a model for other countries to seek to follow. The idea of a republic was not new, however, as it drew on the republics of ancient times, such as Greece and Rome.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.3

The United States Declaration of Independence states that ‘all men are created equal’:

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness.

- 1 Explain what you think this statement means.
- 2 Assess whether you think this statement includes women or slaves.

Historical thought

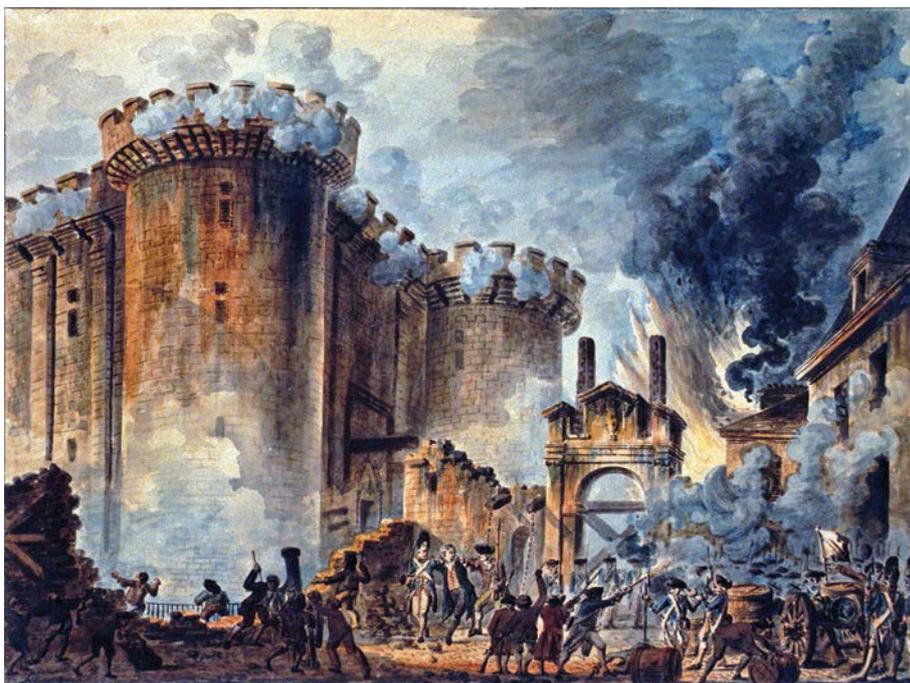
Did you know that the American War of Independence was sparked by a ‘tea party’? Instead of drinking it, American patriots in Boston threw tea overboard in retaliation to the British government’s tax on tea.

The French Revolution (1789)

Enlightenment thinking was also a crucial factor in the French Revolution, which was perhaps the most important revolution of modern history. It is one of the most dramatic examples of an absolute monarchy and a strong aristocracy giving way to the inclusion of citizens in their own government.

The French Revolution shaped, and continues to shape, many social and political ideas, including the right of citizens to determine their own futures, and a strong sense of the nation. The early catch cry of the revolutionaries, ‘Liberty, equality and fraternity – or death’, has been taken up by many activists over the centuries. It is a cry for democracy and the overthrow of oppressive leaders.

The French revolutionaries also drew up a Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizen (1789), which stated, ‘Men are born and remain free and equal in rights’ and also, radically, ‘Liberty consists in the ability to do anything which does not harm others’. In accordance with this manifesto, many radical laws were passed, including the abolition of slavery in French colonies in 1794. Yet despite these innovations, the French Revolution was a violent time, as successive waves of ‘reformers’, trying to prove their ‘progressive’ credentials and hatred of monarchy and privilege, annihilated those who went before. The hated symbol of the Revolution – the guillotine – is a permanent reminder of the potential of revolutionary ideas to work for evil as well as good. The spirit of revolutionary times can be seen in the



Source 13.4 *Prise de la Bastille* by Jean-Pierre Houël (1789) depicts the storming of the Bastille, a fortress in Paris, and the arrest of Governor de Launay on 14 July 1789.

lives of two key individuals, Marie Olympe de Gouges and Toussaint L'Ouverture, who were part of the major progressive movements of their times.

Marie Olympe de Gouges (1748–93)

Marie Olympe de Gouges, born in Montauban, lived in Paris during the French Revolution.

She was a playwright, a philosopher, a fighter for the abolition of slavery and an advocate for women's rights. Like her English contemporary Mary Wollstonecraft, de Gouges wrote one of the founding documents of feminism, *The Rights of Women and of the Female Citizen* (1791), which boldly claimed: 'Woman is born free, and remains equal to man in rights.' This was a radical statement for her time. She also proposed that marriage should be based on gender equality.

Her outspoken criticism of the violent acts of some of the revolutionaries resulted in her own death by the guillotine in 1793.

Toussaint L'Ouverture (1743–1803)

The ferment of ideas stirred up by the American War of Independence and the French Revolution spread like wildfire. In the French **colony** of Saint-Domingue (now Haiti) in the Caribbean, former slave Toussaint L'Ouverture led an independence movement that emancipated all the slaves. For a brief

colony a settlement formed of conquered territory

time Haiti became a French protectorate governed by black former slaves. The success of this Haitian

revolution reverberated around the world and was an early victory for **anti-colonialism**.

However, it did not last. Napoleon Bonaparte, seeking to restore slavery to French colonies, trapped and captured L'Ouverture, who died in exile.

anti-colonialism a belief that a state or country should be independent, and not under the rule of another country



Source 13.5 Fighter for Haitian independence, General Toussaint L'Ouverture

Reasons for the emergence and development of key ideas

Setting the scene: the Industrial Revolution

Ideas do not spring from nowhere: changing circumstances and new technologies lead to new challenges and new ways of thinking. Think about how the internet has changed so many things we do. From the 1750s the Industrial Revolution in Britain changed patterns of agriculture, developed manufacturing processes for cheaper production of goods, created a wealthy middle class, and exploited cheap labour from those who had been excluded from working on the land. These social changes led to widespread uncertainty, and sometimes bitterness and envy.

merchant a person who buys and sells goods

One of the reasons for envy was the emergence of very wealthy **merchants** and industrialists: the new class of capitalists.

Capitalism

capitalism an economic system based on private ownership and free-market enterprise

This was the period of rampant **capitalism**. Also known as the free-market economy, or free enterprise economy, this is an economic system that has been dominant in the Western world since the breakup of feudalism.

Within this system, most of the means of production are privately owned and production is guided, and income distributed, largely through the operation of markets. Although the continuous development of capitalism as a system dates only from the sixteenth century, earlier versions of capitalist institutions existed in the ancient world, and centres of capitalism existed during the later European Middle Ages.

Capitalism brought much wealth to industrialising countries such as Britain and the United States, but the vast profits made were unevenly distributed.

Many workers were poorly paid and the fact that many capitalist owners were making huge profits led to unrest and rebellion. Children were often employed



in dirty and dangerous work. The increase in factory production led to a decline in the handicraft skills of artisans, guilds and journeymen. Many of these formerly independent workers found themselves and their families dependent on low wages and insecure working conditions – even in poverty.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.4

Capitalism has been viewed as a natural companion to democracy.

- 1 Discuss whether capitalism always accompanies democracy.
- 2 List some countries that have a capitalist system but a non-democratic society.
- 3 Research others that are democratic but do not embrace capitalism. You may like to consider Denmark and Sweden in your investigations.

Historical thought

Adam Smith was a typically absent-minded professor. He once made himself a cup of tea from bread and butter. He declared it a very bad cup of tea!

Adam Smith (1723–90)

Adam Smith was a Scottish philosopher and political economist whose work has had a lasting impact on economics. He was one of the major thinkers of the **Scottish Enlightenment**, as was his friend the philosopher and religious sceptic David Hume.

In 1776, Smith wrote the influential work *The Wealth of Nations* in which he argued that rational self-interest in a free market leads to economic well-being. He has often been characterised as a supporter of unbridled capitalism and of the idea, in contemporary terms, that 'greed is good'. Yet in an earlier book, *The Theory of Moral Sentiments* (1759), he argued that human

Scottish Enlightenment refers to a group of Scottish thinkers (Adam Smith, David Hume, etc.) who espoused the ideas of the Enlightenment



Source 13.6 Adam Smith, the founder of modern economics

nature contains a predisposition to caring about the welfare of others.

Smith's work has had great influence: his ideas can be found in the work of others such as Karl Marx and the twentieth-century economists John Maynard Keynes and Milton Friedman. There is considerable debate about some of his major ideas, such as the importance of his use of the term 'an invisible hand' – the idea

that the market works inevitably towards **equilibrium**; that markets are self-regulating. Smith was ahead of his time in setting out the idea of the division of labour. He argued that while a single worker in a pin factory could produce only one pin a day by themselves, if tasks were divided and specialised, 48 000 pins a day could be produced. He also opposed colonialism on economic grounds.

Robert Owen (1771–1858)

Not all factory owners were greedy monsters who exploited their workers. A few cared deeply about their workers. One in particular, Robert Owen, a businessman and social pioneer, was inspired by the progressive moral views of the 1790s. He put these ideas into practice at the cotton mills of New Lanark, Scotland, where he established a model community to improve



Source 13.7 Businessman and social pioneer Robert Owen

the lives of workers. There he established the first infant school in the world, a crèche for working mothers, free medical care, an education system for children and evening classes for adults. He was committed to the ideal of female equality. He also insisted that children under the age of 10 years should not work.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.5

Robert Owen has been described as one of the founders of socialism and the cooperative movement. Many of his ideas are still progressive today.

Hold a class debate arguing whether 'Robert Owen's New Lanark still provides a model for factory work'.

Collectivism

One of the results of the changes brought about by the Industrial Revolution was that disaffected people began to organise themselves into groups, realising that collective action to improve their lot would be more effective than individual action.

individualism an outlook that emphasises the rights and interests of individuals

collectivism an outlook that places the interests of individuals as subordinate to the group for the benefit of all

In contrast to **individualism**, which sees the rights and interests of individuals as more important than anything else, **collectivism** sees the individual as subordinate to a social collectivity such as a state, a nation, a social class or a race. The idea of collectivism is implicit in the idea of the modern state, which is portrayed as acting for the good of all. One of the most significant writers to develop this idea was the Swiss philosopher and novelist Jean-Jacques Rousseau. In the book *The Social Contract* (1762), Rousseau claimed that true being and freedom could be obtained through submission to the laws of the state.

Chartism (1838–50)

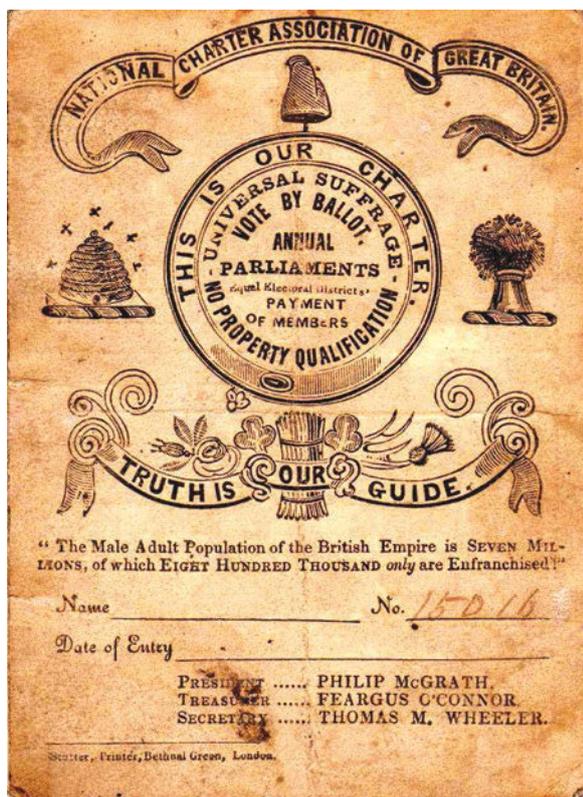
Chartism a social movement of people committed to the People's Charter, a set of basic political claims, including the right to vote

Chartism was a collectivist movement of British working men and women who from 1836 sought to gain wider parliamentary representation in order to improve their lives. The movement followed the *Reform Act* of 1832 in Britain that gave the vote to middle-class men. Its name comes from the People's Charter, which was a direct response to the deteriorating working and living conditions of the early nineteenth century. Chartism has been described as the

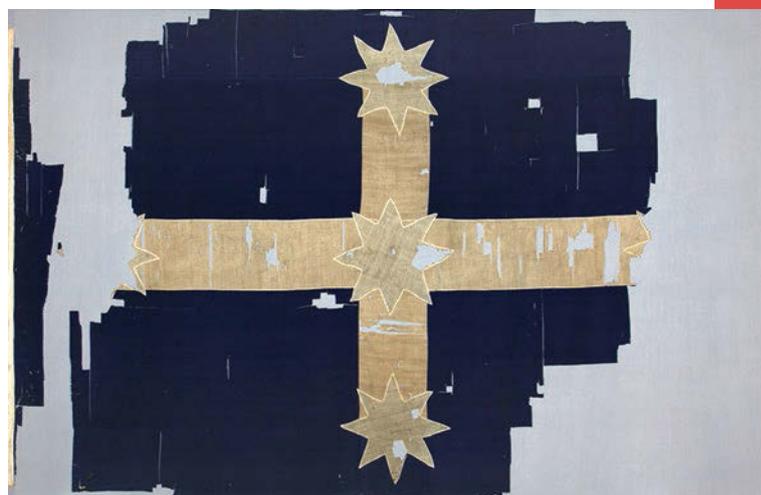
first nationwide mass movement of working people – an expression of working class consciousness. The movement maintained a strong faith in parliament to bring about social change.

In 1839, 1842 and 1848 millions of Britons signed petitions for parliament to implement the Charter, without success. After several mass public gatherings, a wave of strikes and several riots, Chartism faded after 1850. However, its legacy was strong, giving an impetus to parliamentary reform for decades to come.

The Chartist movement had strong links with Australia. It has been estimated that 102 Chartists were transported to Australia as convicts in the wake of the three successive Chartist peak years of 1839, 1842 and 1848. Recently, Australian historians have traced the way in which both convict and free settler Chartists used their influence in the Australian colonies to bring about the near complete acceptance of the Charter demands in Australia, well before they were enacted in Britain. Chartist ideas were at the root of many workers' struggles, including the rebellion over mining licences that culminated with the famous battle at the Eureka Stockade.



Source 13.8 National Charter Association membership card



Source 13.9 The remnants of the flag that flew at the Eureka Stockade at Ballarat – a rebellion inspired by Chartist ideals



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.6

- 1 Describe some of the symbols that we associate with Australian nationalism.
- 2 List some of the key dates on which we celebrate the Australian nation.
- 3 Describe the ways in which nationalism can be a progressive force.
- 4 Research examples where nationalism has had a less positive side. (You might think, for instance, of the ways in which some newcomers to a country might feel excluded.) Consider countries other than Australia in your answer.
- 5 Decide if you think there is there a link between sport and national identity.
- 6 Determine what people mean when they accuse someone of being 'un-Australian'.
- 7 Analyse the ways in which the Eureka Stockade contributed to Australian identity.

Nationalism

The French Revolution is also credited with boosting the idea of **nationalism**. Nationalism involves a strong sense of identity with a particular community – for example, a strong sense of being Australian. This usually involves a strong pride in 'one's country', a sense that the interests of the state are supreme, and in some cases a willingness to make sacrifices for it. There are two main types: *state nationalism*, which is imposed by the state (top down); and *popular* or *grassroots nationalism*, which springs from a sense of belonging to a particular national or ethnic group (bottom up). Some Australians, for example, might feel that their indigenous, Vietnamese or Greek identity, for example, overrides their sense of belonging to the Australian nation. Perhaps it coexists beside it.

Although we tend to take nationalism for granted, it is a fairly recent idea historically.

It gained strength during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries as many nation-states were created. For example, there was no British nation until 1707. Before that people thought of themselves as English, Welsh, Scots or Irish. Italy was only created as a 'nation' in 1861.

State systems of schooling help to build national identity and culture, as do ceremonies and symbols such as flags, 'national' anthems and national dress. In some nations, only one official language is permitted to flourish at the expense of the languages of minority groups.

There is considerable debate as to whether nationalism is a progressive idea or one that leads to division and conflict. Perhaps it can be both.

nationalism devotion to national identity, or patriotism

Imperialism

Imperialism has been defined as the policy of extending the rule or authority of an empire or nation over foreign countries, or of acquiring and holding colonies and dependencies. This was not a new idea in the modern world. Indeed, the Persians, Greeks and Romans all acquired empires and colonies in ancient times. The Ottomans and Austro-Hungarians built large empires in early modern times. However, from the 1870s on, there was a scramble by the major European powers for the control of countries whose goods and people could be exploited for gain. In fact, from 1875 to 1895, more than 25% of the world's land was seized by European countries. Associated with imperialism (but not the same thing) was colonialism, where major powers planted colonies of their citizens on the soil of another country, as was the case in Australia.

Although by no means a progressive idea, imperialism is an important concept for an understanding of the modern world as it did much to shape global politics in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. The struggle against imperialism gave impetus to many progressive movements, including nationalism, egalitarianism, anti-colonialism and **anti-racism**.

Socialism

Strongly opposed to imperialism and also, in effect, an opponent of nationalism, **socialism** is another social movement that arose from the collectivist and cooperative impulses of the early nineteenth century.

Socialism was based on the understanding that the poor, the weak and the oppressed would only gain

anti-racism opposition to any form of racism

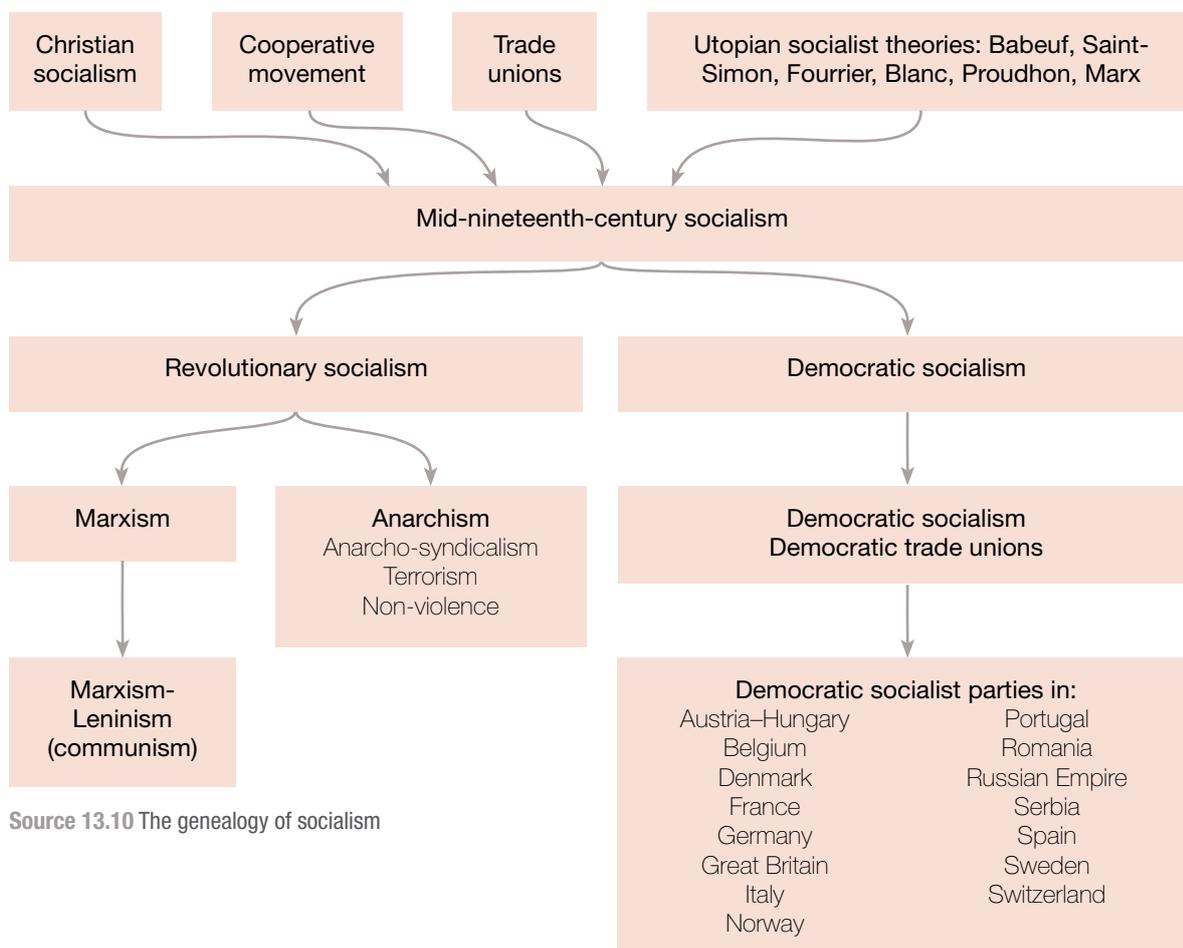
socialism a political ideology based on shared contributions to and shared benefits from society and the economy

a tolerable life through the pooling of resources and the fair and equal distribution of wealth. It was part of a collectivist response to the major upheavals of the Industrial Revolution and to growing capitalist wealth. We have already seen that the response to the deteriorating working conditions led to the formation of cooperatives, **trade unions** and reformist groups such as the Chartists. Socialism sprang from several strands of collectivist thinking: from aspects of Christian

trade union an organisation of workers joining together in order to achieve common goals such as better wages or working conditions

doctrine, from trade unionism, from the formation of cooperatives and from the ideas of French thinkers such as Henri de Saint-Simon, Charles Fourier, Louis Blanc and Pierre-Joseph Proudhon. It has had a profound effect to this day.

Socialism is often divided into two main strands. The first is revolutionary socialism, which led to Marxism. The other major strand is democratic socialism, which has inspired, and still inspires, many political parties throughout Europe and the globe (see Source 13.10).



Source 13.10 The genealogy of socialism

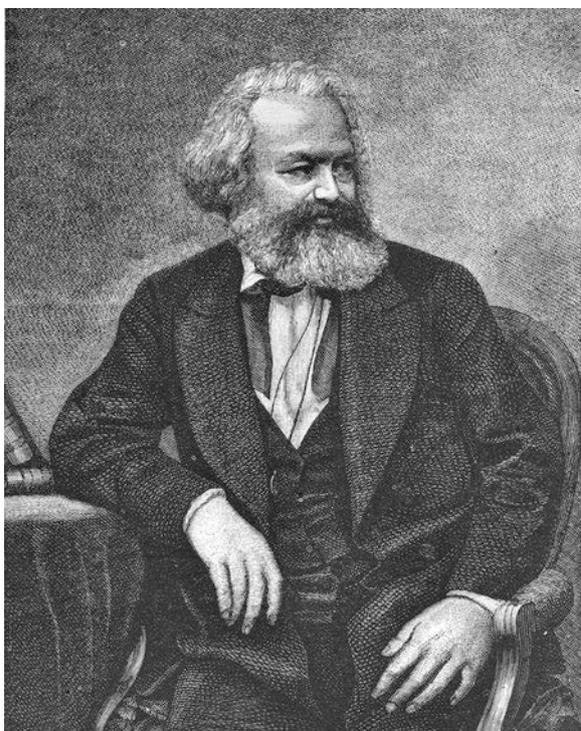
DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.7

Imagine that you live in a country that has been made part of the empire of another (for example, you might be an Indonesian person who was part of the Dutch empire in the eighteenth century).

- 1 Describe how you might feel about the colonising country. What opportunities might be available to you through colonisation? What ill effects might it bring?
- 2 Propose the Enlightenment ideas that you might draw on to argue for your freedom from the colonisers.

Karl Marx (1818–83)

Karl Marx, a philosopher, social scientist and historian, was a towering figure whose work had an enormous influence on the world of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Marx, a German, was exiled from his country for his revolutionary views. Writing from his new home in London, Marx and his fellow German exile Friedrich Engels wrote *The Communist Manifesto* (1848), which subsequently inspired revolutions across the globe. Marx also penned *Das Kapital* (*Capital*, 1867–94), his three-volume life work.



Source 13.11 Karl Marx was the most influential socialist thinker of the nineteenth century.

In *Capital*, Marx drew on the ideas of many previous thinkers expressed during the Enlightenment period in an attempt to create a universal theory for human society, just as Darwin had done for natural history. Seeking to uncover the laws of human history, Marx proposed stages of history and an eventual withering away of the state. Marx also helped found an International Workingmen's Association.

In many ways the extraordinary influence of his work is due as much to its emotional power as to its intellectual rigour. Words such as the following from *The Communist Manifesto* inspired those opposed to the exploitation of

bourgeoisie capitalist owners and rulers

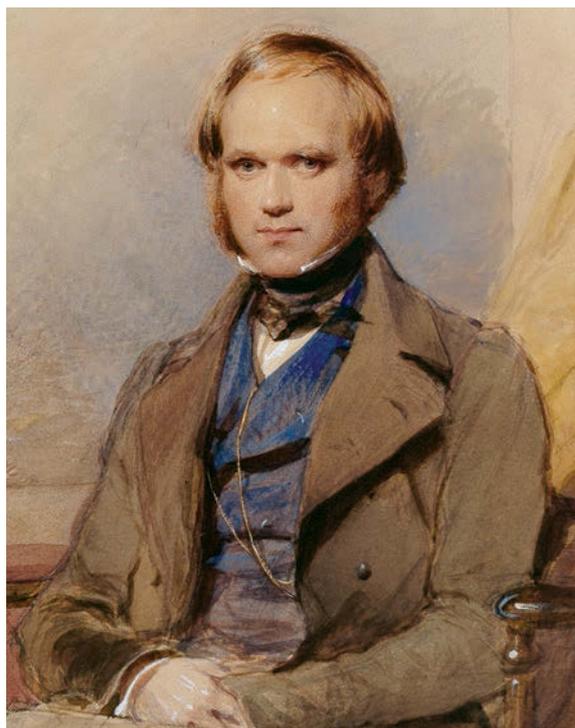
workers by the **bourgeoisie**: 'A spectre is haunting Europe, the spectre of communism. Let the ruling classes tremble ... The proletarians have

nothing to lose but their chains ... Working men of all countries unite.' Marx is buried at Highgate Cemetery in London. The inscription on his tombstone reads: 'Philosophers have so far explained the world in various ways: the point, however, is to change it.' Marx's writing has certainly changed the world. It contributed to some of the major revolutions of the twentieth century – such as the Russian and the Chinese revolutions – and inspired many contemporary regimes.

Charles Darwin (1809–82)

Charles Darwin is another man whose challenging ideas had a significant influence on the progress of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Darwin was an English naturalist whose theories of evolution and natural selection – commonly known as 'the survival of the fittest' – shook the establishment of his time because it challenged the biblical notion that the world was created by God in 6 days and 6 nights. This was a religious belief widely accepted in the mid-nineteenth century.

As we have seen, the Enlightenment created a climate where scientific ideas could flourish, yet their acceptance in educated circles was often controversial. Darwin spent 5 years travelling the world on the ship *HMS Beagle*, particularly collecting data in South America and the Galapagos Islands. He observed that 'all living species of the plant and animal world have progressed through constant interchange with their



Source 13.12 Charles Darwin as a young man in the late 1830s

environment and with competition among themselves'. Darwin argued that all humanity came from a common ancestry in the distant past, a theory that we have fully accepted now. The notion that humanity might have descended from apes shocked the religious establishment of the mid-nineteenth century, which

firmly believed that animals and humankind inhabited quite separate universes.

Darwin argued that evolution means that we are all distant cousins – humans, birds and mammals – a revolutionary thought to many at that time.

RESEARCH 13.1

In a short report, explore what is meant by the idea of natural selection, otherwise known as 'the survival of the fittest'. Trace the steps by which Darwin came up with this theory. After Darwin's evolutionary ideas had been widely accepted, some thinkers put forward a notion of **social Darwinism**.

Was this a progressive idea? Could this idea be used to support imperialism?

social Darwinism the idea that only the 'fittest' or most suited individuals or nations or races survive

Anti-racism, anti-colonialism and non-violence

In the second half of the nineteenth century, the notion that some races were more 'evolved' than others was widely accepted. This belief enabled people to tolerate systems of injustice based not only on social class but also on the idea of the 'superior' white race ruling the 'inferior' non-white populations. These beliefs underpinned the actions of colonialism, allowing the colonising country the comforting thought that they were 'helping' the less developed nations.

In the space of 18 months, two men were born on opposite sides of the globe who would become

famous throughout the world for their struggles to end discrimination against non-white people and to challenge the ideas of colonialists. Those men were Mohandas Gandhi, born in India, and William Edward Burghardt (W.E.B.) Du Bois, born in the United States.

Mohandas Gandhi (1869–1948)

Gandhi, often referred to as Mahatma (Great Soul), was born in India, near Bombay (known today as Mumbai), to well-to-do parents who ensured he had a good education. They wished him to become a barrister and sent him to London to train in the law. Gandhi returned to India as a qualified barrister, but in 1893 he accepted a post in a law firm in Natal, South Africa. At that time both India and South Africa were under British colonial rule as part of the vast British Empire. As a young man Gandhi had absorbed many of the beliefs of his Hindu and Jain forbears. He was a vegetarian, he practised compassion towards all sentient beings and he believed in tolerance between people of different faiths. He often fasted in order to attain self-purification.

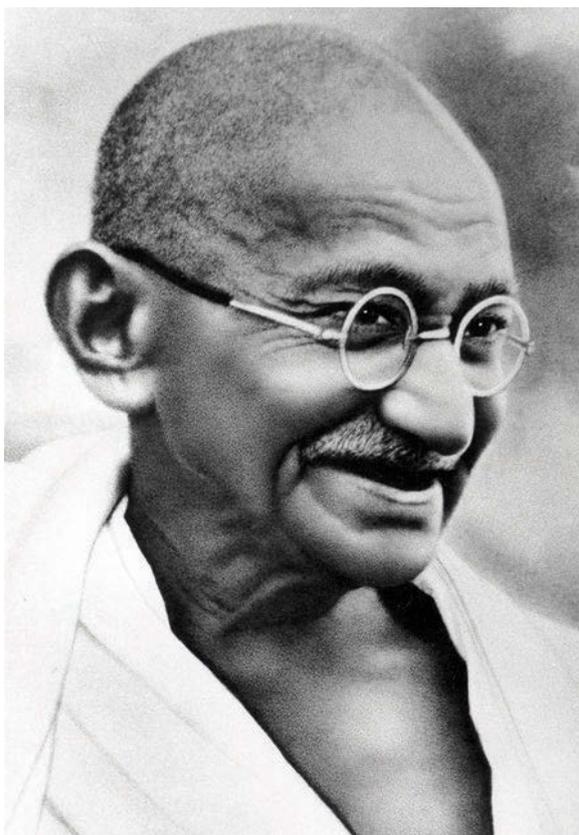
In South Africa, Gandhi was shocked at the treatment of the Indian population there and suffered considerable discrimination himself.

His experience of racism and prejudice led to his lifelong activism in South Africa and India.

He is revered for his dedication to non-violent protests and to civil disobedience, rather than violent action, to achieve political goals. Gandhi spent several years in South Africa, founding the Natal Indian Congress in 1894 and uniting South Africa's Indian population. On his return to India in 1915, Gandhi became a central figure in the struggle for Indian independence from



Source 13.13 HMS Beagle at Tierra del Fuego, by Conrad Martens



Source 13.14 Mohandas Gandhi, an advocate of non-violent resistance

British rule. He perfected the art of non-cooperation with unjust laws and developed a huge following. His influence was a vital factor in India's achievement of independence in 1949.

W.E.B. Du Bois (1868–1963)

W.E.B. Du Bois was another man who devoted his life to fighting inequality among races. Born in Massachusetts, Du Bois came from a mixed race family with African, French and Dutch forebears.

Du Bois was an African-American scholar, educator and activist. He was well educated, gaining degrees in Nashville, Tennessee, then at Harvard University. He was the first African-American to gain a Harvard doctorate and his thesis on the history of the slave trade is still considered one of the most detailed on the subject. Du Bois became a university teacher at Atlanta University and throughout his long career wrote many influential books and articles about African-Americans and their place in US society. He was a great supporter of black nationalism and of civil rights for African-Americans. Du Bois became the head of an organisation called the National Association for Advancement of Colored People (NAACP).

His work provided much of the thinking that underpinned the civil rights movement in the United States in the 1950s and 1960s.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.8

'An eye for an eye makes the whole world blind.'

- 1 Evaluate what this quote tells you about Gandhi's attitude to violence as a method of gaining political goals.
- 2 Explain the idea of 'an eye for an eye'.
- 3 Research recent examples of 'civil disobedience' as a means of protest.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.9

Gandhi's theories of non-violence and anti-racism have inspired countless people from former South African President Nelson Mandela to US President Barack Obama, civil rights activist Dr Martin Luther King, Burmese political leader Aung San Suu Kyi and even Beatles band member John Lennon. Hold a class debate arguing whether 'non-violence is more effective in achieving independence than violence'.

Egalitarianism: a key progressive idea

Now that we have examined a wide range of influential thinkers stretching from the period of the Enlightenment to the late nineteenth century, let us return to one idea in more detail: **egalitarianism**. This idea was a key driver of the American and French revolutions, as well as a slave uprising in Haiti. One of the features of the last decade of the eighteenth century (the 1790s) was the strong radical impulse fuelled by both Enlightenment ideas and the revolutionary fervour of the times. Much of that radicalism focused on the equality and liberty of the individual.

egalitarianism the idea that everyone should have equal rights and opportunities

As we have seen, the Industrial Revolution gave rise to major economic and technological changes and to the rapid growth of capitalism.

Vast inequalities of wealth led concerned people to argue that such gaps between people's lives could not be justified. Some should not be rich while others endured grinding poverty. Nor could a form of government be justified that only allowed certain rich or noble white men to have a say in making laws for all citizens. Working men and women read the works of Tom Paine and others and joined associations such as the Chartists, hoping to bring about peaceful change by parliamentary means. While the Chartists sought more parliamentary representation for men, many women also argued that they also should have the vote. Some read the works of writers such as Mary Wollstonecraft and Marie Olympe de Gouges. Non-white populations and colonised people began to question their place and to assert their rights.

Significant activists began anti-racist movements.

Monarchy was increasingly questioned, although the constitutional monarchy of Britain was seen as more representative than the French monarchy.

Privilege by birth or ability?

Overall, the idea that birth status would determine one's future life pattern was challenged. Should the son or daughter of a rich family always be rich while the children of paupers were destined for poverty? Would black people always be considered inferior? Many Christians sang the hymn 'All things bright and beautiful', which contains the verse in Source 13.15.

The rich man in his castle,
The poor man at his gate
He made them, high or lowly
And ordered their estate.

Source 13.15 An excerpt from *All Things Bright and Beautiful* by Cecil F Alexander (1848)

This seemed to imply that one's position in life was God-given and could not be changed – that God 'ordered their estate', high or low. Yet many felt that education could change that ordering.

They disputed the notion that only certain rich people could hold high office, or be guaranteed certain careers. The radical idea that a career could be based on ability or merit, rather than birth or skin colour – which we now take for granted – took root. Many people worked hard to educate themselves and their children so that they could compete for better jobs and raise themselves from poverty. Education was a critical element in bringing about this change.

Education – a progressive idea?

Before the Enlightenment, the church controlled education and what was taught. One of the outcomes of Enlightenment thinking was that religious and general education were separated.

Modern subjects as well as the classics (Latin and Greek) were introduced. The influential Swiss thinker, Jean-Jacques Rousseau, for example, advocated radical new approaches such as 'natural education' for children and the creation of a unified national system of education. Such a national system was actually put into place in Poland in the late 1700s. Both of these developments we take for granted now.

Writers who advocated equality for all, such as Thomas Paine and Mary Wollstonecraft, saw education as a vital plank in preparing all individuals as citizens of their society. At New Lanark, Robert Owen provided schools for children and evening classes for adults. By the end of the nineteenth century, most Western countries provided compulsory elementary (primary) schooling for children, although attendance was often sporadic and children could be excused from classes to help families at busy times.

In Australia, as elsewhere, a national schooling system was established in the 1870s and 1880s that aimed to give all children a level of elementary schooling (eventually, after World War II, there was increased access to secondary schools). In the late nineteenth and early twentieth century, a very small percentage went on to universities after completing their school certificate. Throughout the twentieth century, the age of leaving school was gradually raised.

Further, an increasing proportion of successful school finishers went on to university, so that today about 26% of the population has a university degree. In the group aged 20–24 years in early twenty-first-century Australia, more women than men were studying for a university degree. In theory, all girls and boys, no matter

what their background, can now experience an equal education and be equally prepared for a range of jobs and professions. This is the fulfillment of the egalitarian dream for education.

RESEARCH 13.2

Using the library or the internet, investigate Rousseau's idea of natural education.

- 1 What are some of its features?
- 2 Do we draw on any of Rousseau's educational ideas today?
- 3 Did Rousseau's educational ideas apply equally to boys and girls?
- 4 Do all girls and boys in contemporary Australia share absolutely equal educational opportunities? (Consider factors such as different types of schools, where people live, different family circumstances and Indigenous versus non-Indigenous students.)
- 5 Why might education be considered a progressive idea?



Slavery and the rights of Indigenous people

The struggle to abolish slavery was another legacy of Enlightenment thinking. If everyone was created free and equal, how could slavery be condoned?

In 1833, after a lengthy battle, Britain abolished slavery in most of its empire, freeing 800 000 slaves. The movement to abolish slavery was led by a group of devout English Christians whose consciences led them to seek social justice. They formed networks with politicians and journalists to further their cause.

This group was also concerned that indigenous people in the new colonies were not being treated fairly. They were particularly troubled about the way Aboriginal people had been mistreated in the Australian colonies of Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania), New South Wales and Western Australia. Thus they insisted that in drawing up the 1836 Letters Patent (the founding documents) for the settlement of South Australia, Aboriginal people's 'incontrovertible right to their own soil' (that is, their property rights) should be acknowledged. Sadly this did not occur. Until the famous Mabo judgement of 1992, Aboriginal land ownership, or 'native title', was unacknowledged throughout Australia, although some states and territories (specifically the Northern Territory and South Australia) had passed Land Rights legislation.

In the United States, slavery was abolished in 1865 after a bitter war between the southern and northern states of the union. The movement to free slaves was one of the most successful progressive campaigns in history, achieving its goal in a relatively short time. The

struggle for Indigenous people to win property rights, however, is an ongoing and difficult battle.



The women's movement and the struggle for equal rights

Another of the key claims of egalitarianism was for equality between men and women. As outlined earlier, women such as Mary Wollstonecraft and Marie Olympe de Gouges were writing on this topic from the 1790s. There were others before them, but there was a long struggle before the idea of equal rights for men and women gained acceptance to the degree that has been achieved now. In this section we discuss some of that struggle, then consider the impact of the campaign for women's rights – or feminism – in Australia.

Some of the progressive movements covered in this chapter included the equality of men and women in their claims. During the French Revolution, demands were made for women's rights as citizens. In early-nineteenth-century England, followers of Robert Owen, known as **Owenites**, made equality of the sexes a central aim of the transformed society they sought. Chartists, while not as radical as the Owenites, numbered many women among their members. Initially they included women's right to vote in their demands, but later dropped that issue as they felt it would impede progress towards gaining all men's right to vote.

Much more radical were the British Owenites (1820s to 1845). They were socialists who had some decidedly controversial views on relations between women and

Owenite the term given to a follower of Robert Owen's movement of an idealistic, socialist society

men. Owenites believed in a new world where all classes and both sexes would be equal. They claimed to be producing a New Science of Society. Compare their ideals of 'cooperative communitarianism' with Australian society today:

- communal living – eating, working, socialising to be undertaken communally
- the abolition of private housework
- childcare and education to be the collective responsibility of the community
- civil marriage
- accessible divorce
- birth control
- support for women's political involvement
- the right of women to speak in public
- cooperative organisation of work.

The Owenite movement did not survive after the 1840s, although a thread of their ideas persisted throughout the nineteenth century. It was a predominantly working-class socialist movement; one that envisaged the end of capitalism and the birth of a new classless, sexually equal society.

That society did not come to pass. The revivalist movement of the 1830s and 1840s, which reasserted Christian values, and the increasing strength of capitalism in mid-century England created a climate where Owenite ideas no longer flourished. However, feminism – the belief in equal rights for men and women – reappeared in a different form.

Historical thought

Before the 1870 *Married Women's Property Act* in Britain, women could not legally own their property, wages, inheritance or gifts. They were not considered to be legal persons. A similar *Married Women's Property Act* was passed in Australia in 1883.

Victorian feminism

While the Owenites wished for an ideal communal society, a group emerged in the 1850s and 1860s in Queen Victoria's England that was far more realistic and practical about the social transformation it wished to achieve. The changing role of women was a key factor in this group's concerns. Before the Industrial Revolution,

women had played a much larger role in the household: growing food, making clothing, washing, cleaning and cooking occupied much of women's time. The increasing tendency to mechanise production reduced women's tasks within the household. Some then demanded more meaningful occupations and an education to prepare for it. This new movement for equal rights was led by women, usually from comfortable middle-class families.

Their aims included:

- the right for women to own their own property
- the right to divorce
- the right to work in new expanding occupations, such as clerical work and teaching
- the right to an education equal to their male contemporaries
- the right to higher education
- the right to vote.

While earlier socialist movements had strongly supported the emancipation of women, Marxist socialists (followers of Karl Marx) placed far more emphasis on issues of social class.

Achievements

The women's movement is often referred to as the feminist movement, although that term was not used until the late nineteenth century. It was one of the major progressive movements of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Women's lives were transformed through the many changes and achievements of the women's movement. Men's lives also changed correspondingly, although not to the same extent.

These are some of the most important changes, which you can research further:

- Women gained the right to own their own property and wages.
- Women gained limited and more equal access to divorce.
- Women began to gain jobs in a greater number of areas.
- Girls gained access to primary education and in some cases secondary education.
- A few determined women gained access to universities.
- In some areas women gained limited access to birth control.
- Women gained the vote on terms equal to men.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.10

Imagine that you are a girl or boy aged 15 years and born in 1850 to a blacksmith father and a mother who takes in washing. You have five brothers and sisters. Write a diary entry of a day in your life in an English town or an Australian rural community.

Questions you may like to keep in mind while writing your diary entry include:

- Would you be likely to go to school?
- Would you be working and, if so, where?
- At what age would you expect to get married?
- What rights would you have to control your life?
- Would you be able to vote?
- Would you consider any of these options: joining an organisation to improve your life, migrating to another country or running away to sea?

Remember that the answers might be very different for boys and girls.

Responses to progressive ideas

Most progressive ideas have had to be fought for; for example, not everyone was happy with the claims made by the feminist movement.

While many women rallied to the fight for equal rights, some women felt that they should remain subordinate to their husbands; they believed that men and women had their appointed places in life – men in the public world and women within the private domain of the home. Men and women, they claimed, inhabited ‘separate spheres’. While some women were keen to take up new work opportunities, others thought that working women would undermine men’s jobs, or hurt their husband’s pride. Many men were worried that liberated wives would no longer look after their every need.

Leading clergy and churchmen fought strongly against women’s rights, arguing that God had created men and women for different purposes.

Opponents of women’s rights frequently wrote about feminists as ugly, bitter and unmarried, whereas in fact many supporters were attractive women, most were married and they often had families who supported their goals. Those seeking higher education

were deemed to be **‘bluestockings’**, a term that conjured up an eccentric and unattractive image. Some doctors wrote that education would ‘unsex’ women, detracting from their ability to bear children. Employers did not

bluestocking an insulting term for women who pursued higher learning in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries

want to consider giving women equal wages as they preferred to employ them very cheaply, arguing that most could be supported by their husbands. This was not always the case.

Large numbers of women had to work either through poverty or death of a partner, or as single women with no means of support.

The women’s movement in Australia

The women’s movement played a significant role in transforming women’s lives in Australia.

The new colonies inherited many of the ideas discussed in Britain. Some of the earliest convicts were political prisoners, who were jailed and transported for their radical ideas, such as the Irish convicts in Tasmania who fought their British rulers for a free Ireland. Some convicts had Chartist connections and brought those ideas to Australia, influencing, among others, miners at Eureka.

Others had been involved in the movement for women’s emancipation.

Women colonists kept closely in touch with ideas in England and the demands of those wanting equal rights for women were well known here. Many single women migrated to Australia and demanded the right to work. New opportunities were opening up in the growing colonies and, after Federation in 1901, in the states.

Women became teachers, nurses and employees in the developing state administrations. Newly developing

societies are often more open to change and in several areas in Australia women were ahead of much of Britain; for example, in gaining access to universities and in relation to the vote and the right to stand for parliament.

Higher education

From the 1860s onwards, many women fought for the right to an education similar to that of men.

With the introduction of universal, compulsory and free primary education, some girls did achieve that equality at elementary level. A small number went on to complete secondary education at either private girls' schools or the earliest state high schools. Some wished to attend university to obtain degrees and become teachers or doctors, or to join other professions. Some felt that higher education for its own sake was a desirable goal. Initially universities rejected women's pleas. They argued that university education would make women unattractive 'bluestockings'.

Alternatively, women might be flirtatious and distract young men from their studies. Overall, opponents argued, what would women do with a university degree? They would marry and have families and the degree would be 'wasted'. Others feared that women were seeking too much power.

Eventually women prevailed, supported by some male professors with ambitious daughters.

Historical thought

Women were not fully admitted to degrees at the University of Oxford until 1921, while the University of Cambridge held out until 1947. Women were admitted to degrees at certain Australian universities from 1881.

Additionally, some Australian universities did not always attract enough students: women could help to swell the ranks. And the new school systems needed well-trained teachers; accordingly, women were admitted to the universities of Adelaide, Melbourne and Sydney from the early 1880s. Now, in twenty-first-century Australia, women make up more than half of all university graduates.

Achieving the right to vote (women's suffrage)

From the time of the French revolution, some women wanted the right to be full citizens and to vote for an elected government. The Owenites, Chartists and many socialist and feminist groups all demanded this right throughout the nineteenth century. However, opposition was strong on many fronts. Some argued that men could represent their wives or daughters, while others feared that it might break up families if husbands and wives held differing political opinions. The strong belief that women's place was in the home and not in public life shaped much of the opposition. Yet, contrary to that belief, women were increasingly playing a part in the wider society – in the workplace and in voluntary organisations. A wide range of organisations petitioned parliament for that right, many arguing that women's voice in public life would ensure a better deal for women and children.



Source 13.16 *The Tired Eyes and Lined Faces of the Young Lady Bachelors of Arts*. This cartoon implies that higher education would ruin women's appearance.

Historical thought

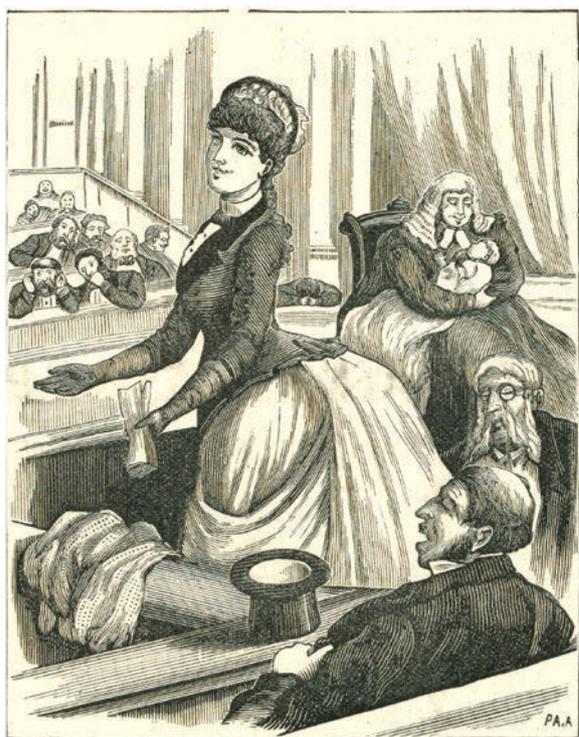
Did you know that in South Australia the Women's Christian Temperance Union collected 11 600 signatures on a petition supporting women's suffrage in 1894?

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.11

Search the internet for Prime Minister Julia Gillard’s ‘Inaugural Emily’s List Oration’ in Canberra on Tuesday 13 September 2011. Pick out any sentences in the speech that show her acknowledgement of what the women’s movement has done for her political career.

In 1894, South Australia became the first Australian self-governing colony to grant women the right to vote and to stand for parliament.

In 1902, that right was extended to all white Australian women. Australia had been beaten to the post by New Zealand, which gave women the vote in 1893, although it did not give women the right to stand for parliament. English women had to wait until 1918 for that right and then it was only extended to women over 30 years of age. In 1928, women gained full suffrage.



Source 13.17 This cartoon from Melbourne’s *Punch* magazine had the caption: ‘Some foolish people imagine our ladies will neglect their family duties. Quite a mistake.’ Note who is minding the baby.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.12

Copy and complete the following table.

Rights	Date achieved in Australia, UK and United States	Importance
Women should have the vote.		
Women should be admitted to universities.		
Women should be allowed to practise a profession (for example, to be a doctor, lawyer or engineer).		
Women should be able to own their own property.		

Long-term impacts of the women's movement

The long-term impacts of the struggle for women's rights in Australia are spectacular. Women can now vote, stand for parliament and even become the Prime Minister, as Julia Gillard has shown. We have had a female Governor-General, Quentin Bryce, and many other senior women politicians, business leaders and university professors. Women can join the army, become engineers and mechanics, and fly jet planes. Equal numbers of girls and boys finish school and go on to university. The hard-fought struggle for the right to birth control has revolutionised the Australian family. Women now usually wait longer before having babies – the average age at first birth is almost 30 years.

They also have fewer babies than in the past. The average completed family in Australia has fewer than

two children. Women have many more years in which to complete education and training, and to establish careers. They also often return to jobs and careers after their children are in childcare or at school. In theory men and women earn equal pay, although in practice this is rarely the case. Divorce is now available equally to men and women, and women can retain their own property and earnings. Both women and men can form legally accepted partnerships with same-sex partners.

Should we argue, then, that the women's movement has had its day, or that it is no longer necessary? Some women's groups are still concerned about a range of issues involving relations between males and females. There are concerns about violence towards women and also about how women and men can lead full lives as workers and parents without more assistance, such as an affordable childcare system.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 13.13

Choose several people to each play the part of a prominent thinker discussed in this chapter. Each 'thinker' may have a team to help them prepare their case and assemble their argument. Each 'thinker' has 5 minutes to convince the class as to why their ideas are still vitally important in modern Australia. A class vote will decide the winner.

RESEARCH 13.3

Use the internet or library to explore one of the following ideas in more detail:

- Darwinism
- nationalism
- imperialism and anti-colonialism (look at these together).

Be sure to research the major aspects of the movement you choose. Gather information about its place in our lives today. How much influence do you think the idea you have chosen has had on our contemporary world? Is this idea still controversial? Present your findings to the class orally.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- The Enlightenment was a key period for the modern world. Influential thinkers argued for the importance of human reason, turning away from superstition and the authority of religion and hereditary rulers.
- This new focus led to a flourishing of science. New technological developments fuelled the Industrial Revolution and a vast reorganisation of economic, social and political life. Maritime voyages of exploration opened up new opportunities for trade, imperial expansion and the growth of colonies.
- Influential writers championed the rights of the common man and women, arguing that everyone should have equal rights and opportunities: all should have the right to vote and to be represented in forms of parliamentary government. Several claimed education as a necessary ladder of opportunity, and the idea of a career based on ability rather than on birth took hold. Some advocated the equality of women with men.
- The American War of Independence and the French Revolution both championed republicanism and the end of hereditary privilege, and contributed to the idea of equality for all.
- Marx developed revolutionary ideas about socialism, building upon earlier collectivist ideals, while Charles Darwin's theory of evolution challenged religious thinking.
- By the early twentieth century, many progressive ideas had been put into practice globally: a wider

acceptance of the equality of all and of a scientific basis for humanity's development, along with universal education, the vote for men (and for women in New Zealand and South Australia) and a strong sense of natural rights.

- However, the rampant imperialism and colonisation of previous centuries left much work to be done by progressive anti-colonial and nationalist movements in the twentieth century.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Explain how the Chartists got their name.
- 2 Why was the French Revolution a turning point in European history?
- 3 The Industrial Revolution brought about major changes in English life. List the three changes that you consider to be important.
- 4 Mary Wollstonecraft was well known in the late eighteenth century, but her work was ignored in much of the nineteenth century. Why do you think this is?
- 5 People in Australia today have been influenced by many of the ideas and movements discussed in this chapter. Select two of the movements discussed. Why have they influenced Australia?
- 6 Evaluate whether Australians today are concerned about imperialism.



Source analysis

The representatives of the French people, organised as a National Assembly, believing that the ignorance, neglect, or contempt of the rights of man are the sole cause of public calamities and of the corruption of governments, have determined to set forth in a solemn declaration the natural, unalienable, and sacred rights of man, in order that this declaration, being constantly before all the members of the Social body, shall remind them continually of their rights and duties; in order that the acts of the legislative power, as well as those of the executive power, may be compared at any moment with the objects and purposes of all political institutions and may thus be more respected, and, lastly, in order that the grievances of the citizens, based hereafter upon simple and incontestable principles, shall tend to the maintenance of the constitution and redound to the happiness of all. Therefore the National Assembly recognises and proclaims, in the presence and under the auspices of the Supreme Being, the following rights of man and of the citizen:

Articles

- 1 Men are born and remain free and equal in rights. Social distinctions may be founded only upon the general good.
- 2 The aim of all political association is the preservation of the natural and imprescriptible rights of man. These rights are liberty, property, security, and resistance to oppression.
- 3 The principle of all sovereignty resides essentially in the nation. No body nor individual may exercise any authority which does not proceed directly from the nation.

Source 13.18 The Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen, approved by the National Assembly of France on 26 August 1789

Study Source 13.18 and answer the following questions:

- 1 What aspects of Enlightenment thinking can you find in this document?
- 2 Are these rights available to all people in all countries today? Can you describe two or three countries where such a document might still be revolutionary?
- 3 Some of the language in this document is dated by today's standards. Rewrite it using modern inclusive ideas and language – you may wish to expand the notion of rights from those listed in point 2.

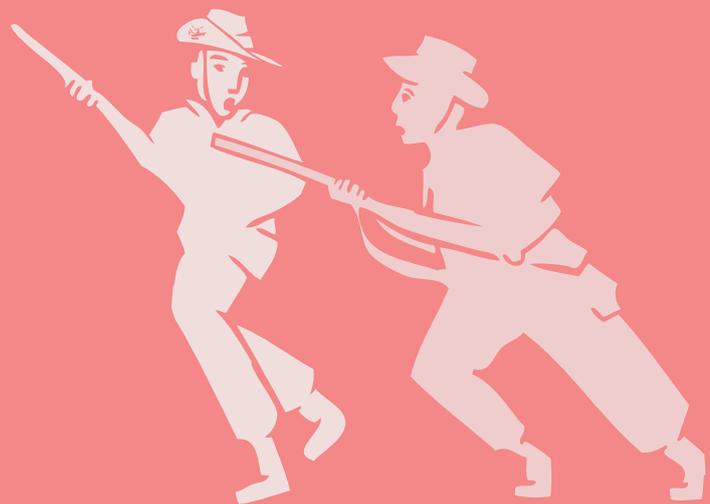
Extended-response question

Choose one particular progressive movement that you believe has shaped modern Australian society (for example, Chartism, nationalism, socialism or feminism). In several paragraphs describe the movement, how it developed, the way in which it still influences society today and what life in Australia would be like without this movement.



Depth study 2

Australia and Asia



14

Making a nation

Before you start

Main focus

In this chapter, we look at how Australia as a white settlement society originated, growing from a number of separate colonies to become a nation in 1901; and at the various groups of people that were part of that story.

Why it's relevant today

It is important that every nation, including Australia, has a clear picture of its origins. Decisions and events in the making of the Australian nation still influence our lives, beliefs and values today.

Inquiry questions

- How did white settlement proceed in Australia; and how did this impact upon Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander societies?
- What were the contributions of South Sea Islander, Chinese, Afghan and Japanese people to making the nation? Were these contributions valued?
- What was the nature of the political democracy that white Australians developed?
- How was Federation achieved in 1901 and what was Australian society like at this time?

Key terms

- Benevolent asylum
- Fire-stick farming
- Dispossession
- Kanaka
- Feminist
- Manhood suffrage

- Peerage
- Real wages
- Referendum
- Restricted property franchise
- Squatter

Significant individuals

- Abdul Wade
- Alfred Deakin
- Bessie Cameron
- Edward Gibbon Wakefield
- Henry Bourne Higgins
- Henry Parkes
- John Macarthur
- Lowe Kong Meng
- Peter Lalor

Let's begin

In 1788, there were approximately 750 000 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander inhabitants of Australia. The British became determined to seize control of their lands; this led to conflict, many deaths and economic and cultural dislocation. Convicts and free settlers built an economy based on cheap land and labour, wool and gold. The settlers wanted to make a new society that was democratic and socially equal for members of their own kind. They created a new nation of the southern seas, with greater rights and better welfare for white citizens, including women, than in Europe and other countries. But their political radicalism and nationalism was tinged with a powerful racism: Indigenous, South Sea Islander, Chinese, Afghan and other people that had helped to shape the nation were excluded from citizenship rights.

Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS	WORLD EVENTS
1700	
1788 Britain begins to colonise Australia	1789–92 French Revolution
1789 A smallpox epidemic kills 2000 Aboriginal people	
1800	
1831 Land auctions begin to replace free land grants	1832 First <i>Reform Act</i> is passed in Britain
1850s Gold is discovered in New South Wales and Victoria	1850–64 Taiping Rebellion, China
1855 Victoria restricts immigration of Chinese people	1861–65 US Civil War
1856 Men gain the vote in South Australia	1862 Anti-Chinese legislation is passed in California
1860s Selector Acts are passed in Australian colonies	1867 Britain enfranchises male urban workers in England and Scotland
1894 Women gain the vote in South Australia	1882 <i>Chinese Exclusion Act</i> is passed in the United States
1897 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander segregation legislation is passed in Queensland	1884 British male rural workers gain the vote
	1885 <i>Chinese Immigration Act</i> is passed in Canada
	1893 Women in New Zealand gain the vote
	1898 The Boxer Rebellion in China
1900	
1901 Australia's states are joined in a federation	1914–18 World War I
1901 <i>Immigration Restriction Act</i> is introduced	
1902 White women across Australia gain the vote, but Indigenous people are excluded	
1906 Last convicts are pardoned	





DEPTH STUDY 2 AUSTRALIA AND ASIA

Source 14.1 The Australian cities and towns discussed in this chapter

14.1 Extension of settlement and contact

Spread of convict settlement

White settlement in many parts of Australia began with a combination of convict labour and military supervision. Convicts and soldiers were the first inhabitants to arrive

colony a settlement formed in a conquered territory

and lay the bases for British civil society in every Australian **colony** (except for Western Australia, where convicts arrived later, and South Australia, which received no convicts), as well as the Northern Territory. Military officers also planned every capital city except for Darwin.

Sydney, Hobart, Brisbane and Melbourne began with small convict settlements. Sydney was the centre of the convict system from 1788 until the Hyde Park Convict Barracks closed in 1848.

Around 80 000 transported men and women were sent there. Hobart continued receiving convicts until 1853. Brisbane was originally the site of the Moreton Bay convict settlement, which was the harshest mainland centre for repeat offenders between 1824 and 1842. Melbourne, which is rarely thought of as having convict origins, was actually preceded by several attempts to form a penal station: near Sorrento in 1802; at Westernport Bay in 1826–27; and then from 1837 in the Melbourne region itself. Later, between 1844 and 1849, a further 2500 ex-prisoners (called ‘exiles’) were sent directly from Britain to Port Phillip.

Although Perth was founded by free migration from 1829, economic failure led to the introduction of convicts between 1850 and 1868. As a result, such important structures as Government House, the Town Hall and Perth Boys School were built by supervised convict labour.

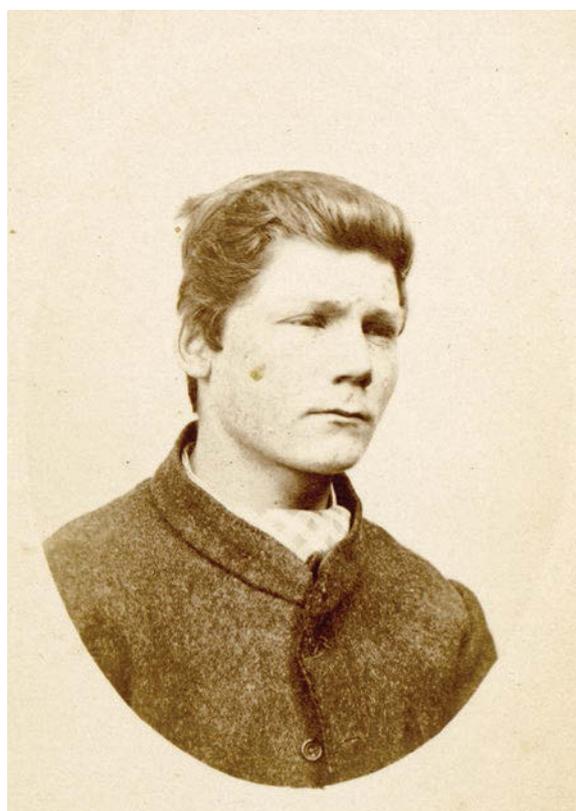
iron gang a party of convict workers undergoing further punishment by being chained together

Australia’s early road system in many regions was constructed by **iron gangs** of convict workers.

By 1829, convicts had completed 150 miles of the road south from Sydney, 120 miles of the road west to Bathurst and a connecting road north to Newcastle. Between 1850 and 1862, Western Australian convicts cleared, laid, drained and repaired hundreds of miles of roadway; built around 240 bridges and several public buildings; sank wells; and constructed fences, jetties, tramways and a sea wall. Additionally, convict workers, supplied to private employers across New South Wales and Tasmania, pioneered the earliest pastoral and agricultural industries.

Statistical work has now shown that convict workers possessed many skills essential for the task of nation-building. They were really a cross-section of the British and Irish working class and had similar levels of industrial capacity and literacy. They represented more than 1000 different occupations; however, many were trained as tailors, tanners, blacksmiths, bakers and boot-makers, which made them more suited to city life than a rural existence as shepherds and farm labourers. Around 4000 of the convicts were from non-British origins and 1000 or so of them were non-white, sent from regions all over the British Empire.

Around half of the 24 700 females transported were originally domestic servants. In such centres as Hobart, George Town, Launceston and Ross (Tasmania); Newcastle, Port Macquarie, Parramatta and Bathurst (New South Wales); and Brisbane Town and Eagle Farm (in what became Queensland), they were confined in institutions called ‘female factories’. Several of these became Australia’s first manufacturing centres; for example, in 1843 the Cascades Female Factory near Hobart employed 700 women for textile and blanket weaving, needlework and laundry.



Source 14.2 Portrait of a Port Arthur convict, 1874

Historically, embarrassment over the nation's penal origins has hidden the convicts' important foundational role in establishing British settlement in Australia. Modern research is rectifying this.

Historical thought

The last transported convicts in Australia were six men pardoned in 1906 by Prime Minister Alfred Deakin. The longest surviving ex-convict was Samuel Speed, who died at the age of 95 in 1939, on the brink of World War II.

White settlers and Indigenous occupants: first contacts

Contact between Europeans and **Indigenous** Australians has been occurring for a surprisingly long time. The first

Indigenous Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people

recorded meetings took place more than 400 years ago in 1606, when Dutch mariner Willem Jantz and his small crew encountered members of the Wik people on western Cape York. Several months later, Breton sailor Luis Baez de Torres and his Spanish crew contacted Torres Strait Islander people further to the north. Both meetings were violent ones: the Wik remember the Dutch appearing like 'devils' on 'a big mob of logs' and shooting their people – some of the

Dutch were speared in turn – while de Torres' men began kidnapping the Torres Strait Islander people.

The first known British contact was made with the Badi people in 1699 by English pirate William Dampier at Lagrange Bay on the northwest coast of Western Australia. Dampier is on record as calling the Aborigines 'the miserablest people in the world'. It now seems that Dampier did not write these words. His publisher probably inserted them to spice up Dampier's book for its British audience.

The reactions of white explorers and colonists to Indigenous people, however, were often negative. Britons and Europeans regarded their own cultural and technological achievements – and thus themselves – very highly. They saw a lack of material possessions among Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people as evidence of inferiority. Furthermore, as the British were intent on seizing their lands, it was not in their interests to give a good account of their Indigenous hosts.

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people, in turn, often took the sudden arrival of these strange white beings as evidence of a spiritual visitation. They saw the whites as 'ghosts' or reincarnated ancestors. The potential for cultural misunderstanding was therefore both strong and mutual, and often led to unforeseen or tragic outcomes.

Many of the early encounters took place at penal stations. In such circumstances, the new arrivals were substantially outnumbered by the Indigenous people surrounding them. They often felt their vulnerability intensely. Aboriginal people recoiled from the spectacle of public floggings and executions, which they saw as primitive and barbaric. They also wondered why so



Source 14.3 White officials from Port Jackson with a detachment of soldiers approach an Aboriginal encampment at Botany Bay (1790)

many of these spirits had come among them and how long they intended to stay. Concerns and apprehension grew as the newcomers' presence put increasing stress on the available natural resources.

First encounters led on to more complex relations that fluctuated between conflict and **conciliation**. At

conciliation establishing goodwill

Sydney Cove in 1788, Cadigal and Gayimai people danced for and with male and female convicts and Royal Marines. Where language difficulties hampered communication, body language, expressed as dance, helped to improve it. On the other hand, sailors travelling with French explorer La Perouse, after building a fortification at Botany Bay, opened fire on the Eora in late February 1788. Convicts, in turn, were attacked by the Eora in early March. And so the saga of interracial colonial violence began with spearings and shootings, kidnappings and reprisal raids, as initial friendly relations eroded.

By April 1789, a devastating epidemic of what was probably smallpox had broken out among the Eora,

Historical thought

The Bedaigal and Gweagal people of Botany Bay called the First Fleet arrivals Berriwagal ('People of the Clouds').

who had no immunity to exotic diseases. Around 2000 Aboriginal people perished horribly, making this the most dramatic event in early Australian contact history. The origin of this outbreak has never been satisfactorily explained.

Free settlement

Alongside convict transportation between 1788 and 1868, an increasing number of free settlers arrived. They were mostly English, Scottish, Irish and Welsh, but also included smaller minorities of Europeans (especially Germans and Scandinavians). They had voluntarily decided to sail to the Australian colonies hoping to improve their lifestyles and material circumstances. It was an adventurous move, involving one of the longest sea voyages in the world, taking between 3 and 5 months to complete. Crowded shipboard conditions varied from tolerable to terrible, making the journey a lottery in terms of comfort and survival. No one quite knew what to expect at the end of it.

By the 1820s, only around 1000 free migrants had arrived. Though small in number, they were large in impact for they were wealthy people who were given land grants and batches of convict labourers to work their new estates free of cost. The more money they had, the more land and convicts they were given by the colonial government. These gentlemen settlers were usually agricultural **entrepreneurs** who developed farms and the first sheep stations around Sydney and across Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania), sometimes even bringing their own workforces; during the 1840s these included bonded workers from India, Melanesia and China.

entrepreneur one who undertakes an enterprise with a chance of profit or loss

From 1831, however, land auctions took the place of grants. The money raised was used to assist the migration of poorer workers who could not afford their own passages. The new scheme was called 'systematic colonisation'. Under its regulations, 1.75 million acres of land were sold, helping to introduce 100 000 migrant workers by 1850, creating a colonial working class.

Most of the migrants came from the rural areas of southern England, the Irish countryside and the Scottish highlands. Convicts, by comparison, were often from large urban areas, such as London and Lancashire. By the 1850s, more than half the Australian population had been born in Britain.

It was planned to introduce migrants in roughly the same ethnic proportions as they existed in Britain, but this proved difficult to accomplish. More Irish (28%) migrated than was intended, and fewer Welsh (under



Source 14.4 South Australians gather at the Glenelg Foundation Tree to commemorate the establishment of the colony there on 28 December 1836.

2%). The English predominated at around 55%, while 15% were Scots. The higher Irish proportion led to strong religious tensions between Catholics and Protestants that persisted well into the twentieth century.

South Australia was the only colony begun entirely by free migration. It was planned by the same man who organised the 'systematic colonisation' scheme, Edward Gibbon Wakefield.

Wakefield had served time in prison for abducting a 15-year-old female heir, so he knew something about what it meant to be a convict. But he was more concerned that the sale and distribution of what he referred to as 'wasteland of the Crown' (conveniently ignoring Aboriginal ownership) be used to produce a new kind of social order, with nicely graded divisions of wage labourers, middle-class townspeople and prosperous landowners.

Land in South Australia was controlled by a Board of Commissions rather than the Governor (as in New South Wales) and it sold for around 250% of its price in Sydney. By December 1836, the new colony was proclaimed with high hopes that it would not follow the same haphazard path as the Swan River settlement in Western Australia.

Yet its early migrants were also discouraged by the searing heat and parched lands that were so different from their cool and green countryside in Britain.

Historical thought

The cost of a steerage passage to Australia during the 1840s was eight times higher than one to Canada or the United States.

Wool and gold

Prosperity in the Australian colonies was largely due to the production of fine merino wool for the clothing mills of England and the discovery of gold.

Next in economic importance were beef and sugar. Gold rushes could produce sudden, soaring successes, but could then peter out until the next big find. Taken together, the products of **pastoralism** – wool, meat, hides and **tallow** – were a more dependable, ongoing financial prospect.

The pastoral industry's origins are both epic and controversial: on the one hand are vast, overland treks of cattle and sheep, great sagas of endurance, and

memorable struggles against drought, flood and fire. On the other, however, are less admirable struggles against imperial and colonial law, a monopoly over huge parcels of land and extended conflicts with Indigenous people.

The pastoral industry was established by the early 1800s, after former soldier John Macarthur separated merino sheep from the rest of his flock to produce a superior wool clip. Macarthur was granted an estate of more than 4000 hectares where he and his wife, Elizabeth, extended their experiments. By the early 1830s, others were moving beyond 'the Limits of Location' in New South Wales (that is, the 20 counties of authorised white settlement around Sydney) and illegally occupying Crown land. Some were ex-convicts, but all were called '**squatters**' – a word used in the West Indies to describe former slaves 'squatting' without permission on marginal lands. Wealthier landlords followed them, often seizing hundreds of square kilometres of territory. But the name 'squatter' stuck.

Throughout the following decades, squatters played an extended cat-and-mouse game with officials from Gippsland to the Darling Downs, attempting to evade licence fees and a growing amount of regulation. They regarded attempts to make them pay more than nominal rents for their enormous landholdings as 'a nuisance that should not be endured'. By 1844, they were even threatening armed resistance. Governments argued they were in 'systematic violation of the law', while city-based movements to 'unlock the land' from the squatters' grasp so that small farming could advance, demanded impatiently: 'Should Australia be a sheep-walk forever?' But the pastoralists' powerful worldview usually prevailed.

When a gold rush began at Ophir, near Orange and then at Sofola on the Turon River in New South Wales in mid-1851, it started a colonial frenzy that would ensure an end to convict transportation. Exile to a gold rush hardly seemed a punishment! Populations exploded across Victoria, New South Wales and, eventually, Queensland and Western Australia. Great wealth was generated among the fortunate; democratic principles were advanced and social change was accelerated. Social disorder also increased as settled class relations were upended.

Gold discoveries at Ballarat, Mount Alexander and Bendigo Creek expanded Victoria's population fourfold in 3 years. The rush would help create 'Marvellous Melbourne', one of the great cities of the British Empire. But it also created social and political turmoil.

Miners paid high fees for their tiny claims in comparison with the squatters' low rents for their enormous holdings. Miners had no votes and pastoralists

squatter an Australian settler who ran sheep or cattle on large tracts of land without the permission of the government

pastoralism the raising of sheep and cattle

tallow animal fat that is melted down to make soap and candles

often had several. Resentment grew. Heavy-handed policing of miners evading payment led to disturbances and uprisings, the largest and most important of which was at the Eureka field near Ballarat in 1854. The outcome was a military victory for the Crown but a

moral one for the miners. Republican sentiments were expressed and a new flag – the Southern Cross – was flown. Around 34 miners were killed and wounded by soldiers and police, but Melbourne jurors refused to convict 13 ringleaders for treason.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.1

- 1 Recount how the wool industry developed in the Australian colonies.
- 2 Explain why pastoralists were called 'squatters'.
- 3 Determine why pastoralists' early land-taking activities were considered illegal.
- 4 Assess why pastoralists resisted official control.
- 5 Research when the gold rushes began. Was this the first gold discovered in Australia?
- 6 Describe how the gold rushes led to democratic reform.
- 7 Analyse how socially disruptive the gold rushes were.

White settlers and Indigenous occupants: the moving frontier

Among white settler colonies, Australia was unique in failing originally to recognise any form of Indigenous land rights or to have entered into any treaty obligations with the original inhabitants since that time. This decision was based upon three legal fictions. First, in terms of property rights, land was judged to be unoccupied (that is, *res nullius* or *terra nullius*) and thus simply there for the taking by the British Crown. Second, it was decided that Indigenous people were not members of distinct and separate societies that were being trespassed on, but rather were part of the arriving

dispossession taking a people's land or dislodging or removing them from their territory

society itself: that is, theoretically they were British subjects. This meant that any resistance they offered to their **dispossession** was not viewed as a legitimate defence of territory, but rather as a criminal act of disorder

and rebellion. Further, most citizens' rights – such as the right to seek legal redress, give evidence or defend oneself in court – were initially withheld.

These two positions led logically to the third: that the territory of Australia had not been invaded and conquered by the British incomers, but rather settled in a relatively peaceful and orderly fashion. Settlers' struggles were predominantly seen as being with the land itself – with fire, flood, drought or insect plagues – rather than with its human inhabitants. This

interpretation of events had become commonplace by the early twentieth century.

The real situation, however, was very different from these legal constructions. Around 500 to 600 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander 'First Nations' – spread across the entire Australian mainland, within the Torres Strait and in Tasmania – had been in full possession of the landmass for probably 50 millennia or more. They had a strong sense of their territorial sovereignty and were quite prepared, in most instances, to defend this with force. They had left their mark on the landscape in multiple ways. Most significantly, they had created the lush grasslands so attractive to white pastoralists with their flocks and herds by a continual process of **fire-stick farming**. The land was far from an uninhabited one: there were probably around 750 000 inhabitants when the first 1080 Britons arrived.

fire-stick farming environmental management to create regeneration and grasslands by controlled burning

So the British arrivals were not simply transposing themselves across the globe into an open and waiting land. They were actually imposing themselves upon long-established and well-functioning social orders of hunter-gatherer people. They were taking everything, conceding nothing and behaving very differently from new migrants arriving in Australia today.

The first penal stations were relatively small and stationary. Yet the huge pastoral advances and the large population influxes that came with the mineral rushes, along with all the inroads made by farmers, timber-getters, fishermen and townspeople, transformed everything. The frontiers of contact became rapidly



Source 14.5 Native Mounted Police, Rockhampton, 1864

moving, land-hungry and highly contested zones. In most regions, there were numerous incidents of frontier violence and massacres, resulting in heavy casualties on both sides.

These difficult origins have become a highly controversial aspect of modern historical research. It is hard to arrive at an accurate figure of the number of British, European, Asian and Melanesian incomers who were killed and wounded in the struggle. It is even harder to determine the considerably higher Aboriginal casualty rate. Attacks, ambushes, clashes and massacres of Aboriginal people were sometimes concealed and the actual numbers killed each time rarely recorded. Scenes of individual or group murders of Aboriginal people were only occasionally treated as crime scenes, and the law itself was slow to intervene on their behalf.

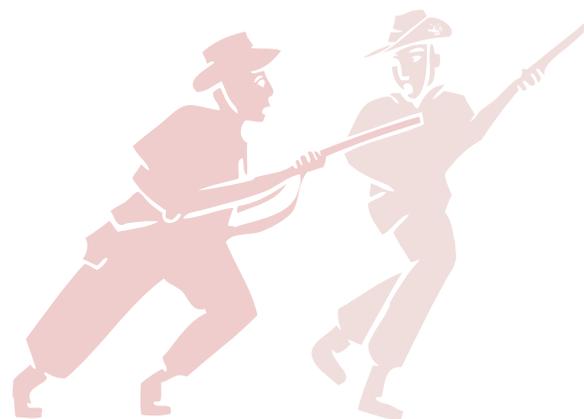
Along with private bands of settlers, often police and military-style forces were themselves directly involved in destroying Aboriginal communities.

So our detailed understanding of events is often clouded by lack of precise documentation.

Available records, however, convey a strong impression of widespread destruction, lasting from the 1780s to the 1930s across most Australian regions. Land dispossession was the central act of violence in this process and from it all the devastating effects of imposed disease and mayhem flowed: epidemics and aggression, the taking of Indigenous children, sexual and labour exploitation of Indigenous women, labour exploitation of Indigenous men, the destruction of Indigenous cultures and languages, and the general disintegration of Indigenous societies. It is one of Australia's largest stories and one of its most tragic.

Historical thought

Squads of young Aboriginal men were taken from other regions, armed with rifles, mounted on horseback and placed under white military discipline. Called Native Police, they were used against other Aboriginal societies by colonial governments in Victoria, New South Wales, Queensland and South Australia.



RESEARCH 14.1

Prepare an account of frontier relations in one of the following regions:

- Adelaide hinterland
- Cape York Peninsula
- Cardwell district
- Central Tasmania
- Gippsland region
- Gulf of Carpentaria
- Hawkesbury River district
- Kimberley district
- New England region
- Roper River region
- South-western Australia
- The Darling Downs
- Torres Strait.

You can also select your own region of Australia for analysis. Present your account to the class orally.

Australia approaches nationhood: the 1890s

The 1890s was one of Australia's most difficult decades. It began with enormous strikes in the shipping, mining and pastoral industries from 1890 to 1896. These were accompanied by a serious economic depression, beginning in early 1892 and continuing, with little relief, into the new century.

investment the commitment of money or capital with the aim of gaining a profitable return

During the 1880s, the Australian colonies had been a leading field of British **investment**.

Australians, per head of population, were more heavily in debt to Britain than anywhere else in the world. By the 1890s, there was a massive withdrawal of British funds to the gold and diamond mines of the Transvaal in South Africa, bringing the local economy to

its knees. The building industry, most land companies and many of the major banks collapsed. This slump was deepened later in the decade by what became known as 'the Great Federation Drought', lasting from 1898 until 1904–05.

Over this 15-year period, migration and overseas investment almost ceased. There was massive unemployment as the economy shrank by one-third.

In the countryside, great **privation** existed. Sheep and cattle numbers fell by more than half. To make matters worse, two thoughtlessly introduced species, rabbits and prickly pear cactus, were ravaging the bush. Rabbits had spread from Victoria across New South Wales and into Queensland and Western Australia. Dust storms followed in their wake. By World War I, the prickly pear had overrun 9 million hectares of Queensland and New South Wales.

privation lack of life's necessities



Source 14.6 Mounted police troopers in Melbourne in 1893 await the approach of unemployed workers marching to protest against the evictions of families unable to pay their rent during the 1890s Depression.

The one bright spot was the success of the Australian mining industry. The 1890s was its best decade to date. Australia became the world's largest producer of gold, and mineral exports outstripped wool. The Western Australian gold belt around Coolgardie-Kalgoorlie, sourced in mid-1893, was largely responsible for this success, but other centres – such as Charters Towers in Queensland, Broken Hill in New South Wales, and Ballarat and Bendigo in Victoria – remained in full production and helped to create some of Australia's largest inland towns.

By Federation in 1901, there were 3773801 non-Aboriginal Australians. Most had now been born in Australia (though of British origin) and were spread thinly over a vast landmass, roughly the same size as the United States. Although they liked to picture themselves romantically as 'bushmen', Australians by the 1890s actually formed the most urbanised society on earth, mostly clustering near the coastline in six capital cities.

Census figures give only a rough estimation of the number of surviving Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people at this time, which was somewhere in the range of 67000 to 90000. This indicates a devastating population fall from an estimated 750000 at first contact

in 1788. White Australians concluded that such numbers were in irreversible decline, and Aboriginal people were cast as 'a dying race'. Few observers, however, wished to take any responsibility for this. Instead, it was argued by both scientist and average citizen that the decline was simply 'a fact of nature' about which little could be done. 'Inferior races', it was thought, must 'fade away' in the face of the impact of the 'superior' British racial type. Aboriginal people became wards of the state, often secluded on reserves and mission stations, and stripped of most citizen rights and public dignity.

Historical thought

Queensland from 1897 provided the model for the harsh systems of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander control that were later established in Western Australia, South Australia and the Northern Territory, where most of the surviving Aboriginal people lived.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.2

- 1 Compare why pastoralism was doing so badly and mining was doing so well in the 1890s.
- 2 Discuss why there was so much working class discontent.
- 3 Identify why rabbits and prickly pear were introduced into the colonies.
- 4 Explain why Australians liked to think of themselves as bushmen when they mostly lived in cities.
- 5 Assess why the rate of Aboriginal population decline was so dramatic.
- 6 Examine why a racial 'solution' of segregated Aboriginal reserves and missions was adopted.

14.2 Experiences of non-Europeans in Australia

During the nineteenth century, Europeans took up the idea that they were superior to people from non-European backgrounds. The idea of 'race' and supposed racial differences in character became more important at this time. A number of people who came to live in Australia were from non-European backgrounds. Because of the racial prejudices, which grew among Australians of European backgrounds, life could be very difficult for South Sea Islander, Chinese, Afghan, Japanese and Indian people, among others, who lived and worked in Australia before 1901. Today we

recognise that they made important contributions to Australia and can be seen as pioneers of modern, multicultural Australian society.

South Sea Islanders in Australia

Around 60000 South Sea Islanders came to Queensland and northern New South Wales between the 1860s and 1904. Those who came to Queensland in the 1860s and 1870s were usually captured by unscrupulous



Source 14.7 South Sea Islander men, women and children plant cane under the supervision of European overseers.

slave traders and taken from their islands in the Pacific. Christian missionaries and others were shocked by the cruel treatment meted out to the Islanders and urged the Queensland and the British governments to end this slave trade.

Some efforts were made to regulate the trade with the passing of the *Polynesian Labourers Act 1868* and the *Pacific Labourers Act 1880*. Conditions improved very slowly.

The first arrivals had to learn some English.

Distressed and angry to have been taken forcibly from their homes and families, they found the climate in Queensland very difficult and had little resistance to diseases such as smallpox, measles, dysentery, pneumonia and tuberculosis. Many could not cope with the different food.

They had to work long hours in harsh conditions, clearing dense tropical scrub to plant sugar cane. They hoed the cane and caught cane grubs. Later they harvested the cane, cutting it down with a sharp knife. For this arduous work, they were paid only £6 a year and were given some clothes and perhaps some accommodation.

Employers were careless about the health and working conditions of South Sea Islander people.

An average of 50 in every 1000 died each year in Queensland. The worst year was 1884, when the death rate for Islander men in the prime of life was 147 per 1000. The comparable rate for European males was 9 or 10 per 1000. The Islanders were most vulnerable when they first arrived in Queensland.

During the later decades, Islander people had a better understanding of life and work in Queensland. Some were eager to come to Queensland in order to be able to take back goods such as axes, clothes and guns

to improve their lives and their status in their home community.

Some returned a second or third time to work in Queensland, working under an indenture for 3 years: their employer had to pay them, clothe them, provide medical care and arrange for their return at the end of the contract. Those who re-enlisted for indenture usually fared better than those who were on their first trip to Australia.

Sid Ober of Hervey Bay in Queensland was interviewed in the 1970s about the experiences of his father, Futinaruru, who had first come to Queensland in the 1880s, returning to Aoba, in the New Hebrides (now Vanuatu) at the end of his indenture. After 6 months he came back. He had explained this return to his son:



Source 14.8 South Sea Islander women work at Hambledon Plantation, Cairns, in about 1890. Their European overseer is on horseback at the rear.

'Oh, when you get a bit of Queensland, you sort of get it in your blood. When you see the schooners out at sea in full sail coming in, oh, it gives you the urge. You want to go again. So I came out again.' Re-enlisting workers often negotiated for better wages – up to £12 a year. Some South Sea Islanders decided to stay on in Queensland at the end of their contracts and these time-expired workers could earn up to £23 a year, which was an improvement, but nothing like the £30 to £50 per annum paid to European labourers.

Some time-expired Islanders worked as fishermen or gardeners. A few bought small landholdings to farm where they could raise a family. Peter Mussing bought a farm of two or three acres (about 1 hectare) near Murwillumbah in New South Wales. His daughter Faith Bandler recalled a happy childhood there.

New and old beliefs and customs

South Sea Islander people could supplement their diet by hunting with bows and arrows. They liked to cook taro and sweet potato in underground stone ovens, but also ate corned beef and damper like many people in Queensland. They carried on traditional religious beliefs such as ancestral shrines as well as adopting Christianity.

Thus the thatched chapel on Farleigh plantation near Mackay resounded with hymn singing every Sunday.

Racial discrimination and intolerance

kanaka a disparaging term for a South Sea Islander brought to Australia to work; the word is derived from the Melanesian term *kanak*, meaning 'person'

The sugar industry was built up by the labour of South Sea Islander people, who were renowned for their endurance and hard work. Angus Gibson of Bingera sugar plantation in Bundaberg said, 'I have seen no one to equal the **kanaka** in outdoor work'. White people believed they were superior to the Islander people; they called the men 'boys' and the

women 'Marys'. Islander children were discouraged from attending state schools. It was only in the 1880s that South Sea Islander people could access hospitals set up for them in Maryborough, Ingham and Mackay.

Other hospitals like Bundaberg Base Hospital created separate 'kanaka' wards as European Australians did not believe that they should get medical treatment in the same place as the Islander people.

Driving out those who made the sugar industry

Increasingly, white workers wanted to restrict the jobs and areas in which South Sea Islander people could work. The Islanders were allowed to do only unskilled agricultural work in coastal areas. By 1892, they could not work in sugar mills and later were totally excluded from the sugar industry they had built up. This ban lasted until 1964. Islanders sought to resist these actions by forming organisations and writing petitions.

Historical thought

Indentured South Sea Islanders signed on for three-year work contracts. Many could not read or sign their names, so just a fingerprint was taken. Many thought they were going for only three months and were shocked when they realised they would be away for 39 months. Some marked a tree with every new moon so they would know when they could go home.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.3

- 1 Suggest why some South Sea Islander people chose to come back to Queensland.
- 2 Work out what percentage of the highest wage paid to European workers was paid to first-time recruits, re-enlisting workers and time-expired Islanders.
- 3 Find out what you can about Faith Bandler. What has she done to bring the history of the South Sea Islander people into Australian history? (If you wish to find out more about Faith Bandler, read her book, *Wacvie*.)

Chinese

Chinese traders started visiting the north coast of Australia in 1750s, before European settlement.

On settlement, a few convicts were of Chinese background and others came as indentured labourers, but it was the gold rushes of the 1850s that prompted large numbers of Chinese men to stream into Victoria and New South Wales. Many of these men were from the southern provinces of China around the Pearl River delta and, like other settlers, were seeking to improve their lot in Australia. The Chinese population peaked at around 38 000 in 1880, but later declined. In 1901 there were about 33 000 Chinese people in Australia, less than 1% of the non-Aboriginal population.

European gold miners were critical of the clannish Chinese miners because they weren't Christian and had unfamiliar ways. Chinese people made up one-sixth of the miners, and some colonists took the view that the Chinese people were too numerous and should not be on the goldfields. In 1855, the Victorian government imposed a poll tax of £10 on all Chinese immigrants arriving in Victoria. In response, Chinese miners started entering Victoria via Robe in South Australia. In 1855–57, 17 500 Chinese people walked 400 kilometres to the goldfields.

Soon South Australia and New South Wales closed the door on Chinese miners.

Trouble on the goldfields

As the diggings ran out, some miners wanted to drive out the Chinese people. In January 1861, 1500 miners and traders, some armed with clubs, held an anti-

Chinese meeting at Lambing Flat in New South Wales. Most of these were themselves recent arrivals to the colony, but felt justified in attacking Chinese people. The government sent police, soldiers and Special Commissioners to establish peace and to protect the Chinese miners.

The European miners had formed a Miners Protective League, with a catch-cry of freedom – 'equality, fraternity and glorious liberty' – but used it to argue for the exclusion of their Chinese fellow miners. Once the military left, tensions rose again and on 30 June, between 2000 and 3000 miners attacked the Chinese camp, burning tents and possessions, hitting and whipping the Chinese and cutting off their pigtails.

As the gold diggings ran out, Chinese people moved into other occupations. In the 1870s around 30 worked at a Rutherglen vineyard, where they were found to be 'more useful, more economical, and more to be depended upon when in proximity to **intoxicants** than the Europeans.' John Chi went from the gold fields to running pearling **luggers** out of Cossack and Broome in Western Australia. Later he ran a small restaurant in Broome.

Others made furniture, or ran stores and import and export businesses. Many took up market gardening and supplied towns and outback stations with fresh vegetables. Very often the cook on an outback station was a Chinese man.

Chinese settlers participated in all aspects of life in the colonies. In 1872, the Chinese community around

intoxicant alcoholic drink
lugger a small sailing boat with two or three masts used for pearling or fishing near the coast



Source 14.9
Images from the
Lambing Flat riots,
December 1860

Beechworth in north-eastern Victoria imported special costumes and banners from China and performed in the Carnival Procession to raise funds for the local hospital and **benevolent asylum**. Chinese New Year was an important time for celebrations and sharing with European guests. In 1884, at the New Year banquet in the Way Lee & Coy premises in Hindley Street, Adelaide, the European guests enjoyed the Chinese food, but as for chopsticks – ‘How to use these little bits of wood was a puzzle’.

benevolent asylum an institution used to house impoverished families who could not support themselves

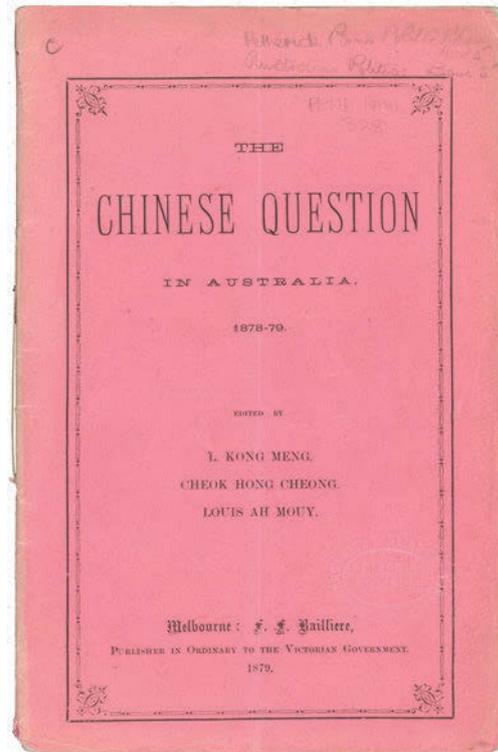
In 1879, three Chinese men wrote *The Chinese question in Australia* in protest against the laws that discriminated against them. Cheok Hong Cheong had come to Australia when he was 12 years old, gaining his matriculation certificate in Melbourne and becoming a Christian missionary to the Melbourne Chinese. Louis Ah Mouy, born in China and trained in carpentry in Singapore, did well in the gold rushes. He became a successful tea **merchant** and helped found the Commercial Bank of Australia. The third of these authors, Lowe Kong Meng, like a number of Chinese people in Australia was a British subject, for he was born in Penang in the Malay colonies. Fluent in English, French and Chinese, he was a successful businessman and a shipowner, trading around the Indian Ocean.

merchant a person who buys and sells goods

These writers pointed out that anti-Chinese legislation was illegal, as it contradicted the 1860 treaty between the Chinese and British governments, which meant that Chinese people had ‘a perfect right to settle in any part of the British Empire’. This treaty also allowed British and Australian people to settle in China.



Source 14.10 Chinese vegetable sellers were a familiar sight in city streets. Housewives appreciated these fresh vegetables along with a friendly chat at the back door.



Source 14.11 In 1879, Lowe Kong Meng, Cheok Hong Cheong and Louis Ah Mouy published the booklet *The Chinese Question in Australia* in response to the seamen’s strike against the employment of Chinese labour on ships.

Reading the *Tung Wah Times*

The *Tung Wah Times* began in Sydney in 1898, providing Chinese settlers with useful information about the law and business in Australia, and about life and activities in their home villages in the Pearl River Delta, as well as about the lives of Chinese people living in the United States and other countries. Often they read about the heavy taxes and dictatorial behaviour of the Chinese government. Although they lived in Australia, they were also very interested in developments in their homeland. Many supported moves for reform of the Chinese government and belonged to the Chinese Reform Association. They welcomed the visit of the leading Chinese political reformer, Liang Qichao, who came to Australia in 1900–01 to give talks in many towns and cities about the need to modernise China.

Relatively few Chinese women came to Australia, perhaps because of the hostility to Chinese people that erupted from time to time.

Rose Quong was born in 1879 in Melbourne and had an interesting career. She attended University High School in Melbourne and then worked as a clerk in the public service. But she always wanted to be an actor and later in life worked on the stage in Britain and the United States. She died in New York in 1972.



Source 14.12 Quong Tart was 9 years old when he came to Australia with his uncle in 1859. From 1881, he ran a tea and silk store in Sydney and then a chain of tea shops. A prominent citizen, he supported a number of charities. In 1883, he launched a campaign to outlaw the smoking of opium, which was causing great problems among people in China and abroad. He is pictured with his wife and five of their six children.

The late nineteenth century saw more anti-Chinese feeling and more laws to restrict immigration. Australians from European backgrounds came to believe that they were better people and that Australia was theirs.

They argued that their fellow citizens from Asia had no right to live and work in this country.

Historical thought

Quong Tart was nicknamed 'Quong Tartan' because he spoke English with a Scottish accent, loved Robert Burns' poetry and on occasion dressed in Scottish Highland dress.

White workers, such as cabinet makers, waged campaigns to force Chinese people from their occupation. Some furniture made around the end of the nineteenth century bears a stamp, 'Made by white labour'. In 1888, the colonial governments discussed how they could work to make Australia white and deny Chinese people the opportunity to live and prosper in Australia.

Until recently, Australian historians ignored the history of Chinese people in Australia. Now they realise the importance of Chinese immigrants to the development of Australian society and business. Janis Wilton has researched New South Wales country life and the place of Chinese stores in supplying local communities with food, clothing and a wide range of goods. Historians also now understand how Australian Chinese people took ideas from Australia to change China.

In studying our history we need to investigate Australian relationships with people in the Asia-Pacific region.



Source 14.13 The Sun Tong Lee store at Gulgong, New South Wales in about 1870. Selling 'groceries, drapery, ironmongery, tobacco, pipes' and other essentials, such stores were central to their local communities.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.4

- 1 Draw a map of the route Chinese people followed from Robe to the Australian goldfields.
- 2 Using the Public Records of Victoria website (www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and other sources, research Chinese work, food and family life in nineteenth-century Australia.
- 3 Research the life of Quong Tart and make a presentation to your class.

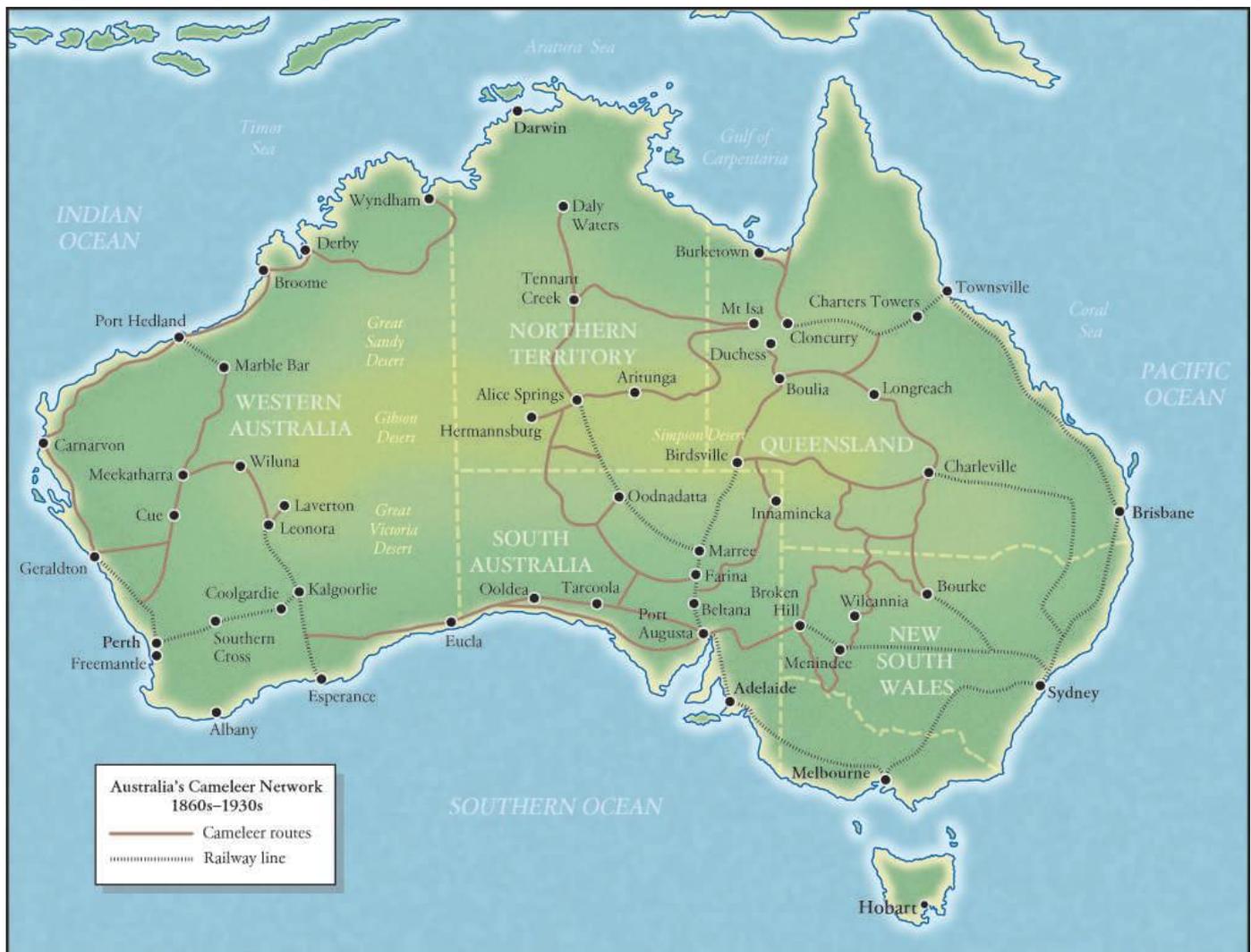
Afghans

cameleer a camel driver

Around 2000 to 3000 **cameleers** came to Australia from Afghanistan and nearby countries between 1860 and 1920. They first came to handle the camels on the ill-fated Burke and Wills exploration expedition in 1860. This was only one of many exploring expeditions that

the cameleers supported. Camels were well suited to travelling the long distances in outback regions while carrying heavy loads. The cameleers contributed greatly to the exploration and the development of central Australia.

At first the Afghan camel drivers worked for Europeans. Later they took over the transportation business across the interior of Australia, through



Source 14.14 The cameleer network in Australia, 1860s to 1930s

Queensland and the Northern Territory over to Western Australia. The camel train from Oodnadatta to Alice Springs ended when the train line was extended to Alice Springs in 1929; that train is still called 'the Ghan', a shortened version of 'Afghan camel train'.

In 1865, Thomas Elder, a pastoralist, imported camels with a number of cameleers, including the young brothers Faiz and Tagh Mahomet. In 1888, the brothers formed their own company. Their carrying business did well and by the early 1890s they had 900 camels and employed about 100 of their compatriots across the outback.

Afghan people walked all day with their camels, leading trains of up to 70 camels. Each camel could carry as much as 600 kilograms over long distances with little food or water in all sorts of country. They supplied stations and remote mining settlements, and also supplied the materials for the construction of the 3200 kilometre Overland Telegraph, linking Port Augusta to Darwin, between 1870 and 1872. They carried wool, water, food supplies, timber, mining equipment, furniture and even pianos.

The cameleers also brought **Islam** to Australia and built mosques in places such as Leonora, Coolgardie, Marree, Adelaide and Perth. While on

Islam a religion based upon belief in one God of whom Muhammed is the chief and last prophet

a trip with their camels, they performed their prayers five times a day out in the desert or the bush. They often worked alone or with a couple of others, but during the fasting month of Ramadan, they would gather together and then celebrate the feast of Eid ul-Fitr.

Afghan people lived in separate areas (known as 'Ghantowns') of towns such as Marree, Broken Hill and Oodnadatta. European Australians believed that they were superior to the Afghans and looked down on them. Many of these men were single or had left a wife and family back in Afghanistan, visiting them only occasionally.

Some had families with Aboriginal women and some Aboriginal families still have surnames like Khan, Abdulla and Dadleh. Others, like Abdul Wade, married women of European backgrounds.

He and Emily Ozadelle married in 1895 and had three sons and four daughters.

In the late nineteenth century, anti-Afghan prejudice grew and some Europeans wished to drive Afghan people from Broken Hill or the West Australian goldfields, where recent migrants claimed Australia should be for the white man.

Government policies were **discriminatory**. In 1896, Faiz Mahomet, a successful merchant who had lived for 22 years in Australia, was shocked to find his application for naturalisation was denied by the West Australian government.

discriminatory showing an unfair bias or prejudice

Late in the 1890s some colonies passed acts restricting the immigration of people from Asia and this meant the Afghan people found it hard to travel to Australia.



Source 14.15 Abdul Wade came to Australia from Kabul in 1879. In 1892 he imported 340 camels and brought 59 camel drivers to work them. His Bourke Carrying Company in western New South Wales allowed him to become wealthy and return to Kabul to retire. He was one of the prosperous camel entrepreneurs who financed the building of the Adelaide Mosque, now the oldest mosque in Australia, in the 1890s.



Source 14.16 Adelaide Moosha and her children Nazhebe, Zainabi, Lal and Partimah in Marree, 1910. Her husband, Moosha Balooch, was a cameleer.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.5

- 1 Investigate why a camel was better for outback transport than a horse and cart.
- 2 Find out what you can about Abdul Wade. Give a class presentation on his life or that of other camel drivers – for example, Faiz and Tagh Mahomet.

Historical thought

The descendants of the Afghani camels number around 1 million and run wild in central Australia. Today, Australia exports camels to Saudi Arabia.

Japanese

Japanese people were not permitted to go abroad until 1866, so few came to Australia during the nineteenth century. By the 1870s, small numbers had arrived, often from fishing villages on the southern coast of Japan. Most went to pearling centres such as Thursday Island off the tip of Cape York Peninsula, and Broome in northern Western Australia. By 1901, around 3400 Japanese people were in Australia and only 400 of them were women; 90% lived in northern Australia.

Japanese divers were very important to the development of the pearling industry, which sold large amounts of pearl shell to international markets to make buttons. In the first decades of the twentieth century, Broome produced 80% of the world's mother-of-pearl shells. Japanese people were expert divers, using the helmets and diving suits developed from the 1880s.

Some came as indentured workers and had to pay back their fares before they could keep their own wages.

They braved the dangers of pearling, getting the **bends**, and facing sharks and cyclones. In Broome's Japanese cemetery are the graves of hundreds of Japanese men who died seeking pearls.

In 1896, the Japanese government set up a consulate office in Townsville, Queensland to serve the many Japanese citizens in the area. As the Queensland and, later, the Australian governments passed restrictive immigration legislation, the consul protested on behalf of his government.

Japan as an independent government rejected the humiliating and racist treatment of Australian governments towards its people.

bends a condition divers can acquire by surfacing too quickly from deep water

14.3 Australian self-government and democracy

When the Australian colonies were founded, ordinary people had no chance to elect or even to influence their government. Each Australian colony was ruled by a governor appointed by the British government. The governors had to take orders from the British government, but as Britain was so far away they often made their own decisions.

As the number of free settlers increased from the 1820s, along with growing numbers of people who had finished their term as convicts (emancipists), some came to believe that they should have some say in the government.

During the nineteenth century, the Australian colonies developed the most advanced democratic political systems of the age. By the end of the century, Australian people had introduced most of the democratic

reforms that followers of **Chartism** had unsuccessfully sought in Britain.

Initially, the British government created a committee that could advise each governor. In New South Wales, this was the Legislative Council, appointed in 1823. However, the colonists did not elect either the governor or the members of the Legislative Council. Only in 1842, with the New South Wales Constitution Act, were some New South Welshmen able to elect 24, or two-thirds, of the members of the Legislative Council.

There was a **restricted property franchise**, which meant that only those with a substantial amount of

Chartism a social movement of people committed to the People's Charter, a set of basic political claims, including the right to vote

restricted property franchise an electoral system where voting is restricted to people with a substantial amount of property



property were eligible to vote. Only they were seen as responsible people who could be trusted to vote sensibly.

The other 12 members of the Council were appointed by the Crown. This was the beginning of representative government in Australia. Gradually other colonies also gained the right to vote for some members of a Legislative Council, or an advisory committee to the governor.

In the 1820s and 1830s, Australian society was changing with more free settlers arriving. In 1836, South Australia was established for free settlers only. In eastern Australia, there was a campaign to end the transportation of convicts and to promote a society of free people. Increasingly, Australian settlers wanted to rule themselves and to have some control over government spending. The settlers at Port Phillip (Melbourne) wanted their own separate colony.

In Britain itself, political ideas and institutions were changing. The British *Reform Act* of 1832 granted middle-class men the right to vote for parliament. The Australian settlers wanted the same right, and in 1850 the British government passed the Australian Constitutions

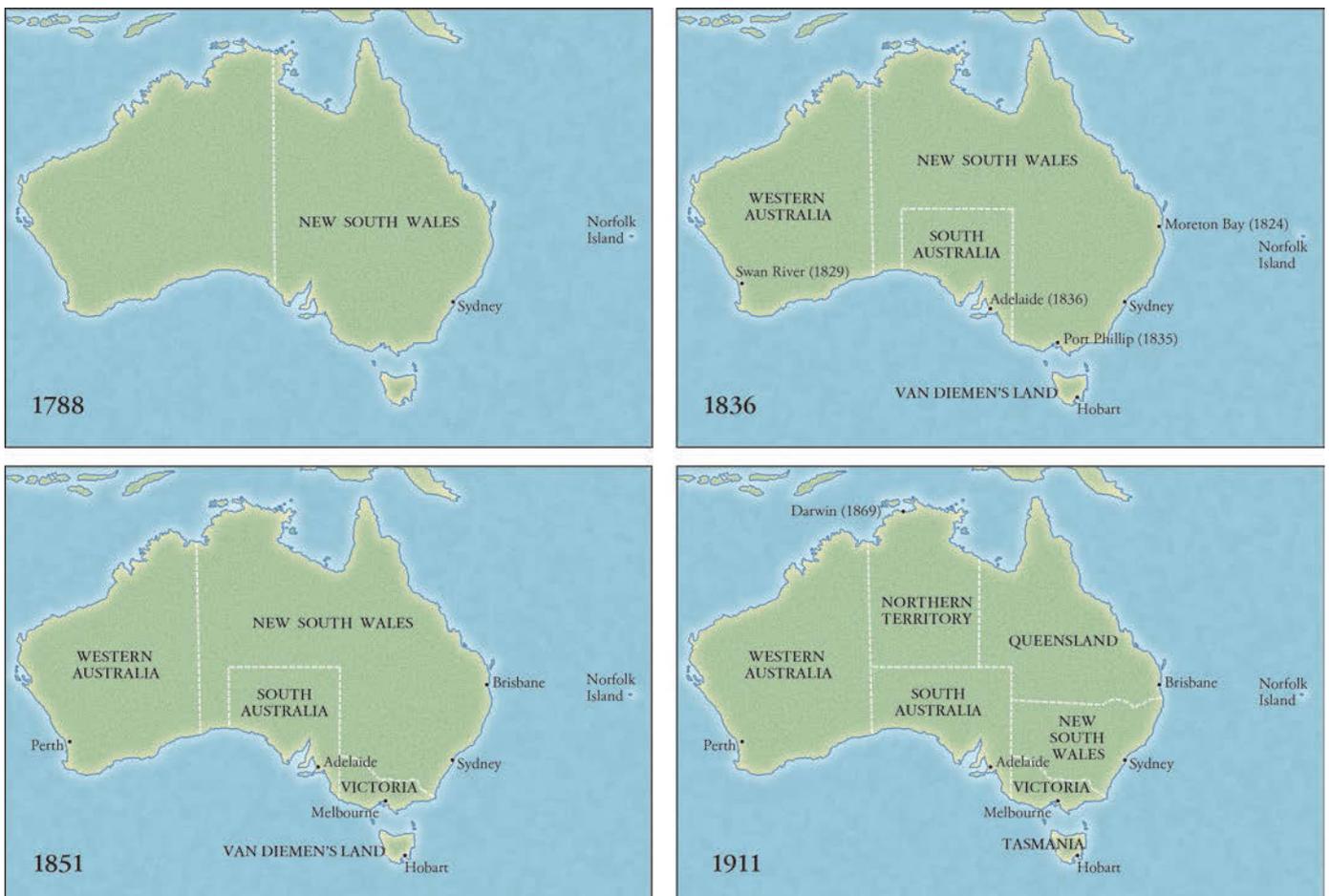
Act, which made it possible for the colonies to move towards responsible government, or self-government with **bicameral parliaments**. Under this Act, Victoria became a separate colony.

During the early 1850s, politicians and lawyers in all the colonies (except Western Australia) were busy writing new constitutions. During these years, half a million free settlers flocked to Victoria. Many also went to the diggings in New South Wales. The gold rushes attracted thousands of miners from Britain, China, European countries and the United States. Within a decade, the population of New South Wales, South Australia and Queensland doubled, while in Victoria the population increased sevenfold.

Many of these migrants were young, and new radical and liberal political ideas were discussed and shared on the diggings.

The colonists' confidence grew alongside the wealth of the country. Some made a fortune by finding gold, while others prospered by growing food for the miners, running coaches, setting up stores or building the houses, roads and many fine public buildings that grew

bicameral parliament a parliament consisting of two houses or chambers



Source 14.17 Colonial and state boundaries with principal settlements and dates

up in the mining districts and in Melbourne. A feeling of being Australian was growing and some felt irritated by the continuing power of British authorities.

Historical thought

peerage a system of hereditary noble ranks, such as duke, duchess, count and countess

aristocracy a privileged upper class of hereditary nobles

In 1853 William Wentworth, a wealthy politician in New South Wales, suggested that Australia should have a colonial **peerage** drawn from wealthy landowners. The

radical Sydney lawyer Daniel Deniehy ridiculed the suggestion, calling it a 'Bunyip **aristocracy**'.

Eureka Stockade

In 1854, on the goldfields at Ballarat in Victoria, the miners' resentment of the heavy mining licence fees and the way that the local police exercised their power



Source 14.18 Peter Lalor was the leader of the miners at the Eureka Stockade. Later he became a member of the Victorian parliament; this portrait shows him in his wig and gown as the Speaker of the House.

as they inspected miners' licences boiled over into a rebellion. A number of their leaders had been in the Chartist movement in Britain. The miners wanted to reduce or even end the licence fees and the tax on gold, and they wanted the vote.

In November 1854, the miners formed the Ballarat Reform League and agreed 'that it is the inalienable right of every citizen to have a voice in making the laws he is called on to obey, that taxation without representation is tyranny'. They tried to negotiate their demands with Goldfields Commissioner Robert Rede and Victorian Governor Sir Charles Hotham. Rede did not want to compromise and ordered the police to continue to check miners' licences.

The angry miners elected a radical Irishman, Peter Lalor, as their leader. Under the Eureka Southern Cross flag, they vowed to burn their licences and defy the government. They made a fort, or stockade, armed themselves and trained for battle. But when the more numerous government forces attacked them early in the morning on Sunday 3 December 1854, they were easily defeated. Twenty-two miners were killed.

The ringleaders were charged with high treason, but there was great public sympathy for them. Many Victorians were shocked by the government's brutal actions and the juries refused to convict the arrested men. When they were freed, thousands cheered. An inquiry into the event suggested that the miners had justified grievances.

Rights or a riot?

People still disagree about the importance of the Eureka stockade in Australian history. Some believe that it was the real beginning of Australian independence and democracy. In 2004, Victorian Premier Steve Bracks said, 'Eureka was about the struggle for basic democratic rights. It was not about a riot – it was about rights'. Today you see the Eureka flag being used by some groups as a symbol of their rebellion against authority.

They see it as an expression of true Australian democracy. Others see Eureka as just a riot by a small number of miners, arguing that only about 15% of the miners were involved in the stockade. They also point out that most of the leaders and those put on trial were from Ireland and the United States.

In fact, the process of writing new and more democratic constitutions for the colonies was well underway by 1854. New South Wales, Victoria and Tasmania (formerly Van Diemen's Land) all had new constitutions in 1855. The South Australian constitution of 1856 was the most advanced democratic constitution

manhood suffrage the right of all adult men to vote in parliamentary elections

in the world at that time. It introduced **manhood suffrage** for the lower house and a fully elected upper house, based on a property franchise. In the spirit of Eureka, the new Victorian

parliament soon legislated for manhood suffrage as well. In 1856, South Australia, Victoria and Tasmania introduced another important democratic reform, the secret ballot. This meant that others could not discover which candidate you were voting for, which lessened the likelihood of the intimidation of voters by employers and other powerful people.

This more democratic system of casting your vote was one of the demands of the British Chartists.

The secret ballot was known throughout the world as the 'Australian ballot'. Later, other countries (for example, Britain in 1872 and the United States after 1884) followed the Australian example.

Now these colonies had responsible government, elected by the people. In 1859, Queensland became a separate colony from New South Wales and began developing more democratic constitutions. Only Western Australia lagged behind, finally getting a new constitution in 1890.

Based upon manhood suffrage, these constitutions were among the most democratic in the world for their time, but generally they still denied Indigenous people and women the vote.

Unlock the lands

By 1860, manhood suffrage was accepted in most of Australia, and the colonial governments were largely independent of the British Crown.

However, miners, town workers and many voters opposed the dominance of the wealthy landed class of squatters and pastoralists in colonial politics and society.

From the 1860s, colonial parliaments passed Selector Acts. They wanted to unlock the vast land-holdings, which squatters leased from the government, to allow people of average means to select or choose land for farming. The selectors would be able to pay for the land over a number of years. It was believed that if the economic power of the large squatters was limited, then the colonies would be more equal and more democratic. Of course, the squatters opposed these laws and did all they could to hold on to as much of their land as possible. However, especially in Victoria and South Australia, a new class of freeholders with small to medium-sized family farms was created.

One of the last democratic reforms adopted in nineteenth-century Australia was the payment of members of parliament. This was first legislated in Victoria in 1870 and later in other colonies. This meant that even ordinary wage earners could stand for parliament, because they would receive a salary if



Source 14.19 *Swearing Allegiance to the 'Southern Cross'*, a watercolour by Charles Doudiet (1854). The oath of allegiance was: 'We swear by the Southern Cross to stand truly by each other and fight to defend our rights and liberties.'

elected. Now you did not need to be a wealthy man to be a member of parliament.

Position of women

In the mid-nineteenth century, women in Australia had many responsibilities to their families, but few political, social or economic rights. Though many women ran small businesses, kept shops or were domestic servants or teachers, many more were dependent upon men – their fathers and husbands. A woman had no legal protection if her husband was violent, did not support her and their children, or took her property. Australian

women, like **feminist** women in other countries, organised campaigns to get educational opportunities, more paid work and access to divorce, as well as the right to keep their own property after marriage, to control their own

bodies and to have access to birth control. To achieve this they wanted the parliamentary vote. They were concerned by male drunkenness and violence towards women and children, and wanted to care for women prisoners and other such unfortunates.

feminist a person who believes that women and men are equals and should enjoy all the same rights



Women organising

Women created various organisations that all aimed to improve women's positions, although with different emphases. From 1882, the Australian branches of the international Woman's Christian Temperance Union (WCTU) worked to protect women, children and family life. They aimed to control or abolish the liquor trade so that men would not waste their money on drink, beat their wives and leave them and their children in poverty and destitution. Women in both the country and cities joined the WCTU.

In 1884, Henrietta Dugdale and Anne Lowe formed the Victorian Women's Suffrage Society, and similar societies grew in other colonies.

These had liberal ideas, believing that women, like men, should have human rights, citizenship and the vote. They also wanted equal justice, equal privileges in marriage and divorce, rights to property and the custody of children in divorce.

Working women, such as tailors, organised trade unions from 1882, seeking better pay and working conditions.

Some men supported their claims, but women had to persuade male voters and legislators in each colony. Many believed that women were less intelligent than men and should be only occupied with family life. Feminist women wrote letters to the press, organised petitions, made deputations to politicians and addressed meetings.



Source 14.20 Rose Scott (1847–1925) was a committed feminist and secretary of the Womanhood Suffrage League in New South Wales. Her attempt, in 1892, to get the **age of consent** for girls raised from 14 to 16 years was greeted by laughter and contempt by the New South Wales parliament. She remained single, claiming that life was too short to waste it in the service of one man.

age of consent the minimum age at which it is legal for a person to have sexual intercourse

Louisa Lawson published *The Dawn: a Journal for Australian Women* from 1888 to 1905.

She wrote, 'Men legislate on divorce, on hours of labour, and many other questions intimately affecting women, but neither ask nor know the wishes of those whose lives and happiness are most concerned'.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.6

Some historians believe that Australian women were granted the vote by generous male politicians, while others say women had to work and struggle for it. What do you think?

The monster petition

In 1891, Victorian women went door-to-door and collected 30 000 signatures from women and men in favour of female enfranchisement and presented it to the Victorian parliament, but it denied their claims. A similar South Australian petition of 1894 had 11 600 signatures, while the Tasmanian women gathered 9500 signatures for three petitions between 1896 and 1898.

Queensland women gathered 15 366 signatures between 1894 and 1897.

Victories

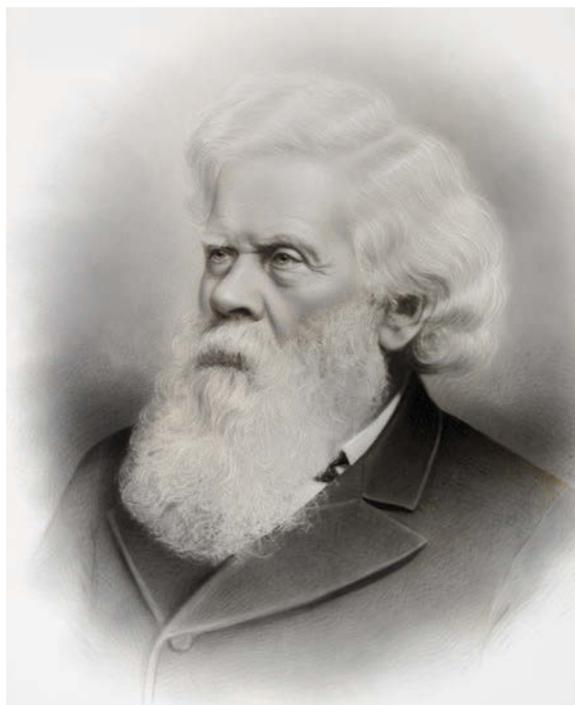
In 1894, South Australian women aged over 21 years gained the right to vote and to stand for parliament. This was a world first; in 1893 women were enfranchised in New Zealand, but were not granted the right to stand for parliament.

Women gained the right to vote in other colonial or state elections in Western Australia in 1899, New South Wales in 1902, Tasmania in 1903, and Queensland and Victoria in 1908. With Federation in 1901, women gained the vote for the Australian Commonwealth parliament. It was a great victory, but Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander women in some states were excluded.

Moving towards Federation

During the later nineteenth century, some Australians began to think about an Australian nation. Communications such as railways and telegraphs meant that the colonies could be in close touch with each other. As people visited other colonies they realised that they had a lot in common. Some organisations like the Woman's Christian Temperance Union (1891) and the trade union movement (1879) formed national associations.

Businessmen saw that their Australian markets were divided by colonial borders and customs charges. It made more sense to have one nation, and thus one market for their goods. As we have seen in this chapter, anti-Chinese prejudices were growing, fanned by some politicians. There was the idea that Australia should be a white nation, prohibiting migrants from Asia, Africa and the Pacific Islands. Some believed that the need to defend Australia from foreign forces should lead to a federation. There were numbers of different reasons for supporting federation of the Australian colonies. The matter was discussed first in 1888, but did not proceed quickly. In 1889, Sir Henry Parkes made an impassioned speech at Tenterfield on the New South Wales–Queensland border calling for a federal convention to devise 'a great national Government for all Australia'.



Source 14.21 Henry Parkes (1815–1896) worked as a labourer when he first arrived as an assisted immigrant in New South Wales in 1839. He enjoyed the great opportunities open to white men in Australia, becoming a newspaper editor and a liberal representative to the first colonial parliament in 1856. He served as New South Wales Premier five times and was knighted in 1877. Known as the 'Father of Federation', he died 5 years before the new nation was born.



Source 14.22 South Australian Catherine Helen Spence (1829–1910) stood as a delegate to the 1897 National Australasian Convention. She was the first woman to run for election in Australia. She was not elected.

In 1891, the colonies were represented at the National Australasian Convention in Sydney, where they agreed upon the name 'Commonwealth of Australia'. Some political leaders were in favour and others against, and still others regularly changed their minds.

referendum taking a political question to the electorate to get a direct decision from voters

There were several conventions about the proposed constitution for the new nation. In 1897, delegates from five colonies were elected to discuss the proposition at the National Australasian Convention.

Referenda were held in 1898 and 1899, and finally the 'Commonwealth of Australia' came into being in 1901.

Rights denied

As most Australian citizens were gaining political and social rights, Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people were becoming more disempowered than ever. From the 1840s, many Aboriginal people were living on mission stations run by various Christian denominations. Here they were protected from the physical violence meted out to them by settlers, but they found it difficult to maintain their languages and their cultures. These

mission stations were run as dictatorships, with most power being held by the leading male missionary.

Bessie Cameron (c. 1851–95) was a Nyungar woman from Western Australia who studied in European schools there and in Sydney. She was a teacher at the Ramahyuck mission in Gippsland in Victoria, which was run by the Rev F. A. Hagenauer. He ran the mission in a very strict manner and made Bessie marry Donald Cameron, a man with mixed Aboriginal and Scottish descent. They had eight children and ran the mission's boarding school. In 1886, Alfred Deakin and the Victorian government passed a law that meant that Aboriginal people of mixed descent could no longer live on mission stations. This saw many families like Bessie's split up. Thus, as other Australians gained the right to vote and stand for election, Aboriginal families were losing basic rights, such as keeping their children with them.

Ngarrindjeri people at the Point McLeay mission in South Australia voted in the 1896 South Australian election and for delegates for the 1897 Federal Convention and the Federation referenda of 1898–99. However, most Aboriginal people were not on electoral rolls and were unable to take part in the political life of the nation.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.7

Examine Source 14.23 and answer the following questions:

- 1 Why do you think the cartoonist has made Miss South Australia and the Victorian woman look ugly?
- 2 Why do you think the cartoonist has drawn 'the suffrage' as a pair of trousers?
- 3 How does the cartoon represent the male figure?
- 4 With female political leaders at both state and federal levels today, what do you think about this cartoon drawn more than 100 years ago?

Source 14.23 The cartoonist shows a man representing the Conservative Party holding suffrage as a pair of trousers behind him. The Victorian woman is demanding the right to vote, but the man advises against it, pointing out that they 'are very unbecoming ma'am. Just look at Miss South Australia there!'



14.4 Legislation 1901–14

Australia at Federation

Historians have found it hard to discover much enthusiasm by colonists in Australia for the six separate colonies to federate and become a Commonwealth in 1901. The proposal was decided by popular vote in a series of 10 referenda in 1898–1900. Voting was not yet compulsory and usually less than half of the registered electors – all male, adult property holders – even bothered to vote. For the most part, only between 30% and 43% favoured Federation. Victoria was the colony most enthusiastic about national union, and this was the only place where an actual majority voted in the affirmative, in 1899. Western Australia, worried about financial disadvantages, held out the longest – not holding its referendum until mid-1900. It was passed only due to the goldfields' vote.

Many people tended to be apathetic; and some regarded Federation only as a business venture to dismantle customs barriers between the colonies in order to improve internal trade. A more idealistic minority, however, was moved by nationalistic feeling and looked towards Australia becoming 'a mighty nation' someday.

Yet the new Commonwealth was far from being an independent, sovereign nation in 1901.

It had no foreign policy separate from that of Britain. It could not declare war or peace. It was unable to make treaties with other nations and had no diplomatic standing abroad. It retained the British national anthem and its head of state remained the British monarch. The flag flown was the Union Jack. Even Australia's domestic legislation could be ruled invalid by the British parliament, and its highest court of appeal was the British Privy Council. As historian Manning Clark observed, 'There was no declaration of independence ... No one seemed to be able to say who Australians were or what they stood for'. The new Australian states also jealously guarded their own powers and finances, thus further restricting central control.

At the Commonwealth inauguration ceremony in Sydney on 1 January 1901, British officials – politicians, churchmen and military figures – were prominent. A large crowd of more than 100 000 people watched the ceremony in Centennial Park and attended the procession through the highly decorated Sydney streets. The loudest cheers were reserved for the British Imperial soldiers: Queen Victoria's Hussars, the Imperial Life Guards, Bengal Lancers and Indian Ghurkhas. Australian troops were fighting in British wars in South Africa

and China at the time. But when the Commonwealth was proclaimed by Britain's Lord Hopetoun, the press reported a crowd reaction of 'Listless Apathy'. There was hardly a spontaneous cheer in the park. Assembled schoolchildren cheered on command and sang the 'Federal Anthem', but everyone else continued on with their picnics.

'There was a meagre cheer, and Australia was born,' the Sydney Bulletin stated. Less than 3 weeks later, Britain's Queen Victoria died, casting a cloud of gloom over further proceedings.

Among the architects of Federation, only one man, Andrew Inglis Clark, was a republican. He was a shy, retiring person who worked hard on the Australian Constitution. But he was not a prominent speaker. The rest tended to see themselves as 'children dependent on a superior people' (to quote Sir Samuel Griffith). These 'superior people' lived in the British Isles. The founding fathers of Australia therefore regarded themselves as Britons first and Australians second.

All of Australia's strength and national essence, it was widely believed, rested upon 'the British connection'.

The White Australia Policy

The so-called 'White Australia Policy' cannot be traced to any single piece of legislation. Rather, it developed from a considerable number of parliamentary Acts of the new Australian Commonwealth, aimed at preventing non-white nationalities from migrating, removing certain non-whites already resident and severely restricting the rights and opportunities of others. It also concentrated early national defence measures on an expected Japanese military invasion, though no such invasion was contemplated by Japan.

Historical thought

Of all the Australian capital cities, Brisbane was the only one to vote against Federation in the referendum of 1899. There was great fear that local manufacturing and commerce would be swamped by stronger competition from Sydney and Melbourne.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.8

Examine Australia's move to Federation and answer the following questions:

- 1 Why was Australian Federation greeted with so much public apathy in 1901?
- 2 Which groups were the most enthusiastic about Federation?
- 3 What happened in Sydney on 1 January 1901?
- 4 Was the Inauguration Ceremony more of a British than an Australian one?
- 5 Why was the British connection so strong?

This approach arose from dominant concerns that we would now consider as racist: for example, the widespread belief that non-whites were both naturally **servile** and worth less as workers than whites.

servile slave-like

Therefore, it was thought that non-whites would not agitate (as white labourers did) to improve their working situations or wage levels by forming trade unions and striking or negotiating for better pay and conditions. So, it was concluded that

their migration would lower Australian wages and degrade working conditions generally. The migration of British and European light-skinned people was not similarly regarded.

Furthermore, racist theories of the time claimed that non-whites were also inferior intellectually, morally, sexually, culturally and socially. So, it was said that their presence in Australia led to degeneration, crime, immorality and disease.

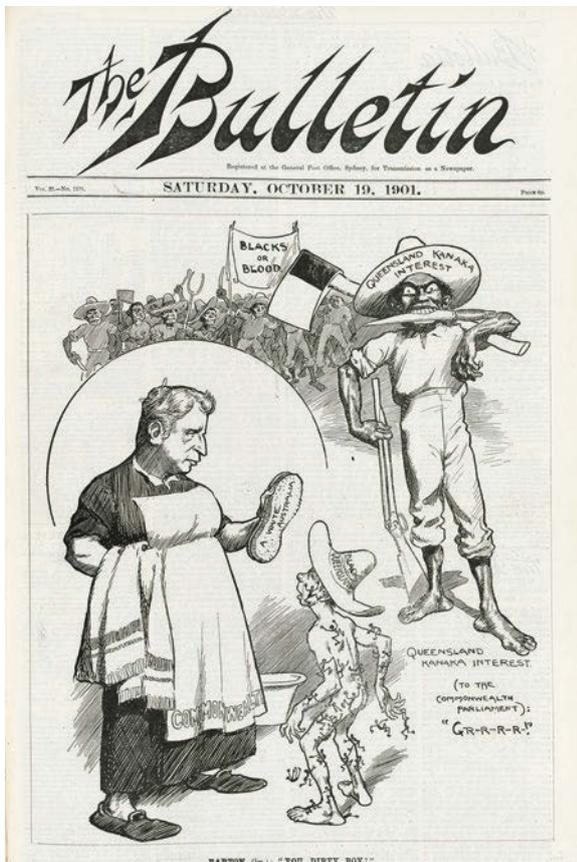
Very few mainstream Australians disagreed with this viewpoint at the time. It was supported by widespread Western scientific, philosophical and religious beliefs.

In 1888, the separate Australian colonies had united to exclude further Chinese migration. In the 1890s, individual colonies – such as Western Australia (1897), New South Wales (1898) and Tasmania (1898) – adopted a blanket restriction of all non-Europeans. White protests in northern and western Queensland, rural New South Wales and Victoria, and the Western Australian goldfields had opposed the presence of even small numbers of Malay, Sri Lankan, Indian, Japanese, Melanesian and Syrian people.

Consequently, the first national issue addressed by the Commonwealth parliament in 1901 was the restriction of all non-white immigration.

The *Immigration Restriction Act* of December 1901 accomplished this by devising a so-called 'Dictation Test' to be given only to non-white migrants in such a form that they were doomed to fail it. This bogus test camouflaged the Act's real racial intentions. This was done to address British concerns that an openly expressed racist ban would offend Indian Imperial subjects and the emerging Pacific industrial power of Japan.

Further, the *Post and Telegraph Act 1901* prevented non-whites working on any ships carrying Australian mail, while the *Pacific Island Labourers Act 1901* directed that all Melanesians be denied access to Australia from March 1904.



Source 14.24 The front-page cartoon of *The Bulletin* in 1901, showing the racist views of the time held about non-whites.

Melanesian sugar workers (known as ‘kanakas’) in Queensland and northern New South Wales were to be deported and repatriated to their islands from December 1906. Almost 7300 Islanders were removed between 1906 and 1914, while 1500 to 2000 managed to stay by obtaining **exemptions** or going into hiding.

exemption freedom from an imposition

The *Naturalisation Act 1903* reserved British citizenship for whites only, while the *Franchise Act 1902* withheld voting rights from non-whites and the *Old Age Pensions Act 1909* and the *Maternity Allowance Act 1912* denied them welfare benefits. Many pieces of state legislation, especially in Western Australia and Queensland, also adopted a ‘Dictation Test’ to restrict rights and opportunities on a racial basis.

The White Australia Policy was long regarded as the foundation stone of the new Australian nation. Its discriminatory provisions were not entirely removed from legislation until 1972.

Working life in the 1900s

What was it like to be an Australian wage-earner in the Federation era? The answer to this, of course, depends on the kind of work being done.

Was it skilled or unskilled? Rural or urban? And what was the status of the workers themselves? Were they members of a trade union? Were they male or female? Of European or non-European descent? Aboriginal or non-Aboriginal? Torres Strait Islander or non-Torres Strait Islander?



Source 14.25 Low-paid child workers deliver newspapers in the country town of Toowoomba, Queensland in 1904.

Generally, however, we can conclude that in this era the vast majority of people were ‘doing it tough’.

Early migration propaganda that encouraged poor labourers to come to the colonies had depicted Australia as ‘a working man’s paradise’. Yet this was rarely the case by 1900.

Trade-union organisation had only been legalised in the mid-1880s, but the new unions had then been almost destroyed in the 1890s strike wave by a forceful combination of employer groups and colonial governments. By 1906, only around 6% of the workforce was unionised. The long 1890s depression had also created around 30% unemployment in the skilled workforce.

It was even higher among the unskilled and there were no state welfare services to counter distress.

The Federation drought had also wreaked havoc on rural industries that employed one-third of the workforce. Although **real wages** between 1850 and 1890 usually had been higher than in Britain, they fell below the British average for most years between 1889 and 1908.

real wages the purchasing power of earnings relative to prices

In most industries, weekly wages barely allowed for frugal survival. Skilled workers might earn up to 60 or 70 shillings (that is, \$6 to \$7) per week, but large families and high rents or mortgages usually accounted for most of this.

Most workers earned far less. Women workers, in particular, struggled to manage on less than 20 shillings (\$2) per week. A female clothing worker, operating from her own home, might earn less than one cent per hour. This was called ‘sweating’. Child workers, selling newspapers on street corners for instance, received around 30 cents for a working week of 70 hours. There was no paid overtime, sick leave, holiday pay or superannuation. All such reforms had eventually to be won by trade-union struggle.

It was common for most people to work for more than 60 hours per week for such small wages. Factory workers laboured for 70 hours, usually in unhealthy and hazardous conditions.

Factories were insanitary, badly ventilated, poorly lit, loud and toxic, with no protection from dangerous machinery. Temperatures could be freezing during southern winters and more than 50°C in summer. Children as young as 12 years might work in such conditions.

Bakers and butchers worked up to 90 hours weekly; female bar attendants (called ‘barmaids’) and domestic servants performed their hard and dirty work for around 100 hours. Shop workers stood for up to 12 hours daily. Sitting down on the job could bring instant dismissal.

Indigenous workers were usually paid only with monotonous and nutritionally poor rations.

White employers often treated them brutally. If cash wages were granted, as in Queensland by the 1900s, the bulk of the money was taken by the state under the guise of 'protection'. Queensland Aboriginal Protector, Archibald Meston, wrote in July 1900 that Aboriginal working conditions would 'excite the horror of the Nation'. Their plight, however, was largely ignored by the early trade-union movement.

The Harvester judgement (1907)

The Australian Constitution did not grant the Commonwealth government any power to determine reasonable wages or tolerable workplace conditions. In order to sidestep this, federal parliament adopted an ingenious solution.

In 1906, it passed the *Excise Tariff (Agricultural Machinery) Act*. This imposed a tariff (or financial levy) on local machinery manufacturers. It would be removed, however, if the Commonwealth Court of Conciliation and Arbitration decided that a company was paying its workers a 'fair and reasonable' wage. In early 1907, workers at a company making agricultural machinery, known as Sunshine Harvesters, met at Braybrook in Melbourne to protest against the lack of overtime rates. Their employer, Hugh McKay, was Australia's largest export manufacturer and owned factories employing more than 1000 men.

McKay argued that his weekly minimum wage of 36 shillings (\$3.60) – or 6 shillings per day – was 'fair and reasonable'. He had already applied for his exemption from the Commonwealth excise.

The Court of Conciliation and Arbitration decided to make the Sunshine Harvester Company a test case for

the New Protection. Its recently appointed President, Henry Bournes Higgins, set about determining what a 'fair and reasonable' wage should be. He concluded that it should not be decided by what an employer said he could afford to pay or by what workers could extract from him by strikes or negotiation. Rather, it should be based on 'the cost of living as a civilised being'.

In October and November 1907, Higgins listened to the evidence of workers' wives about their household budgets. He wanted to know how much it cost for an average family of five members to meet the 'normal needs' of 'a human being in a civilised society'. These needs included food, shelter, clothing and warmth. They also included, Higgins decided, such items as furniture, utensils, insurance, books and newspapers, tram and train fares, schooling needs, amusements and holidays.

Overall, the judge concluded, this minimum or basic wage should be 42 shillings (\$4.20) a week or 7 shillings (70 cents) per day. This was significantly higher than McKay's minimum wage and similar to the amount that colonial trade union leaders had earlier demanded for their members. If a company could not afford it, Higgins argued, it should probably be shut down as inefficient. Australia had thus established the first basic wage in the world. It would be many decades before other countries followed suit.

Yet the ruling applied to only one sector of the population. White male workers were granted this payment whether they had a family to support or not; neither was the size of the family taken into account. Females were not defined as family bread-winners (even when they were) and continued to receive lower wages – usually around 54% of a man's. Aboriginal people, Torres Strait Islander people and many other non-white workers similarly did not qualify, and continued to live precariously.

arbitration settling disputes by using an independent judge

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.9

Consider the Harvester judgement and answer the following questions:

- 1 What do you understand by the term 'the New Protection'?
- 2 Why was the Harvester Company chosen as a test case?
- 3 How did Higgins determine what an Australian basic wage should be?
- 4 Why were women, Aboriginal people, Torres Strait Islander people and non-whites excluded from this 'social right'?

Historical thought

Hugh McKay later succeeded in having the excise Act ruled unconstitutional, but Higgins continued to use his basic wage finding as a yardstick in determining the outcome of industrial wage disputes.

How people lived at Federation

By 1910, almost 40% of Australians lived in the six capital cities. There were also more than 30 towns with populations between 10 000 and 30 000 people. Even smaller centres, however, supported a rich local culture. Bathurst, with a population of 9223 in 1901, produced three local newspapers.

Australia was highly urbanised and, in these cities and towns, people lived in differing circumstances according to their wealth or poverty. A rich man, such as Thomas Holt of Marrickville, Sydney, occupied a mansion of 30 rooms, including a banqueting hall, ballroom and

art gallery, which was maintained by a range of specialised servants. This contrasts dramatically with great numbers of urban poor who lived in overcrowded, run-down **tenement**

tenement a room or rooms forming a separate residence within a house

slums in the inner city, and had to face inferior sanitation, bad health, unemployment and high infant mortality.

Bubonic plague, spread by the fleas of the black rat, broke out in these conditions across certain mainland cities from 1900.

In Collingwood or Fitzroy in Melbourne, as many as six people might live in one small room, while families of up to 12 people were crammed into unsewered, two- or three-room hovels. Most people lived in rented accommodation. Home ownership, for around two-thirds of the population, was an impossible dream.

Until 1905, many country people, struggling under drought conditions, survived on damper, **'pie-melon jam'** and the rabbits they caught.

Dripping, golden syrup and condensed milk were rare joys. Schooling was meagre for farming families and English literacy was low.

There was little time for leisure activity. Men, women and children on most farms worked incessantly for survival. 'We are just white slaves,' one farmer's wife explained.

Between the two extremes of wealth and poverty, a minority of middle-class people – the families of skilled workers, tradesmen and the self-employed – were increasingly moving into suburban areas between city centres and the bush. Here they lived in more comfortable, detached houses on quarter-acre blocks.

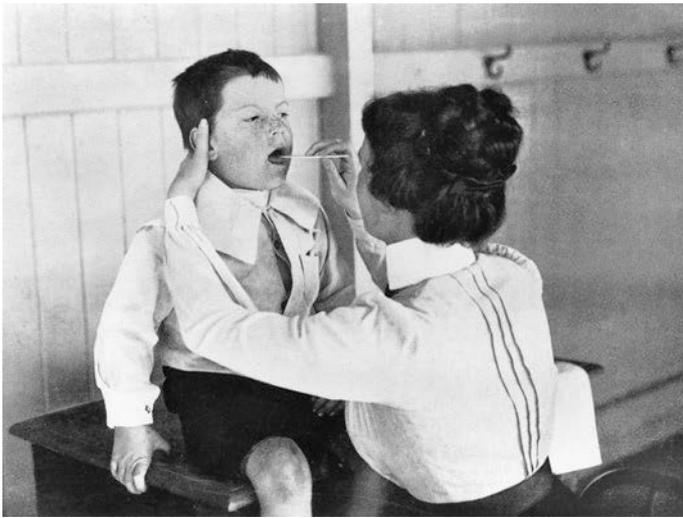
Public transport, telephones, gas and electricity all made life easier from the 1890s. In these homes, labour-

pie-melon jam jam made from tasteless melons that grew plentifully in paddocks

dripping fat melted from roasted meat and used for cooking or as a spread on bread or damper



Source 14.26 These photographs show two of the contrasting ways people lived in Australia in 1900. The left shows the rough-and-tumble street life in inner-city Sydney (Wexford Street, near Campbell Street) and the right shows the living room of a well-to-do middle-class family in the Sydney suburbs.



Source 14.27 A schoolboy receives a medical checkup from the school nurse, c. 1911. Defective vision, partial deafness and diseased teeth were common among schoolchildren at the time.

saving technology was gradually replacing domestic servants. Motor vehicles began their slow appearance from 1897. By 1914, there were still only 37 000 registered motorcycles, cars and trucks in Australia. People tended to view a car as a kind of mechanical horse.

In the schools, corporal punishment was widespread. People who wrote memoirs about this time recall teachers strolling around classrooms 'in frock coats always with cane in hand'. Eighteen strokes was the punishment for 'playing the wag'; that is, truancy. At All Saints Grammar in Melbourne, the headmaster daily 'flogged not only the boys who wilfully misbehaved but also those ... slow to learn'. Yet it was found in New South Wales that more than half the children described as 'dull' were actually suffering a health defect, such as poor hearing or sight. In Queensland, one-third of pupils had some physical complaint and 97% had decayed teeth. Those children who were left-handed were forced to write right-handed; some had their left hand tied behind their back, while others had their left hand caned repeatedly.

Due to poor diet and deprived living conditions, the average 14-year-old by 1910 was around 150 centimetres tall and weighed only 40 kilograms. The median life expectancy for white people was only 55 years for women and 53 for men.

Establishing state welfare

The new colonial societies in Australia were all built on hard work. Schoolchildren were taught, 'It's your duty to work. If you don't work, you'll starve.' Dropping out

of the workforce due to misfortune, illness or physical incapacity was often blamed on some individual moral failing.

For instance, it might be said that the person drank too much alcohol, was lazy or too self-indulgent.

Though people in distress might be offered some temporary, private charity, it was not considered to be the state's role to help them survive in society in any permanent way. These social failures were branded as the 'undeserving poor' and were either left to their own devices or segregated in state-run asylums (or prisons).

Society, it was believed, needed to be protected from them, rather than the opposite.

The widespread suffering of the 1890s, however, encouraged a serious rethink of public policy. The bank crashes and parched inland taught many that even sober, thrifty citizens could be economically ruined through no fault of their own. Electors began demanding official protection and intervention against inequality, poverty, injury, illness and old-age privation for people of European descent.

In 1904, Australians elected the first national Labor government in the world. While its tenure was brief, its platform included state welfare as a citizen's right. In 1908–09 and 1910–13, Labor returned to office for more extended terms. In 1908–09, in cooperation with Alfred Deakin's Liberals, Labor introduced the *Old Age and Invalid Pensions Act*. In 1912, a maternity bonus for new mothers was added, but not for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people.

Viewed from today's perspective, such beginnings appear small and cautious. There was no attempt to introduce unemployment benefits or any educational or health initiatives.

Yet, for the time, along with arbitration and the basic wage, it was a big step forward. As a result, Australia was seen internationally as being a boldly experimental 'social laboratory', where a national safety net was now being woven to save the less fortunate.

The old age pension, introduced in July 1909, granted 10 shillings (\$1) per week for women over 60 years and for men over 65. It was seen as 'a just reward for a lifetime of useful work'. Yet it was not sufficient for survival and was also means-tested: payment ceased if the recipient earned 20 shillings (\$2) or more weekly. A character test required the receiver to have been 'sober and respectable' for the past 5 years and free of criminal conviction for 12. Nevertheless, this pension was double the British equivalent, which was only available to those aged over 70 years. The invalid pension was also small and difficult to obtain. The applicant had to demonstrate a permanent incapacity and an absence of all family support.

Labor's maternity bonus was its only welfare reform introduced between 1910 and 1913.

Each white mother (whether married or not) was granted a 100 shilling (\$10) bonus for every live delivery. The average birth rate had fallen from seven children per family in 1891 to just over five by 1911 and there was great concern about 'national decline'. There

was official talk of women's 'selfishness' in using birth-control methods and of 'racial decay' connected to a fear of Japanese invasion. The allowance was therefore a financial incentive to procreate and boost population growth. However, the national birth rate continued to fall, reaching a low of 1.5 per family in 1931.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 14.10

Recall Australia's adoption of state welfare policies and answer the following questions:

- 1 Why did people believe that poverty was the outcome of moral failure?
- 2 How did this opinion change?
- 3 What role did the Labor and Liberal parties play in the Federation welfare reforms?
- 4 How important were the changes from an international perspective?
- 5 How helpful were the old-age and invalid pensions of 1909?
- 6 What were the reasons behind the maternity bonus of 1912?
- 7 Why were Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people excluded from these reforms?



Source 14.28 The Australian birth rate reached an all-time low in 1931.

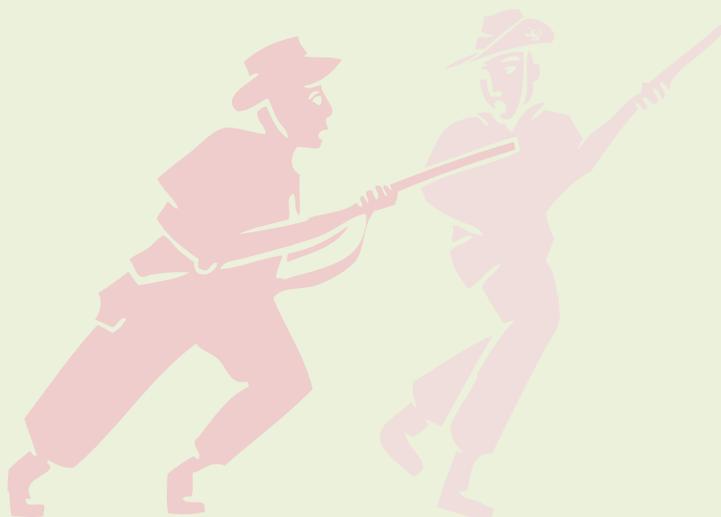
Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Convicts, officials and soldiers established the first European settlement at Sydney in 1788. From the 1830s, free settlers flowed into and across Australia, creating a new society.
- The wool industry, the gold rushes and other mining pursuits made Australia an attractive place for investment and led to substantial profits for investors.
- The settlers believed that they could rightfully take the land and the notion of *res nullius* denied Indigenous ownership and use. This invasion had devastating impacts upon Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people, destroying their security, livelihoods, beliefs, languages and physical and cultural lives.
- Non-European migrants from China, Japan, Afghanistan, the Pacific Islands and other places made valuable contributions to the economic and social life of nineteenth-century Australia, but increasingly European settlers asserted that Australia should belong to whites only and attacked these people by physical and legislative means.
- White Australians developed a highly democratic form of government where manhood suffrage, payment of members of parliament and, increasingly, the enfranchisement of women were introduced. However, Indigenous people and non-European migrants were largely denied the opportunity to participate in this political system.
- Australian working and living conditions were difficult and challenging for many at the time of Federation. There was evidence of much social and economic inequality. The new Commonwealth governments began to address some of these problems by introducing the concept of a male basic wage, industrial arbitration, pensions and a female maternity bonus. Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people and non-white migrants, however, were once more denied access to these reforms.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Reflect on why there was no recognition of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander land rights in the Australian colonies.
- 2 Why did South Sea Islander people return to Australia for a second or third time?
- 3 In what ways was Australian democracy more advanced than that in Britain and the United States?
- 4 Explain why women wanted the right to vote.
- 5 Describe the White Australia Policy.



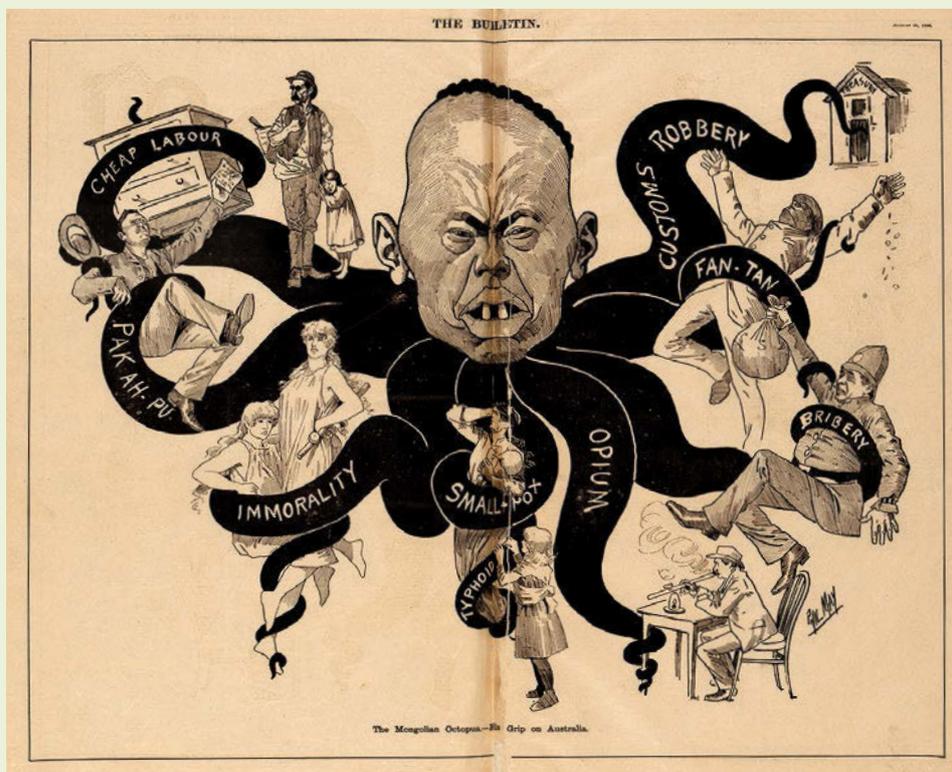
Source analysis

- 1 In the cartoon below, what is the octopus doing to the different Australian people?
- 2 Research the meaning of 'Fan-Tan' and 'Pak Ah-Pu'.
- 3 Explain why there is a chest of drawers in the top left-hand corner.
- 4 How is the Chinese man presented in this cartoon?
- 5 Compare his face with that of Quong Tart (see Source 14.12).
- 6 Compare this cartoon with the one at the end of Chapter 12 (see Source 12.23) depicting the Chinese man barred from entering the United States.

- 7 Given that European Australians had taken over all the country and land of Indigenous Australians by 1886, could you draw an octopus figure with eight arms presenting an Indigenous view of European Australians as gripping the Australian landmass? With each arm, illustrate one of the damages the Europeans caused to Indigenous Australians.

Extended-response question

Which groups were the main winners and losers in the making of the Australian nation between 1788 and 1914? Try to assess what each group won or lost in the process, and determine the level of their successes, failures, privileges or difficulties.



Source 14.29

A cartoon from *The Bulletin* on 21 August 1886: 'The Mongolian Octopus: His grip on Australia'. Note that the word 'Mongolian' was used to refer to Chinese people.

15

Asia and the world

Before you start

Main focus

In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, Asian societies experienced great social, economic and political changes, partly in response to interaction with Western imperialism.

Why it's relevant today

As Asian countries have increasingly become world powers, the Western domination and subjugation of Asian countries in the period 1750–1900 is important for an understanding of international relations in our world.

Inquiry questions

- How did Western societies affect Asian nations in the period 1750–1900?
- How did Asian countries respond to these challenges?
- How did relations between Asia and the West develop during this era?

Key terms

- 1848 revolution
- *Daimyo*
- Extraterritoriality
- Kowtow
- Polygamy
- Regent
- Unequal treaty
- Shogun
- Samurai
- Vassal state

Significant individuals

- Abdul Rivai
- Commodore Matthew Perry
- Empress Dowager Cixi
- Hong Xiuquan
- Kartini
- Prince Diponegoro
- Robert Clive
- Sir Stamford Raffles
- Tipu Sultan
- Tsuda Umeko

Let's begin

Between 1750 and 1900, Asian societies encountered Western societies armed with modern technologies and new ways of doing business and politics. Merchants forcibly demanded entry to markets in Asia and were backed by the military forces of their nations. India, Indonesia, Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, the Philippines and Sri Lanka became colonies of Western nations. In China, Western nations forced through unequal treaties, profiting from regions of the country that they had carved out for themselves. In colonised countries, cash crops for foreign markets were planted at the expense of food crops for the local populations. Japan took its own path to modernity, reforming its social structure, government and economy to make a direct challenge to Western power. By 1900, people in Indonesia, China and India had taken ideas from the West, such as nationalism and individual rights, to resist Western power and begin on the path to independence.

Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS	WORLD EVENTS
1700	
<p>1755 Treaty of Giyanti divides Kingdom of Mataram between Yogyakarta and Surakarta</p> <p>1793 Lord Macartney arrives in the Chinese court</p> <p>1799 Dutch East India Company is liquidated</p>	<p>1789–92 French Revolution</p>
1800	
<p>1819 Stamford Raffles takes Singapore</p> <p>1824 Treaty of London</p> <p>1821–38 Paderi War in Sumatra</p> <p>1825–30 Java War</p> <p>1839–42 First Opium War between Britain and China</p> <p>1853 United States forces Japan to open to trade</p> <p>1857–58 Indian Rebellion against British rule is suppressed</p> <p>1850–64 Taiping Rebellion in China</p> <p>1860 British and French forces destroy the Summer Palace in Beijing</p> <p>1868 Meiji Restoration in Japan</p> <p>1870 Liberal policy is introduced in the Dutch East Indies</p> <p>1885 Indian National Congress is founded</p> <p>1894–95 Sino-Japanese War</p> <p>1898 Boxer Rebellion in China</p>	<p>1814–15 Napoleon Bonaparte is defeated</p> <p>1832 First <i>Reform Act</i> is passed in Britain</p> <p>1833 Slavery is abolished across the British Empire</p> <p>1846 The Irish Potato Famine begins</p> <p>1855 Manhood suffrage is granted in South Australia and Victoria</p> <p>1861–65 US Civil War</p> <p>1869 Suez Canal is opened</p> <p>1870 Unification of Italy</p>
1900	
<p>1902 Anglo-Japanese alliance</p> <p>1905 Russo-Japanese War</p> <p>1911 Chinese Revolution</p> <p>1912 Death of the Meiji Emperor</p>	<p>1901 Australia's states are joined in a federation</p> <p>1905 First Russian Revolution</p> <p>1914–18 World War I</p>





Source 15.1 During the nineteenth century, China was beset by internal rebellions and lost territory to foreign powers. Foreign countries, Britain and France in particular, gained authority over key Chinese ports. The rising nation of Japan took the Ryukyu Islands and was influential in Korea and nearby provinces.

15.1 China

State of the nation during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries

In 1750, China was ruled by the Qing or Manchu dynasty, which had been in power since 1644.

Han Chinese the largest ethnic group in China

As the Manchus were not **Han Chinese**, they were regarded as foreigners by the majority of the population. At first they brought peace and stability to the country; in 1700, the standard of living and the development of science and the arts was among the best in the world.

However, by the nineteenth century, China was in decline. Under the Qing, the population grew quickly, reaching 300 million around 1800 and 400 million

female infanticide the killing of female infants

Confucianism a philosophy derived from teachings of Chinese philosopher Confucius (551–479 BCE)

in 1850. Agricultural production could not meet the needs of this growing population. In industry only traditional technologies were in use. The standard of living fell and there was a rise of **female infanticide**.

Society and the education system were rigid. The **Confucian** beliefs of obedience were stressed in a conservative manner. Traders and merchants were on the bottom of the scale of social esteem, while officials and scholars were respected – but scholars were chosen by an examination system in which those who could learn and repeat ancient teachings were rewarded.

This meant that the scholars were less open to new ideas and were unable to lead China to meet the challenges of the modern world.

In previous centuries China had been a scientific leader, but it was now backward in comparison with Western Europe.

Change and continuity

During the nineteenth century, the government was unable to control the vast area of China and local rulers became more powerful. Along with major conflicts like the **Opium Wars** and the **Taiping Rebellion**, there was widespread social unrest. The government was hampered in these conflicts by having to support the **bannermen** as well as local militia and a professional army.

There was little money for public works and the **Grand Canal** between Hangzhou and Beijing silted up and became useless for transporting goods. As well as this, the government restricted Chinese interaction with other countries. Foreign traders could only deal with licensed **merchants**, known as the **cohong**, which had a monopoly of the import–export trade. Foreign ships could only enter one port, Guangzhou, and only between October and January. Foreign traders could only stay in a special section of Guangzhou for these few months. No foreign ships could sail up the Pearl River.

Because of these measures, China had little opportunity to learn about the Westerners whom they called barbarians and ‘foreign devils’.

Chinese were forbidden to leave their country and were not allowed to teach Chinese to foreigners.

However, we do know that some, such as gold seekers and indentured labourers, did manage to leave. This combination of economic and military weakness with deliberate naivety about the West meant that China was ill-equipped to deal with the Westerners who were eager to profit from trade with China.

Opium Wars wars in 1839–42 and 1856–60 between China and the British Empire over trade and diplomatic relations

Taiping Rebellion a civil war across south China in 1850–64 led by Hong Xiuquan

bannermen a professional military group loyal to the Chinese emperor, in which positions were inherited by family members

Grand Canal begun in 486 BCE; the longest artificial waterway in the world; crucial for transportation of goods and people in China

merchant a person who buys and sells goods

cohong a guild or group of 13 merchants who were authorised by the Chinese emperor to have a monopoly over trade, especially tea and silk, with the West

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.1

- 1 Describe why the Qing dynasty was regarded as foreign within China.
- 2 Determine why it was difficult for the Qing government to fight wars during this period.
- 3 Assess why the Chinese people were ill-equipped to deal with the influx of Western powers.

Trade relations with the West

Trade links between Europe and China had existed since the Ancient Roman period. Silk and fine porcelain was prized in Europe, although the Europeans were now copying Chinese designs and techniques. Over the eighteenth century, Chinese tea became very popular, especially among the British middle classes. In 1720, Britain imported 180 tonnes of tea from China and this grew to 10600 tonnes by 1800. Britain was purchasing almost 15% of the annual Chinese tea crop. It was said that the British consumption of tea grew from around 1 kilogram per head annually in the late 1790s to about 5 kilograms per head a decade later. Tea became a necessary part of the English way of life – this was when the English afternoon tea ritual developed.

The traders paid in silver, which the Chinese government used for its currency. In 1780, the British paid almost half a million kilograms of silver. However, because silver was becoming increasingly hard to obtain, the foreign traders and their governments wanted to be able to sell other goods to China to help pay for the tea, silk and china. They also wanted to deal with traders outside the *cohong* and be able to enter other ports and thus avoid the cost of having all goods sold through Guangzhou, which was far to the south of the tea-growing regions around the Yangtze River.

In 1793, King George III of England sent the diplomat Lord George Macartney to China to negotiate the freeing up of Chinese trade.

Macartney took with him 84 servants and 600 boxes of gifts for Emperor Qianlong, whom he hoped to impress. He presented King George's letter to the Emperor in a gold box encrusted with diamonds. At first the Emperor was unwilling to meet the envoy, who refused to **kowtow**.

kowtow to kneel and bow, touching one's forehead to the ground

However, they did have an informal meeting at the Imperial summer retreat. The Emperor accepted the gifts of clocks, telescopes and guns not because he was impressed by them but because he knew it had been so much trouble to bring them to Beijing. But he rejected the British requests, telling Macartney, 'There is nothing we lack ... We have never set much store on strange and ingenious objects, nor do we need any more of your country's manufactures'.

Although Macartney failed to get any agreement to make the China trade more balanced and open, he gained useful knowledge about China.

He could see that the military forces were poorly armed, that poverty was widespread and that scholars and officials were uninterested in either improving the

Historical thought

When Lord Macartney left Beijing without success in his mission, the Chinese government supplied his ship with two cows so that he could enjoy milk in his tea on his return journey.

standard of living in China or in greater communication with the outside world.

Gun-boat diplomacy

The British East India Company was growing opium in India and could see this was a product that they could sell in China. Opium was useful as a pain-killer, but many became addicted to it.

British opium sales to China grew quickly: from 200 chests in 1729 to 1000 chests in 1767 and 4500 chests in 1800. Opium smoking became a terrible social problem, and by 1800 the Chinese government had banned the import and production of the drug. In 1813, opium smoking was prohibited – offenders received 100 lashes and were required to wear a heavy wooden collar for a month. However, the British continued the trade. By dealing with Chinese smugglers and bribing officials, the traders increased the volume to 40000 chests by 1838.

Lin Zexu was an official appointed to stamp out the destructive trade. In a letter addressed to Queen Victoria, later published in the London *Times*, he wrote: 'Let me ask you, where is your conscience? If people from a foreign country were seducing your people into buying and smoking opium, I'm certain you would not be happy either'.

Lin Zexu seized opium stores and 70000 opium pipes. Opium belonging to the foreign traders was destroyed by 500 labourers working for 22 days. The British saw this destruction as an affront to their dignity and an assault on free trade. The British attacked the Chinese ports of Ningbo, Tianjin and Guangzhou, sailing up the Yangtze to Nanjing to demonstrate their superior force. On a single day in 1841, just one British steam-powered warship armed with large modern guns destroyed five Chinese **junks**, five forts, two military stations and onshore defences.

junk a Chinese sailing ship or river boat

The Emperor had to submit to a humiliating peace: the Nanjing Treaty in 1842. Under the terms of the treaty, five ports were opened to international trade, China had

unequal treaty a treaty that is far more favourable to one country than the other; often the result of a military threat or defeat

tariff government tax charged on imported or exported goods

to pay the British war costs and Britain took control of Hong Kong. This was the first of the **unequal treaties** under which foreign powers imposed their will on China. Unequal treaties also set low **tariffs** for imported goods, which not only made it hard for Chinese industry to develop but also increased British profits.

Foreigners were now allowed to enter China, and traders and Christian **missionaries** were soon challenging traditional Chinese beliefs and values. Further, under the principle of '**extraterritoriality**', foreigners were not subject to Chinese law and courts but were tried under their own law.

missionary a person sent to spread a particular religious faith in another country

extraterritoriality an exemption to local law; typically as a result of diplomatic negotiations

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.2

- 1 Deduce why English traders wanted to sell goods to China.
- 2 Discuss with a partner the impact of Lord George Macartney's visit to China on the relationship between Britain and China.
- 3 Imagine being an English citizen drinking a cup of tea for the first time. Write a short paragraph describing what it would be like. Reflect on how far the tea would have had to travel to get to your lips.

Key event: the Taiping Rebellion

The Qing government also had to combat internal rebellions, especially after the humiliating Nanjing Treaty. Notably, the Taiping Rebellion of 1850–64 spread over 16 provinces and destroyed 600 cities. The leader, Hong Xiuquan (1814–1864), was a village school

teacher who became enraged by the Manchus when he failed the Imperial Examination for a fourth time. He had a vision and believed he was the younger brother of Jesus Christ. He incited his followers to destroy idols and ancestral temples, to renounce opium and alcohol, and to give up **foot-binding** and prostitution. He said

the Qing were foreign rulers who had stolen Chinese wealth and oppressed China's people.

He attracted many followers, especially among his own Hakka group, and they rose up against the government. In 1851, Hong declared he was King of the Heavenly Kingdom of Great Peace (Taiping). The Taipings called for a new type of society, with equal landholdings and equality for men and women. The Xianfeng Emperor, who ruled between 1850 and 1861, appointed Zeng Guofan to defeat the rebellion. Zeng had to set up a new army, with both men and women brought in as **conscripts**. It took 12 years and 20 000 troops to

defeat the rebels, with the struggle damaging the fertile lower Yangtze area and causing the loss of more than 20 million lives. The plains were 'strewn with human skeletons' and rivers were 'polluted with floating carcasses'. During this era, many Chinese went to the goldfields in California and Australia, leaving behind the misery and poverty of southern China. Others went to the Malacca Straits and the north coast of Java as traders.

The Taipings were defeated, but other rebellions broke out. Along the route of the Grand Canal, poverty and unemployment saw many become bandits in gangs.

foot-binding the painful practice of tightly binding the feet of young women, breaking the foot bones to stop their feet from growing; it was thought to make the women beautiful, dainty and feminine

conscript a person who is enrolled for compulsory military service



Source 15.2 Portrait of the leader of the Taiping Rebellion, Hong Xiuquan (1814–64)

While the government was struggling to keep control, foreign powers took advantage of its weakness. In the Second Opium War of 1856–60, the French and British forces launched attacks on Guangzhou and other ports. They marched on Beijing, occupied it for 1 month, and looted and then burned the Emperor's beautiful Summer Palace. Under the terms of the peace, 10 more ports became open to foreign traders and the British gained the Kowloon peninsula across from the island of Hong Kong. Significantly, the opium trade was legalised. Russian Count Nikolay Muravyov-Amursky helped to negotiate the peace, and in return Russia took over some northern provinces where they built the port of Vladivostok.

Position of China leading up to 1900

Self-strengthening movement

Broken by these terrible defeats, the Xianfeng Emperor died in 1861. He was succeeded by his 6-year-old son, whose uncle Prince Gong and mother the Empress Dowager Cixi ruled as **regents**. Many officials felt that new policies were needed. It was important to learn from Western countries and to develop China in a modern way. They wondered why small nations like France and Britain were able to defeat China.

They said China must learn from the barbarians in order to do better than them.

Zeng Guofan and Li Hongzhang were part of a small group of officials who wanted reform. Prince Gong supported this self-strengthening program.

They hired some Western technical experts as instructors and sent young Chinese abroad to study and understand Western institutions and production methods. They established a naval academy and built harbours, shipyards, gun factories, machine factories, and cotton, textile and paper mills.

They encouraged the study of European languages and established embassies in major cities such as London, Paris, Tokyo, Berlin and Washington. As they modernised China, conservative critics attacked them and tried to undermine their efforts. They said that copying the West was an insult to ancient Chinese ways and beliefs.

The Empress Dowager Cixi (1835–1908) benefited from this struggle, as she was able to play the conservative and reform factions off against each other. The daughter of a low-ranking official, at the age of 15

years Cixi was given to the Xianfeng Emperor as a consort and gave birth to his only son. After the Emperor's death, she shared power with the childless Empress Dowager Ci'an and the **Eight Regent Ministers**.

She gradually took control, and became the de facto ruler of China for 47 years. When her son died in 1875, she appointed a new emperor, her 3-year-old nephew Guangxu, ensuring her control for many more years.

The young Emperor Guangxu was attracted to the ideas of reformers such as Kang Youwei and Liang Qichao. In the Hundred Days reform in 1898 he issued many decrees for reform in education, the military and commerce, and moved China towards a constitutional monarchy. China seemed destined to follow the path of Japan in reforming and modernising, but this was not to be as the Empress Dowager Cixi and her conservatives staged a coup, executing many of Emperor Guangxu's followers and imprisoning him for 10 years. Kang and Liang escaped to Japan, and Liang later toured Australia in 1900–01 seeking support for reform. When Empress Dowager Cixi was dying in 1908, she appointed her great-nephew, an infant, as Emperor Guangxu's successor. It seems likely that she poisoned Guangxu, as he died suspiciously. She died the next day.

The **intrigues** of the Empress Dowager Cixi and her followers made it difficult for the government and people to face China's problems. The people were poor and the country was not very advanced, and beset by foreigners who were taking its wealth and territory. Large areas of China had been lost and the country had been humiliated by disastrous military defeats. Its neighbour, Japan, had successfully modernised and was growing as a military power. Japan waged war against China in 1894–95 and won control of Taiwan. Once more China had to pay a huge fine to its enemy. As a result of all the money paid to the foreign powers, China remained in debt until 1949.

The Boxer Rebellion

In 1898, the Yellow River flooded 2000 villages, and millions of people lost their homes and livelihoods. The failure of the government to provide relief led to widespread criticism.

Many were irritated by the privileges enjoyed by foreigners. They resented the interference of Christian missionaries in Chinese life and customs. The peasants rose against the foreigners, murdering some missionaries and attacking their compounds. These protesters

Eight Regent Ministers the ministers entrusted by the Xianfeng Emperor before his death to guide his son when he assumed the throne

regent a person who rules on behalf of a monarch who is too young or ill to take the throne

intrigue a secret and underhand scheme



Source 15.3 Empress Dowager Cixi (1835–1908)

believed they had special powers, and practised martial arts, thus gaining the name 'Boxers' by foreigners. The Boxers laid siege to the foreign embassies in Beijing. The Empress supported the Boxers and declared war on the eight foreign powers, which defended their citizens.

In August 1900, 20 000 foreign troops marched into Beijing. Australian colonies sent troops to help defeat the Boxers. Once more China suffered a terrible defeat and the foreigners imposed harsh penalties and a huge fine to be paid over 40 years with interest. This was the final indignity for China. It had resisted reform and modernisation and had virtually become a nation subject to foreign powers. Only in 1911, with the Republican Revolution led by Sun Yat Sen and the overthrow of the monarchy, were the reformers able to make some progress in China.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.3

- 1 Recall the ways in which the reformers and conservatives at the Qing court disagreed about policy in the late nineteenth century.
- 2 Deduce why there is a suspicion that the Empress Dowager Cixi poisoned Emperor Guangxu.
- 3 Describe why the first Opium War has been seen as a contest between Chinese morality and superior British technology.

15.2 Japan

State of the nation during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries

shogun the military dictator of Japan

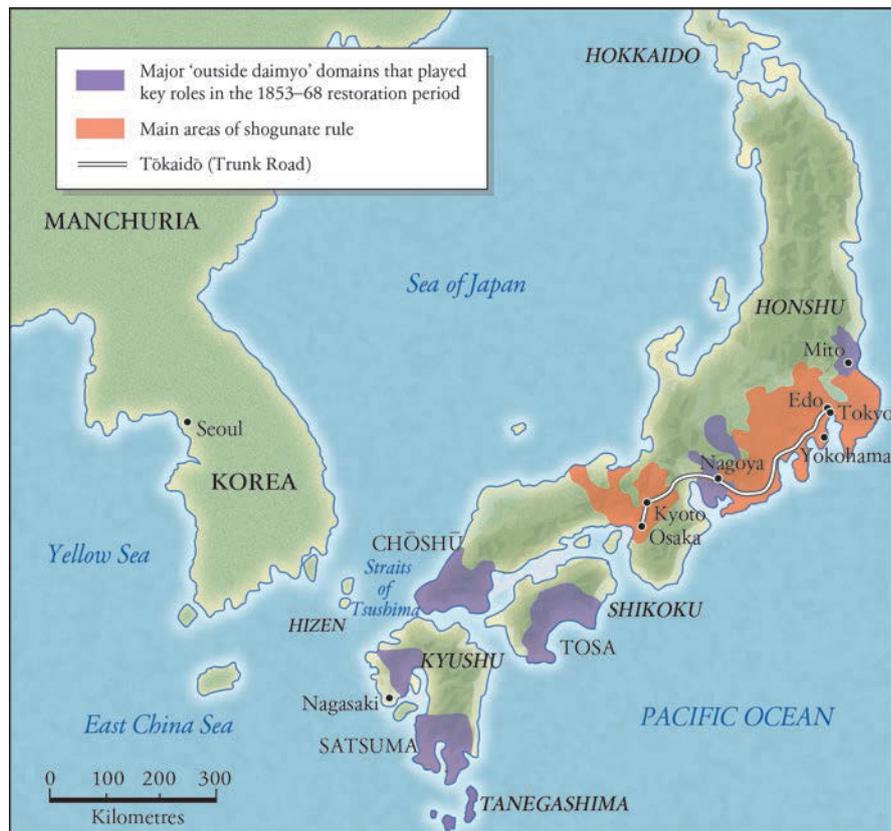
daimyo a feudal Japanese lord, roughly equivalent to a medieval European duke or earl

In 1750, the symbolic ruler of Japan was the emperor, but it was in fact the **shogun**, a military dictator, who held power. The Tokugawa family held the title of shogun from 1603 to 1867. The Tokugawas unified Japan in 1600 and brought the **daimyo** under their control.

Daimyo were powerful lords who controlled large areas of land, but who owed their allegiance to the emperor and the shogun. The *daimyo* and their families were required to spend long periods in the capital Edo

(now Tokyo) so that they would not plot against the shogun. This centralisation of power encouraged the growth of Edo, and by the end of the eighteenth century it was the largest city in the world, with more than 1 million residents.

Europeans, especially the Portuguese and Dutch, had been trading with Japan from the sixteenth century. In 1549, Francis Xavier, a Jesuit priest, arrived in Japan. As the number of converts to Christianity grew, Japanese rulers became increasingly concerned about the activities of foreign missionaries and merchants. They knew that the activities of merchants and priests had been the



Source 15.4 Tokugawa, Japan: the area between Edo and Osaka was the political base of the Tokugawa shogunate as well as its rice basket. The domains (purple) that would overthrow the Tokugawa shogunate in the mid-nineteenth century were mostly in outlying areas of south-western Japan.

colony a settlement formed in conquered territory

first step in making the Philippines a colony of Spain. During the sixteenth century, Christian converts began to be persecuted by the Japanese authorities. In 1626, Christianity was banned in Japan and by 1639 all Europeans had left the country except for the Dutch East India Company, which was allowed to remain on Dejima, a small artificial island in Nagasaki Harbour.

Mixing between the Dutch and the Japanese was strictly limited. Japanese were forbidden from travelling abroad and those who were overseas were prohibited from returning. For the next 250 years, Japan closed its doors to the rest of the world. This opposition to the foreigners helped to develop a feeling of Japanese nationalism and identity, but it also closed Japan to new ideas and new technologies.

Even though Japan cut itself off from the world, this was a period of change within the country.

It was a period of internal peace; and because the population was stable at around 30 million people, living conditions improved. Although the shogun wanted to freeze the social structure, a merchant class grew in the larger towns. The wealth they were amassing was to become useful later in the nineteenth century. The samurai were no longer needed to fight. Many

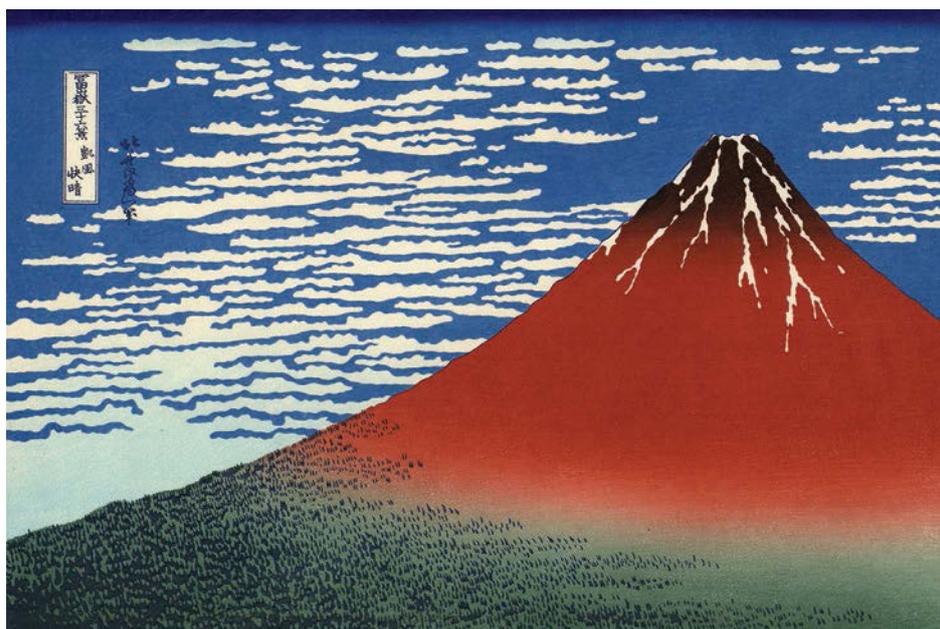
became involved in civil administration and government work. Many more, however, became effectively unemployed – and because of the strict restrictions on the samurai class, they couldn't get new work.

The rapid growth of Edo during this period led to the development of a new kind of urban culture. There was a rich artistic life, with theatre, poetry and visual art all flourishing. One of the most notable art forms was *ukiyo-e*, or woodblock printing. Famous artists included Utamaro, Hiroshige and Hokusai (see Source 15.5).

Edo society also began to explore Western philosophical, political and scientific ideas, which they were exposed to through the Dutch port of Dejima near Nagasaki. Hence, Western ideas became known as *rangaku*, or 'Dutch learning'.

samurai the hereditary warrior class of Japan





Source 15.5 *Red Fuji: southern wind, clear morning* by Hokusai (1760–1849), one of Japan's best-known *ukiyo-e* artists

Change and continuity

Foreign devils are back!

With the Industrial Revolution and the growth of capitalism, European and American traders were spreading across the world seeking trading opportunities. From the late eighteenth century, a number of efforts were made to break into Japan, but these were repelled. Japan had witnessed the disasters that had befallen the Chinese with the onslaught of the Westerners. However,

some Japanese leaders began to hold the view that Japan should combine 'Eastern ethics' and 'Western science'. Many were critical of the poor response of the shogunate to a severe famine between 1833 and 1837. Dissatisfaction was growing as more people began to view the officials as corrupt and inefficient.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.4

- 1 Explain why the Tokugawa shoguns become concerned about the growth of Christianity in Japan.
- 2 In groups, discuss why you think the shogun asked the *daimyo* to spend long periods in Edo.
- 3 On the internet or in the library, research *ukiyo-e*. What are some qualities of these paintings? Try to draw something in your classroom in the *ukiyo-e* style.

In July 1853, the US Commodore Matthew Perry steamed into Edo Bay with four ships.

He had orders from the President of the United States to seek the humane treatment of castaways and, most importantly, the opening of Japanese ports to trade. He made sure that the Japanese understood that the modern US ships were well armed, and presented a letter from the President.

He left saying he would return the next year for the Japanese answer to this diplomatic but forceful request.

The shogun did not know how to handle this unprecedented situation, but ultimately had no choice but to submit to these demands. On Perry's return in February 1854 with eight ships, the shogun agreed to the opening of Japan under the terms of an unequal treaty, the Treaty of Kanagawa.

As with similar treaties with Britain, Russia, France and Holland, the Treaty of Kanagawa placed low tariffs on goods brought into the country by foreign merchants. The treaties also had clauses about extraterritoriality,

which meant that foreigners were not subject to Japanese laws.

Now Western traders, eager to exploit and profit from the new Japanese trade agreement, entered the country. Their behaviour and arrogance was shocking to many Japanese people, who were very critical of the Tokugawa shogunate for failing to protect them, their country and its traditions from these crude interlopers. After all, the shogun was supposed to be the military protector of Japan.

Key event: the Meiji Restoration

outside daimyo a *daimyo* (lord) whose lands were distant from Edo, the Japanese capital

Satsuma and Choshu, two of the **outside daimyo** and traditional rivals, decided to join together to oppose the shogun and to call for the reinstatement of the emperor as the rightful ruler of Japan. They convinced the emperor to

decree the abolition of the shogunate in 1868.

The emperor was a 15-year-old boy, Mutsuhito, who was better known as the Meiji – a term that translates as ‘enlightened rule’. He was helped to make decisions by the samurai of Satsuma and Choshu.

The Japanese now had a breathing space to get on with the reforms and modernisation of their country, without too much interference from the West. Japan’s military was weak and it would have been easy for the Western powers to make the inroads they had made in China. But the Western nations were still heavily involved in China, so Japan was largely left alone.

However, the transition from the shogunate to the Meiji era was not all smooth sailing. There was a series of conflicts, most notably the Boshin War of 1868–69, which was fought between the supporters of Meiji and the supporters of the shogunate. Victory by the Meiji supporters allowed the new rulers to implement their reform program.

Edo, now renamed Tokyo (‘eastern capital’), was retained as the capital city of the new regime.

One of the first things the new government did was to issue the Charter Oath, which showed the different approach of the new government. New principles included:

- public discussion of all matters
- the participation of all classes in the administration of the country
- freedom for all persons to pursue their preferred occupation
- the abandoning of evil customs of the past
- the seeking of knowledge throughout the world in order to strengthen the country.

Position of Japan leading up to 1900

Economic development and modernisation

The Meiji government wanted to engage with the new Western ideas while maintaining Japanese ways. A popular slogan was ‘Japanese spirit, Western learning’. They hired many foreign technical advisers to help them in fields from mining and engineering to agriculture and education. Additionally, groups of officials were sent abroad to study and observe. One of the most important was the Iwakura Mission of 1871–72 (see Source 15.6), which sent 60 students overseas to complete their education. Five young women stayed in the United States, including Tsuda Umeko, who was only 7 years old.

When she had finished her studies she founded Tsuda College, a university college for women, which still exists today.

New modern systems assisted the development of the new Japanese economy. Railway construction connected major centres and made trade and transport more efficient. The first railway opened in 1872 and ran from Yokohama to Shinagawa and then on to Tokyo. By 1900, 5000 miles of track had been laid. Before, it had taken 2 weeks on foot to travel from Tokyo to Kyoto, but in the 1880s it could take 1 day on the railway.

The old social distinctions also were abolished.

The 1868 Charter Oath meant that people from all classes could enter any occupation. The old samurai class was phased out, as in theory the Meiji restoration gave every citizen equal opportunity. Universal education was proclaimed in 1872, but this took some time to achieve.

In 1879, just two-thirds of boys and one-quarter of girls were attending school. At first the Japanese adopted everything Western in their new schools, but soon they realised the importance of maintaining traditional ways and values. Thus the schools, along with a new modern curriculum, began to teach students values of Confucianism, **Shinto** and **nationalism**.

As industry grew, many new companies were able to call upon some Japanese funds to support their ventures. Many, such as Mitsubishi, benefited from this close relationship with the government and over time developed into the powerful multinational corporations of today.

Shinto a Japanese religion involving worship of ancestors and nature

nationalism devotion to national identity, or patriotism



Source 15.6 Members of the Iwakura Mission. Iwakura Tomomi is in the centre wearing traditional clothing. The others wear Western-style suits, which was often required of Japanese government officials in the early period of the Meiji era.

Moves to democracy?

Even though the Charter Oath had promised ‘public discussion of all matters’ and ‘the participation of all classes in the administration of the country’, the Meiji period saw political power concentrated in the hands of important advisers around the emperor. The cult of the emperor was developed, following a clause in the Meiji

constitution that read, ‘The Emperor is sacred and **inviolable**’.

The Japanese developed a type of government that had some of the elements of democracy, such as elections, but which was weighted in favour of the powerful advisers to

the emperor. The new constitution introduced in 1889 included a **bicameral parliament**, known as the Diet and modelled on the German parliament.

The upper house, the House of Peers, had nobles appointed to it and the Lower House was elected.

Only 2% of the male population had the vote, because of the requirement that voters pay at least 1 yen in tax per year. This eliminated all but the wealthiest members of society from the electoral system. The cabinet was not responsible to the parliament. It was an uneasy mixture of democracy and authoritarianism. A strong sense of nationalism was encouraged by the government.

Japanese imperialism and power

Like other capitalist nations, Japan was eager to expand in order to gain new sources of raw materials

and new markets for its manufactured goods. The Japanese government and people also greatly resented the unequal treaties they had been forced to sign by Commodore Perry. By the late nineteenth century, they had managed to remove some of these unequal terms. However, this was the age of high imperialism, when European nations dominated much of the world’s people, and it was common for white people to assume that they were superior to the people of other nations they encountered. The Japanese particularly resented the idea that they, too, were seen as inferior. Japan wanted to be, and to be treated as, the equal of the leading nations.

Traditionally, Korea had been a **vassal state** of China, but Japan was concerned that Korea was a ‘dagger pointing at Japan’s heart’ and that this dagger might be used by some

European colonisers. Japan tried to prevent this by increasing its influence in Korea, thus causing the outbreak of the Sino-Japanese War, in which China was quickly defeated. Using naval tactics they learned from the British, Japan destroyed the Chinese fleet.

Japan made China pay a huge indemnity and give up some territory. This was the beginning of Japan’s hoped-for empire in the East. But Germany, France and Russia stepped in, forcing Japan to return part of this territory to China.

The Japanese were furious, especially when a few years later these powers started taking over the same parts of China for themselves. The Sino-Japanese War had demonstrated the military might of Japan, but once again Western powers, especially Russia, had humiliated Japan.

However, Japan’s military expenditure was growing. From 1897, half the national budget went to the armed forces. The British recognised Japanese strength and negotiated a treaty: the Anglo-Japanese Alliance of 1902, which was the first treaty of equality between an Asian and a European power in the modern era. This treaty meant that Japan and Britain would declare **neutrality** in the event that the

other signatory became involved in war with another power, and would actively support the other signatory if they were involved in war with more than one power.

The Russian Trans-Siberian railway, the construction of the port of Vladivostok and Russian control of parts of China showed that Russian power was growing in the east. The Japanese wished to stem this Russian advance.

With the British committed to neutrality, in 1904 the Japanese waged war against the vast Russian empire. This led to great casualties on both sides, but the

vassal state a state that pays tribute, either monetarily or militarily

neutrality not helping or supporting either of the opposing sides

inviolable not to be injured or disturbed

bicameral parliament a parliament consisting of two houses or chambers

Japanese commanders were very successful, especially when they destroyed the Russian fleet in May 1905 in the Straits of Tsushima.

The defeat of a great European power by an Asian nation resounded around the world. It gave hope to the many colonised people in Asia and Africa. It also led the colonising powers to realise that the colonised peoples of the world could adopt modern technologies and challenge European and American dominance.

Historical thought

During the *sakoku jidai* ('closed country period'), any foreign castaways who landed on Japan were likely to be executed. Some were luckier and were only expelled.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.5

- 1 Research the Iwakura Mission and the life of Tsuda Umeko and present a poster on it to the class.
- 2 On the internet, research Dejima and the interaction between the Dutch and Japanese people there. Draw a diagram of the island and make a poster about the interactions.
- 3 Draw up a chronological chart with columns for China and Japan. Compare how each country was handling its relationships with the West during the period 1750–1900 and how this affected their autonomy.

15.3 India

State of the nation during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries

The East India Company was granted a charter by Queen Elizabeth I in 1600 to exploit the spice trade with the East. In 1608, the company set up its first trading station at Surat on the west coast of the Indian subcontinent. By 1750, the East India Company had established a foothold in the subcontinent, which expanded over the second half of the century, giving birth to the British Empire.

Mughal emperors Muslim rulers who were in power in India from around 1525 to 1857

India had been ruled by the **Mughal emperors** from the sixteenth century. They did not have direct control over all of India, but ruled through various sultans, rajahs and nawabs who controlled their own

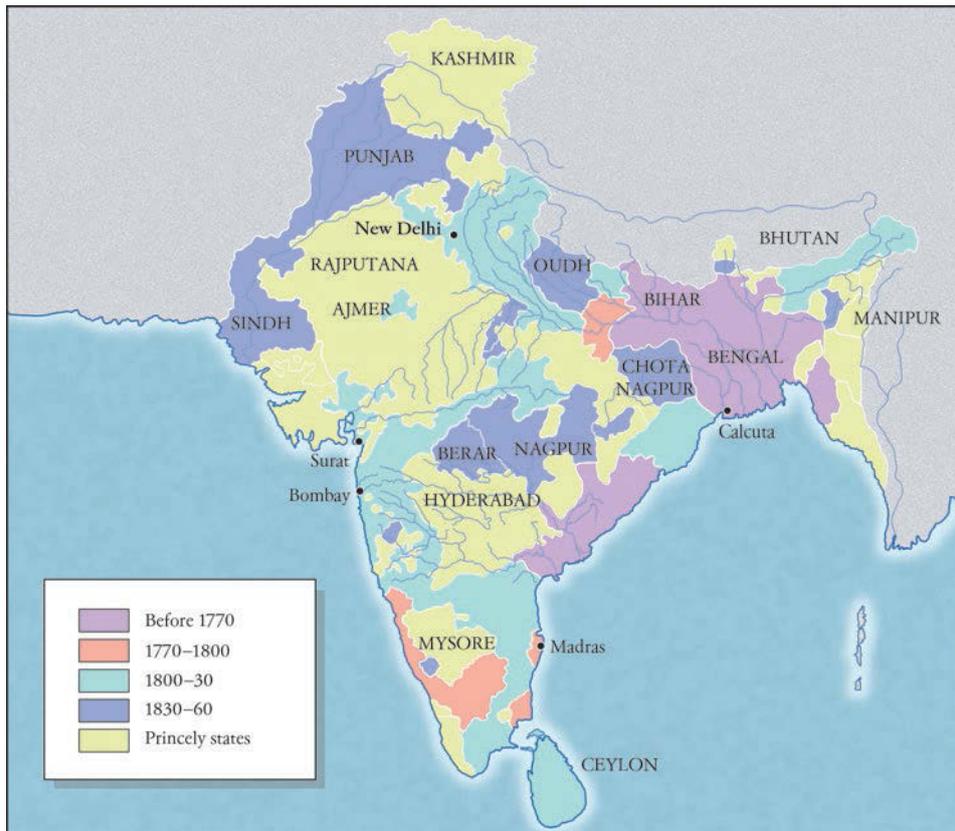
kingdoms. By the eighteenth century, these local rulers were becoming more independent of the emperor.

Initially, the East India Company was focused on making profits, rather than gaining territorial or political control. In return for payment, local rulers granted them the right to trading stations and trading privileges. These

rulers borrowed money from the East India Company and occasionally used company troops in their struggles with rival neighbours. Because of these negotiations, the company was gradually drawn into Indian politics, and company officials such as Robert Clive saw the opportunity for immense profits if they gained more political power.

The ruler of Bengal, Nawab Siraj Ud Daulah, was having a dispute with the company, which wanted to fortify its settlement at Calcutta.

In 1756, the nawab captured Calcutta and imprisoned many British citizens. However, Clive soon recaptured the city, but by using trickery rather than might. Before the Battle of Plassey, where the company forces faced the troops of the nawab, he made an agreement with Mir Jafar, the nawab's commander, that the commander would lead many troops away from the battle and thus allow Clive to win. This was because Jafar wanted to become nawab himself. It is therefore not surprising that Clive won this battle in 1757, which placed this rich province virtually under British control. Clive's own reward for his part in the battle was magnificent. The new nawab allowed him into the Bengal treasury full of gold, silver, jewels and money and he emerged with treasure worth more than £10 million today.



Source 15.7 The British penetration of India 1750–1860. The Princely states kept their own Indian rulers, but the British authorities had a great deal of power over these rulers.



Source 15.8 Robert Clive, first Baron Clive of Plassey (1725–74): soldier and first British administrator of Bengal

Clive saw that the British could become the governors of Bengal. In 1759, he advised the British Prime Minister that with a force of only 2000 Europeans it would be easy to get 'the absolute possession of these rich kingdoms'. After further battles and political intrigues, the East India Company was made legal ruler of Bengal in 1765 and established their government administration.

The Indian peasants were required to pay high taxes, which were increased to 50% of the harvest value. The company also forced the growing of cash crops such as opium, jute and indigo, rather than rice. They particularly

Historical thought

Robert Clive had a pet Aldabra giant tortoise, named Adwaita, which was given to him in India in the 1750s or 1760s. In 1875 Adwaita was given to the zoo in Calcutta, where he finally died in 2006. At the time of his death, Adwaita's age was estimated to be 255 years.

wanted to sell more opium to China to increase company profits there. The export of Indian opium to China led to the Opium Wars discussed earlier in this chapter. These policies led to the 1770 famine in which 10 million people, or a third of Bengal's population, died.

Change and continuity

In the late eighteenth century, the East India Company became a political force in India, extending its power from its bases in Madras and Bengal. In the south, it came into conflict with the state of Mysore and its commander-in-chief Haidar Ali, and his son Tipu Sultan. In 1792, the company defeated Tipu Sultan, who was later killed in 1799 when his capital was taken by the East India Company. The company also tightened its grip on the state of Oudh and imposed British power over the Marathas in the west, near Bombay (today known as Mumbai).

While Clive was extending the power of the company, other British officials were studying Indian cultures, religions and literature. Sir William Jones, a judge and accomplished linguist living in Calcutta (today known as Kolkata), was entranced by the richness of Indian cultures. In 1786, he wrote, 'The **Sanskrit** language, whatever be its antiquity, is of a wonderful structure; more perfect than the Greek, more copious than the Latin, and more exquisitely refined than either.'

Sanskrit an ancient language in which sacred Hindu texts were written in about 2000 BCE

Historical thought

Tipu Sultan employed up to 5000 men to send rockets containing blades over a distance of 2 kilometres into opposing forces. The British captured some of these rockets and successfully copied them. They later used them in the wars against the French emperor Napoleon Bonaparte.

Key event: First Indian War of Independence

In 1857, a revolt of Indian soldiers (known as sepoys) broke out across the provinces of central India. This widespread uprising, known by Indians as the First War

of Independence, was a great blow to British power and led to great changes in India.

Christian missionaries were increasing their efforts to convert Indians to Christianity, and setting up schools to educate children about their religion. Some Indians were concerned about the criticism of their own religions. The sepoys, which made up the majority of the British forces in India, were dissatisfied with their wages and chances of promotion. When the army introduced new Enfield rifles, the soldiers had to bite off the end of the cartridge before the rifle could be fired. The sepoys believed that the cartridges had been greased with fat of cows and pigs. As **Hindus** do not eat beef and Muslims regard all pig meat as unclean, the sepoys feared this was a strategy to make them break religious teachings.

Hindu a member of India's major religion, which involves the worship of many gods and a belief in reincarnation

They saw this as part of a British plan to convert them all to Christianity.

Sepoys rose against their officers, murdering them and their families. The British authorities had no idea that this violent uprising was about to occur, nor that it would spread so quickly to major centres. Soon the rebels held Delhi, Lucknow, Kanpur, Bareilly and Jhansi. They proclaimed Bahadur Shah, the last of the Mughals, as the rightful emperor of India.

Acts of great cruelty were performed by both the British forces and the rebels.

Not all Indians joined the revolt, and with the help of Sikh soldiers from the Punjab region and Ghurkhas from Nepal, the British were able to regain control. At this time, Indians did not think of themselves as Indians, but rather as people from different regions and religions. This helps to explain why the revolt was not more successful.

In Britain, the news of the revolts and massacres made people ask why the East India Company, a private company, was governing such vast territories in India. After the tragic events of 1857, the British government moved for the Crown to take over the company's territories and activities in India. In 1858, Queen Victoria issued a proclamation to 'the Princes and Peoples of India' promising equal rights between Indians and the British. Educated Indians also would be able to take up positions in the Indian Civil Service, an organisation of public servants or officials who did the day-to-day work of administering British India. However, Indians were only slowly admitted to the ICS, mainly to lowly positions.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.6

- 1 Use the internet to research the Sanskrit language and prepare a poster depicting some Sanskrit writing.
- 2 Research Mysorean rockets and their influence in the British army. Create a PowerPoint presentation showing diagrams of the rockets and how they were used.

Position of India leading up to 1900

British India

In the later nineteenth century, the British authorities extended their power in India, taking over the Punjab region in 1849. Economic changes there led to some Punjabis coming to Australia to work as hawkers and in the sugar industry. The British fought expensive wars with Afghanistan, all paid for by Indian taxes. A railway system was extended over vast regions, along with a telegraph system that helped trade communications and enabled the government to control the population and to move troops quickly to trouble spots.

More British soldiers, officials, and planters and their families came to live in India. Although the British decided that, after the catastrophe of 1857, they would take care not to interfere with Indian customs and beliefs, missionaries continued their activities.

Other changes came in and Indians developed new ways of life. Universities were set up in Calcutta, Bombay and Madras (known today as Chennai) and Western-style schools grew up in many towns. Some Indian people went to study in Britain at Oxford, Cambridge and other universities. Mohandas Gandhi, the great Indian nationalist of the twentieth century, studied law in London from 1888 to 1891. Such Indian students learned much about British life and politics. For a while, Gandhi copied British ways – in his own words he played ‘the English gentleman’, wearing a top hat and tails – but he later became critical of some British ways.

Equal rights for Indian subjects?

From 1876, Queen Victoria was referred to as Empress of India. Indians who learned English and studied British politics observed that in Britain more people were gaining the right to vote, and wondered why, if they were ruled by the same queen, they also did not also have the right to vote. As Indians began publishing

newspapers discussing Indian affairs, the government restricted the freedom of the press. Indians resented the greater privileges that the British enjoyed in India.

Many Britons at home and in India opposed ideas of equality with Indians. The British Empire was a system of foreign domination and India was governed in the interests of Britain and not of India. British industry benefited from cheap raw materials from India and the development of modern industry in India was largely neglected.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.7

Explain the part that education played in the growth of Indian nationalism in the late nineteenth century.

Indian National Congress

In 1885, the Indian National Congress was established in Bombay by AO Hume, a retired British official, and a group of Indian men. It aimed to allow educated Indians to have a greater say in the government of India and in the Indian Civil Service. Wyomesh Chandra Bannerjee was president of the first meeting where 72 delegates met to discuss the way forward.

Soon the organisation became an important force in Indian politics, calling for more political rights for Indians and finally for independence from British rule. In 1901, Mohandas Gandhi, who had just returned from South Africa, went to his first Congress meeting. Later he was to become a key leader in the Congress and in the struggle for Indian independence. By 1901, Congress members were beginning to think of themselves as Indians united in the same struggle, rather than as people from different regions and religions with different interests.

RESEARCH 15.1

Use the internet or your school library to investigate the life of Mohandas Gandhi. Particularly focus on his early student days in London. How do you think his time in London influenced his future career with the Indian National Congress? He said he played at being and looking like an Englishman at this time. How do you think this influenced his ideas about Indian nationalism?

15.4 Indonesia

State of the region during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries

The idea of Indonesia as a nation did not exist when the Dutch first came to the Indonesian islands in search of spices in 1595. At that time there were a number of different **sultanates** and kingdoms

across the various islands, ruling people of different beliefs and ethnicities. However, by 1750 the Dutch East India had established treaty ports all over the archipelago, and had occupied significant amounts of territory.

sultanate a territory ruled by an Islamic leader (sultan)



Source 15.9 A land of islands, Indonesia was known as the Spice Islands by Europeans in the late fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

The present-day nation of Indonesia is made up of more than 17 000 islands stretching from the Indian Ocean towards the Pacific Ocean. Many of these are extremely small, but the largest are Java, Madura, Sumatra, Sulawesi, Borneo (which also includes the state of East Malaysia and the nation of Brunei), the Moluccas, Bali, Lombok, Sumbawa, Sumba, Flores, Timor (which includes the nation of East Timor) and New Guinea (which includes the nation of Papua New Guinea).

These islands over time have been subject to many cultural influences. Over the centuries, traders and seafarers from India, China, the Arab Peninsula and Europe (especially the Portuguese and Dutch) have had a great influence on these islands. Some of these traders stayed only briefly, while others had a lasting impact upon peoples and their cultures.

Puppet performances, known as *wayang*, reflect the cultural history of the Indonesian archipelago. Over the centuries people would gather at night in their villages to enjoy the mastery of the *dalang* (puppet master and narrator), who would make the flat leather puppets come alive and entrance them into the early hours of the morning. The village would resound with the voice of the *dalang* and the laughter of the audience.

Old Indonesian ways of storytelling were influenced by the arrival of Hindus from India from the first century CE and of their great epic tales, the *Ramayana* and the

Mababharata. When **Islam** came to the islands in the fifteenth century, the puppet shows were seen as blasphemous because they involved the representation of human figures, which is largely forbidden in Islam.

An ingenious way around this was to display only the shadow of the image on a large white sheet and thus *wayang kulit* was born (Source 15.10).

Late in the sixteenth century, the Netherlands, a maritime nation, was eager to take over the spice trade in these islands from Portugal, which was a declining power. In 1595, Dutch ships managed to get to Java and thus began a series of Dutch ships coming to buy spices (in 1598, for example, 22 ships set out). These were mostly highly profitable voyages. One expedition made a profit of 300% on its outlay.

Islam a religion based upon belief in one God of whom Muhammad is the chief and last prophet

Historical thought

As well as pepper and other spices, the port of Aceh in Sumatra exported elephants to India for the sultans, rajahs and maharajahs to use in their battles and ceremonies.



Source 15.10 *Wayang kulit* (shadow puppet plays), an important part of Indonesian cultural life

Dutch East India Company

In 1602, the Dutch East India Company was set up to control the spice trade, and eliminate wasteful competition between Dutch traders. The Dutch government allowed the company to wage war, colonise and do anything else necessary to maintain a monopoly on the eastern trade. The company organised information about the sailing route to the East, built ships and warehouses, equipped and dispatched expeditions, invested funds and fought wars to maximise its profits.



Source 15.11
The initials on the symbol of the Dutch East India Company are the abbreviation of the Dutch name of the company, Vereenigde Oost-indische Compagnie.

In 1750, the Dutch East India Company made a huge profit on selling spices in Europe; approximately 17 times what it paid for them.

The Europeans were eager to buy spices that made their food much tastier, but the people of the Indonesian archipelago did not want any of the goods that Europe could supply.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.8

Look at the map shown in Source 15.12 and draw in the sea route from Europe to the Spice Islands.



Source 15.12 Places where the Dutch East India Company traded, c. 1800

Trade between Asian ports

At the beginning of its operations, the only things that the Dutch East India Company were able to exchange for the spices it bought was silver and gold. Because silver and gold were in quite limited supply in Europe, this heavily restricted the growth of the spice trade. For this reason, the directors of the company decided to carry on a large intra-Asian trade, which means that they traded goods between various places in the Asian region. The company also sold other products from places in Asia to European markets. The company set up trading posts in coastal regions and bought spices produced in the local region.

At first the company only took over land near their ports. In 1619, it set up Batavia, on the site of the town

of Jayakarta (now Jakarta, capital of Indonesia). Dutch East India Company forts and trading factories were set up at important strategic places, such as Aceh (now in Indonesia), Malacca (Malaysia), Galle (Sri Lanka), Nagasaki (Japan), Canton (now Guangzhou in China), Cape of Good Hope (South Africa) and Bengal (India).

An amazing variety of products was shipped between these ports, including some items that are hardly known today. As we saw in the earlier discussion of Japan, the Dutch had a base at Nagasaki during the period when Japan was closed to outsiders. Each year the company sent eight ships to Dejima in Japan loaded with products such as cloth, ivory, sandalwood, ebony, fur clothing, pepper, sugar, amber, large dogs and other goods. Often ships were lost in typhoons, but this was

still a profitable trade. They brought a wide range of Japanese goods back to Batavia, including silver, gold, copper, camphor, rhubarb, pearls, rice, curved swords and fur pelts.

Silver, gold, elephants and rhubarb

The Dutch East India Company took silver, gold and cloth from China, the Coromandel Coast (south-east India) and Surat (west India) to Galle, and returned with cinnamon, ginger, pepper, elephants, rhubarb and precious stones. At Peraka and Kedah on the Malay Peninsula, the company bought tin and sold Coromandel cloth and **reals of eight**. They also exchanged cloth goods for horses, wax, honey and slaves at Butung, an island near Sulawesi.

real of eight an old silver coin, about 38 millimetres in diameter; also known as the Spanish dollar



Source 15.13 Cloves, the fragrant dried flower heads of a tree originally found only in the Molucca islands of Indonesia. When the Portuguese first brought them to Europe, 1 kilogram of cloves was worth 7 kilograms of gold.

RESEARCH 15.2

Many of the products sold by the company are little known today. Do some research to find out the meaning and uses of mace, sappanwood, sandalwood, alum, pewter, musk and gumlac, and what they look like. How do you think the people of the Coromandel Coast would have used sappanwood?

The first multinational corporation

The Dutch East India Company was the world's largest commercial enterprise and we can think of it as the first multinational corporation. From the eighteenth century, it had its own currency marked with its distinctive symbol or logo (see Source 15.14).



Source 15.14 Money issued by the Dutch East India Company featuring the company logo

Change and continuity

The story of the Indonesian archipelago is filled with rivalries and conflicts between various local rulers and sultans, as well as between European powers. As the Dutch East India Company became established in this region, it became involved in struggles with and between various rulers in Java, Sumatra and the Moluccas. On Java, the great Sultanate of Mataram was in decline in the eighteenth century and the company became involved in a number of wars about who would succeed to the position of Sultan, and thus extended its control over the rich lands of Java.

The rulers of Mataram asked the company to help them in their struggles and the company was able to exploit rivalries between members of ruling families and advance its control over the wealth of the islands. The local sultans were not as concerned about the growing power and influence of the company as they were with the local struggles, and saw that the company could be a useful ally. As a result of these intrigues, the Treaty of Giyanti in 1755 divided the Kingdom of Mataram between the sultanates of Yogyakarta and Surakarta.

Decline of the Dutch East India Company

Through the seventeenth and into the eighteenth century, the Dutch East India Company paid huge dividends to its Dutch shareholders. However, the costs of administering the large areas around the forts and trading stations grew. The company fought expensive wars to protect their trading interests, becoming involved in rivalries and disputes between local princes and sultans, and there was also a growing level of corruption among its employees. At the same time, the company's monopoly over trade in the East was being challenged by other European powers.

The Dutch had pushed the Portuguese out of the rich spice trade, but now the British were eager to extend their trading networks into the region.

The Dutch and the English fought a number of wars over access to these regions. By 1780, the British began to get the upper hand. When the Dutch supported the Americans in their rebellion against the British, the Anglo-Dutch war of 1780–84 ensued. The defeat of the Dutch also brought on the collapse of the Dutch East India Company.

The company lost 70% of its assets and many ships and trading stations to the British. In 1799, the great Dutch East India Company went bankrupt and its activities in the East Indies were taken over by the Dutch government.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.9

On a photocopy of the map depicted in Source 15.12, draw the shipping routes mentioned in this section and write and/or draw the products being traded between the Dutch East India Company's trading centres.

The Dutch East Indies after the company

In 1800, fewer than 6 million people lived in the Dutch East Indies. Some areas, such as the western coast of Sumatra, were scarcely populated. At this time, the Europeans had had little impact on the economic lives of most people. Europeans, particularly the Dutch, controlled small parts of east Indonesia, Java, Sumatra and the Moluccas.

These traders were located on coastal areas, together with Chinese and Arab traders who for generations had crossed the South China Sea and the Indian Ocean. However, trade was not an important activity for most people, who were engaged in agriculture and did not use money; they bartered crops and goods to meet their needs.

The most populated areas were in central and east Java, where high rainfall and rich volcanic soils allowed for intensive irrigated rice production.

The land here had been carefully terraced over generations and people were settled in towns and villages.

In other parts of the islands, conditions were poorer and people carried out slash and burn agriculture. The peasants cleared patches in the jungle, which they farmed before moving on to a different section. Most people were Muslims, but on some of the far eastern islands there were some **animists**. The Chinese performed ancestor worship and there were many Buddhists and Confucianists.

European struggles had an ongoing impact upon Dutch power in the east. The Netherlands were invaded by Napoleon's forces and annexed by the French in 1806. As Britain and other forces carried on the struggle against Napoleon, the Dutch empire became part of the spoils. In May 1811, the British captured Batavia, appointing Sir Stamford Raffles as Governor-General of the Indies. Raffles was very keen for the British to expand its empire into the Indonesian islands.

animism the belief that spirits exist in inanimate objects, including plants, mountains and weather phenomena



Source 15.15 Indonesian paddy fields, which require intensive cultivation to plant, weed and water the rice and to maintain the terracing and water channels

However, this was not to be and with the peace in 1816, the Netherlands regained their control over the Dutch East Indies. In order to pay for the costs of war, both British and Dutch rulers imposed forced labour on the Javanese peasantry along with heavy financial burdens.

Historical thought

Sir Stamford Raffles (1781–1826) was fascinated by the vegetation, wildlife and cultural monuments of Java, such as the ancient Buddhist monument at Borobudur. He kept a number of animals from Indonesia as pets. He reared a sun bear cub that joined the family for dinner, eating mangoes and drinking champagne.

Key incident: Treaty of London

The Dutch and the English had been competing in the east for some centuries when, during the Napoleonic Wars, the British took over Java and the Dutch territories in the Dutch East Indies. With the defeat of Napoleon, the Dutch were keen to regain their former territories, and were annoyed that the British had set up a new trading station at Singapore. They claimed that Raffles' agreement with the Sultan of Johore to set up Singapore was not valid.

In 1820, Dutch and British negotiators began meeting to discuss these issues and to work out a way to return the Dutch territories. Talks dragged on until agreement was reached in 1824 with the signing of the Treaty of London. Under the terms of the treaty, Britain and the Netherlands agreed to exchange territories so that the Dutch held the Dutch East Indies and the British held Singapore and India. The Malay world was divided at the Straits of Malacca with the British holding sway to the north of the Straits and the Dutch to the south and west of the Straits. Under this arrangement, the Dutch gave up their colonies in India and Malacca, and the British gave up their trading post at Bengkulu (Bencoolen) and all their interests in Sumatra. The Dutch agreed that Britain could hold Singapore.

Thus, at the stroke of a pen in Europe, the lives of millions of people in Southeast Asia were changed. The Malays in Indonesia were subject to Dutch rule and the Dutch legal system, while the people of Singapore and,

later, the Malay Peninsula were ruled by the British and subject to British law. In Indonesia, the language of the rulers was Dutch and across the Strait of Malacca it was English. These two parts of the Malay world evolved in different ways. Today the Strait of Malacca still forms the boundary between Indonesia on one side and Singapore and Malaysia on the other.

The early nineteenth century

The Dutch were introducing new ways into Java, and they consolidated their power over the Indonesian archipelago throughout the nineteenth century. The heavy burden on the peasantry caused widespread discontent, as did Dutch interference with the succession to Sultanate of Yogyakarta, especially among those members of noble and aristocratic families who lost out in these struggles. Conversely, members of other ruling and aristocratic families benefited from their association with the Dutch, and these divisions allowed the colonisers to flourish.

Often the Dutch ruled indirectly through a sultan or ruler, who appeared to have power and authority; however, a Dutch-appointed advisor (usually called a Resident) kept a close watch over the ruler and controlled his decisions.



Source 15.16 How the British and the Dutch divided up Indonesia and Malaysia

Prince Diponegoro and the Java War of 1825–30

The Java War of 1825–30 was the last uprising led by members of the old elite. The central figure was Prince Diponegoro, who was the oldest son of the Sultan of Yogyakarta. Born in 1785, he was raised in a devout Islamic environment. When his father died in 1814, he expected to become sultan, but the Dutch appointed his younger half-brother, Hamengkubuwono, as ruler. In 1821, Hamengkubuwono died in a cholera epidemic that swept the land. Once more Diponegoro was passed over as Hamengkubuwono's baby son was made sultan; Diponegoro was not even appointed regent for the young sultan. Diponegoro also believed the Dutch and Christians were turning the court away from a proper observance of Islam.



Source 15.17 Prince Diponegoro

This was a difficult time in Java: a poor harvest and heavy taxes were causing great distress for the growing population. Diponegoro was disturbed by the Dutch plans to build a road through his rice fields, close to his father's tomb. For Diponegoro, the death of the sultan, the famine and plague, and the eruption of Mount Merapi were very significant; he viewed them as signs that the infant sultan had lost the right to rule. Diponegoro believed that he was the 'Just Prince' who had to free the people from the oppression of the Dutch

and their allies in the court at Yogyakarta in order to restore peace.

Supported by many among the Javanese elite and the peasantry, Diponegoro launched a holy war against the Dutch and the corrupt court.

There was great loss of life: 200 000 Javanese died, mostly of starvation, as well as 8000 Dutch soldiers. The gracious city of Yogyakarta lost half its people. Eventually, the war reached a **stalemate**. The Dutch were finding the war very expensive, so in 1830 they invited Diponegoro to a meeting, ostensibly to discuss a truce. However, they doublecrossed him and sent him into exile in far-off Sulawesi.

This war marked the end of any resistance to Dutch rule in Java. Historians have noted that at this time the Javanese were reacting to the challenge of the more modern Dutch society by harking back to traditional ways rather than moving forward, as they were to do in the twentieth century. Today, the Javanese regard Prince Diponegoro as a nationalist hero, and there are many streets and a university named after him.

stalemate a situation where opposing forces are deadlocked, so no winner is possible

Cultivation system

The Dutch had fought two costly wars in Java and Sumatra, plus another in Europe in 1831–32 when they unsuccessfully tried to stop the Belgians separating from the Netherlands to form a separate kingdom. This meant that the Dutch desperately needed more revenue. With all these wars, the Dutch had incurred debts of 37.5 million guilders (the Dutch currency of the day). In order to raise money, the Governor-General of the Dutch East Indies, Johannes van den Bosch, introduced the cultivation system in 1830. This system required every village to set aside one-fifth of its land for **cash crops** to be sold in Europe.

cash crop a crop grown for sale, rather than to feed farmers or their stock

cochineal a scarlet dye made from the cochineal insect

Instead of growing rice, they had to grow sugar, coffee, tobacco, indigo, cinnamon or **cochineal**. If they did not produce these crops for the government, they had to pay a 40% tax.

The cultivation system was like a heavy system of taxation. It was confined to Java and the Minangkabau highlands in Sumatra. It did not affect the outer islands.

As well as bring an effective way of using the land and the labour of the Javanese, this was also a highly profitable system for the Dutch. Wealth flowed from the colonies to the Netherlands. From 1830 to 1840, the profit from Java was on average 9.2 million guilders per year. The 1840s was even more profitable, averaging

14.1 million guilders per year. In the 1860s, about one-third of Dutch government revenues came from the Indies. In all, from 1831 to 1877, 832 million guilders were sent to the Netherlands. This allowed the Dutch to quickly pay off their debts and to build railways, canals and forts at home.

However, this system was very bad for the Javanese. The forced delivery of crops for the government monopoly over 40 years had a long-term impact on the economy. It meant that any profits went out of the country and the Javanese could not invest in industry and new technologies to support their growing population (Java grew from about 7 million in 1830 to 16 million in 1870) or to raise their standard of living. The Dutch built a network of roads and railways across Java not only to transport goods but also to control the local population. There was little spending on hospitals, health-care or schools for Indonesians.

1848 revolution an uprising in the Netherlands by middle-class people who wanted more political rights

Although this was a very profitable system, criticism of it grew in the Netherlands. After the **1848 revolution**, the Dutch people had more say in their government policies. Stories about the harsh cultivation system and its impact on the Javanese peasants were heard in the Netherlands. Dutch voters became concerned about what was happening with the cultivation system.



Source 15.18 An eruption of Mount Merapi, which was seen by Prince Diponegoro as a sign that the spirits were disturbed by what was happening in Java

Max Havelaar

In 1860, the novel *Max Havelaar* was published and caused a great outcry in the Netherlands against the cultivation system. It appeared under a **pseudonym**, Multatuli, but was written by a former official in the Dutch East Indies, Eduard Douwes Dekker. It was a devastating description of the state of affairs in the Dutch East Indies, showing the corruption of the Dutch officials and the cruelty of the cultivation system, and depicting colonial rule as immoral and inhuman. The book was a plea for the Dutch king to improve the lot of his subjects in the Indies.

pseudonym a false name used by writers to hide their real identity

Middle-class opinion in the Netherlands wanted change, and because they were voters, they had some influence. After the publication of this book, the forced deliveries of various crops were phased out. Deliveries of pepper ended in 1862; cloves and nutmeg in 1864; indigo, tea and cinnamon in 1865; and tobacco in 1866. Coffee and sugar deliveries had been the most lucrative for the government and lasted longer. Sugar deliveries were ended during the years between 1878 and 1890 and coffee only in 1917.

The great Indonesian novelist, Pramoedya Ananta Toer, has argued that *Max Havelaar* did more than just end the cultivation system. He saw it as leading to the liberal policy that involved the setting up of schools in the Dutch East Indies. The Indonesian students who received an education at these schools went on to become the nationalists who founded the independence movement that finally expelled the Dutch in the 1940s. Pramoedya also notes that this novel was translated and read around the world, providing inspiration to the foes of colonialism everywhere. For many, this was the book that 'killed colonialism'.

Position of Indonesia leading up to 1900

After the publication of *Max Havelaar* and the growth of the Dutch middle classes, a liberal policy was introduced in the Indonesian archipelago from the 1870s. It was introduced not only for humanitarian reasons but also to let private Dutch entrepreneurs come and make money in the Dutch East Indies. This policy saw the growth of large estates producing coffee, sugar, tea and tobacco, and also the exploitation of rubber and oil – resources found in Borneo and Sumatra and important to new industries in Europe.

As we have seen, the forced delivery of cash crops was slowly phased out across the Indonesian archipelago. The new system ended the great monopoly

of the Dutch government in agriculture. With the passing of the Agrarian Law in 1870, private entrepreneurs could set up farms and other enterprises. The Dutch could not own land, but could lease it from the government for up to 75 years or from local people for up to 20 years. During the period from 1870 to 1900, more Dutch men, women and children came to live in the Dutch East Indies. In Java, the number of European civilians increased from 17 285 in 1852 to 62 447 in 1900, a threefold increase over a period of 50 years.

The opening of the Suez Canal to shipping in 1869 made it easier to travel between the Netherlands and the Dutch East Indies, while improvements in steam navigation made the journey much more comfortable. Still more Dutch families settled in Java and other islands, employing Indonesian workers on their plantations.

Alongside these plantations, the Indonesian people grew rice and other crops for their own survival. During this era, agriculture in Java and the outer islands was intensified. The volume and the value of exports increased greatly, especially from the private entrepreneurs. In 1885, the value of exports was twice that of 1860. Much of this increase came from the private sector: in 1869, private and government exports were about equal but, by 1885, private exports were 10 times higher than those of the government. Chinese entrepreneurs also prospered, but the income of Indonesian entrepreneurs and that of artisans and waged employees fell. There was famine in Banten, west Java, in 1881–82 and in Central Java in 1900–02. Despite the wealth being created, the standard of living of ordinary people fell.

The cash crops were hit by diseases such as coffee leaf curl disease, which from the 1870s led to a fall in production. The sugar blight spread across Java from 1882 to 1892 and, with the development of beet sugar in Europe, sugar prices fell dramatically. The peasants working in sugar industries became unemployed.

Rice consumption fell, especially after 1885, and people had to eat cheaper introduced crops such as maize and cassava. The rural depression was worst in 1887–88. Later in the century, new strains of sugar were created and sugar production recovered.

During this period, the people were burdened by taxes. In 1904, a report showed the average household in Java owed 20% of its income to the government. Many turned to money lenders in order to survive; indeed, much of the tax bill of the colony was passed to ordinary people.

Private European companies that benefited from the roads, railways, harbours and irrigation works that the

government built did not pay their fair share of tax. Ordinary people also paid for the cost of the Dutch expansion of control over the outer islands. For the Indonesian people, this was a system of shared poverty.

Education

Pramoedya Ananta Toer wrote that developments in education during this era killed colonialism.

In 1863, primary schools for European children were opened to local children, but high fees kept out most Indonesians. In 1867, an education department was finally established in the Dutch East Indies.

Many of the Dutch were opposed to extending education to Indonesian children. Some believed that education would make the Indonesian people harder to control and less accepting of Dutch authority over them. An opinion piece written in a newspaper of the time stated: 'They will be less obedient because they are more acquainted with the norms and the way of life of the white man.' Between 1871 and 1898, the number of primary schools increased from 263 to 516. Given the population numbers, this meant that most children still had no access to schooling. From 1871 to 1898, the numbers of male students increased fourfold, from 12 186 to 48 156, while the numbers of females grew from a tiny 4 420 to just 8 238. From the early 1870s, poorly resourced 3-year primary schools for the indigenous population were set up. Most of the funding was spent on Dutch children rather than on Indonesian children (see Activity 15.11).

There were very few high schools or higher education institutions for Indonesian students.

From 1873 to 1899 there were only 907 graduates of teacher colleges. The Dokter-Djawa School was set up to train Indonesian people to work as vaccinators. By the 1870s this had become a medical school for Indonesian male students, but only a small number of graduates flowed from this school. Between 1875 and 1904 there were just 152 graduates.

Indonesian doctors and teachers were paid a lot less than Dutch doctors and teachers. Often they were socially snubbed by Dutch officials and people in the Dutch East Indies, who strongly believed that they were superior to the Indonesians.

An 1863 government decree meant that all positions in the civil service were open to all in the colony, whatever their religion or ethnicity. But in practice, Indonesians in the civil service were often treated very badly. Even when they gained educational qualifications for higher positions in the public service, they found that these positions were often granted to Dutch people.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.10

Discuss the attitudes towards Indonesian people of the people who believed the statement: 'They will be less obedient because they are more acquainted with the norms and the way of life of the white man.'

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 15.11

The following table lists the funds spent on European and Indonesian students in the period 1883–92.

Source 15.19 Funds spent on European and Indonesian students in the period 1883–92

Year	Funds spent on European primary education (guilders)	Funds spent on Indonesian primary education (guilders)	Number of European pupils	Number of Indonesian pupils
1883	1 631 000	1 196 000	9 700	35 000
1886	1 746 000	990 000	10 700	43 000
1889	1 934 000	978 000	16 900	<to come>
1892	2 096 000	1 040 000	18 700	53 000

Source: Adapted from Ahmat Adam, *The Vernacular Press and the Emergence of Modern Indonesian Consciousness* (Cornell University Press, 1995), Table 1, p. 81

Calculate how many guilders were spent on the education of European children versus that of Indonesian children for the years listed in this chart. What conclusions can you draw from these figures?

Newspapers

Gradually, educated Indonesian people, teachers, doctors and the junior officials began to discuss their situation and the difficult position of their own people. They were critical of both Dutch officials and senior Indonesian officials who came from noble families. Educated Indonesians set up newspapers and journals, and saw the value of modern education and modern science for the progress of Indonesia. They started to feel they were Indonesian, and not just Javanese, Maduran or Sumatran. They could see the importance of working together as Indonesians, whatever their religion and region. It is not surprising that Budi Utomo, the first modern Javanese organisation, was founded at the Indonesian medical school, STOVIA, in 1908. Later, in 1913, the radical Indies Party was born. It aimed to unite all Indonesians in one party and demanded full independence for Indonesia.

Abdul Rivai (1871–1937)

Abdul Rivai was born into a family of teachers. He studied medicine at the Dokter Djawa school from 1887 to 1895 then worked as a doctor and also did some translating and journalistic work.

In 1899, he went to the Netherlands to undertake further medical training. Obstacles were put in his way, as he had to study for a Dutch highschool leaving certificate before he could enter a Dutch university. His funds were running out so he published articles in various magazines to get some money. Some of these were critical of the colonial administration. He began a newspaper, and then, in 1902, with a Dutchman called Brousson, he started a publication *Bintang Hindia*. They told the government the journal was to educate Indonesians about the Netherlands, and for a number of years gained some funds to help to produce it. It was read widely among the educated classes of Indonesians, with up to 30 000 subscribers. The articles encouraged discussion of the need for education and progress for Indonesians. For example, Rivai wrote about the victory of Japan in the 1905 Russo-Japanese War:

So far the people of the white race, the spoilt pets of history, had regarded themselves as the sole lords and masters of the earth. The sudden appearance of a people of another

race on the scene to defy one of the most powerful nations of the West with implements which, though adopted from them, it had perfected independently, seemed almost like an affront to them. They were not used to this. The fact remains even so. Willy-nilly, they will have to get used to prospecting Japan as a major power.

Rivai advised Europeans to stop putting themselves above other peoples and stop thinking only of enriching themselves at the expense of others:

It is a matter of urgent necessity that the white races finally accustom themselves to approaching people of other races without prejudice and without self-exultation, and that they finally stop letting the course of their politics, often influenced by the merchant and the mine-owner as it is,

be determined by purely materialistic interests. Justice and fairness in the estimation of other people, that is what the future of Europe demands.

The journal campaigned for more Dutch language schools, more opportunities for Indonesians to study abroad, a rise in teachers' salaries, and the opening of more government posts for Indonesians. His newspaper inspired other editors in Indonesia to set up similar papers.

Rivai wrote for a group of Indonesians whom he called *kaum muda* and described as, 'all people of the Indies whether young or old who refuse to follow the ancient system, obsolete customs and outdated habits, but wish to obtain respect by way of knowledge and education'.

After his medical studies in the Netherlands, Rivai came back and probably worked as a doctor in Sumatra. He continued his support for progress in Indonesia, and in 1913 chaired the first branch of the Indies party in Sumatra.

RESEARCH 15.3

Use the internet to research the life of Abdul Rivai in more detail. Focus in particular on the contributions he made to Indonesian independence. Present your findings to the class as a PowerPoint presentation.

Raden Adjeng Kartini (1879–1904)

Raden Adjeng Kartini, the daughter of the governor of Jepara, attended school with Dutch girls and became fluent in Dutch. When she was 12 years old, as was the custom for women of her class, she had to withdraw from society and stay secluded in her father's home and prepare for marriage. During this time she read widely, including the novel *Max Havelaar*, and wrote to a number of Dutch women friends. She expressed her ideas about the need to improve the position of women in her society and also her criticisms of the Dutch colonists who lorded their power over the local people. She was keen to study to become a teacher. She also wanted women to have the same opportunities to learn and study that were available to males. She criticised the suffering of secluded Javanese women, who were tied down by old-fashioned customs.

Her father was ill and wanted her to marry and, although she was opposed to the custom of **polygamy**, she became the fourth wife of another noble Javanese official. He supported



Source 15.20 Raden Adjeng Kartini

polygamy a system where men can have more than one wife

her wish to set up a school for girls at their home. Sadly, she died soon after the birth of her son in 1904. She was only 25 years old.

Some years after her death, her letters were published under the title *Letters from a Javanese Princess*. This was a rather silly title, as Kartini did not emphasise her noble birth, but was interested in the needs of people of all classes. Like many of the *kaum muda*, Kartini resented the Dutch colonials who saw themselves as superior to the Indonesian people. Educated Indonesians were constantly reminded of their lowly status. She wrote about one young man, a brilliant student, who was humbled because he dared to speak in Dutch to a small-minded official. This official punished him by sending him to a lowly clerical job in a remote place to think over his misdeeds.

His new boss was like the worst Dutch colonists: 'In many subtle ways they make us feel their dislike, "I am European, you are a Javanese" they seem to say, or "I am the master, you are the governed".'

Kartini set an inspiring example as an early Indonesian nationalist and feminist. In 1964, President Sukarno declared that her birthday, 21 April, would be Kartini Day, a national holiday across Indonesia.

Towards the new Ethical Policy

Early in the twentieth century, the Dutch government developed new policies for the Dutch East Indies, known as the Ethical Policy. In 1898, Dr Conrad Théodoor van Deventer wrote an article entitled 'A debt of honour' and argued that the Netherlands should repay to the Indonesians the surplus millions it had taken, and that this should be spent on educational and economic

opportunities in the colony. This humanitarian plea was also in the interests of Dutch capitalists, he argued, for if the standard of living of the Indonesian peasants grew, then they would buy many goods produced by Dutch manufacturing industries.

In 1901, the Dutch Queen Wilhelmina introduced the new ethical policy in high-minded terms:

As a Christian power, the Netherlands is obliged in the East Indian archipelago ... to imbue the whole conduct of government with the consciousness that the Netherlands has a moral duty to fulfil towards the people of these regions.

Looking towards an independent Indonesia

By the end of the nineteenth century, the Dutch were strengthening their grip upon the Indonesian archipelago. With the end of the war in Aceh in 1908, the whole of present-day Indonesia was under Dutch control. The Dutch territories had reached their greatest extent, stretching over 3000 miles from Sumatra in the west to New Guinea in the east.

However, a new class of people was emerging.

These people had a modern outlook and were happy to take some ideas from the West and to use them for the progress of Indonesia. They did not want just to copy the Dutch or follow the old customs of the aristocracy. In the first decades of the twentieth century, they worked to make a new and independent Indonesia.

Source 15.21 Jakarta skyline



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Between 1750 and 1900, many countries in Asia became dominated by European nations. European traders, particularly the Dutch East India Company and the British East India Company, exploited the resources of these countries for profit.
- As these trading companies sought to protect their profits and trade routes, they became involved in struggles with local people. Gradually they took over more and more territory.
- Both India and the Dutch East Indies were the scene of competition between European traders, especially the Portuguese, the Dutch and the English. The Portuguese failed to maintain their position and were pushed out.
- The British East India Company became dominant in India until the great disturbances of the First War of Indian Independence in 1857. Then the British Crown took over the administration of British India, extending its power to other parts of the country.
- During the later part of the nineteenth century, nationalist Indians educated in Western ideas organised the Indian National Congress, which later worked for independence from British rule. But at the end of the century, the Indian economy was under British control.
- In the Dutch East Indies, the Dutch East India Company was dissolved in 1799 and the Dutch government took over and extended its power into more parts of the archipelago. The economy of the Dutch East Indies was organised largely to deliver great profits to the Dutch. Although the Indonesian peoples resisted Dutch power, generally they wanted to bring back old Indonesian ways. By the end of the nineteenth century, some were starting to look forward to adopting some of the new ideas coming from the Western countries and creating a new modern state and society.
- Parts of China were taken over by many different European powers. The Chinese emperor was still on the throne, but in reality had little power. China suffered many humiliations over the century, and was subject to unequal treaties and a number of defeats by more technologically advanced Western forces.
- Japan kept itself closed to Westerners until 1853, with Japanese leaders able to observe the difficult experiences of the Chinese. With the Meiji restoration, they decided to take on new technologies from the West and to modernise themselves and their forces. They were successful in avoiding being colonised like China, India and the Dutch East Indies. They modernised their economy for the benefit of Japanese people. By the end of the nineteenth century Japan was emerging as a power to be reckoned with in East Asia.
- The Japanese defeat of the Russians in 1905 was inspiring to colonised peoples across Asia and Africa.

Short-answer questions

- 1 In what ways did modern education enable people in India, Indonesia and Japan to gain and keep their independence from Western domination?
- 2 Describe how Western powers benefited from their domination of Asian countries and peoples.
- 3 How did the Treaty of London in 1824 change the lives of people in Singapore, and in Bengkulu (Bencoolen) in Sumatra?
- 4 Discuss why the British encouraged the growing of opium in Bengal and its export to China.
- 5 Why did the *daimyo* have to live in Edo for long periods during the Tokugawa period?



Source analysis

Study Source 15.22 and answer the following questions:

- 1 What are the nations in the foreground doing?
- 2 What part does the Chinese figure have in the proceedings?
- 3 Now China is becoming a very powerful world power. How do you think the present Chinese government looks back on this period of history? How much do these past events shape the world today?

Extended-response question

Why was Japan more successful than China, India and Indonesia in resisting Western powers in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries?



Source 15.22 This French political cartoon from 1898 shows Britain, Germany, Russia, France and Japan dividing up China.





Source 15.23 Forbidden City, Beijing



Depth study 3

World War I



16

World War I (1914–18)

Before you start

Main focus

World War I was one of the most important events of the twentieth century. It created enormous change in the nations that took part in it, including Australia.

Why it's relevant today

Australians continue to draw on experiences in this war to locate their defining national characteristics. It is important, therefore, to study it closely.

Inquiry questions

- Why did World War I happen?
- What was Australia's role?
- What was the war's impact on Australian home front society?
- What were the after-effects of the war on Australia?

Key terms

- Armistice
- Attrition
- Bereavement
- Conscriptio
- Demobilisation
- Militia
- Pandemic
- Repatriate
- Stagflation
- Trench foot

Significant individuals

- Archduke Franz Ferdinand
- John Simpson Kirkpatrick
- John Monash
- William Morris Hughes

Let's begin

World War I changed the entire course of world history. In Australia's case, it transformed the society. It unfolded as an enormous tragedy in which hundreds of thousands of Australian lives were directly affected and tens of thousands were killed. Within Australia, the war experience convulsed the home front, leading to serious division and conflict. After the war, much social mending was needed. The ANZAC legend was born and new definitions of Australian nationhood were proposed.

Timeline

CHAPTER EVENTS	WORLD EVENTS
<p>1914 Archduke Franz Ferdinand is assassinated and Europe mobilises for war</p>	
<p>1915 Gallipoli landings; ANZAC Cove is established 1915 ANZACs retreat late from Gallipoli</p>	<p>Early to mid 1915 Dardanelles campaign; Western Front stalemate</p>
<p>1916 First ANZAC Day held; early ANZACs arrive at Western Front mid-to late 1916 Huge troop losses at Fromelles and Pozieres; first military conscription campaign</p>	<p>Early 1916 British military conscription begins mid to late 1916 Somme offensive fails</p>
<p>1917 Enlistments fall sharply; huge losses at Passchendaele; Light Horse charges at Beersheba; second conscription referendum</p>	<p>1917 Bolshevik Revolution</p>
<p>1918 ANZACs at Western Front play major role in stopping German Spring offensive</p>	<p>1918 German Spring offensive; Armistice</p>
<p>1919 Troop returns bring social disruption; record strike wave occurs; influenza pandemic kills 12 000 in Australia</p>	<p>1919 Paris Peace Conference; Russian Civil War</p>





DEPTH STUDY 3 WORLD WAR I

Source 16.1 European nations at the outbreak of, and during, WWI

16.1 Causes of World War I

In terms of death and destruction, World War I was one of the greatest catastrophes in human history. Surprisingly, it was begun by the actions of a headstrong grammar school student. Gavrilo Princip was a sickly 19-year-old, just finishing high school, when he shot and killed Franz Ferdinand, Archduke of Austria-Hungary, and his wife Sophie on the morning of Sunday 28 June 1914 in the Bosnian town of Sarajevo. Princip and his fellow conspirators were all young Serb nationalists who resented the recent absorption of Serbia into the Austro-Hungarian Empire. By their act of terror they hoped to free Southern Slavs (Serbs, Croats and Bosnians) from Austrian control.

Why did this single assassination lead to the immense calamity of World War I? It was because the various nations of Europe were locked in an intricate series of political alliances, diplomatic arrangements and military agreements that committed a nation to war if its ally was threatened, often without the full knowledge or consent of their populations. There was little international openness, extreme territorial competition

for colonies and an escalation of **armaments** manufacture, along with much general distrust and suspicion. All these features contributed towards the fateful escalation into full-scale warfare over the following 5 weeks.

The assassination of the Archduke, who was also heir to the Austrian throne, was therefore the **catalyst** for the war.

First, Austria, with Germany's encouragement, declared war on Serbia (28 July 1914) in retaliation for the assassination.

This caused Russia to mobilise millions of troops in support of Serbia (29–30 July 1914). Russia and France were secretly allied. Germany therefore responded by declaring war on both Russia (1 August 1914) and France (3 August 1914). After the initial declarations of war, Germany's plan was to first attack its principal rival,

France; and, following a hopefully swift victory, to then turn its forces eastward upon Russia. This was known as the Schlieffen Plan.

Britain initially hoped to stand aside from a continental war, using the Royal Navy to **blockade** German ports, while providing only token assistance and financial aid to France and Russia.

After Germany, France and Russia had tired, Britain then planned to step in and impose peace terms upon all. Yet when Germany accelerated its invasion of France by passing through neutral Belgium on 4 August, Britain responded to this diplomatic violation by also committing itself to sending in ground troops.

Britain was bound by the Treaty of London (1840) to protect Belgium militarily.

blockade isolation of an area by hostile ships or forces to prevent the entrance and exit of traffic and commerce

armaments military weapons and equipment

catalyst a person or thing precipitating a change

Historical thought

The heads of state in three of the major fighting nations were closely related. Britain's King George V and Germany's Kaiser Wilhelm II were the grandsons of Britain's Queen Victoria. The wife of Russia's Tsar, Alexandra, was also Queen Victoria's granddaughter. Kaiser Wilhelm and Tsar Nicholas II, in turn, were the great-great grandsons of Tsar Paul I. From a certain perspective, therefore, World War I could be viewed as a massive family feud.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.1

- 1 Deduce why Gavrilo Princip shot Archduke Ferdinand.
- 2 Explain why Germany, Russia and France entered the war.
- 3 Examine the reasons why Britain became involved in an extended continental land war in Europe for which it was so ill prepared.

Because Britain was now at war, Australia, as a self-governing Dominion within the British Empire, saw itself as automatically at war with Germany and Austria-Hungary as well. Australia's interests were seen as

identical with Britain's. Its head of state was the British monarch, it possessed no diplomats of its own and its foreign policy was in the hands of the British government. One of Australia's greatest tragedies had begun.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.2

- 1 Explain why Europeans seemed so eager to go to war in 1914.
- 2 Recall what sort of war people thought they were about to fight.
- 3 Describe how general responses in 1914 might differ from people's attitude to war today.

War's outbreak: European reactions

World War I was called 'The Great War' at the time. Of course, nobody knew that a second world war would one day erupt, so there was no point numbering this one as 'the first'. Instead, participants soon began to claim that this 'Great War' would be 'the war to end all wars' and that it would 'make the world safe for democracy'.

As we have seen, however, it was brought about more by the shifting balance of power in Europe.

Britain, for instance, fought not only to defend Belgian **neutrality** but also to prevent European domination by Germany and to protect its colonies in Asia, Africa and the Pacific.

neutrality not helping or supporting either of the opposing sides

nationalism devotion to national identity, or patriotism

Populations on both sides of the struggle were told that they were fighting for justice and freedom. The politicians, religious leaders and newspapers of each nation claimed that it was fighting in its own self-defence, although that usually meant invading the territory of some other nation. Therefore, as soon as war was declared, many people were overcome more by a spirit of militant **nationalism** than any desire for peace and universal friendship.

Each nation proclaimed that 'Almighty God' was on its side. Each side blamed the other for causing the war. In the capital cities of Berlin, Paris, London and Vienna, there were loud prowar demonstrations. Whitehall and Parliament Street in London were thronged with people chanting, 'Down with Germany' and singing 'Rule Britannia!' In Munich, a young, joyful Adolf Hitler – the man who 25 years later would provoke World War II – was captured on camera among the cheering masses outside the Feldherrnhalle (Marshall's

Hall) in Munich. From Paris and other French cities, 4300 trains, decorated with flowers and flags, carried tens of thousands of **conscript** troops rushing to meet another 11 000 German trains, similarly packed with soldiers. The troops called 'To Paris!' and 'To Berlin!', but their real destination would soon be a wasteland of mud and trenches. For most, the Great War began in an atmosphere of innocence and naiveté. Few understood what modern, technological warfare really meant. The last substantial European conflict – the Franco-Prussian War – had been long ago in 1870.

conscript a person who is enrolled for compulsory military service

Britain had recently fought the Boer War (1899–1902) in South Africa, but that was a highly mobile struggle, often conducted from horseback.



Source 16.2 Future German Chancellor, Adolf Hitler, at Munich's Feldherrnhalle on 1 August 1914, the day Germany declared war on Russia

cavalry soldiers who fight on horseback

howitzer a big gun for the high-angle firing of shells

casualties those wounded or killed in war

The military generals themselves had little direct experience of warfare. They visualised rapid campaigns, won by aggressive **cavalry** charges and a war that would be 'over by Christmas'. They did not understand that the new military technology – especially **howitzers** and machine guns (firing

500 rounds per minute) – favoured defenders over attackers.

In the first month of the war, France alone suffered 300 000 **casualties**. By war's end, some 17 million soldiers and civilians had died.

Historical thought

Franz Ferdinand, heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, had visited New South Wales in May 1893 on a hunting expedition. In 10 days, he shot around 300 animals. During his life, he is estimated to have killed 300 000 animals.

War's outbreak: Australia's reactions

As the European nations stumbled into war, Australia was in the midst of a federal election campaign. On 31 July 1914, following news of Russia's mobilisation, Labor leader Andrew Fisher declared that Australia would support Great Britain 'to the last man and the last shilling'.

The Liberal Prime Minister, Joseph Cook, on the previous evening had spoken about the coming of '**Armageddon**' and promised that 'when the Empire is at war so is

Armageddon from the Bible, the last battle between good and evil

Australia at war'. Great Britain would not declare war for another 5 or 6 days. The news of Britain's declaration was received in Australia at 12.30 p.m. on 5 August.

Such eagerness has encouraged some historians to see Australia as 'terrifyingly willing to go to war'. Australians, positioned on the other side of the world, probably understood far less about Sarajevo and the fatal web of national alliances than the European populations themselves. They tended to think of warfare as short, heroic and glorious.

As in Europe, crowds gathered in the major cities to demonstrate their support. In Melbourne, for instance, after cheering for Britain, a mob attacked the German club, before turning upon unoffending Chinese in Little Bourke Street. War support could quickly descend into overreaction and hysteria; and local Germans soon became targeted as '**Huns**' and 'cultural monsters'.

Hun an offensive term for a German person

If we shift the focus away from the flag-waving crowds and look across the entire nation, what do we see? While some people expressed enthusiasm, others reacted with resignation, worry and alarm. Some small groups, such as Quakers and socialists, expressed outright opposition. Mothers, sisters and wives were deeply concerned for the safety of sons, brothers and husbands who offered themselves as military volunteers. Yet freedom to speak out against the war was rapidly curbed by the *War Precautions Act 1914*.

Economically, war's outbreak brought a sharp downturn, as global markets were disrupted and trade routes threatened. The outcome was **stagflation**, as prices and unemployment both rose sharply. Wages were frozen and strike activity curbed. In Queensland, unemployment numbers quadrupled between August and December 1914. In New South Wales, the prices of imported goods jumped 20%. For Australian workers generally, and for farmers already struggling with a severe drought, these sharp economic blows brought great hardship.

stagflation inflation coupled with high unemployment and stagnant economic growth

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.3

- 1 Describe how enthusiastic the Australian people were about involvement in World War I.
- 2 Explain why the political, cultural and emotional ties to Britain were so strongly felt.
- 3 Recount how much opposition to World War I existed in Australia.

Historical thought

The first military shots of World War I were fired in Australia. At around 10.45 a.m. on 5 August (1 hour and 45 minutes after Britain and Australia's involvement in the war began), the gunners at the Fort Nepean Battery, Port Phillip Heads, in Victoria opened fire on the German cargo ship, *SS Phalz*, which had just steamed out of Port Melbourne. The *Phalz* was commandeered and used by Australia as the troopship *HMT Booroorra* during the war.

Enlisting to fight

In August 1914, Australia had a permanent army and citizen's **militia** force that together numbered 45 645 men. In January 1911, Australia had been the first English-speaking country to introduce compulsory military training of young males aged 12 to 17 years. There had been resistance to this scheme. Around 28000 youths had been prosecuted and 5732 imprisoned for failing to comply. Yet 100000 cadets were undergoing military drills by 1914. Australia also possessed a small navy, a new officer training centre at Duntroon and the beginnings of an air force.

militia a military force made up of ordinary citizens rather than highly trained soldiers

All this, however, had been introduced to defend Australia directly. It was widely believed that the coming war would be fought in the Pacific against Japan, rather than in Europe and the Middle East against Germany, Austria and Turkey.

Japan at the time, however, was no real military threat to Australia. When the war began, Australia immediately placed its navy under British control.

It also needed to recruit volunteers quickly for overseas military service. On 3 August, 2 days *before* Britain declared war, the Australian Cabinet offered to send an initial force of 20000 men.

Little did they know that over the next 4 years, 416809 would enlist, 331 781 of whom would serve overseas. Even this was a relatively small force in

comparison with the millions of British, French, Russians and Germans who fought. Yet it was an enormous sacrifice for a small nation of less than 5 million people: it represented 38.7% of all eligible males in Australia aged 18–44 and, unlike in other combatant nations, it was raised by voluntary enlistment only.

Some historians write of 'a rush' by eager young recruits to enlistment centres. Others show that the number initially accepted was modest. On 8 August, the *Sydney Morning Herald* reported that only 735 men had turned up at Sydney's Victoria Barracks. In the first month, only 700 of the 2000 who had offered themselves were considered medically fit. Later in the war, Minister for Defence George Pearce found, to his surprise, that enlistment statistics had been artificially inflated by 21000 because 'perhaps 20 or even 50 out of every hundred [recruits] had frequently, during the early stages of the war, failed to turn up' for **embarkation** on the troopships!

embarkation going on board a ship or plane

Nevertheless, by the beginning of 1915, official statistics showed that 52 561 people had been accepted into the Australian Imperial Force (AIF).

Physical and medical standards were initially demanding and many were turned away. Within 5 months, Australia had more than doubled its first promise of 20000 men. Enlistment continued to rise in 1915 but then began to falter. In 1917, the annual total had fallen by two-thirds, and in 1918 by five-sixths of the 1915 figure. Australia, seemingly, had exhausted itself in its determination to support Britain in combat.



Source 16.3 The original 12th Brigade marches through Hobart to depart for the war on 20 October 1914 [AWM/H11609].

Historical thought

Although Australian troops were often called 'bushmen', only 17% were from the countryside and 83% from urban areas. Around 34% were tradesmen (skilled workers) and another 30% were labourers (unskilled workers).

Reasons for enlisting: the importance of Empire

Why did so many men, a large proportion of whom were not much older than yourselves, decide to enlist?

When historians try to understand the soldiers' motives, they meet both a frustrating silence and a confusing jumble of rationalisations, emotions and impulses.

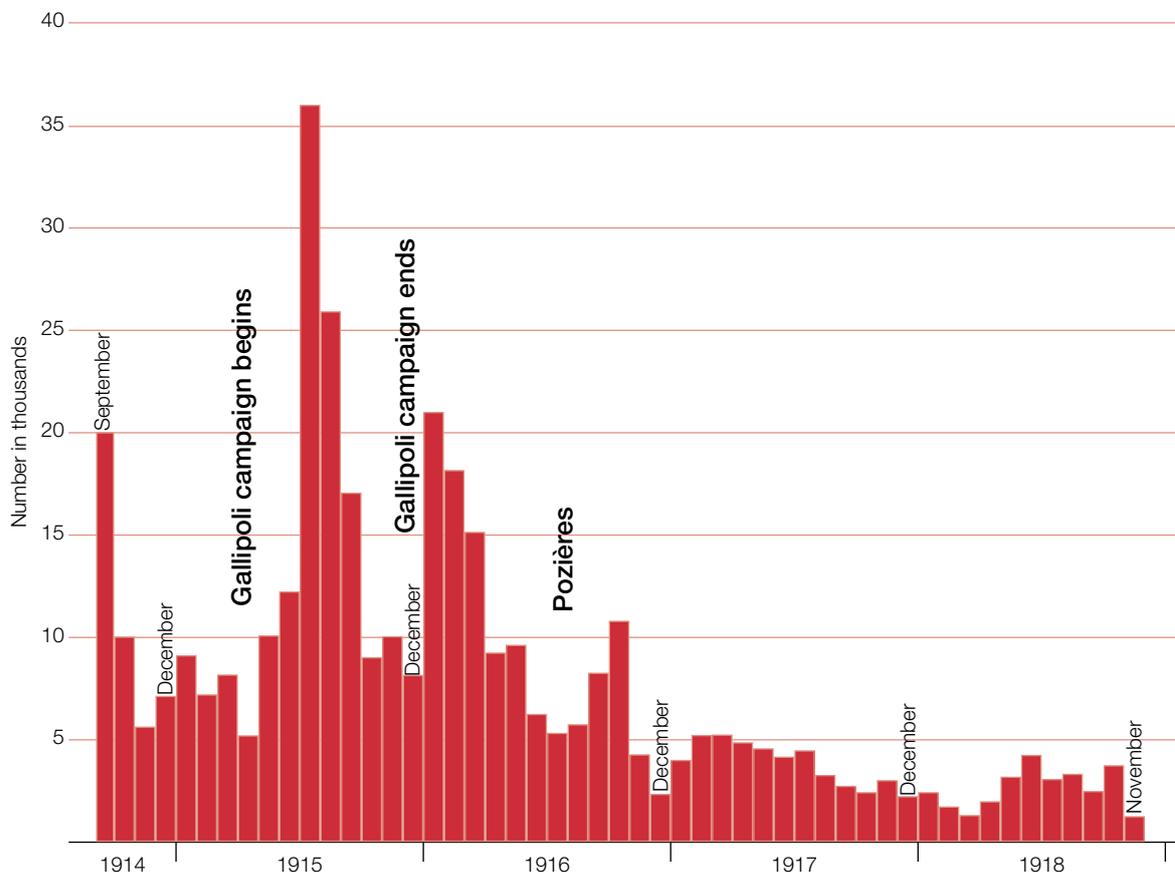
It can safely be argued, however, that most Australian men had been prepared to fight for Britain by the nature

of their schooling. In Australia, their 'British patriotism' was stirred by a continual 'recounting of the heroic deeds of our forefathers'.

British heroism at such battles as Trafalgar, Waterloo, the Crimea, the Indian 'Mutiny', and the Afghan, Zulu and Boer wars was emphasised by teachers; and male children especially were encouraged to sacrifice themselves, when the time came, to the imperial cause.

Compulsory military training for all boys aged 12 years and over imposed the discipline of obedience and emphasised that warfare was the manly way to solve international disputes. Fighting for 'King and Country' in 'the service of Empire' was encouraged, for the Empire was presented as being 'glorious' in its vast dimensions and always virtuous. Such sentiments were often reinforced by the church and the family.

One soldier from Wollongong recalled that, due to such urgings, more than half of his class of 45 pupils went away to war. Eleven were killed and many others wounded. He concluded that they had all enlisted out of loyalty and duty. At least 90% had been 'conscripted by their consciences'. But there were other reasons for fighting as well.



Source 16.4 The monthly total of enlistments during the war from September 1914 to November 1918. Note the peaks and troughs, and the gradual decline in numbers.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.4

- 1 Describe what images first come to your mind when you think about World War I.
- 2 Evaluate how predictable this war was.
- 3 Assess how aware Australian military recruits were about what lay ahead for them in the fighting.
- 4 Clarify why Australia's existing army was for local defence only.
- 5 Recall whether or not there was an initial rush of recruits.
- 6 Explain why recruiting declined so dramatically between 1916 and 1918.



Other reasons for enlisting

The 'call of Empire' was strong in the Australian soldier. Yet historian Bill Gammage believes that most of the early volunteers were roused by a sense of adventure. Enlisting was seen as an escape from the monotony of everyday life and the tedium of the workplace. It provided a chance to travel and see the world outside Australia.

Many men also saw war as a glorious opportunity to 'prove their manhood'.

After active recruiting began on 11 August 1914, a campaign of 'hatred of the enemy' was also mounted. This encouraged some recruits to express their motives in terms of anti-German hostility. 'I am itching to get a dig at a few Germans,' wrote a Melbourne volunteer; while a South Australian declared his intention to 'get to grips with those inhuman brutes ... [and] help wipe out such an infamous nation'. Some were simply carried

along in a tide of peer-group pressure: their mates were enlisting so they would too. Others were shamed into going by female scorn at their lack of manliness. Some women sent men white feathers as a symbol of cowardice and this was reinforced by press campaigns attacking those unwilling to fight as 'slackers', 'shirkers' and 'cold-footers'. Some left on troop ships to escape difficult situations on the home front: a failing marriage perhaps, an unhappy home or a gambling debt.

Yet it should not be forgotten that others were forced to 'join up' due to poverty. As we have seen, when war began, unemployment skyrocketed, wages froze and prices rapidly increased. The Australian countryside was also suffering severe drought. There were no state welfare services for the unemployed, only private charity. Cash-strapped men were attracted to the AIF's offer of 6 shillings (roughly 60 cents) per day. In such times of hardship, economic motives could be as important as idealistic ones.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.5

- 1 Discuss how 'the British connection' influenced Australian soldiers' decisions to enlist.
- 2 Clarify why soldiers often said they were 'fighting for England' rather than 'fighting for Australia'.
- 3 Evaluate how influential schooling was in encouraging soldiers to volunteer.
- 4 Construct a list of all the motives for enlisting in World War I. Can you think of any other motives besides those covered in the text? How would you rate these motives in order of importance?
- 5 Locate an Australian recruiting poster from World War I through an internet search engine, the Australian War Memorial website or a book such as Sam Keen's *Faces of the enemy* (Harper and Row, 1986). Develop a class debate to analyse the poster's message.
 - a What values does it represent?
 - b What sort of impact do you think this poster would have made at the time?
 - c Does it reflect an accurate image of the warfront? If not, why not?

16.2 Where Australians fought and the nature of warfare

Gallipoli: the landing and digging in

The first Australian casualties of the war (Able Seamen John Courtney and Bill Williams) were not killed on a Turkish beach, but rather in a jungle in German New Guinea, near Rabaul in early September 1914. The Gallipoli landings were still more than 7 months away.

The Gallipoli campaign was also not the first large military encounter in which Australian troops had fought. Thousands of Australian volunteers had joined British regiments in the Maori Wars (1845–47 and

1863–68); New South Wales **infantry** had supported Britain at the Sudan in 1885; and Australian blue jackets (sailors acting as soldiers) had helped suppress the Boxer Rebellion in China in 1900–01. Around 20 000 Australian servicemen and **irregulars** had also

fought beside Britain in the Boer War (1899–1902) in South Africa. It was said in 1900 that: ‘from ... the landing of Australian troops on African soil will date the true birth of Australian nationhood’.

infantry soldiers who fight on foot

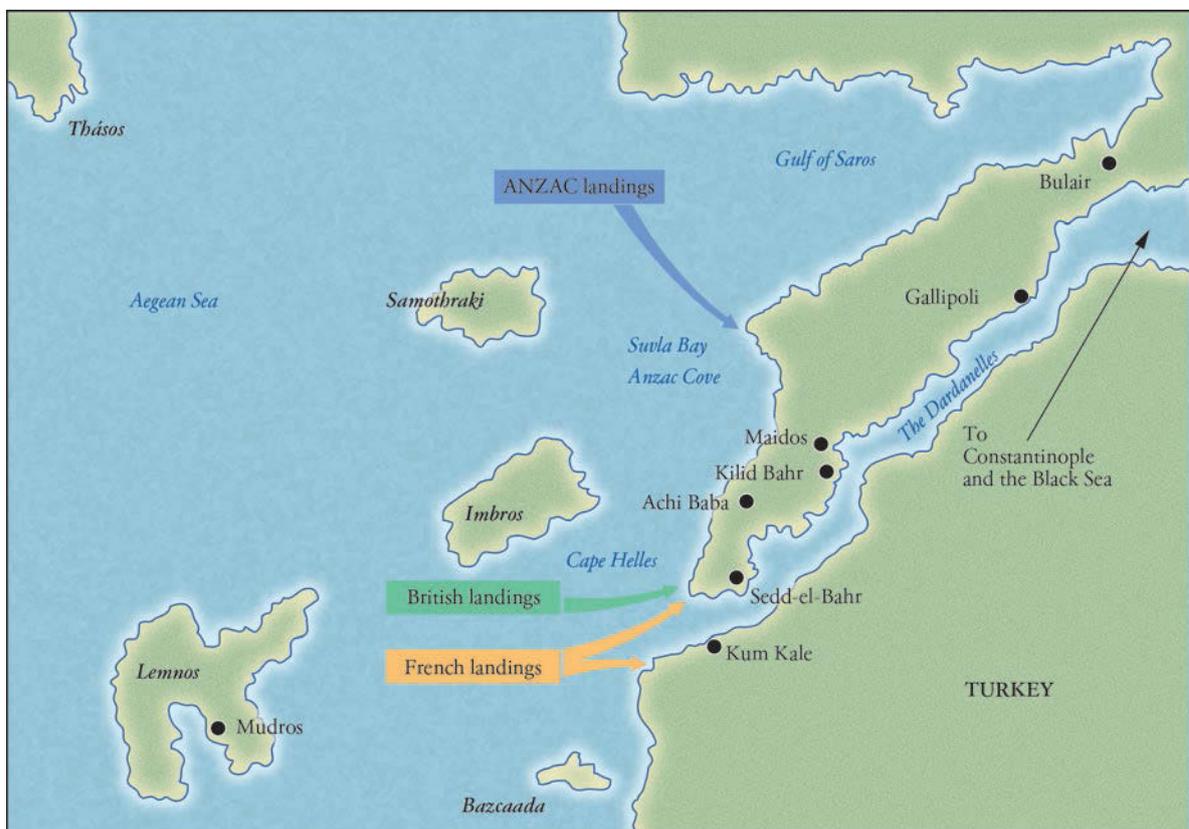
irregulars troops who do not belong to the regular army

It was to be the Dardanelles campaign (February 1915 to January 1916) and the Gallipoli landings of April 1915 that would eventually be viewed in this light. Around 16 000 ANZAC (Australian and New Zealand Army Corps) troops were involved in the first Gallipoli assault at dawn on 25 April 1915. Throughout that day, more than 2 000 would be killed and wounded. The ANZACs were part of a far larger Allied force of British and French, in what has been described as one of the most mismanaged military campaigns in history.

The 70 000 Allied troops included Irish Fusiliers, Indian Ghurkha and Senegalese battalions, a Maori Contingent and a Jewish Legion.

The idea behind the campaign – to open up a supply route to struggling Russia through the Bosphorus and Black Sea; and perhaps even knock Turkey out of the war – was over-ambitious and ill-judged. The British, underestimating the Turks’ capacity to defend their country, expected to succeed by a naval bombardment that began in February. By mid-March it had failed dismally and an **amphibious** invasion of ground troops was substituted.

amphibious involving land forces that arrive by sea



Source 16.5 Landing points of Australian, New Zealander, British and French forces in the military invasion of Turkey in April 1915

However, seaborne military assaults are difficult to mount tactically and, above all else, rely on surprise – an ingredient that was entirely lacking on 25 April. The Turks had been given 4 weeks to prepare.

The ANZACs, training in Egypt en route to the European front, were unfortunate enough to become caught up in this disastrous campaign.

Intelligence was faulty and maps unreliable.

Because of a navigation error, the ANZACs were landed at the wrong beach (later named ANZAC Cove), 2 kilometres too far north of the planned entry point.

Therefore, instead of finding a gentle slope behind the beach as expected, they were faced with cliff-like hills, around 100 metres high. In one respect, this initially helped the landing, as the Turks were not expecting any force to come ashore at this difficult location. They had fewer than 500 defenders there. Further, the steep slope offered some protection from enemy fire.

Some officers recommended total evacuation during that first afternoon, but there were insufficient boats available. From this time until the Allied retreat at the close of 1915, the Australians and New Zealanders were confined to defending a line approximately 1 kilometre inland, dug in, boxed up and raked by gunfire from the Turkish defenders on the surrounding hills above them.

Historical thought

John Simpson Kirkpatrick, the best-known ANZAC at Gallipoli, was born in South Shields, England. He had once been a British 'donkey boy', taking children for rides on the beach at Whitney Bay, on the Tyneside in north-east England. He had illegally jumped ship in Queensland before joining up. The donkey, named Duffy, that he used at ANZAC Cove to carry wounded men was from Greece.

Gallipoli: failure and withdrawal

Most military historians conclude that Gallipoli was 'a sideshow' to the main events of the Western Front. They also see it as a tragic waste of human life that was poorly conceived by Lord Kitchener, the British War Secretary and Winston Churchill, First Lord of the

Admiralty. By the time it concluded, for no territorial gain whatsoever, there had been more than 392 000 casualties.

Almost 131 000 troops from all the nations involved had died. Only the Turks could celebrate at having repulsed a major military invasion.

The role of the Australians and New Zealanders was secondary in strategic importance to the British onslaught at Helles, further to the south.

The French, who landed at Kereves Dere and Kum Kale, also sustained many more casualties.

Nevertheless, the ANZACs were widely praised for their skill and tenacity as assault troops. It was not expected that 'mere colonials' would perform so courageously under concentrated fire. There were some episodes of terrible carnage on both sides as the ANZACs beat back Turkish attacks or engaged in poorly planned assaults. On 8 May, around 1000 ANZACs were killed in an hour in a failed attack on

Krithia. On 19 May, there were an astonishing 10 000 Turkish casualties in 1 day when they attacked the ANZAC trenches. In early August, during a **diversionary** battle for Lone Pine (or 'Bloody Ridge' in Turkish terms), the Australians took the post after fierce fighting, but lost 2200 men. At the same time, on one narrow strip of ground called The Nek, which was not much larger than a tennis court, hundreds of members of the 8th and 10th Australian Light Horse regiments were needlessly sacrificed.

This battle forms the central episode of Peter Weir's 1981 film, *Gallipoli*, but the main officer responsible was actually Australian, not British.

This August offensive was finally abandoned after 12 000 British, Indian and ANZAC troops were lost.

On 7 December 1915, the British Cabinet ordered a retreat of all Allied troops from Gallipoli. A British war correspondent, Ellis Ashmead-Bartlett, and a young Australian journalist, Keith Murdoch, had at last exposed the terrible conditions and flawed military campaigning to the British leaders. Winter had set in with freezing blizzards in November and thousands were already being evacuated with frost bite, dysentery, typhoid, influenza and **trench foot**.

One of the greatest disasters in British military history ended for the ANZACs on 19 December 1915. The Australians departed, shattered to leave more than 8000 of their dead behind, but comforted to have stuck it out so resolutely and to have gamely played their part in such a hopeless cause.

diversion a strategy designed to divert an enemy's attention

trench foot a painful destruction of foot tissue caused by continual immersion in cold water or mud

Historical thought

Chemical warfare (tear gas) was introduced on the Western Front by the French in August 1914. Germans began using chlorine gas at Ypres in April 1915. The British soon followed. The latter had first experimented with poison gas against the Maori at Ohaeawai, New Zealand as early as June 1845.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.6

- 1 Identify the date on which the British Cabinet ordered a retreat of all Allied troops from Gallipoli.
- 2 Explain why today's war historians generally agree that the Gallipoli campaign was such a disastrous one.
- 3 Describe what reputation the ANZACs achieved at the time for their combat actions.

Western Front: Australians at the Somme

By November 1914, the European war had reached a stalemate. The trenches of the Western Front, with its 'no-man's-land' of immense shell holes, tangles of barbed wire and the littered bodies of men and animals sandwiched between them, stretched like an ugly scar for nearly 800 kilometres, from the Belgian coast to the Swiss border.

The 1st and 2nd Australian Divisions arrived at the Western Front in mid-March 1916. The 3rd and 4th Divisions followed in April and May. They came to the 130 kilometres of the line held by the British, which extended from the River Somme in the South to Ypres in Belgium.

In 1914–15, the Western Front had already experienced savage battles and huge casualties, but the fighting in 1916–17 would dwarf these earlier struggles. The campaigns the Australians were now to face made Gallipoli seem a relatively modest affair. These new battles were usually fought over hundreds of metres of blasted, muddy ground with a loss of thousands of lives. This became known as '**attrition** warfare'.

attrition the wearing down of enemy numbers by constant attack

In Australia's first major engagement at Fromelles on 19 July 1916, the recently arrived 5th Division was sent into combat in bright daylight in a poorly devised exercise. Thousands of untried, exhausted men were mown down by German machine-gun fire and nothing



Source 16.6 The principal battle areas of the Western Front where Australians fought between 1916 and 1918

significant was achieved. There were 5533 casualties across one evening, almost 2000 of whom were killed. The British commander, General Sir Richard Haking, who was responsible for the bloody fiasco, merely

commented that the experience had done the men 'a great deal of good'. It remains Australia's worst single wartime loss.

As it had begun, so unfortunately it was to continue. During the extensive Somme offensive, Australian units fought at Pozières under devastating bombardment. When they were withdrawn in early September, the 1st, 2nd and 4th Divisions had lost another 23 000 men.

Throughout the freezing winter of 1916–17, they continued to fight. During April and May 1917, in the two rushed and bungled battles of Bullecourt, another 10 300 Australians became casualties.

British officers generally believed that Australians were 'fine fighters' but poor soldiers.

They were seen as badly disciplined and dressed, and lax at marching and saluting. The Australian rank and file would only salute officers – whether Australian or British – whom they respected. This meant they did not salute often. War experience was changing their formerly favourable attitude towards British culture and civilisation.

Western Front: the 1918 campaigns

Statistics show that the AIF did have disciplinary problems. In the first half of 1917, the Australian desertion rate was four times greater than the other British Dominion troops. By March 1918, the British had less than one soldier per thousand in prison for disciplinary offences. Canada, New Zealand and South Africa had around 1.5 per thousand, but Australia had 9 per thousand.

Many Australian recruits did not come from a military background and arrived at the warfront with less training and drilling. They tended to show more commitment to each other than to the military **hierarchy**.

They were quick to realise when they were being led by incompetent officers and reacted accordingly. Whereas the British Army code pronounced the death penalty for 17 different offences, the Australian *Defence Act 1903* (Section 98) allowed capital punishment only for **mutiny**, desertion to the enemy or **treason**.

What the Australian forces required was inspired, methodical leadership that understood the new technology of battle. During 1918, they began to receive this from a number of outstanding commanders, particularly Major General John Monash and Brigadier General William Glasgow.

The war by this stage had reached a critical point. During 1917, Russia exploded into revolution and withdrew from the fighting. The French army had been checked by huge troop mutinies against the endless slaughter. Britain and Germany were both approaching exhaustion. In early 1918, Germany, using divisions brought westward from the former Russian front, mounted a huge offensive to smash through the Allied lines before US troops arrived in Europe in large numbers.

In these desperate months, Australian soldiers, led by Monash and Glasgow as well as Brigadier Generals

hierarchy a system of organisation in which individuals or groups are ranked one above the other

mutiny open revolt by soldiers or sailors against their officers

treason the betrayal of one's country, particularly by trying to kill a national leader or overthrow a government



Source 16.7 The band of the Australian 5th Brigade marches through Bapaume on 19 March 1917, while the town is still burning after the German withdrawal [AWM/E00426].

John Gellibrand and Charles Rosenthal, played a crucial role in avoiding defeat. At Villers-Bretonneux, on the third anniversary of the Gallipoli landing, the 59th and 60th Battalions retook the town after a wild bayonet charge and hand-to-hand fighting from house to house, which effectively halted the great German offensive. Above the blackboard in a school room at Villers-Bretonneux today are the words: *N'oublions jamais l'Australie* ('Never forget Australia').

Australians and Canadians then spearheaded the Allied counter-offensive of 8 August at Amiens, using infantry coordinated with tanks, artillery and aircraft. German General Erich Ludendorff later declared this 'the black day of the German army in this war' as 13 000 of his troops were taken prisoner. From this point until 5 October – when, in their final engagement, the 2nd Australian Division captured the French town of Montrehain – the Australian Corps had advanced 60 kilometres into enemy territory and played an important role in both ending and winning the war.

Conditions of trench warfare

The trenches of the Western Front were an elaborate system of excavations, honeycombed about 2 metres deep into the earth. Due to almost constant conditions of fog, rain, sleet or snow, the earth itself was usually converted into mud and slime, with the land in between churned up by high explosives into a landscape resembling the craters of the moon.

Each trench system contained an offensive front line defended by barbed wire, backed by a defensive or reserve line containing the soldiers' dugouts where they rested and tried to sleep, plus a third supply or support trench, containing ammunition, food and other equipment. These were connected by communication trenches that criss-crossed the landscape. Sometimes the enemy trenches could be as close as 15 metres (as at Gallipoli) or they could be as distant as a kilometre: usually they were separated by around 90 to 275 metres of 'no-man's-land'.

Soldiers might spend 3 or 4 days in the front trench, then another 3 days at reserve or supply lines before being withdrawn for four or more rest days behind the lines. At Villers-Bretonneux in 1918, however, the Australian 35th Battalion spent a record 33 days in the front-line trenches. Incessant bombardment could drive men mad with 'shell shock', which their superiors, planning ambitious manoeuvres far away, tended to deny as a 'real' medical condition. Around 80 000 men in the British lines succumbed to shell shock during the war.

Trenches were usually open to the weather and men stood at times knee-deep in stinking mud and water. Sanitation was primitive or non-existent, and there were millions of rats (some as big as cats) that fed on the corpses of the fallen. Trench foot and trench mouth – extreme fungal infections that could turn to gangrene – were common, especially in the earlier period of the war, while painful trench fever was contracted from lice infestation. Dysentery, typhus, cholera and death from exposure to extreme cold (especially during the freezing winters of 1916 and 1917) were also common.

This was far removed from the heroic images that men had earlier been fed at school, in their adventure books or through the press.

War historian Les Carlyon paints a terrible picture of Australian troops at the Somme in late 1916. Soldiers

Historical thought

Three days after the Australians captured Villers-Bretonneux, Gavrilo Princip, the young man whose shots at Sarajevo had started the war, died of tuberculosis in an Austrian prison hospital.

RESEARCH 16.1

Compose a diary entry from a frontline Australian soldier in France for a 24-hour period in 1916.

or

Research the following topics:

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1 no-man's-land | 5 machine-guns |
| 2 poison gas | 6 attrition warfare |
| 3 tanks | 7 trench foot |
| 4 flame-throwers | 8 trench fever. |

tried to find shelter in freezing trenches, collapsing under the weight of muck and rainwater. There was little wood or kerosene for heating and open fires were disallowed. Wounded men lay in the open for up to 12 hours before rescue from the sucking mud. The only recompense was comradeship, humour and community (or, in Australian terms, 'mateship'). These were practices shared by men of all nationalities, not simply Australians, as they struggled to survive the 'monstrous boredom' and 'intense anxieties' of trench life.

Desert campaigns

When the war began, many experts believed it would be won by gallant cavalry charges, as in earlier campaigns. But in the muddy stand-off of the Western Front there was little chance for this. However, across the Middle East (in Egypt, the Sinai Peninsula and Palestine, following the failure of Gallipoli) it would be a different story.

Here, brigades of the Australian Light Horse fought highly mobile, mounted campaigns and achieved some remarkable victories.

Around 85% of Light Horsemen were from the Australian bush where they had learned to ride and handle horses expertly. Their horses were known overseas as 'Walers' – sturdy, solid mounts of great endurance, speed and stamina.

Walers soon gained a reputation as the best cavalry horses in the world. Around 160 000 of them would serve in World War I.

The Australians fought against rebellious Arab tribes (such as the Senussi) that were supporting Turkey and also contested the Turks at Romani (near the Suez Canal) and Magdhaba, en route to Palestine, during 1916.

On 31 October 1917, two Light Horse regiments of the 4th Brigade under Lieutenant General Harry Chauvel mounted a successful cavalry charge, trotting then galloping across 3.7 miles of broken ground under heavy fire to take the important strategic centre of Beersheba. Following this – which was one of the last great cavalry charges in history – the Australians rode on to take Gaza, Semank and Damascus. They were the first Allied troops to enter Jerusalem in triumph. Their 400-mile advance was summarised by the British Commander, General Edmund Allenby as 'the greatest cavalry feat the world has known'.

Far less acceptable, however, was the behaviour of many hundreds of Australians and New Zealanders who attacked the Bedouin village of Surafend, near Jaffa in December 1918 and conducted a massacre of between 20 and 137 male Arab civilians. Allenby condemned the assault as the work of cowards and murderers.

Another sad aftermath of the desert campaign was the official decision not to **repatriate** the valiant Waler horses to Australia or New Zealand along with their riders. They, too, became the casualties of war. Only one horse was returned. Later, some members of the Desert Mounted column raised a memorial to their dead or abandoned horses in Sydney. In part it read: 'to the gallant horses who carried them over the Sinai Desert into Palestine 1915–19. They suffered wounds, thirst, hunger and weariness almost beyond endurance but they never failed. They did not come home.'

repatriate to send someone back to their country of origin

Historical thought

About 23 000 of the 61 000 Australian soldiers who died in World War I have no known graves.

Casualties

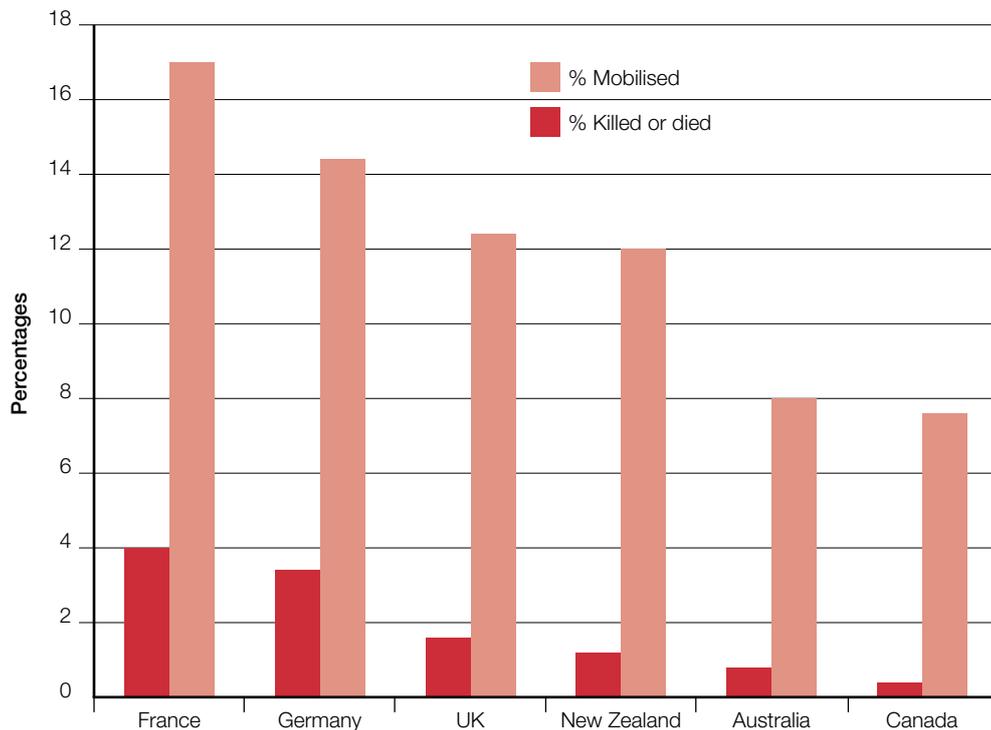
The numbers killed in World War I were more than double those of World War II. The exact casualty toll will never be known and the figures provided alter substantially in different accounts. However, in rough terms about 16.5 million people died and around 21 million were wounded; or roughly 37.5 million casualties, of which more than 40% were civilian.

Another way to look at it is in terms of deaths per day. The war lasted for around 1550 days, which means that on every one of these days, there were almost 23 870 casualties (10 645 of whom were killed). It is difficult to adequately grasp or visualise such appalling rates of death and destruction.

Australians read the mounting casualty lists in black-bordered columns in their daily newspapers.

They were also posted at railway stations, ferry terminals, post offices and factories. Families awaited the dreaded official telegram.





Source 16.8 Comparative percentages of troops mobilised and troop deaths across six nations

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.7

- 1 Discuss why Australia's casualties in World War I were so comparatively high.
- 2 Explain why so many of the war dead were never found.
- 3 Describe how the Australian public reacted to the mounting casualty totals.

16.3 War on the home front

Censorship and propaganda

Soldiers and airmen who fought in or above the trenches and across Middle Eastern deserts experienced the harsh realities of warfare at first hand. Those who had stayed behind on the home front, however, understood the war mainly as a series of highly manipulated images.

Official censorship was imposed from the moment the war began to ensure that the Australian public rarely, if ever, learned how the fighting was really progressing. Unpleasant realities were blurred or blanked out. Realistic images of warfare or of wounded and dead were banned. Such censorship was particularly strong in Australia. The *War Precautions Act* imposed these regulations upon the 1843 Australian newspapers and magazines, as well

as on all films made locally or abroad. Soldiers' letters and postcards were heavily censored and troops were forbidden to carry cameras to the front. Military censors, stationed at post offices, even intercepted and censored suspicious civilian correspondence.

A mass of officially produced propaganda created false images both of warfare and the nature of the soldiers themselves, whether Allied or enemy. Military defeats were often presented as victories, or not reported at all. Terrible carnage was simply glossed over. For instance, after Australia's single worst troop losses at Fromelles on 19 July 1916, all that people back home read in their daily newspapers was that the Australians broke into the German trenches, stayed there for a while and then

came away, bringing around 140 prisoners with them. There was no mention of the 5000 Australian casualties.

While propaganda downplayed the horrors of war, it also exaggerated the alleged frightfulness of the enemy. Germans were depicted as beasts, capable of any atrocity. In Australia, the artist and cartoonist Norman Lindsay produced some of the most lurid Allied cartoons, depicting German soldiers as massive, ape-like monsters wearing spiked helmets, their hands dripping with innocent blood.

Taken together, censorship and propaganda were continuously applied to boost civilian morale, encourage men to enlist, suppress the horrors of war, protect national security and present the Allies as heroic

crusaders and the enemy as savage brutes. Civilians, therefore, did not know or understand the real war the soldiers endured.

Historical thought

The first song ever banned by an Australian government was called 'I didn't raise my son to be a soldier', which was widely sung at anti-war rallies in 1915.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.8

- 1 Conduct a class debate on the value of censorship and propaganda in wartime. Should they be regarded as a benefit or liability?
- 2 Investigate the Australian *War Precautions Act* of World War I. What were its main features and how was it implemented?
- 3 Assess how effective censorship and propaganda were in the manipulation of public opinion. Do you think people realised their understanding was being manipulated?

Loyalty and disloyalty

Many Australians remained unwavering in their loyalty to the British cause throughout the entire war. Affection for Britain was strong. Most Australians had direct family ties with the British Isles and often called Britain 'the Motherland' or even 'Home'. For example, the Lewises were a respectable, affluent Melbourne family who believed fervently in the righteousness of the Allied cause. By early 1916, four of their seven sons had enlisted. Two of them were invalided home as shambling wrecks with fever, injury and shell shock. A third was killed in action on the Western Front after twice being severely wounded. In his memoir *Our War*, Brian Lewis, the youngest son, charts the family's searing grief and increasing disenchantment with the war. He reveals the tension in loyalist households between a belief in the 'winnability' of a 'just war' and the slow realisation of its injustices and appalling costs.

There were others – a small, outspoken minority – who opposed the war from the start. Some were Quakers and **secular pacifists** who opposed international violence on principle.

Others were **eugenicists** who argued that war destroyed the nation's healthiest specimens, thus causing social degeneration.

Still others were internationalist socialists who believed that the world's workers should unite rather than destroy each other, arguing that the workers' true struggle was against the abuses of **capitalism**. It was winning that sort of battle that really advanced freedom and democracy in any society, not fighting fellow workers in foreign wars.

The message of such dissenters was muted by official censorship but, as the war dragged on, more people were persuaded by it. The return of wounded, gassed and distraught men from the front also shocked the Australian public.

Gradually, a feeling of war-weariness – and a growing war opposition – spread through Australian society. Loyalists attacked anti-war activists in the mainstream press, the Protestant churches and the parliaments,

secular non-religious

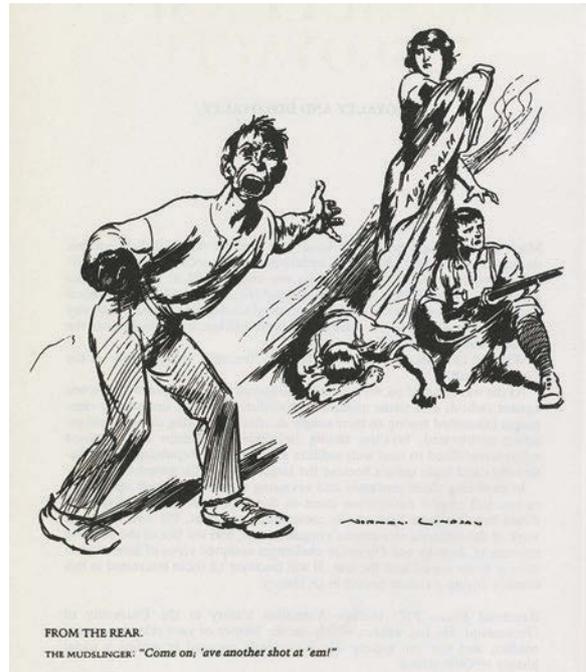
pacifist a person who believes that war and violence are morally unjustifiable

eugenicist a person who wants to improve natural characteristics by controlled breeding

capitalism an economic system based on private ownership and free-market enterprise

polarise to divide into two opposing groups

branding them as traitors who were working in harmony with the enemy. Social division and **polarisation** increased dramatically from 1916 onwards. The war was splitting the nation into the ranks of 'loyal' and 'disloyal', rather than unifying it under the banner of ANZAC.



Source 16.9 A depiction of the anti-war activist by Norman Lindsay, published in *The Bulletin* on 27 June 1918

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.9

Take the position of one of the following people and write a statement outlining your standpoint on World War I:

- a pro-war loyalist
- a eugenicist
- a wounded returned soldier
- a pacifist
- a socialist
- a grieving parent.

Military conscription: the first attempt (1916)

conscription compulsory enlistment for military service

The struggle over military **conscription** in 1916 and 1917 was one of the most dramatic conflicts in Australian history. Few today can grasp how bitterly this contest was fought by opposing sides, each of whom believed that their cause was both righteous and vital to the nation's future.

Those who supported conscription claimed that only military compulsion could now force fit Australian men to the fighting front in sufficient numbers to win the war and prevent a German takeover of British territory.

Those who opposed it argued they were fighting for the democratic right of free choice and to prevent the spread of military tyranny into the workplace. They claimed that Australia had already done more than its fair share and that conscription would drain away all its manpower.

By May 1916, Britain had introduced universal military conscription for all eligible males and it was expected that Australia would soon follow.

Local volunteering was falling away, despite the most determined recruiting efforts to encourage men to enlist. Between December 1915 (when the Gallipoli withdrawal occurred) and May 1916 (when Australian troops began fighting in Europe), the reinforcement numbers required had fallen short by around 47 000.

By early August 1916, Labor Prime Minister William Morris Hughes began pressing for conscription. Many in the Australian Labor Party, however, strongly opposed the idea. Before the year was over, the party, federally and in most states, was split over the matter.

It was the greatest political **schism** in Labor's history.

The issue was put to the people in the form of a referendum. The campaign to encourage voters to decide on 'Yes' or 'No' extended across September and October 1916. It came in the wake of

schism division of one group into opposing parties

the loss of 27 000 Australians in 7 weeks in the terrible Somme campaign.

The campaign was waged in an atmosphere of extreme tension and hysteria. Appeals to women by both sides were particularly emotional. In many centres, there were heated encounters and episodes of street violence. Enormous rallies were held by both sides, and arguments grew more extreme and irrational. Pro-conscriptionists, led by Hughes, claimed that members of the anarchist group, the Industrial Workers of the World (IWW), were planning to burn down the city of Sydney.

Twelve of its leaders were sent to prison for long terms after a widely publicised show trial.

Polling day was 28 October. Although voting was not compulsory, 82.8% of the electorate voted. When the votes were counted, it was found that, out of 2 247 590 cast, there was a slim 'No' majority of 72 476 (or 3.2%). Victoria, Western Australia and Tasmania had voted 'Yes', while New South Wales, Queensland and South Australia had voted 'No'. Conscription for the time being had been defeated, but the matter was not yet over.

Military conscription: the second attempt (1917)

In November 1916, New Zealand introduced military conscription and in 1917 Canada and the United States followed suit. In the same year, Australia mounted a massive national recruitment drive, using every conceivable method to pressure men to enlist. It was now calculated that the nation needed to produce 5500 to 6000 reinforcements per month to replace these casualties and to prevent the Australian 4th Division being broken up and dispersed among the other British ranks. By the last quarter of 1917, however, the average monthly total of recruits was only around 2500, or less than half the number required.

The year of 1917 had also been a tumultuous one on the home front. The failure of the first conscription referendum was denounced by Prime Minister Hughes as 'a black day for Australia ... a triumph for the unworthy, the selfish and treacherous'. In November 1916, he had quit the Labor party with 23 other parliamentarians who later merged with the Liberals to form the National Party. During a federal election in May 1917 the Nationals, depicting themselves as the 'win-the-war party', had won a decisive victory, heavily defeating Labor.

Though Hughes had promised during his campaign not to 'attempt conscription ... during the life of the forthcoming Parliament', his outstanding win encouraged him to try a second referendum in November and December 1917.



Source 16.10 An advertisement, typical of the anti-conscription cartoons appealing to women, that appeared during the military conscription referenda of 1916 and 1917

The second conscription referendum was even more disorderly than the first. The historian Joan Beaumont writes of violence at levels rarely seen in modern Australian politics. There was uproar when the federal government closed the polls only 2 days after announcing the campaign, thus disqualifying many itinerant workers who would need to re-enrol. Australians with a German-born father were also stopped from voting. Official censorship was applied to the 'No' campaign in an even more heavy-handed way than before.

Despite all these tactics – or perhaps because of them – the second referendum failed more decisively than the first. On 20 December, the 'No' majority was 166 588, or 7.6% of the valid votes. Victoria joined New South Wales, Queensland and South Australia in opposition, while Tasmania now only supported the proposal by 279 votes. Australia had been the only country to try to introduce conscription by democratic means and remained one of the few combatant nations to support a voluntary enlistment system throughout the war.

Historical thought

The wording of the second referendum question was made deliberately obscure. The question read: 'Are you in favour of the proposal of the Commonwealth Government for reinforcing the AIF overseas?' The word 'conscription' was not mentioned.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.10

Select two opposing teams of speakers: one team to support the pro-conscription case and the other to argue against conscription. After the debate, get the class to vote by secret ballot, either for the 'Yes' and 'No' position. Tabulate your votes to see where your class would have stood in the great controversies of 1916 and 1917.

Through further reading, attempt to discover how different groups in Australia voted on the conscription issue; for example:

- Protestants and Catholics
- working-class and middle-class people
- women and men
- British-born and Australian-born people
- rural and urban Australians.

Australian women and the war

In wartime Britain there were dramatic changes in the economic role of women. An extra 800 000 women entered the paid workforce, where they became, for instance, tramway conductors, van drivers and milk deliverers. By 1917, over 800 000 women worked in the munitions industry alone.

Much of this change occurred because eligible British men were conscripted into the trenches.

In Australia, however, where military conscription was defeated – and where there was no local munitions industry of any size – the change in women's economic position, even in the short term, was not so marked. Most women workers were clustered in the worst paid jobs, and received less than half the wages of men.

Nonetheless, with more than 400 000 males enlisting, more women became clerical workers, entering the banking and insurance industries as well as the public service. Some women became police officers for the first time and there were calls for more female medical officers and lecturers. Many of these jobs were lost, however, when men returned from the war.

During World War I, a vast grief and sense of **bereavement** gradually spread across the nation as men left to fight and women stayed behind and waited. This waiting created huge anxieties, as mothers, sisters, wives and female companions worried continually about the fate of each absent male.

A relatively small number of women, however, did serve on or near the fighting fronts. Around 2060 became nurses who tended the war wounded, while

others served as doctors and medical orderlies. These women therefore experienced the realities of war in a most intimate manner.

One of them, Sister Alice Kitchen, described in her diary attending hundreds of dirty, hungry and ragged wounded men aboard the underequipped hospital ships standing off Gallipoli. Another, Alice Williams from Queensland, later wrote:

When I remember how well and strong our boys were ... how full of hope and cheer ... I am sad, for I also remember how we brought them home again ... maimed, wounded, gassed, crippled for life, and some did not return.

Some women on the home front, who initially had little idea of such realities, took a leading role in shaming men into enlisting. This behaviour was particularly marked when the war began and during the great recruiting drives of 1916–17.

Other women joined rifle clubs and indulged in military drilling. Many helped to raise money for patriotic funds or knitted socks for the soldiers. There were also women of pacifist and socialist beliefs who campaigned strongly against the war. Arguing that a woman's role should always be a nurturing and life-preserving one, they formed such organisations as the Women's Peace Army.

Their meetings were often disrupted by angry returned soldiers and other loyalists. These activist women also led demonstrations, particularly in Melbourne, against the fast-rising cost of living, especially of food for their children. During August and

bereavement the deprivation of relations and friends through death



Source 16.11 Australian schoolgirls knit socks for soldiers at the Western Front [AWM/H11581].

September 1917, these marches became violent when police intervened. They sometimes turned into shop-window-smashing food riots.

Yet overall, women's roles changed far less in Australia than in Britain because of the war. Women in Australia had already cast a national vote since 1902; and their move into wartime work, previously restricted to men, was far less dramatic than in those countries that had introduced military conscription for all eligible males, leaving many more job vacancies.

Historical thought

One of the leading anti-war campaigners in Australia was Adela Pankhurst, a daughter of the British suffragette, Emmeline Pankhurst. Adela was arrested numerous times for her activism and Prime Minister Hughes attempted unsuccessfully to have her deported.

Indigenous people and the war

Learning the full story of Indigenous servicemen in World War I is a work still in progress. It remains unclear how many actually served. Several years ago, the figure given was usually 300 to 400 men.

Today, the Australian War Memorial believes that up to 800 may have been involved.

This is because many of the Indigenous men who fought could only enlist by hiding their Aboriginality. The *Commonwealth Defence Act 1909* prevented any male who was not 'substantially of British descent' from enlisting.

Thus Indigenous men had to 'pass for white' and tended to join up on a 'don't ask; don't tell' basis.

Many were barred from the services, especially in the early stages of the war. Later, as the demand for recruits became more desperate, regulations were somewhat relaxed. Following the failure of the 1916 conscription referendum, it was decided that part-Aborigines (called 'half-castes' at the time) could be accepted if the examining medical officer was satisfied that one parent was 'of European descent'.

These restrictions point to the highly racist nature of Australian society at this time. Indigenous people had very limited rights. Mostly, they could not vote or own land or other property. Their civil liberties were severely restricted and they were being forcibly moved onto reserves and missions.

Their families could be broken up and children taken at will. All this was a result of their thorough dispossession in Australia, during which many Indigenous men had died fighting for their homelands.

Why, then, would young Indigenous men decide to fight for the British cause in World War I? After all, it was the British takeover of Australia that had created most of their difficulties. Yet Australia was still primarily their land and many joined to fight for it. Furthermore, military pay was very enticing, as was the prospect of leaving behind oppressive conditions at home and seeing some of the outside world. Some may have



Source 16.12 Indigenous soldiers and their brides at a dual wedding in Brisbane after returning from the war

thought that fighting and sacrificing alongside other Australian men would lead to an improvement in their racial plight after the war.

Many who fought came from Queensland, but lists have also been compiled of 165 Indigenous men from New South Wales, 68 from Victoria and 45 from South Australia. Indigenous men also enlisted from Tasmania, especially from the Bass Strait Islands. One was John Miller, the grandson of Fanny Cochrane Smith, an Indigenous Tasmanian woman whose voice is preserved singing on one of our earliest recordings. Miller was killed in the Gallipoli landing. Five Indigenous men are presently known to be buried at ANZAC Cove.

Many Indigenous servicemen fought on the Western Front and around 118 served in Egypt and Palestine in

the Light Horse. Indigenous men were also among the tunnellers beneath Hill 60 during the Battle of Messines in June 1917, and were to the fore in the Light Horse charge in the Jordan Valley. Presently, around 115 Indigenous casualties are known, while others, such as Ben Murray from the Flinders Ranges, were taken prisoner.

Murray survived, returning to the South Australian outback and living beyond the age of 100 years.

Those who came home, however, faced an ungrateful nation that did not want to recognise their sacrifice. They were still thought of as 'inferior beings'. All the racial restrictions remained in place. Indigenous ex-servicemen could not even enjoy a beer alongside their warfront comrades.

Their military pay was often withheld and they were offered no repatriation services for the terrors they had encountered. Even the best agricultural land on certain Indigenous missions was taken away and given to white returned soldiers to farm.

Historical thought

Some Indigenous men had earlier fought in the Boer War (1899–1902) in South Africa. It is believed that several from Queensland, used as 'black trackers' near Bloemfontein, found it difficult to return home to Australia, owing to the racial restrictions of the White Australia Policy.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.11

- 1 Discuss why Indigenous men were originally prevented from joining the AIF.
- 2 Explain why Indigenous men wanted to join the AIF.
- 3 Analyse why it is difficult today to establish how many Indigenous men fought in World War I.
- 4 Describe how Indigenous returned soldiers were treated after the war.

Social and ethnic division

Many commentators today claim that the war experience created a unified national feeling in Australia for the

first time. They emphasise that it was not the colonial struggles that led to Australian Federation in 1901 that

had developed this, but rather national pride in a large warfront 'blood sacrifice'; that is, the scale of Australian military casualties.

ethnic of a social group with a common national or cultural heritage

When historians have studied the Australian home front during and immediately after the war years, however, they have not discovered an enhanced sense of national unity so much as evidence of social division and **ethnic** discord.

The two conscription struggles are dramatic examples of this. Australians had never felt so divided over a single issue. It split families and ended friendships as well as emphasising deep religious, political, class and ethnic divisions throughout society. The negative economic effects of war had also fallen heavily upon working people. They struggled with high unemployment and inflation, as well as falling wages. When war broke out, there were few strikes, but from the mid-war period (1916–17) onwards, industrial disputes mounted.

Furthermore, war involvement led to a sustained official attack on civil liberties and democratic rights. There were almost 3450 prosecutions under the *War Precautions Act*.

People were imprisoned for speaking out against the struggle. Censorship was more severe in Australia

than in Britain, muzzling all forms of opposition. Nevertheless, anti-war activity remained a constant and increasing feature of the home front experience as a sense of loss, anxiety and sadness mounted.

War propaganda, as we have seen, contained a powerful strand of anti-Germanism. Germans composed a substantial minority population, especially in Queensland, New South Wales and South Australia. Before the war they were regarded as one of the most favoured ethnic groups. The war, however, transformed this, as hatred for all things German rapidly grew. Germans lost their jobs, their property and their votes. Their schools and newspapers were closed down. They were vilified in the street, in the press and in films such as *The Hun* and *The Enemy within the Gates*.

Anti-German riots occurred in several Australian cities and towns, including Melbourne, Perth, Lismore, Broken Hill and Charters Towers.

After the war, 6180 German people were deported from Australia to Europe, crammed into nine ships during 1919 and 1920. Other ethnic scares during the war involved the Irish, Southern Europeans, Turks, Jews, Afghans and Asians – and, from 1917, Russians. From 1915, Aliens Restriction Orders curbed ethnic freedoms in much the same way as the White Australia Policy restricted non-whites.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.12

- 1 Assess how substantial social and ethnic divisions in Australia were during World War I.
- 2 Identify the causes of such divisions.
- 3 Describe the nature of anti-Germanism.
- 4 Recount the effects this had on German individuals and their communities in Australia.
- 5 Discuss the forms of 'anti-foreigner' feelings that existed.
- 6 Explain the ways war involvement intensified antagonism.
- 7 Recall how divided Australian society was by 1919.

16.4 War's end: commemoration and creating a legend

How the war ended: the war front

By November 1918, the Great War was in its fifth year. Soldiers talked mockingly of it continuing for decades. British military planners calculated that it would not end until 1919 or 1920. Its sudden conclusion took most people by surprise.

One by one, Germany's allies surrendered: Bulgaria in September 1918, Turkey in October, and Austria in early November. An **armistice** followed that took effect on the

armistice the ending of hostilities by mutual agreement



Source 16.13 Enthusiastic crowds in London at Nelson's Column in Trafalgar Square on Armistice Day. Later that evening, Australian troops, along with others, rioted at this spot.

Historical thought

During World War I, the German-sounding names of approximately 80 Australian towns, mostly in South Australia and Queensland, were changed. For instance, Rossler in Queensland became Ambleside, Mueller Park in Western Australia became Kitchener Park, Bismarck in Tasmania became Collins Vale, Germantown in Victoria became Grovedale and German Creek in New South Wales became Empire Vale.

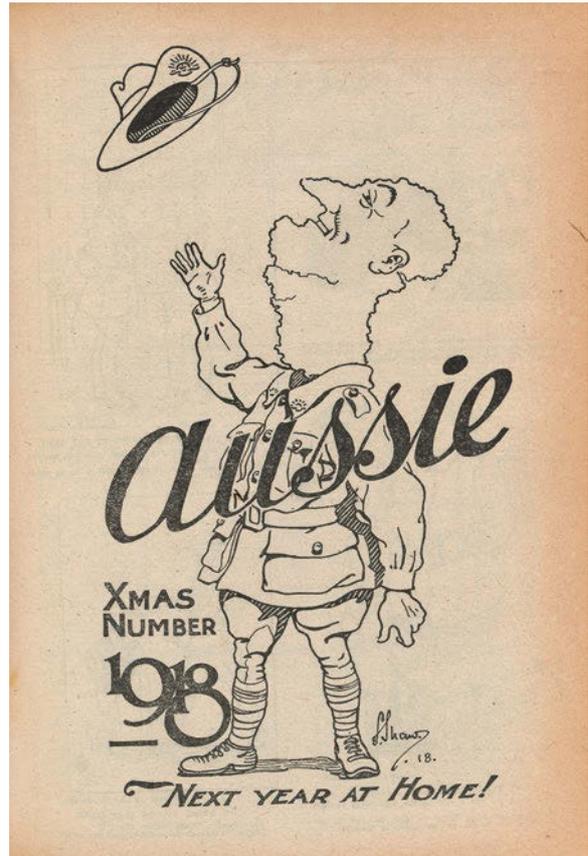
eleventh hour of the eleventh day of the eleventh month of 1918.

On most fronts, the roar of gunfire stopped at 11 a.m. An eerie, unfamiliar silence followed.

An American pilot, looking out over the trenches from his plane, then saw helmets and guns flying into the air and men waving to each other across no-man's-land.

When the war ended there were around 90 000 Australian soldiers at the Western Front. More than 60 000 others were in Britain in hospitals or at training

depots, and another 30 000 were in the Middle East. By September, 11 of the 60 AIF battalions had already been disbanded due to lack of reinforcements. The Australians composed less than 10% of the British Army, but in the final stages of the war they had won many victories, liberating 116 villages and towns and capturing nearly one-quarter of the German prisoners and guns taken by the British.



Source 16.14 The front cover of the Australian soldiers' magazine, *Aussie*, for Christmas 1918, displaying an image of delight at the prospect of returning home from the war

Bringing the troops home

The task of bringing Australia's fighting men home was a monumental one. At war's end there were up to 185 000 troops on service in France, Belgium, Egypt and Mesopotamia. As well, there were around 5 000 munitions and other war workers in Britain, 4 000 sailors in the Royal Australian Navy and another 3 000 in the Australian Flying Corps. Additionally, there were still almost 1 500 Australian nurses abroad, serving in many places, including India and Italy. All told, around 200 000 Australians had to be repatriated, along with 15 500 wives and children of Diggers who had married abroad.

Lieutenant General Sir John Monash, who had performed so outstandingly in the war's closing phase, was placed in charge of repatriation and **demobilisation**. He acquitted himself magnificently in this task as well. Huge numbers of soldiers who were no longer engaging an enemy could easily become a serious disciplinary issue. There were riots involving Australians at a French general hospital and a military prison in mid-November 1918, just days after the Armistice. There was also determined strike action by the 5th Divisional Artillery against a heavy application of military regulations. The Surafend tragedy in Palestine, mentioned earlier, occurred in December.

Australia in January 1919, leading to considerable concern and mass panic. As a result, troop ships were often quarantined on arrival and the men prevented from landing, which led to numerous disturbances. In this manner, the epidemic was more contained here, although 12 000 lives were still lost.

The men who returned home were not the same people who had left to fight. Even those who were not physically injured were often psychologically damaged by what they had seen, experienced and done. They tended to be unstable and volatile. During 1919 and 1920, research has now uncovered around 20 major riots in Australian cities involving returned soldiers, as well as higher levels of domestic violence in Australian homes.

Australians were extremely proud of their fighting men, but they were also wary and alarmed by their unexpected home front behaviour. They seemed to represent a new, unpredictable force in Australian society.

demobilisation disbanding troops back into civilian life

Historical thought

There were more than 900 Australian deserters on the loose behind the lines in France when the war ended. Twenty years later, around 750 were still unaccounted for.

Historical thought

When the 'original' ANZACs – those who had enlisted before Gallipoli – returned home on **furlough** in September 1918, there were only 7000 to 9000 still in the fighting ranks, out of 32 000 who had first gone to war.

furlough military leave of absence

pandemic infectious disease that spreads over a large area of the world

Then, when the ships arrived back in Australia, there was a new problem. A global **pandemic** of 'Spanish influenza' was now raging and killing huge numbers of people – in fact, 20 million to 30 million across the world. Soldiers returning home spread the virus across the world. It first reached

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.13

- 1 Explain the operational difficulties involved in bringing home the surviving soldiers, sailors, airmen, nurses and munitions workers after the war.
- 2 Discuss why it was so difficult for the authorities to discipline and control the Australian soldiers.
- 3 Investigate the troopship disturbances caused by the Spanish influenza pandemic.
- 4 Examine the effect of the Spanish influenza pandemic on Australia. Compare it with the outbreak in other nations.

Repatriation and grieving

Until early 1918, it was thought that the private patriotic funds could look after the needs and problems of returning soldiers. Help was therefore seen more as a

charity than a right. Yet, with the numbers of damaged men rising alarmingly, the Hughes government rather reluctantly agreed in March 1918 to establish a Federal

rehabilitate restore to normal life
veteran returned soldier

Repatriation Department to help **rehabilitate** war **veterans**, and aid them with housing and retraining for non-military employment. War pensions for the families of the dead and for

disabled men, along with the necessary medical services, were also required. Later, in 1935, service pensions for 'prematurely aged' and 'permanently unemployable' ex-soldiers and warfront nurses were introduced.

The casualties of war continued mounting after the guns ceased firing. In the book, *Australians, an Historical Atlas*, there is a remarkable table that includes, along with the war dead and injured, the numbers who fell ill due to warfront conditions (see Source 16.15). Sickness adds a further 393 155 casualties to the already growing list, resulting in an extraordinary total of 616 606 cases of war-afflicted men. Remember that around 417 000 men had enlisted and 332 000 had fought. So, in total, Australia's most comprehensive casualty list for World War I considerably overshadows its full enlistment total.

Australian casualties	World War I	World War II
Battle dead	53 993	27 291
Battle wounded	155 133	23 377
Battle prisoners of war	3 647	22 264
Non-battle dead	6 291	10 137
Non-battle sickness	393 155	436 041
Non-battle other	4 387	36 912
Total	616 606	556 022

Source 16.15 Australian casualties: World War I and World War II. Particularly, note the numbers of wounded and sick.

incapacitated permanently injured

This presented a formidable challenge for repatriation services. Though not all needy ex-servicemen sought assistance, by the 1930s, up

to 80 000 **incapacitated** ex-soldiers were receiving a pension. The number rose to over 283 000 in 1931 when widows and children of the deceased, plus wives and mothers caring for limbless and other disabled veterans, were added.

Unlike the United States, which was closer geographically to Europe and had fewer casualties, Australia did not bring its war dead home. There are about 35 600 deceased Australian soldiers buried in more than 50 cemeteries in France and Belgium. There are another 2848 lying underground at Gallipoli and

others again buried in Egypt and Palestine. Additionally, the Australian War Memorial at Villers-Bretonneux in France provides the names of a further 10 892 men killed on the Western Front whose bodies were not recovered. A vast collective sadness flowed across the land, taking up residence in most of its homes. Historian Michael McKernan aptly named these after-war decades 'The Grey Years'.

Returned soldiers often found great difficulty in adapting back into civilian life. They and the society they re-entered had both been harshly transformed. The soldiers' warfront sufferings were unimaginable to civilians. Communication broke down. Marriages often dissolved in quarrels and violence. Crime rates rose. Fears were expressed that city-gatherings of ex-soldiers could lead to serious disturbances – and they often did. The veterans' mood was volatile.

The Soldier Settlement Scheme, one of the central plans of the repatriation program, therefore attempted to remove returnees from urban areas into more dispersed agricultural regions. Unfortunately, it was a poorly conceived and administered venture. Men carrying the scars of war often made poor farmers and the land was often badly chosen. Debts accumulated and most of the farms failed with many tragic results. Sadly, this was one war for which there were few happy endings.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.14

- 1 Explain why returned soldiers found it difficult to cope in post-war Australia.
- 2 Identify the Australian public's reactions to its returned men.
- 3 Discuss how important a role grief played in the years after World War I.

Historical thought

The cost of annual war pensions in 1931 was £8 million (or around \$1600 million in today's currency). This was almost equal to half the entire Commonwealth budget when the war began.

Growth of returned soldier organisations

From mid-1916, Australian returned soldiers began organising to defend their rights and future welfare. The first groups emerged from soldiers' club rooms in many Australian cities, which were havens for the wounded and invalided men. Here they met with others who had shared similar experiences and truly understood what warfare meant. As members of one such organisation, the Returned Soldiers Labor League, stated: 'The undying gratitude which the returned man has earned is gratitude and little more'.

Between 1916 and 1919, a range of such groups was established, spreading over the entire political spectrum. On the conservative right were such bodies as the Returned Soldiers and Patriots National League.



Source 16.16 Riotous returned soldiers face a police bayonet line outside the Russian Hall in Merivale Street, South Brisbane on 24 March 1919. There were many injuries in this violent encounter, prompted by anti-Russian feeling.

Further to the left, they included the Returned Soldiers Anti-Conscription League and the Australian Comrades of War.

From this confusion of contesting groups, the organisation we know today as the RSL (Returned & Services League) eventually emerged, by around October 1918, as the official association representing returned men. The RSL enjoyed official endorsement and funding, and had the advantage of recruiting members on the returning troop ships before they docked in Australia.

Although the RSL depicted itself as a non-political organisation that defended the welfare needs of veterans, it tended to adopt a distinct range of positions. It strongly supported the British Empire, the White Australia Policy and an active defence policy. It maintained a forceful anti-German position for a considerable time and tended to regard all non-British 'aliens' with suspicion. It also opposed militant trade unions and left-wing activists.

status quo the existing state of things

The RSL declared its intention to 'resist revolution by force'. Thus, it was a strong advocate of conservative values and a vigilant defender of the **status quo**.

During 1919, the RSL was attracting ex-soldiers at the rate of a thousand per week, and by year's end had reached a strength of 150 000 members. During the 1920s, however, its numbers went into serious decline, bottoming out at around 24 000 in 1924 – or only 9% of returned men. Feelings of disillusionment and a general turning against warfare during the 1920s may have had much to do with this. Numbers slowly recovered as Australian politicians began actively promoting ANZAC Day in a disunited society. Membership rose from about 50 000 in 1930 to almost 80 000 in 1936. The RSL badge became a powerful symbol of political pressure, and was stronger than that of similar veterans' groups in the other Allied nations.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.15

- 1 Outline why returned soldiers felt the need to band together.
- 2 Explain how the RSL emerged as the sole returned soldiers' league.
- 3 Identify the ways the RSL supported the needs and demands of war veterans.
- 4 Describe what other values the RSL supported.
- 5 Describe the role returned soldiers played in the resistance.
- 6 Recall why RSL membership declined in the 1920s.

How ANZAC Day began

Queensland was called 'the most disloyal state' during the war by the Commonwealth authorities.

Yet it was here that the idea to commemorate the Gallipoli landings of April 1915 as 'ANZAC Day' began. It was the brainchild of Thomas Augustus Ryan, the son of a Bathurst grazier. He spoke of it to the State Recruiting Committee in late 1915.

Ryan's only son, Gus, was fighting with the 5th Light Horse at Gallipoli. It was believed that marking the event with church services, a street march and patriotic speeches might establish 'a solemn day in memory of the baptism of blood'. It might also encourage more men to enlist.

Evacuation from Gallipoli began on 18 December 1915 and ended on 8 January 1916.

Several days later, a meeting in Brisbane, prompted by Ryan's suggestion, was attended by Queensland's Governor, the Premier, the Inspector-General of Commonwealth Forces, the Mayor of Brisbane and other leading opinion-makers.

It was here decided that 'the heroic conduct of our gallant Queensland troops' should receive 'undying fame'. The Queensland 9th Brigade had been the first ashore at ANZAC Cove. Follow-up meetings by educators and Empire loyalists, with Queensland's Labor Premier acting as Chairman, organised the details, including a complementary ceremony to be held at Westminster Abbey in London, and invited other Australian states to join the commemoration.

After church services on the morning of 25 April 1916, 50 000 Brisbane citizens attended the first ANZAC Day march. The *Brisbane Courier* said it was the biggest crowd ever assembled in the metropolis. The surging mass of people was 'almost uncontrollable' at the saluting base in front of the General Post Office and several women fainted in the crush. The *Daily Standard* newspaper added that many people were 'dressed in mourning' and carried 'some cherished relic ... associated with one or another of those sleeping at Gallipoli'. Around 5000 purchased the first ANZAC Day badges, depicting the winged lion of St Mark ('a symbol of super-human strength') along with the Queensland crest and motto, 'Brave yet Faithful'.

Around 6430 soldiers marched that day, most of whom were fresh recruits. They were greeted with hearty cheering, but this fell away to a silent hush as the 'pathetic figures' of wounded and disabled returned men who could not walk were carried from 20 motor cars onto the saluting platform. Speakers claimed that the 'greatest military event in Australian history' had allowed the nation 'to find its soul'.

Meetings that evening and over subsequent days were devoted to encouraging more able-bodied men to enlist. The battle of Fromelles was only 3 months away. In Sydney, around 700 recruits staged an unauthorised march, watched by huge crowds at the Domain. Tasmania did not mark the occasion until 3 days later. In this manner, ANZAC Day began in Australia. Its future history was to be a most variable one.



Source 16.17 ANZAC troops march through London crowds to Westminster Abbey on 25 April 1916, the first ANZAC Day.

Historical thought

In 1922, the RSL opposed the burial of an 'Unknown Soldier' in Australia, arguing that 'the sentiment of the Empire was expressed in the burial in London'. An Australian 'Unknown Soldier' was not buried at the Australian War Memorial's Hall of Memory until November 1993.

events and **two-up** games – much as soldiers had behaved at leisure on the Western Front. In 1938, for instance, ex-soldiers played two-up in the main streets of Sydney. They danced, sang wartime songs, staged mock marches and directed traffic.

two-up a gambling game played with two pennies, with bets placed on a showing of two 'heads' or two 'tails' when the coins land after being tossed in the air

World War II (known as 'the Good War') increased ANZAC Day's popularity, but by the late 1950s it was again being criticised for promoting military values and drunkenness. This was dramatically shown in Alan Seymour's 1960 play, *The One Day of the Year*, which caused great controversy.

Indifference and hostility grew during the Vietnam War years, as the march became a focus for anti-war protests. In 1973, the Australian Labor Party even discussed changing the ANZAC Day format into a celebration of peace. With civilian casualties again mounting in global warfare, feminists attempted to join the march in the early 1980s to remember the female victims of war, leading to clashes and arrests.

Since 1990, however, when Prime Minister Bob Hawke visited Ari Burnu cemetery at Gallipoli, ANZAC Day has been revitalised, with annual pilgrimages to ANZAC Cove and the Western Front. Following this, Prime Minister Paul Keating suggested in 1993 that the 1942 Kokoda campaign in New Guinea, where Australians fought more to defend their homeland than for Britain, should be revered above Gallipoli. Finally, in the years of the Iraq and Afghanistan wars, both Liberal Prime Minister John Howard and Labor Prime Minister Kevin Rudd began recasting the mood of ANZAC Day less as one of commemoration of soldier sacrifice and regret about war's cruelties and more as one about celebrating Australia's long military tradition. Each generation, it seems, moulds the ANZAC story to its immediate needs.

Developing the ANZAC legend

The 'spirit of ANZAC' is said to provide the foundational cement for Australian nationalism.

Yet the commemoration itself did not become a single national event until 1930, 15 years after the ANZAC Cove landing. Before this time, ANZAC Day was differently observed in the various states. In some, such as Western Australia, it was a holiday. In Queensland, it was not. Certain states allowed other entertainments, including racing and gambling, on the day. Other states enforced a more solemn, religious-like observance.

In 1927, after Melbourne had declared a holiday on the day, 28000 people joined its march, but in Sydney only 4000 paraded, while 1600 marched in Perth. It was only when state and federal politicians and church leaders joined the RSL in promoting the occasion nationally in the late 1920s that it emerged as a leading national day. ANZAC Day, therefore, was arguably as much a political creation as a spontaneous people's event.

ANZAC Day during the 1930s settled into a regular pattern of morning church services followed by a solemn march, and then an afternoon of drinking, sporting



Source 16.18 2011 ANZAC Day march in Melbourne



Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- World War I was caused by national rivalries in Europe being set on a rapid collision course after an assassination in Bosnia upset the European balance of power.
- Britain was the most reluctant of the European powers to engage in the war, but once it did so, its involvement determined Australia's participation, largely because Australia was a loyal member of the British Empire and therefore automatically committed itself to fight alongside Britain.
- Australian soldiers served with distinction on fighting fronts in Turkey, Europe and the Middle East. Australia's baptism in this war, the Gallipoli campaign, was a very badly judged military venture that ended in defeat and retreat. Australian troops, in greater numbers, then engaged in the destructive campaigns of 1916 and 1917 on the Western Front, again with little overall military success. They were instrumental, however, in the crucial battles that halted the German advance and turned the tide of the war in Europe in mid-1918. The cavalry successes of the Australian Light Horse in the Middle East were similarly central to the victorious Allied campaigns in Palestine in 1917–18.
- Casualties were extremely high and unprecedented, producing intense grief and dislocation on the home front. This was the case for all the combatant countries. Australia's casualty rate was high, especially as it experienced no civilian deaths due to war combat and did not institute military conscription, which was unique among the fighting nations.

- War's end revealed a battered and broken nation in much need of mending – a role that the ANZAC legend was eventually employed to play. The turmoil of war created enormous divisions on the Australian home front. Industrial, political and ethnic struggles were all marked outcomes of war involvement, making Australia by 1919 a far more divided country than it had been in 1914 when the war began.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Why did World War I break out?
- 2 Outline which nations were involved in the war and which side they were on.
- 3 Who was William Morris Hughes and what role did he play in Australia's war effort?
- 4 To what degree did the role and situation of Australian women change due to the war?
- 5 Discuss what happened on the first ANZAC Day in 1916.

Source analysis

Anthony Splivalo was a young Dalmatian migrant living in Boulder-Kalgoorlie when the war broke out. He was interned on Rottnest Island and at Holdsworth Internment Camp near Sydney. After the war, he left Australia for California, driven out, he writes, by 'the anti-foreigner feeling':

Soon the policy of internment was extended ... Peaceful and law-abiding Dalmatians and other Slavs, working in the mines or in the bush, were rounded up and sent to Rottnest Island under armed guard ...

Suddenly uniformed Australian soldiers with rifles and fixed bayonets appeared as if from nowhere. We were ordered ... into columns of fours, Australian guards swiftly taking their position alongside ... So, flanked by armed men with cold eyes, we trudged with heavy step Thus, just a few months before my seventeenth birthday, I became Western Australia's youngest prisoner of war ... Around me soldiers, rifles, bayonets, cartridge belts and awful military officiality.



... Men, women and children lined the street to watch us pass. They stood silently, showing no enmity, looking puzzled as if unable to piece things together ...

At Fremantle ... a young fellow in a white shirt leaned over the railing and called out to us 'Ah ha! We've got you now!' And he made a sucking noise of satisfaction, through one corner of his mouth.

'We've got you now!' I have always remembered those words.

Source 16.19 From A. Splivalo, *The Home Fires* (Fremantle: Fremantle Arts Centre Press, 1982, pp. 50, 57–8, 60)

Read through Source 16.19 carefully and answer the following questions:

- 1 Explain 'the policy of internment' during World War I.
- 2 Where is Rottnest Island and what happened there during the war?
- 3 Who were 'the Dalmatians' and 'the Slavs'?
- 4 Why were soldiers with rifles and bayonets rounding them up?
- 5 Reflect what you think Splivalo means by the phrase, 'awful military officiality'.
- 6 What were the reactions of civilian onlookers to this scene – confusion, anger, apathy, support?
- 7 Why did Splivalo always remember the words of the 'young fellow in a white shirt' at Fremantle?
- 8 Interpret Splivalo's phrase 'anti-foreigner feeling'?

Extended-response question

Examine in closer detail the experience of Australian troops on different warfronts. Why does Australia remember the Gallipoli campaign more intently than what happened in other Australian troop campaigns in this war? What role, for instance, did Australian soldiers play in war's outcomes in Palestine in 1917–18 and on the Western Front in 1918? Construct a parallel account of the three warfronts (in Turkey, Palestine and Europe) and assess the degree of military success, sacrifice and failure in each campaign.



Civics and citizenship

Law and citizens

The principles of the Australian justice system

The underlying principles of the Australian justice system are that all people are treated equally and fairly before the law and that no person is above the law. There are several ways in which these principles are protected and enacted; for example, all people have the right to a fair trial and the right to appeal a decision made by the court. Another way in which the principles of the equality and fairness are represented is through the legal term *habeas corpus*. *Habeas corpus* means that anyone who has been arrested must go before a judge or a court. This ensures that no person can be held as a prisoner without a fair trial or held in jail indefinitely. This concept ensures that unlawful imprisonment does not take place.

habeas corpus a judicial law that requires all prisoners to be brought before a court to determine whether the government has the right to continue to detain them



Source 16.1.1 *Habeas corpus* ensures no one is held prisoner without a fair trial.

The Australian court system

The Australian court system is designed on a hierarchy based on the types of crimes the court makes judgement on. There are federal and state courts within Australia, each with specific jurisdiction. State courts make judgements the laws of the particular state (although sometimes they do make judgement on federal laws as well). Federal courts make judgement

over **Commonwealth law**, which are laws that are made by the federal government. The highest court in Australia is the High Court of Australia, which can overturn decisions made any court, even the highest court in the state (in Victoria, the highest court is Supreme Court of Victoria). The High Court is located in Canberra. There are also separate courts that make judgement on specific areas of law. For example, the Family Court presides over laws surrounding marriage, divorce and child custody.

Commonwealth law laws made by the federal government

Court	Civil law	Criminal law
Supreme Court of Victoria	Unlimited amount in damages – offences considered more serious than those heard in the County Court	Serious criminal offences, such as murder, attempted murder and conspiracy charges
County Court of Victoria	Unlimited amount in damages	All indictable offences except murder, treason or manslaughter
Magistrates Court of Victoria	Up to \$100 000 in damages	Summary offences, such as minor assault or offensive behaviour

Source 16.1.2 Court jurisdiction in Victoria

The Children's Court of Victoria makes judgement on criminal action of people under the age of 17.

Role of the courts

criminal law a body of law concerned with crime and the legal punishment of criminal offences

civil law a body of law concerned with disputes between individuals, organisations or between the two, and compensation for the victim

The role of the court is to fairly, and without any prejudice, interpret and apply the law. In the case of **criminal law** it is the role of the court to apply an appropriate punishment for the crime committed. In the case of **civil law** it is the role of the court to resolve a dispute between two parties and allocate an appropriate financial compensation. The courts also play

a role in developing and creating laws. When a judge makes a ruling on a particular law, it establishes a **precedent**. That means when that law is referred to again, the precedent established by the former judgement will affect the interpretation of the law. This is called **common law** or 'judge-made law'. For example, it has become common law for a judge to dismiss a case if the defendant does not have adequate representation or if the judge views the case as unfair in some way.

precedent an earlier action or decision that will influence all other following decisions on the issue

common law a body of law concerned with law developed by judges through decisions of courts and similar tribunals



Sources 16.1.3 and 16.1.4 Civil law seeks compensation for injury or damages, while in criminal law a guilty defendant is subject to imprisonment, fines or community service.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 16.1.1

- 1 Define the term '*habeas corpus*' and outline how the term represents the principle of fairness.
- 2 Outline three different roles of the court.
- 3 Identify which court would make judgement on the following crimes:
 - a damages from putting graffiti on a wall
 - b damages from major fraud (resulting in the loss of over \$1 million)
 - c punching someone or attempting to kill someone.



Source 16.1.5 Shanghai, China

Economics and Business



17

Australia, Asia and the global economy

Before you start

Main focus

Every day newspapers and the media have reports about the state of the economy, what the value of the Australian dollar is, the prospects for employment and how well the economy is operating. We are also constantly told about the products we can buy both in retail stores and online. It is important, therefore, that we have some kind of understanding about how the economy operates and where Australia, as an economy, fits in with the rest of the world, particularly our Asian neighbours. This chapter examines the participants in the economy such as consumers, producers, governments and employees. It also explains how needs are satisfied through the production and distribution of goods and services.

Why it's relevant to us

The economy is a complex thing and it affects all of us every day. Adding to this complexity are the constant interactions between consumers, producers, workers and governments. As sometimes there are competing demands for goods and services and limited resources (the problem of 'scarcity'), decisions need to be made as to how goods and services will be produced and distributed.

Inquiry questions

- What types of economic decisions are made by government, businesses, employees and individuals?
- How are wants satisfied through the production of goods and services?
- Why is Australia interdependent on other countries?

- What are the main items traded with Asian countries?
- What impact can global events have on the Australian economy?

Key terms

- Budget deficit
- Budget surplus
- Consumer
- Comparative advantage
- Composition of trade
- Direction of trade
- Factors of production
- Free market
- Mixed economy
- Price mechanism
- Primary sector
- Producer
- Tertiary sector
- Trade Confidence Index

Let's begin

Every day we have to make decisions about what we will buy as individuals; businesses and governments do the same thing. This chapter examines the input of consumers, governments and producers into the economic questions of how decisions are made regarding the key economic problem of scarcity and how governments make economic decisions regarding the use and distribution of economic resources.

17.1 Participants in the Australian economy

worker (employee) a person who works for themselves or a business to produce a product or service

consumer a customer or shopper who purchases goods and services

There are a number of participants in the Australian economy. All of these participants – **workers (employees)**, businesses, **consumers** and the government – have a role to play in the economy and can influence the way the economy operates.

Employees

Employees or workers are an important part of the business and are an input that supports the production

of goods and provides services. Employees usually have to have skills and experience to produce a high-quality product. In Australia we have a highly skilled workforce in most industries and sectors of the economy. While in the past the Australian economy was based on primary industry (agriculture, wool, beef and natural resources) and then manufacturing (production of goods from inputs), it is now increasingly based on the **tertiary sector**, meaning that employees are more involved in providing services than products.

tertiary sector a sector of the economy relating to products known as services

Sector or industry	Examples
<p>primary sector a sector of the economy relating to natural resources</p> <p>Primary sector</p> <p>Extracts or harvests products or raw materials from the natural environment.</p>	<p>Agricultural industries such as farming and grazing, mining, fishing and hunting. Primary products are known as commodities. Those produced in Australia include wheat, wool, fish, timber and iron ore. The packaging and processing of raw materials are also considered to be part of the primary sector.</p>
<p>factors of production a term used to describe the inputs used in the production of goods and services</p> <p>Secondary/manufacturing</p> <p>Creates finished goods (tangible products) through combining factors of production in a production process.</p>	<p>Construction, engineering, car manufacturing and factories.</p>
<p>quaternary sector the branch of the tertiary sector that provides intellectual activities</p> <p>quinary sector the branch of the tertiary sector that contains businesses that are in hospitality and services such as household services</p> <p>Tertiary/service</p> <p>Provides intangible products known as services. Workers in this sector sell their labour and expertise; 85% of Australians work in service industries.</p> <p>The quaternary sector is the branch of the tertiary sector that provides intellectual activities.</p> <p>The quinary sector contains businesses that are in hospitality and services such as household services.</p>	<p>Retail, professional services, media, tourism and banking.</p> <p>Parts of this sector include government, education, scientific research and IT.</p> <p>Examples of quinary businesses include restaurants, Jim's Mowing and cleaning.</p>

Source 17.1 Different sectors and industries





Source 17.2 While in the past the Australian economy was based on primary industry (left) and manufacturing, it is now increasingly based on the tertiary sector (right).

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.1

- 1** Read the following scenario and identify four goods and four services purchased by Eric.

Eric was extremely unhappy when his car failed to start as it meant he would have to take public transport to his university lecture. While sitting on the train he thought about the Saturday night football game he had bought tickets for, and ate a chocolate bar. Once Eric got home he planned to take his car to the mechanic for repairs, but before that he planned to go to Westfield shopping centre to purchase a new pair of jeans.

- 2** Classify each of the following businesses according to the industry sector they are part of:
- a** a electrical retailer
 - b** a plumber
 - c** a sheep grazier
 - d** a professional sportsperson
 - e** a radio station
 - f** an accounting firm
 - g** a childcare centre
 - h** a professional fishing boat
 - i** a department store.

Australia is in a phase where there are many challenges in terms of the future of the economy. The secondary sector of the economy is changing and some manufacturing businesses, such as the car manufacturing industry, will stop operating during

the next few years. There has been a move towards a 'knowledge economy', meaning workers will need to develop skills in areas and industries not yet developed if the economy is to remain competitive.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.2

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Robots will not take over manufacturing jobs but will enhance future employment opportunities, according to a report on production in Australia. As demand for workers with a higher level of skills increases, some workers will find themselves at risk of losing their jobs. Traditional jobs will change and people will start to complete jobs with fewer repetitive tasks and more 'high value' tasks instead. New technologies in mechanical and electrical manufacturing will mean that workers will need to operate and manage computerised machinery and equipment.

This means that some workers who do not have the necessary skills may find themselves unemployed.

The report also warned that Australia was behind other countries in linking education and employment. It also stated that there needs to be deeper connections between manufacturing and universities to supply skilled graduates with the expertise to ensure that industry is able to remain viable.

Source 17.3 Extract based on the article 'Robots won't end manufacturing jobs but will change them, says productivity report'

- 1 Suggest why the use of robotics in manufacturing industry has changed people's work.
- 2 The report has found that Australia will need to have more skilled workers. Explain why businesses, TAFEs and universities need to work together on this.

RESEARCH 17.1

Visit a job-finding website such as SEEK (www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and research two jobs in the manufacturing sector.

- 1 List the job titles.
- 2 Outline the skills and qualities required.
- 3 Create your own job advertisement for an opportunity in the manufacturing sector. List all the job prerequisites and desired qualities.
- 4 Calculate a suitable salary for your job description.

Consumers

producer a person or business that makes a good or provides a service to consumers

Consumers or customers are important in the economy. In traditional economic theory it was argued that the **producers** always decided what consumers could purchase. In our modern economy consumers have more power over what they will buy.

Consumers use their disposable income and salary to purchase goods and services. Some of these are

needs (necessities such as food, clothing and shelter) and others are wants (items or services a person would like but does not require, such as a holiday or going out for dinner).

Consumers make decisions about what they will or will not purchase every day. They have some influence over what producers will produce and the types of products they provide for the market they operate in.



Source 17.4 Some people choose to spend their income on wants like holidays.

Economics and business fact

The top 10 favourite global brands for 2013 were:

- Apple
- Coca-Cola
- GE
- Google
- IBM
- Intel
- McDonald's
- Microsoft
- Samsung
- Toyota.



There are a number of laws and regulations that protect the rights of consumers in Australia – these laws may differ between each state. Producers will usually

try to respond to the demands and change in tastes in their customers to ensure that they are able to continue to sell their products.

RESEARCH 17.2

Use the internet to research the consumer affairs body in your state or territory and complete the following tasks:

- 1 Describe three laws or regulations that cover consumers.
- 2 Explain what someone should do if a company has breached a law or regulation.
- 3 Think about a good you have bought over the past month – it could be anything from food to a new phone, clothing or a pair of shoes. Answer the following questions:
 - a Why did you buy the product?
 - b Were you influenced by other people, the price or advertising?
 - c Discuss your answers with other students in the class.
 - d How many were influenced by advertising?
 - e What conclusions can be drawn from the class's comments?

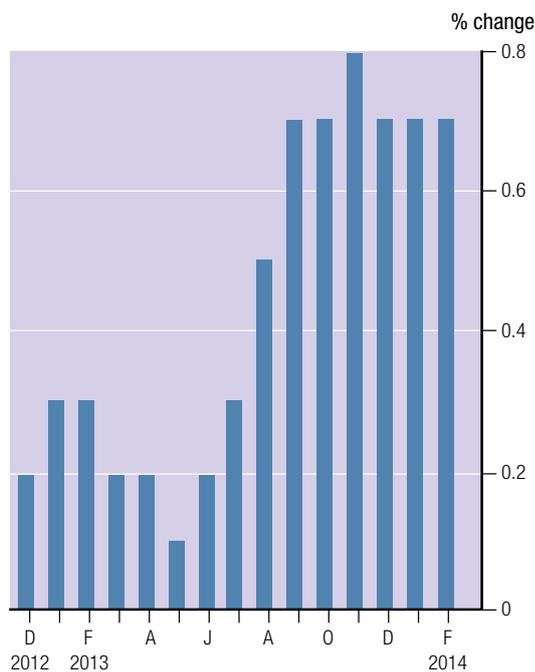


Producers

A producer is a person or, in most cases, a business that makes a product or good, or provides a service to consumers. An economy such as Australia is based on the production of goods and services.

Production	Period	Units	Value	Change from previous period	Change from corresponding period last year
Income from sales of goods and services by manufacturers in volume terms – trend	Dec 2013	\$m	89531	0.2%	–0.9%
Dwelling unit approvals – trend	Feb 2014	No.	17 073	0.7%	27.6%
Building approvals – trend	Feb 2014	\$m	8 303.8	0.2%	18.5%
Total dwelling units commenced – trend	Jun Qtr 2012	No.	33 125	–2.1%	–14.0%
Building work done – chain volume measures – trend	Dec Qtr 2013	\$m	20 958.5	0.2%	2.7%
Engineering construction work done – chain volume measures – trend	Dec Qtr 2013	\$m	32 448.2	1.3%	1.1%

Source 17.5 Australia's key production economic indicators



Key points

- The trend estimate rose 0.7% in February 2014. This follows a rise of 0.7% in January 2014 and a rise of 0.7% in December 2013.
- The seasonally adjusted estimate rose 0.2% in February 2014. This follows a rise of 1.2% in January 2014 and a rise of 0.7% in December 2013.
- In trend terms, Australian turnover rose 5.9% in February 2014 compared with February 2013.
- The following industries rose in trend terms in February 2014: food retailing (0.7%); household goods retailing (1.0%); cafes, restaurants and takeaway food services (1.2%), other retailing (0.5%); and clothing, footwear and personal accessory retailing (0.1%). Department stores (–0.4%) fell in trend terms in February 2014.
- The following states and territories rose in trend terms in February 2014: New South Wales (1.0%), Victoria (0.7%), Queensland (0.5%), Western Australia (0.2%), Tasmania (0.9%), South Australia (0.3%) and the Northern Territory (0.4%). The Australian Capital Territory (–0.1%) fell in trend terms in February 2014.

Source 17.6 The retail trade monthly turnover, current prices and trend estimate of the Australian Bureau of Statistics

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.3

Look at Sources 17.5 and 17.6 and answer the following questions:

- 1 Explain what has happened to production in Australia during the period graphed.
- 2 Describe what happened in the industry sectors in the table.
- 3 Suggest why it would be important for Australia to see an increase in production.

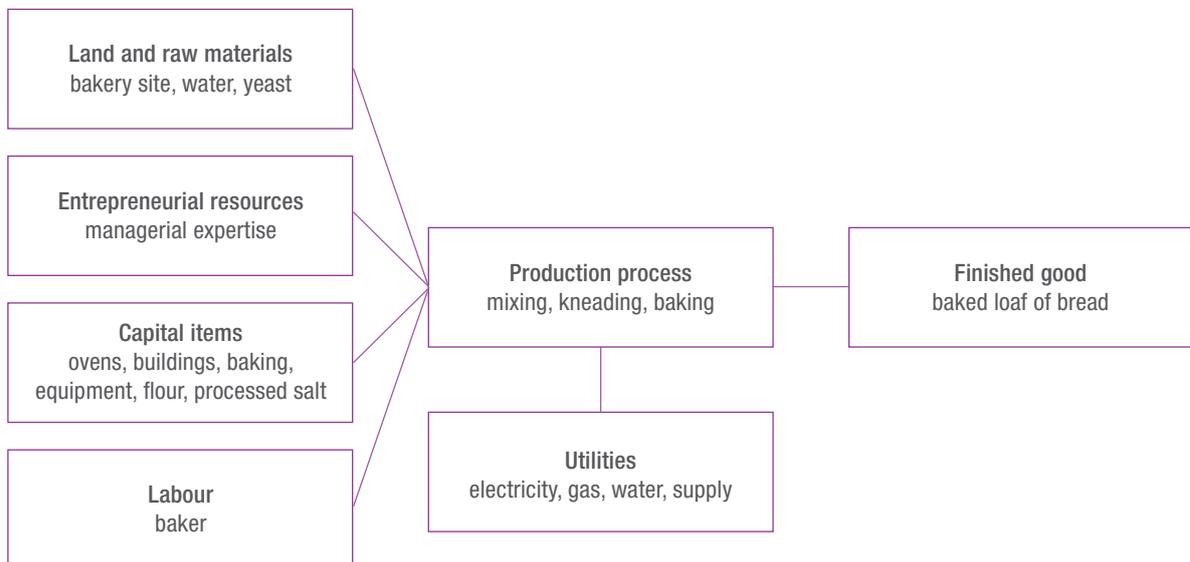
Economics and business fact

start-up company a newly established business

The top Australian **start-up company** in 2014 was Zookal & Flirtey. The textbook rental company Zookal has teamed up with Flirtey to deliver parcels in Australia using fully automated drones.

Goods and services are created (produced) for consumption by consumers through combining economic resources known as the factors of production, which include:

- land and raw materials
- utilities such as gas, water, electricity and water
- labour (workers)
- capital resources such as buildings, vehicles and machinery
- entrepreneurial resources – ideas, vision and drive to come up with ideas.



Source 17.7 Goods and services are created through a production process where producers combine the factors of production.

Governments

Governments make economic decisions around three key questions:

- 1 What will be produced with the economic resources available? (Types of products and in what quantities)
- 2 How to produce? (Methods of production to be used)
- 3 Who will receive the finished products? (Distribution)

The economic system and the economic decisions taken by government will vary according to the economic beliefs or philosophy held by those in government. Governments that are socialist, for instance, tend to believe in greater degrees of government control and influence in the economy. They will therefore make decisions regarding the utilisation of the economic resources of the nation.

In contrast, governments that are advocates of **free market** economics are more inclined to let the market determine key economic decisions regarding what to produce, how to produce and the distribution of production. This is done by allowing the **price mechanism** to operate.

One of the main distinguishing factors between the political beliefs of people is usually about how much government intervention should occur in the economy of the nation. Free market economy advocates tend to believe that the degree of government intervention should be minimal, whereas socialists tend to believe

free market a market economy based on supply and demand with little or no government intervention

price mechanism an economic system where the forces of demand and supply determine how economic resources will be utilised

mixed economy an economic system that is partially free enterprise and partially under government control

that the government should actively intervene in order to redistribute wealth and ensure that all people have access to basic services such as health and education.

Australia has a **mixed economy**. This means that some goods and services are produced by the private sector while others (such as transport, education and health) are provided by the government.



17.2 Objectives of the Australian economy

The objectives of the Australian economy are to satisfy the needs and wants of consumers. While there is an expectation that all consumers will have access to the goods and services they need, sometimes the government (state and/or federal) has to intervene in the economy to ensure that economic activity allows for a prosperous economy.

The Australian government targets a number of economic objectives to provide greater equality and higher living standards. For consumers to benefit, the government has a range of objectives such as economic growth, distribution of income and external stability and trade. Governments use a range of measures to achieve economic growth and stability, mainly through **budgetary (fiscal) policy** which outlines government revenue and expenditure.

budgetary (fiscal) policy policy that sets out the revenue and expenditure of the government (both federal and state level)

A snapshot of the Australian economy in 2013

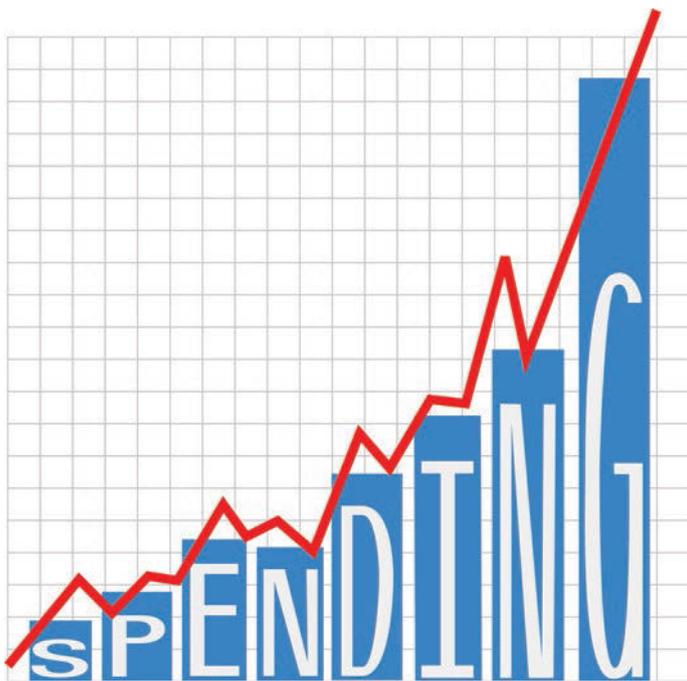
- With an annual gross domestic product (GDP) of about \$15 trillion, Australia has the thirteenth largest economy in the world.
- Australia has the fourth largest economy in the Asia-Pacific region.
- Australia is the nineteenth largest exporter and importer.
- Sixty-eight percent of GDP comes from the service sectors.
- Nineteen percent of GDP comes from the mining or mining related sector.
- Between 1901 and 2000, GDP grew at an average annual rate of 3.4%.
- Australia had the fifth highest GDP per capita. This is higher than those in the UK, Germany and France in terms of consumer purchasing power.
- Australians each have a median wealth of \$222,000. This is eight times the world average.
- Australia is the world's leading coal exporter.

Since the **Global Financial Crisis (GFC)** successive federal governments have used fiscal policy to try to support and maintain economic growth and stability. When the government wants to stimulate or expand economic activity it will increase government spending and may run a **budget deficit**. If there are pressures on the economy in terms of inflation and high levels of consumer spending, the government may decide to reduce or contract spending to restrict pressures on the economy. In this case the government may try to run a **budget surplus**, meaning money is taken out of the economy.

Global Financial Crisis (GFC) a worldwide economic issue that started in the United States and adversely affected economic activity around most of the world

budget deficit where the government spends more money than it receives in taxation and other revenue in order to expand economic activity

budget surplus where the government spends less money than it receives in revenue in order to contract economic activity



Source 17.8 Governments may need to spend less money than they are receiving in order to contract economic activity.

Over 2013 and 2014 the Australian government had to tackle a number of issues and pressures including:

- Consumers and businesses did not have a lot of confidence in the lead-up to the 2013 federal election.
- Mining investment was strong and there was some improvement in home construction.
- Government spending cuts in America also slowed economic growth.
- The International Monetary Fund (IMF) expected global economic growth of around 3.5% in 2014.
- In Australia it was expected that mining **exports** (goods sent overseas) and home building would both increase.
- Consumer confidence was expected to improve.
- Jobs growth was expected to increase.

exports goods and services that are produced domestically and sold abroad

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.4

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

In order to have any hope of returning the budget to a sustainable surplus, the Abbott government needs to pursue a radical microeconomic reform agenda, including putting market share restrictions on the big banks and supermarkets.

It says that, as well as tightening the budget by reining in spending, the government needs to focus on reforms that target productivity because the economy desperately needs a domestic driver of growth.

It comes as Mr Hockey foreshadows the possibility of real wage declines in Australia, warning on Sunday that wages have been growing faster than inflation in recent years, but that this might not always be the case.

The report from economic consultancy Macroeconomics has been released less than a month before the budget.

It warns that, without remedial action, the federal budget deficit could be worse than the government is forecasting by 2019–20.

But it predicts that the federal budget could remain in ‘double-digit’ deficit until at least 2027–28 – which is four years longer than the government expects – after taking account of all federal policy changes since the Mid-Year Fiscal and Economic Outlook.

‘[It should subject] the grocery retail industry (the Woolworths and Coles juggernaut) and retail banking industry (the four major banks) to market share restrictions [to prevent] these oligopolies from further branching out into non-core activities, subsidised by their core businesses,’ the report recommends.

Source 17.9 Extract based on the article ‘Budget deficit worse than thought, radical reform needed’

- 1 Define the following concepts:
 - a budget
 - b productivity
 - c wages
 - d economic growth.
- 2 Explain why it would be a problem for Australia if the budget was in deficit until 2027–28.
- 3 Describe what you think it meant by ‘a radical microeconomic reform agenda’.

17.3 Australia's changing trade patterns

Direction of trade

Australia has always been a high trading nation. Traditionally we have been exporters of **commodities** such as agricultural and mining products, and importers of manufactured products such as electrical appliances, clothing, footwear, cars and computer products. The direction of our trade has shifted considerably in recent decades.

In 1900 the United Kingdom (UK) was Australia's primary trading partner. Total **trade** with the UK was more than five times greater than the trade with Australia's second largest trading partner, the United States. Other significant trading partners to Australia were European countries and members of the British Empire. The trade between Australia and the UK reflected Australia's historical connection to the UK in its growing trading relationships.

During this trading period, Australia relied on the UK for more than half of its export income.

During the 1950s more than one-third of our export income came from sales to the UK. Since the 1960s, however, the direction of our trade has shifted.

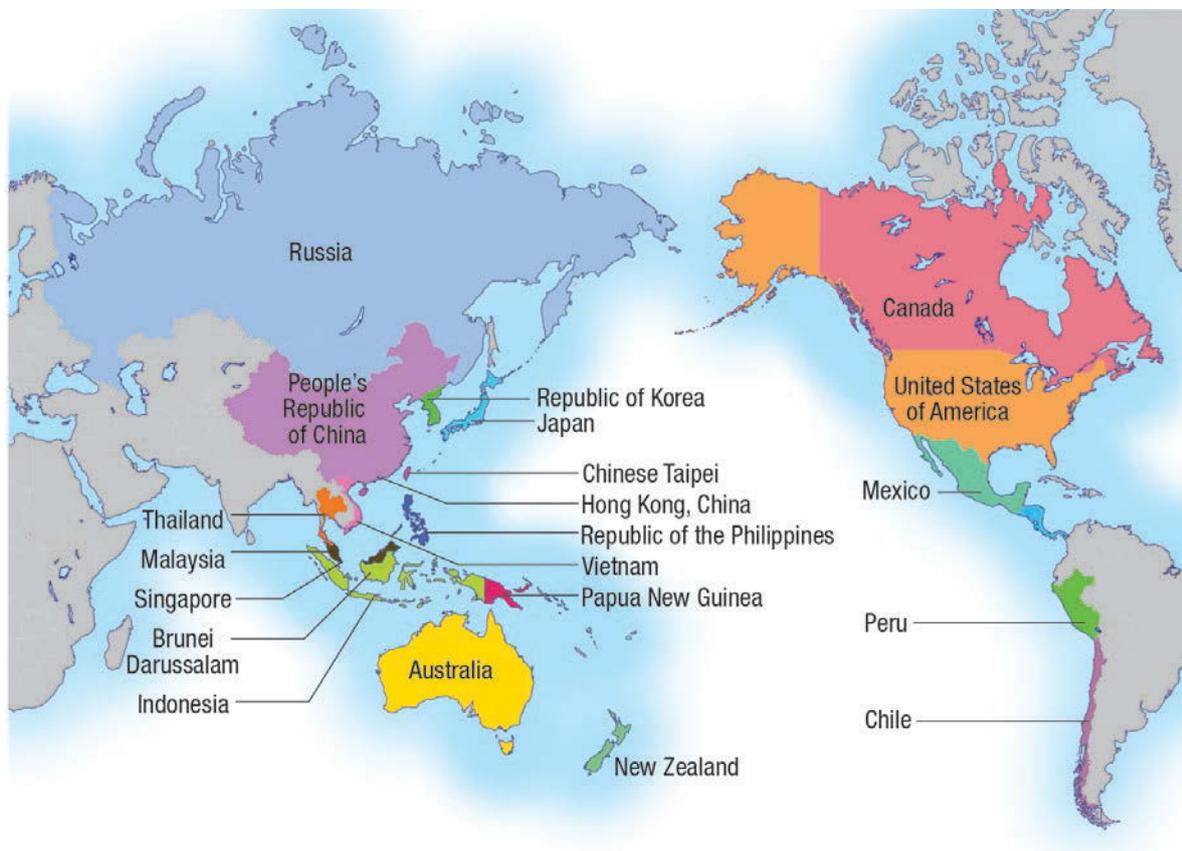
Since the late 1960s when Great Britain made a decision to join the European Economic Union (EEC) Australia's level of trade with Europe has declined significantly. Sixty per cent of Australia's exports now go to the Asia-Pacific region. Japan and the United States are now our major sources of imported consumer goods.

By 1999–2000, the balance of Australia's trading relationships had changed significantly. Our trade focus is now firmly on the members of the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) trade group. Nine of Australia's 10 major trading partners are members of it.

In 2012–13, over 70% of Australia's trade took place with countries that are part of APEC (see Source 17.10).

commodity a raw material or primary agricultural product that can be bought and sold, such as copper or coffee

trade exchange of goods and services between countries



Source 17.10 APEC member economies



Source 17.11 China is currently our most important trading partner.



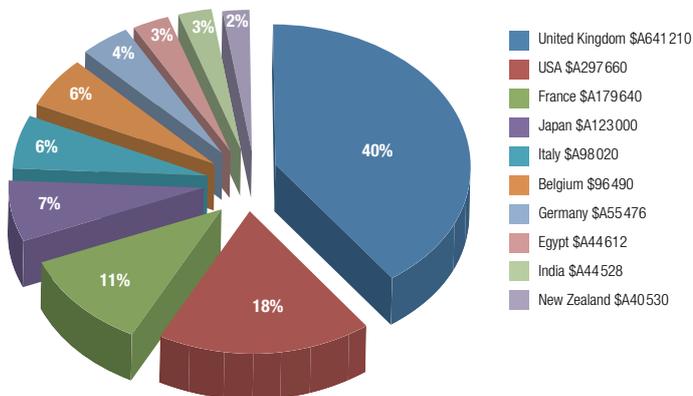
Source 17.12 Minerals are our most important exports.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.5

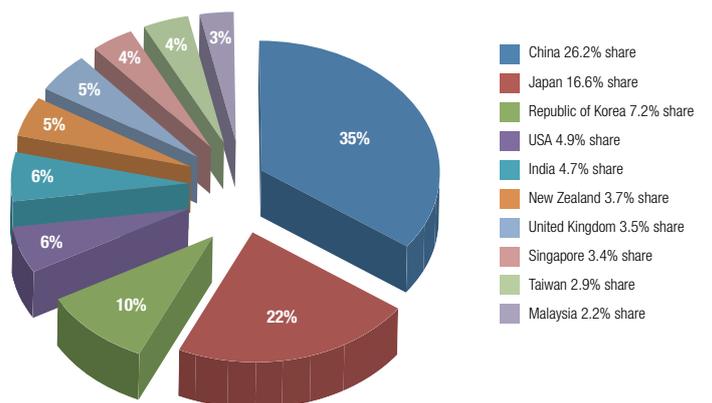
- 1 Describe how Australia's **direction of trade** has changed since 1959. You can quote the statistics set out in sources 17.13, 17.14 and 17.15 to support your argument.
- 2 Explain why this pattern of trade changed.

direction of trade refers to the particular countries and kinds of countries towards which a country's exports are sent, and from which its imports are brought

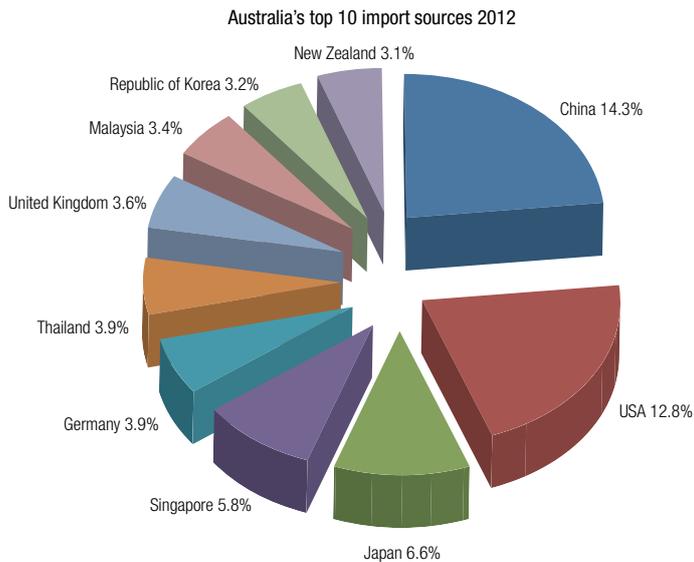
Australia's top 10 export markets 1950–51



Australia's top 10 export markets 2012



Source 17.13 and 17.14 Australia's top 10 export markets 1950–51 compared to 2012



Source 17.15 Australia's top 10 import sources 2012

RESEARCH 17.3

Identify two products imported from each of Australia's top 10 import sources listed in Source 17.15. Research these products and prepare a short report that explains their uses.

composition of trade
types of products (goods and/or services) being traded

Composition of trade

Primary products in the form of agricultural products and mining products have always been the primary focus of our exports. We have always had a **comparative advantage** in the production

of these products. Commodities are still, however, our main source of export income (61% in 2012). Mining products, such as gold and iron ore make up approximately half of our export income and farm produce 10%.

comparative advantage
the ability to produce goods and/or services at a lower opportunity cost than other firms or individuals; the ability to sell goods and services at a lower price than competitors

Australia's main exports 2012–13 (A\$m)		Australia's main imports 2012–13 (A\$m)	
1 Iron ores and concentrates	\$57 201	1 Crude petroleum	\$20 186
2 Coal	\$38 637	2 Passenger motor vehicles	\$17 330
3 Gold	\$15 287	3 Refined petroleum	\$16 868
4 Natural gas	\$14 314	4 Telecom equipment and parts	\$8 916
5 Crude petroleum	\$9 718	5 Medicaments	\$8 050

Source 17.16 Australia's main exports and imports 2012–13

Exports

In 2013, mineral and fuels, especially iron ore and coal, made up half of Australia's export income. In contrast, the importance of manufacturing and agriculture has fallen significantly in recent decades.



Source 17.17 Exports of Australian goods and services in 2013

imports purchases of foreign goods and services; the opposite of exports

intermediate product a good or service that is used in the eventual production of a finished product (for example, sugar and car components)

Imports

Australia relies heavily on imports of services, and finished manufactured goods for consumption. A large proportion of **imports** is also made up of **intermediate products** such as car components.



Source 17.18 Imports of Australian goods and services 2012–13

The main items traded with our Asian trading partners

Australia imports many goods from other countries. As described above, these items include motor vehicles, televisions and other electrical goods. Some of our main trading partners include:

- China
- Japan
- USA
- Republic of Korea.

Being able to establish and develop markets and trading agreements between Australia and Asian countries allows Australian businesses to continue to grow and develop, and in turn provide jobs for people in Australia.

In April 2014 the Abbott government signed a number of trade agreements with our trade partners. The agreements covered free trade and reducing or removing **tariffs** (taxes on imports) with the Republic

of Korea, China and Japan. The agreements will allow Australian companies to move into these countries and be more competitive, and in return Australian consumers should be able to access cheaper imported goods.

The agreement with Japan covers areas such as sugar, ice cream, yoghurt, beef and cheese. The tariffs on Australian products will be reduced, meaning that Australian companies will be more competitive. The quotas and amounts Australian companies can export will also increase, allowing companies such as those who supply cheese to be able to sell more than previously. Service industries such as the financial and legal sectors, the telecommunications industry and the education sectors will also benefit from the agreement.

This move means that Australia will continue to increase and develop trading relationships with Asian countries.

tariff a tax or levy on imported goods and services

Source 17.19 Australia's trading relationship with Asian countries is an important part of the economy.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.6

Read the extract and answer the questions that follow.

Australian importers and exporters have had a tough couple of years thanks to quiet global growth, unpredictable currencies and a mining-dominated Australian economy. However, there are better times ahead for internationally active Australian small and medium businesses.

After a two and a half year slump, Australia's **Trade Confidence Index** shows a sharp uplift in Australian businesses' trade confidence, with nearly half Australian respondents expecting trade volumes to rise over the next six months – up from 40 per cent six months ago.

At a sector level, construction and wholesale/retail importers appear to be the most optimistic (positive) about their six-month trade outlook.

Amongst construction and building companies, the historically low Reserve Bank of Australia interest rates and increasing house prices have driven a 30% pick-up in building approvals in the past year which is leading to a rise in the importation of building materials as construction begins.

Similarly, the 6% rise in retail sales over the past year reflects a growth in demand for consumer goods.

From an exporting viewpoint, the low Australian dollar, improving UK and US economies and China's focus towards more consumer-led economic growth, is starting to have a positive impact on Australian businesses with interests abroad.

Australian Fashion Labels is an example of a business that is benefiting from the improved trading conditions.

An Adelaide-based company, which designs affordable and high quality ladies fashion, began selling within Australia in 2007 before expanding into US, UK, Japan, Germany and Hong Kong. By 2012, 50% of its sales were outside of Australia. Over the remainder of 2014 and next year, Australian Fashion Labels will begin establishing its own stores in the US and UK to take advantage of the returning consumer confidence in both markets.

The Trade Confidence Index reveals Australian businesses' strong links with Asia. The report finds 90% of Australian companies surveyed currently trade with Asia and nearly 75% see it as the most promising region for trade over the next six months, compared to the global average of 42%.

People in Asia have more than tripled their financial wealth since 2001 to just over US\$80 trillion and this is likely to continue. Tapping into the growing consumer market in areas like education, tourism, financial services, infrastructure and agriculture will be important for Australian companies continued growth.

Trade Confidence Index an index that measures the confidence of businesses involved in exporting goods and services to other countries



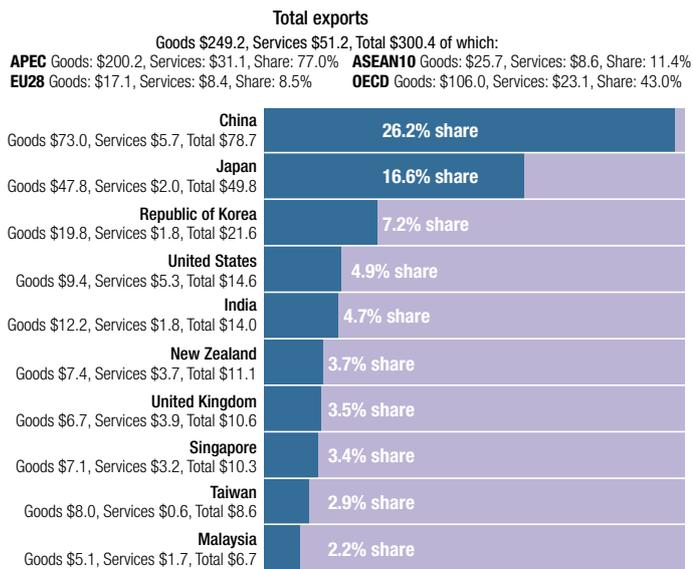
Source 17.20 An extract based on the article 'SMEs' international trade outlook on the rise'

(continued)

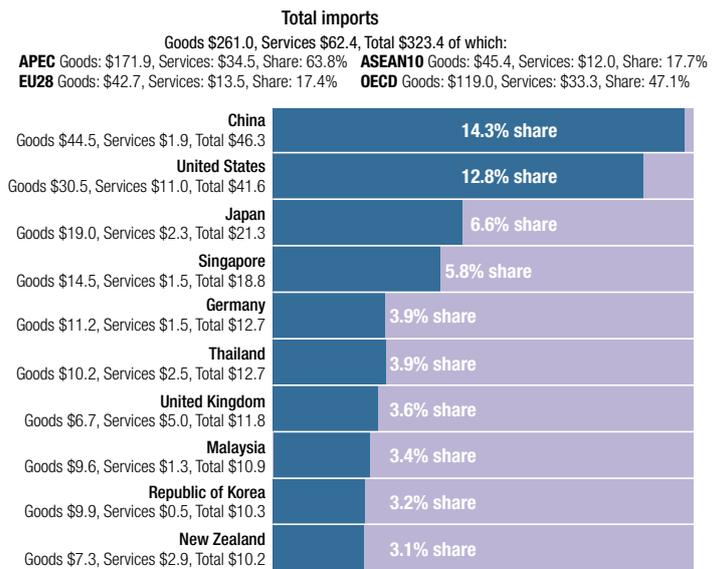
- 1 Explain why Australia's Trade Confidence Index is starting to increase.
- 2 Identify which sectors of the economy seem to be the most optimistic about the future.
- 3 Explain why these sectors are positive.
- 4 Outline what Australian Fashion Labels has done since it was started.
- 5 Suggest why it is important for Australian organisations to develop trading links with Asia.

Economics and business fact

In 2012, Australia's trade in goods and services reached a record high. Two-way trade increased by 1.5% to \$623.8 billion, up from \$614.5 billion in 2011. China, Japan, USA and the Republic of Korea were Australia's top four trading partners again in 2012.

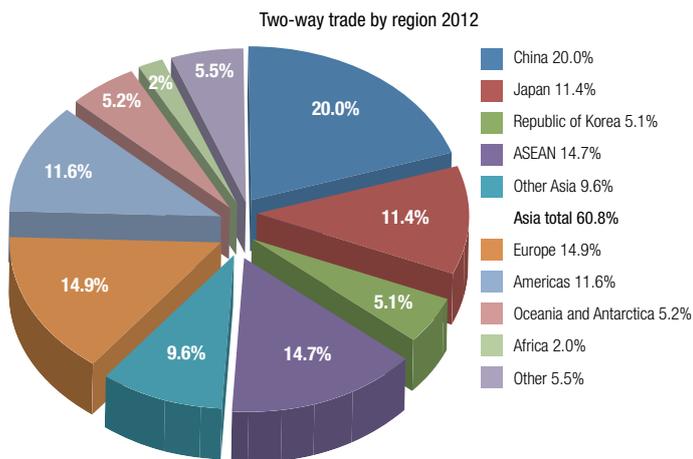


Source 17.21 Australia's top 10 export markets 2012 (\$ billion)



Source 17.22 Australia's top 10 import sources 2012 (\$ billion)





Source 17.23 Total two-way trade by region 2012

When examining the tables above (Sources 17.21 and 17.22) a number of facts and trends can be found. China, Japan and the Republic of Korea are Australia's main export markets. In the case of imports, it is China, USA and Japan. When looking at two-way trade (Source 17.23), the top three are China, Japan and the Republic of Korea (60.8% of total trade is with Asian countries).

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.7

Examine the information in Sources 17.21 and 17.22 and answer the following questions.

- 1 Suggest why the top three export markets are in Asia.
- 2 The import sources are different from the export sources. Identify which countries are in the top 10 exports but not imports.
- 3 Visit the DFAT website (www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and examine the two-way trade and import and export figures. Are the countries the same, different or similar? Why do you think this is the case?
- 4 Identify three factors that might influence Australia's trade with Asian countries.

17.4 The impact of global events on the Australian economy

Economic events

The development of a globalised economy, improved communication and technology, and the expansion of multinational corporations have all supported the development of a global economy. As such, all countries, including Australia, are interconnected. What happens in one country can influence other countries. The GFC is believed to have begun in July 2007. There was a loss of consumer confidence in the USA and the housing market collapsed. This led to a liquidity crisis and the US Federal Bank had to put a lot of money into financial markets.

By September 2008 the crisis had worsened as stock markets around the world crashed, and share prices decreased and became very unstable. Consumer confidence also decreased as people were concerned that things would get worse. The poor economic performance moved through most of the world,

affecting a number of economies, employment levels and economic growth.

In Australia, government policy and increased spending to stimulate the economy meant that Australia was not affected as severely as other countries and economic growth continued. The Australian economy recorded better growth outcomes than most other developed economies, many of which have experienced severe recessions and rises in unemployment. The Australian financial system is also stronger. Australian banks were profitable, effective and did not require any support from the Australian government. The Australian dollar also depreciated rapidly and sizeably as the crisis intensified, declining by over 30% from its July 2008 peak. The Reserve Bank intervened in the market and the dollar has stabilised and remained relatively high until the end of 2013.

While Australia was relatively free from the serious effects of the crisis, some of Australia's trading partners were affected. In China, for example, there was a sharp drop in economic activity measured by GDP in the first part of 2009. At the same time there was a large decrease in exports; many export-focused industries in the south of China were hit and some companies closed down. There was also increased unemployment in China's economy.

This had an impact on the Australian economy. During this period Australia's merchandise trade decreased

substantially, but trade between Australia and China increased. At the same time China was also Australia's largest export market and accounted for 21.6% of total exports. The growth in urban areas and cities in China and the accompanying infrastructure development also benefited Australia as 80% of Australian exports in 2009 were energy resources and minerals.

Therefore, while many countries and economies suffered badly during the GFC, Australia was relatively unscathed due to government policies and increased trade with some of our main trading partners.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 17.8

Read the extract and answer the questions below.



China's economy grew at its slowest pace in 18 months in the first quarter of this year, according to the latest official data.

China's annual economic growth slowed between January and March to 7.4%, from 7.7% in the previous three months.

Authorities have ruled out major stimulus to fight short-term dips in growth, and some analysts think the economy will continue to lose momentum (motion) into the middle of the year.

'Policymakers seem pretty comfortable with the current pace of growth,' said Julian Evans-Pritchard, an economist at Capital Economics in Singapore.

'I don't think they're going to announce any further significant measures to support growth.'

Beijing has announced some modest measures, such as tax cuts for small firms and speeding up some investment in rail projects, to try to steady growth around its target of 7.5% without disrupting plans to restructure the economy.

Figures for March already released have done little to ease concerns that the economy is losing more momentum.

Official and private surveys also show the manufacturing sector continuing to struggle.

Source 17.24 Extract based on the article 'China economic growth slows to 18-month low in first quarter'

- 1 Identify two pieces of data or information that tell you something about the economic performance of China.
- 2 Explain why it is important for Australia to understand and react to changes in other country's economic conditions.
- 3 There is a saying (with many variations in the country mentioned), 'When China sneezes, Australia catches a cold'. Describe what you think this statement means.

17.5 The impact of global events and natural disasters

Unfortunately, many geographic events and disasters have terrible consequences for the people of the country in terms of loss of life and destruction of their homes and towns. In addition, some natural disasters also affect the economic activity of other countries in the region and across the world. Australia is part of the Asia-Pacific region and can be adversely affected by a natural disaster in another country in the region.

Natural disasters and their economic impacts on Australia

The human cost of such events should always be at the forefront of discussions, but what occurs in one country can also influence the Australian economy in a number of direct and indirect ways.

Typhoon in the Philippines

The Philippines is vulnerable to natural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions and is hit by about 20 typhoons every year. Typhoons usually form over the ocean and are large spiralling, slow-moving storms which cause heavy rains and strong winds of up to 240 kilometres an hour.

In 2012 a typhoon known locally as 'Pablo' was a category five storm and the world's deadliest typhoon. It killed more than 1800 people, destroyed an estimated

177000 houses and affected more than 6.2 million people. The damage bill was estimated to have been over US\$1 billion.

The impact of the typhoon is also economic. The Philippines still has relatively high levels of economic growth (an economic growth rate of around 7% since September 2012, making it the fastest growing economy in Southeast Asia and only behind China in Asia). In the long term there has not been an impact from the typhoon on Australia, but the Australian government provided aid and support in the immediate aftermath of the disaster. If the Philippine economy is still growing it allows the population to move on in an economic sense and provides employment and infrastructure for those affected.

Japanese earthquake and tsunami

In early 2011 Japan was hit by a huge 8.9 magnitude earthquake and a tsunami followed. The earthquake and tsunami had a terrible human impact on the country with up to 28000 lives lost and more than 500000 people displaced or homeless. In addition, it had a severe impact on the Japanese economy. The impact included:

- Key ports were damaged and closed down.
- Transport infrastructure was crippled along the north-east of the country.
- Airports were closed.
- Large companies such as Sony closed operations.



Source 17.25 The Australian government offered the Philippines aid and support after typhoon 'Pablo'.



Source 17.26 Natural disasters have had a devastating effect on Japan.

- The car manufacturers Toyota, Suzuki, Nissan and Honda all suspended production.
- The nuclear power industry also suffered as the ageing Fukushima atomic power plant shut down due to an explosion after the tsunami. Not only was there a loss of human life and potential threat from radiation but there were also shortages in electricity supply.
- Radiation leaked, for a short time, into water supplies and was found in local milk and vegetables.
- The cost was estimated to be between \$100 and \$235 billion and the plant would take five years to rebuild. This is worse than the \$125 billion cost estimate for Hurricane Katrina in the USA.

This had a terrible impact on the Japanese economy and it also affected Australia. Japan is one of Australia's largest trading partners so the impact of production shut-downs, particularly in the car industry, adversely affected Australia. A reduction in demand for coal, steel, gas and beef occurred. However, with the need to rebuild infrastructure there was an increased demand for Australian steel and coal for energy needs.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- There a number of participants in the Australian economy including workers, businesses, consumers and government.
- The economy can be divided into primary, secondary, tertiary, quaternary and quinary sectors.
- Goods and services are created by producers for consumers.
- These are made by combining economic resources known as the factors of production.
- Resources include land and raw materials, utilities, labour, capital resources and entrepreneurial resources.
- Governments make decisions about what will be produced, how to produce and who will receive the finished products.
- Government decisions regarding the economy will vary according to the economic belief and philosophy of the government.
- Governments will change budgetary or fiscal policy to stimulate or contract the economy.
- Up until the 1950s more than one-third of Australian exports came from sales to the United Kingdom. Since the 1960s this has changed.
- There is increased trade within the Asia-Pacific region.
- Australia's main trading partners include China, Japan, the United States and the Republic of Korea.
- 2014 saw a number of free trade agreements signed by Australia and Japan, Korea and China.
- Global issues such as economic events and natural disasters affect the Australian economy.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Describe how the government might intervene in the economy.
- 2 Describe the different factors of production that would go into the production of a mobile phone.
- 3 How has Australia moved towards the Asia-Pacific region to trade with?
- 4 Why do governments sometimes run a budget deficit or a budget surplus?
- 5 Why did the global financial crisis that started in the United States affect the rest of the world?

Extended-response question

Research the current policies of the state or local government in your area. What are the three top priorities of the government in regard to policies and economic performance? (You may use the state or territory government website to find information about budgetary policy and spending. The newspapers also give information – search for 'budgets' and 'government policy'.)





18

Participants in the global economy

Before you start

Main focus

Australia is part of a global economy and we are all global citizens participating in a global economy. No longer does one country take raw materials and components to process and produce a good or service. There are a number of participants in the global economy including consumers, producers, workers (employees) and governments. Part of their role is to supply, produce, distribute and consume goods and services on a global scale. This chapter examines the participants in the economy and how they interact with other economies. It also explores supply chain management and investigates the activities of transnational and multinational corporations in the global economy.

Why it's relevant to us

Every day we buy goods made overseas or, if they are made in Australia, goods that include raw materials that have come from another country. Different economies have become increasingly interdependent and companies have to establish relationships with overseas suppliers and distributors. As the world becomes more interrelated the role of companies, especially multinational corporations, has become even more crucial.

Inquiry questions

- How do Australian consumers, businesses, workers and government participate in a global economy?
- How can we identify the participants in the global supply chain?

- What impact can the supply chain have on countries?
- What types of activities do transnational and multinational corporations carry out in the global supply chain and business activities?

Key terms

- Deregulation
- Globalisation
- Logistics
- Multinational organisation
- Outsourcing
- Supply chain
- Supply chain management (SCM)
- Transnational corporation

Let's begin

Business and individual citizens have always had a natural desire to seek out and expand opportunities for trade and commerce. In the past 50 years opportunities to do this have expanded because of advances in communications and technology. Government has encouraged a growth in international commerce through a process of deregulation. Australian consumers, businesses, workers and governments are active participants in the global economy of the twenty-first century. We often buy goods and services without thinking about where the products and services originally came from.

18.1 What is globalisation?

During the twentieth century Australia's economy became interdependent with the rest of the world.

globalisation the growing integration of national economies and societies, so that no society is isolated and unaffected by changes and developments in other countries

mass production production of large quantities of a standardised article (often using assembly line techniques)

International trade and communication across international borders both grew significantly. This is **globalisation**.

Hundreds of years ago, most markets were local. Producers and consumers lived in close proximity. During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries the Industrial Revolution enabled **mass production** and the development of towns and cities. National markets evolved because new technologies such as railways and steam power allowed quicker and

cheaper transport of finished products. Further advances in technology and communication during the twentieth century enabled development of global markets.

An example of the evolution to global markets is the Australian beer industry. In the nineteenth century many small towns had their own brewery. By the mid twentieth century the beer market had become a national market and these small breweries closed. Now the beer market is international with only a couple of Australian brewers competing with international brands. This



Source 18.1 The Industrial Revolution opened many opportunities for production.

came about because advancements in technology reduced the costs of brewing and transporting beer. Larger manufacturers were able to take advantage of **economies of scale**

economies of scale a proportionate saving in costs gained by an increased level of production



Source 18.2 Even though these photos were taken outside of Australia, the brands are easily recognised here.

and produce beer at a more competitive rate than smaller breweries. The reduction in the costs of transporting beer made it cheaper to purchase from a large brewery and transport it to different market areas than from smaller producers with higher production costs.

Large **multinational organisations** have grown in number and size because of globalisation as they are better placed to take advantage of economies of scale across national boundaries.

multinational organisation an organisation with branches in more than one nation



18.2 What's driving globalisation?

National comparative advantage

Due to differences in the amount, types and quality of their economic resources, some countries have a natural advantage in production of specific products; this

national comparative advantage an economic concept that states that a country should specialise in production and export of only goods and services it can produce more efficiently than other goods and services (which it should import)

advantage is known as the **national comparative advantage**. Australia, for example, is able to produce farm commodities such as wheat and fine wool at a lower cost and higher quality than other nations. Similarly, many Southeast Asian nations have access to a large pool of labour at a lower cost than Australia. This gives them a comparative advantage in the production of manufactured items

like clothing and footwear. When nations specialise in production of a smaller number of products they develop a comparative advantage.

Reduced transport costs

containerisation the practice of transporting cargo in containers that can be used on ships, trucks and trains

Reduced costs have come from advances in transport technologies. The introduction of **containerisation** and other innovations has facilitated reduced shipping costs. It is now much cheaper to import and export.

Communications development

It is now easier to communicate with the world. The cost of a 3-minute phone call to Europe from Australia has fallen in real terms from \$350 in 1926 to less than \$1 in 2014. It is now possible to trade and communicate instantly and cheaply due to the development of the internet.



Source 18.4 In this day and age you can access the internet almost anywhere!

Date	Number of users	% world population	Information source
December 1995	16 million	0.4%	IDC
December 2000	361 million	5.8%	Internet World Stats
December 2005	1018 million	15.7%	Internet World Stats
September 2010	1971 million	28.8%	Internet World Stats
December 2011	2267 million	32.7%	Internet World Stats
December 2012	2497 million	35.7%	ITU
March 2014 (estimate)	2937 million	40.7%	Internet World Stats

Source 18.3 Use of the internet worldwide: growth figures

Removal of trade barriers

import quota restriction on the quantity of a specific product to be imported over a given period of time

Governments have reduced barriers to trade like tariffs and **import quotas**. As a result it is easier to trade with other nations and imported items have

become cheaper in comparison to locally produced products. Governments have also encouraged the development of the global economy through forming free trade agreements between nations.

18.3 Participating in a global economy

Australia's economy and society have been affected significantly by globalisation.

e-commerce commercial transactions conducted electronically on the internet

Consumers

Shopping habits have altered. More Australians are choosing to purchase items online from overseas rather than local retailers. Prices are often cheaper. **E-commerce** is growing in Australia.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 18.1

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Overseas based online retailers are far more innovative in coming up with ways to keep customers clicking.

All the signs are there that Australian retailers are not investing enough in their online operations. More than A\$24 billion was spent online during the 12 months to March 2013, with Australian online sales growing by 11.9% compared with general retail growth of just 3.4%.

And online retail sales across the entire Asia-Pacific region are anticipated to overtake North America in 2013, accounting for a third of global e-commerce revenues.

But the growth isn't coming from Australia. It's coming from China.

Source 18.5 Extract from on the article 'Doing it better? Overseas online retailers aisles ahead' by Joanne Jacobs (QUT), *The Conversation*

- 1 How much did Australian spend on online transactions March 2012 to 2013?
- 2 What evidence is there that Australians are turning to online commerce rather than traditional retail outlets?
- 3 Explain what the writer suggests Australian retailers need to do in order to compete with overseas retailers.
- 4 Identify and explain two factors that in your opinion have made online trading attractive to the Australian consumer.

RESEARCH 18.1

Use the internet to find the best prices available for each of the following items (include postage costs). Use both local and international sites.

- iPhone
- Levi jeans
- Leather handbag of a brand of your choosing

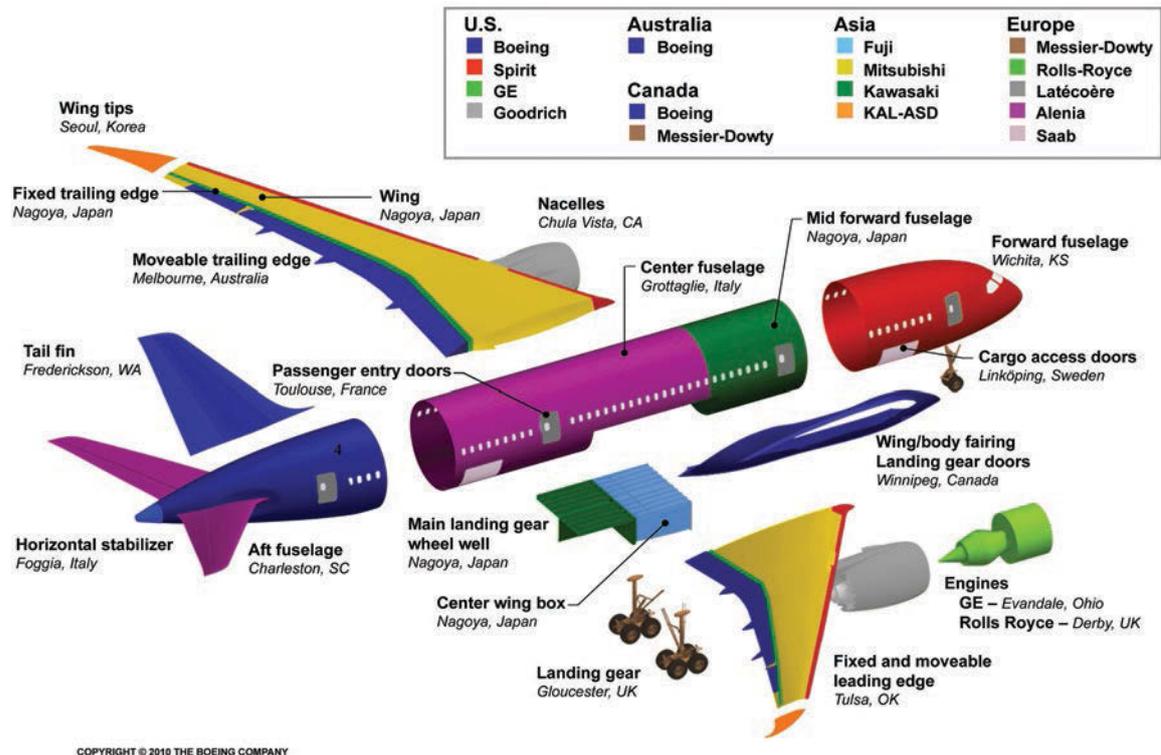
Producers

Australian businesses are active participants in the global economy. Import and export volumes have grown considerably.

Australian businesses are also participating in global supply chains where one product has its components

produced in different locations. A good example is the Boeing 787 Dreamliner (see Source 18.6), worth approximately \$4 billion over 20 years to Australia.

Businesses are also increasingly conducting business across national borders by using the internet. In the twenty-first century any business is capable of reaching a large international market, no matter its location.



Source 18.6 Bringing the Boeing 787 together across the globe

Workers (employees)

A significant number of Australians are employed by multinational organisations. The new globalised economy is also changing the way people work. The



Source 18.7 It is quite common for people to live and work overseas to experience the 'expat' lifestyle.

traditional 9 to 5 working day is fast disappearing as many employers expect employees to adopt more flexible working practices.

The number of **expatriate workers** working in foreign countries is growing.

expatriate worker an employee temporarily working in a foreign nation

Government

Governments are actively involved in the global economy. Successive Australian governments have been involved in reforming the economy in order to make it more competitive. Tariffs and import restrictions have been reduced. Many restrictions on international trade have been removed in a process known as **deregulation**.

deregulation removal of laws and regulations

Free trade agreements have been signed with several nations like the USA, South Korea and Japan.

Economics and business fact

In 1945 the cost of an airfare between Australia and Europe was twice the average Australian annual salary. In 2014 it is just over 1 week of the average wage.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 18.2

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Prime Minister Tony Abbott says a historic free trade deal struck between Australia and Japan will improve prosperity for both nations.

After seven years of negotiations between the two nations, Mr Abbott and his Japanese counterpart Shinzo Abe have settled on the major points of the two country agreement.

A 38.5 per cent Japanese tariff that currently applies on frozen beef will be halved to 19.5 per cent over 18 years, with large cuts in the first year.

The chairman of the Australian beef industry's free trade taskforce, Lachie Hart, says the deal will be worth \$5.5 billion to the industry over 20 years.

There are also significant advantages for other agricultural products, with fruit and vegetables, seafood, sugar and wine among the winners.

The duty-free quota for cheese – Australia's single largest dairy export to Japan – will be boosted from 27,000 tonnes per year to 47,000 tonnes annually.

Tariffs will remain on rice, though, due to its special cultural significance to Japan.

Japanese exporters will see Australian tariffs lowered on electronics, whitegoods and cars, and Australian consumers will see prices lowered as a result.

Under the deal, Japanese-made cars will be, on average, \$1,500 cheaper.

Source 18.8 From the article 'Australia strikes free trade deal with Japan, beef and horticultural industries secure major concessions'

- 1 Explain what a free trade agreement (FTA) is.
- 2 How long did it take for Australia and Japan come to agreement on the terms of this agreement?
- 3 Explain how each of the following is expected to benefit from the FTA:
 - a Australian beef producers
 - b Japanese car manufacturers
 - c Australian and Japanese consumers.

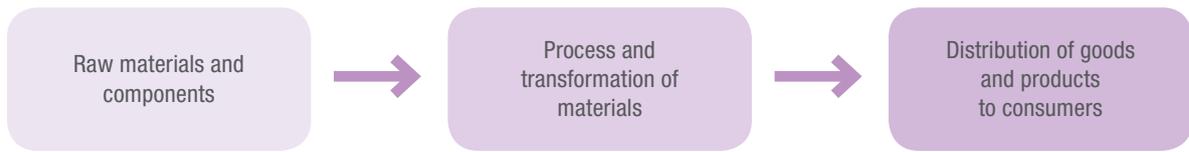
The global supply chain

supply chain a system of organisations, people, resources and information involved in getting a product or service from suppliers to consumers

A **supply chain** is a system of organisations, people, activities, resources and information involved in moving a product or service from suppliers, to manufacturers and then to consumers. The supply chain takes natural materials and components and transforms or processes them into a finished product.

As part of the supply chain management a number of activities have to occur. These include planning and organising parts and raw materials to ensure that they are available and ready to be used. This is particularly important when the raw materials and components need to be sourced from another country and through other organisations.

Often there are many exchanges in the supply chain between different companies. Each company is trying to



Source 18.9 Supply chain management

maximise its revenue and profit from its contribution to the process. During recent years there has been a move by some companies to work more closely with each stage of the supply chain to ensure it is more efficient. A supplier of raw materials, for example, will try to coordinate its activities with those of the companies that are producing the product or service. A producer will try to manage its production process so that the distribution of its products to the consumer is more efficient and timely.



Source 18.10 Moving goods around the world means dealing with different political and economic conditions.

Trying to coordinate this process can become challenging, especially when goods and materials are being moved around the world and companies are operating in different political and economic conditions. Ensuring that practices remain ethical in all countries and that management is consistent across different workforces and regions is another consideration for companies.

The development of supply chain management

Supply chain management (SCM) is designed to try to meet consumer demands through the most efficient use of resources including materials and components, production processes and distribution of the finished product. In theory the idea is to match demand with supply to ensure that all products made are sold. **Logistics** relates to the distribution of products and can be defined as the activities of an organisation or company involved in getting the materials and products from one department or company to another. Since the 1990s, companies have started to give the distribution function to other companies (this is known as **outsourcing**).

It is essential that there are reliable suppliers of materials and components that are also able to adapt and operate their businesses in a flexible manner. Supply chain management needs to address a number of issues including:

- local labour costs and conditions: these may be lower in some countries than in Australia
- exchange rates: the value of the currency such as the Australian dollar compared to other currencies
- tariffs: taxes on imported goods and other charges all add to the final price of a product
- time: sometimes having to get supplies and products from another country can be difficult if there is a hold-up in transporting the product. Shipping schedules, weather conditions, government regulations and the time taken to clear customs can all affect the distribution of products.

Decisions also need to be made about:

- supplier selection: a company has to determine best suppliers in terms of price and reliability
- location: decisions have to be made about how many suppliers will be used and where are they located. If suppliers are not close to transport, it can be difficult to get parts and products to other countries.

supply chain management (SCM) the efficient use of resources, the production process and distribution of the finished product

logistics the activities related to product distribution between companies and to the consumer

outsourcing where a company gives some of its roles or functions to another company; for example, information technology is often outsourced

18.4 Participants in the global supply chain

There are a number of participants in the global supply chain.

Consumers

Consumers have an important role in the global supply chain. Consumers tend to purchase products and services from companies which are often based in another country. The growth of the global economy and increased access to online shopping means that consumers are increasingly purchasing products from overseas.

Producers

Production at all stages of a good or service has become increasingly complex as more companies are sourcing resources from all over the world. This means that producers have to ensure that they are clear about where resources are coming from and develop reliable suppliers and distributors of their products. This is complicated by the increasing role of consumers in demanding quality products and services at a reasonable price.

Consumers are also demanding companies be socially responsible and not negatively affect the environment or a country. Companies have to manage these expectations.

Employees (workers)

More organisations are managing employees and workforces in different countries. This means that the management of employees has become complicated as there are different rules, laws and regulations covering employees depending on the country the company or department is based in.

Added to this is the fact that different cultures have different norms and ways of working. Managers need to understand and be able to adapt to the different needs of their workforce.

Governments

Governments need to ensure that the laws in place are complied with. They also need to manage companies and corporations that may be based in another country. Ensuring jobs in Australia are protected and that consumers are receiving quality products and services are also considerations.

Source 18.11 Originally a Spanish retailer, Zara is now available worldwide due to consumer demand.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 18.3

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Small and medium-sized businesses in Vietnam have to make more efforts to improve their competitiveness in the global supply chain, a workshop in Ho Chi Minh City heard today. The deputy director stated that Vietnam was integrating into the world economy and having a presence in the global supply chain was important.

He also stated that there were limitations on business performance due to a lack of vision and strategy and a lack of resources. Most companies were on the 'lowest rung' of the supply chain and were completing assembly for foreign companies. It was argued that Vietnamese businesses need to improve their competitiveness and invest in areas such as supplying raw materials, improving technology and co-operating with foreign partners.

Source 18.12 Extract based on the article 'Firms aim to join global supply chain'

- 1 Suggest why it is important for businesses in Vietnam to improve their competitiveness.
- 2 Explain what the phrase 'lowest rung' of the supply chain means.

18.5 Social responsibility and sustainability in supply chains

Companies around the world are having discussions about the need to audit and check the practices of suppliers. There have been a number of incidents involving employees in factories in Asia. Questions have been raised about conditions and the responsibility of large organisations.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 18.4

Read the three extracts and answer the questions below.

Extract one

Unilever is a large global multinational corporation based in the Netherlands and the United Kingdom. Its main business centres on food and beverage, personal and household goods and health care. Unilever is one of the largest buyers of palm oil using around 3% of the world's volume which is used in a range of products such as margarine, cereals and cosmetics. More than 80% of palm oil is produced in Indonesia and Malaysia and this has caused high levels of deforestation.

The company looked at ways to ensure that palm oil was sourced from sustainable sources. In 2008 Greenpeace accused the company of being involved in unethical and unsustainable practices causing environmental degradation. Unilever conducted an investigation and found that Greenpeace's allegations were true. The company then developed a policy to purchase all palm oil from certified sustainable sources.

Source 18.13 Extract based on an article on Unilever and sustainable sourcing of palm oil

Extract two

Investors are calling for greater transparency from public companies over the sourcing of clothing, footwear and textiles from Asia, warning that chasing cheaper labour to reduce costs can backfire and ultimately damage fashion brands.

The pressure was on public companies to provide more information on sourcing, including details of which countries they were buying goods from, and audits to ensure no child or slave labour was used.

Last week it was alleged that Qantas had bought airline headphones from a Chinese jail where prisoners were regularly beaten and held in solitary confinement for missing production targets.



Source 18.14 Extract based on the article 'Pressure on retailers to act ethically'

Extract three

Coca-Cola Amatil says it is cooperating with authorities who are investigating whether the company's Indonesian bottling unit has been taking water without proper permits for more than 3 years. The company has been under investigation since September when it emerged that the company has been tapping wells even though water permits expired in 2010.

The company has denied it acted illegally stating it has been trying to renew or extend the permits but the process has been held up. It believed that putting an application in meant it was able to continue to operate the wells.

Source 18.15 Extract based on the article 'Indonesian Coke bottler to cooperate with probe into water issues'

- 1 Identify a common theme among the three extracts.
- 2 Explain one piece of information you have gained from each extract.
- 3 Why is it important for companies to ensure they are acting in an ethical manner in other countries?

Economics and business fact

In 2013 the global textiles industry was put under enormous pressure to improve the conditions of workers in India and around the globe, following the collapse of the Rana Plaza factory in Bangladesh. The factory collapse killed 1138 people and injured approximately 2000.

18.6 The activities of transnational corporations in the supply chain and global business activities

transnational corporation
a firm owning or controlling
production facilities in more
than one country through
foreign investment

Most of the goods and services you buy and use have come from a transnational or multinational corporation (MNC). All **transnational corporations** have to be able to manage the supply chain and their business activities across the world. Although all transnational

corporations have their own supply chain management processes, many are very complex. One way to examine supply chain management by a large organisation is through an example. One large transnational or multinational corporation that is very successful and well known is Toyota – see Research 18.2.

RESEARCH 18.2

Toyota has 52 overseas manufacturing companies in 27 different countries. Toyotas are sold in more than 160 countries. The company and its activity vary around the world depending on the country.

Using the Toyota website research, the countries Toyota operates in and the activity of each Toyota Company in these countries. Using the information you have collated, complete the following tasks:

- 1 Define the concepts of transnational and multinational corporations.
- 2 Explain why Toyota has so many factories around the world.
- 3 Survey your class. How many of your family own or have owned a Toyota? Why did they purchase a Toyota?
- 4 Go to a large transnational corporation web site such as Ford, Sony, Panasonic or Coca-Cola Amatil and examine the types of products they sell and the companies they control. This activity can be done in a table or as a Google Doc (your teacher will need to set this up).

Corporation	Country of origin	Products	Brands and company names	Performance (e.g. sales, profit)

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- Globalisation is the integration of national economies and societies.
- The principle of comparative advantage is a major driver of globalisation.
- Globalisation has accelerated in recent years due to developments in technology and government deregulation.
- A supply chain is a system of organisations, people, resources and information involved in getting a product or service from suppliers to consumers.
- Supply chain management needs to address:
 - labour costs
 - exchange rates
 - tariffs
 - time.
- Decisions need to be made about outsourcing, supplier selection and location.
- Workers, employees, consumers and governments are all important in supply chain management.
- Transnational corporations play a significant role in the global supply chain.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Define globalisation.
- 2 List and explain two ways you participate in the global economy.
- 3 Explain the following concepts:
 - a sustainability
 - b multinational corporation
 - c transnational corporation
 - d supply chain.
- 4 Outline the role of consumers and producers in the supply chain.
- 5 Describe how large multinationals have to manage all stages of the production process.

Extended-response question

Write a letter to the editor of your state or local newspaper discussing the topic of whether Australians should buy only Australian made and owned products.

After you have completed the letter, design and produce a poster or pamphlet giving people information about Australian owned companies (the Dick Smith Foods website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks is a useful starting point).



19

Managing financial risks and rewards for individuals

Before you start

Main focus

It is vital that as individuals and citizens of Australia, whether as income earners or consumers, we are aware of and protect ourselves from risky situations either of a financial or personal nature.

Why it's relevant to us

Earning money for most people is hard work and it is important that we learn to recognise the potential financial risks and protect ourselves from these risks. Understanding the role of the financial institutions operating in Australia and the products and services they provide will assist us with our money management and broader financial matters. Gaining an understanding of insurance will help to reduce our exposure to property, personal and health related risks. Finally, preparing for our future by understanding superannuation will assist in overcoming the risk of insufficient funds being available to enjoy our retirement years.

Inquiry questions

- What is the role of financial institutions in Australia?
- How can individuals secure their personal financial information?
- What types of financial risks can individuals be exposed to and need to protect themselves from?
- What strategies can people use to ensure they protect themselves from risks both to themselves and their future financial security?

Key terms

- Debt
- Dividend
- Identify theft
- Insolvency
- Insurance
- Scam
- Shareholder
- Superannuation

Let's begin

In our Australian financial landscape it is important we gain an understanding of the financial institutions that operate and the important role they play in our financial stability. A deeper understanding can help with your financial future by preventing scams, managing debt and teaching you how to protect and invest your money.

19.1 Financial institutions

Banks

In Australia, the Reserve Bank of Australia (RBA) is a statutory authority established by the *Reserve Bank Act 1959* and is our central bank. Its role is to conduct monetary policy, maintain a strong financial system and issue the nation's currency. It also manages Australia's gold and foreign exchange reserves. It does not, however, transact business with individuals.

Banks are categorised as authorised deposit-taking institutions, licensed to carry on banking business under the *Banking Act 1959* and are regulated by Australian Prudential Regulatory Authority (APRA). The role of this body is to oversee banks, credit unions, building societies, insurers and fund managers.

There are 65 banks in Australia licensed to provide a wide range of financial services to all sectors of the economy. Some of these are foreign banks operating through a branch in Australia – for example, the Bank of China Limited, BNP Paribas, Lloyds Bank and the Royal Bank of Canada. There are 21 Australian-owned banks, yet most of us would not be able to name more than the four major banks: the Australia and New Zealand Banking Group, Commonwealth Bank of

Australia, National Australia Bank and Westpac Banking Corporation. These four banks are all very keen to gain and retain us as their customers (depositors and borrowers) and often offer encouragement to individuals to change their financial institution.

Banks offer the following general services and banking products to their clients:

- a transaction account where you are able to make regular deposits such as your salary or wage, pay bills or shop using your automatic teller machine (ATM) card (debit card); these accounts can also be accessed using a cheque book
- a savings account on which interest is paid generally when the account reaches a certain balance, or if you only make deposits and not withdrawals over a period of time
- a credit card where you can pay for goods and services via Electronic Funds Transfer at Point of Sale (EFTPOS) terminals; credit cards can also be used to purchase goods or pay bills online and attract a high rate of interest if not paid out in full by the due date
- a personal loan – a small loan which can be used by customers when making purchases such as a car, a holiday or undertaking minor house renovations



Source 19.1 The four main banks in Australia

- a home loan, referred to as a 'mortgage'. When customers purchase a property the bank will lend money which is secured over the property by way of a registered mortgage.

insurance a service created to provide financial protection against loss, damage, illness or death

Banks also offer other services such as **insurance**, foreign currency accounts, investment and managed funds accounts; and for businesses a range of specialised business products.



Source 19.2 Bendigo Bank

RESEARCH 19.1

Using the Savings Account Finder website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks, find out which savings account and everyday transaction account would best suit your current financial situation. Record your findings in a short report that justifies why this account suits you.

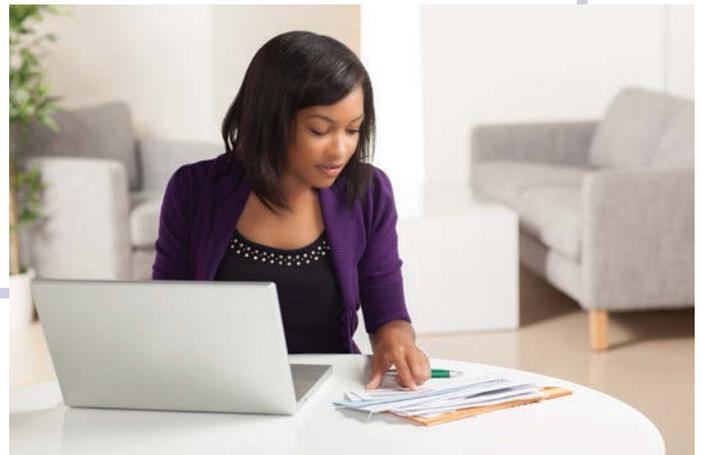
One of Australia's smaller banks is Bendigo Bank. It started as a building society servicing the Victorian community and in particular residents of Bendigo. Customers deposited their money (savings) with the

building society to earn interest and when buying a property they applied for loan funds. It became a bank in 1994 and merged with the Adelaide Bank in 2007. Bendigo Bank differentiates itself from other banks by being regarded as 'Australia's most customer-connected bank'. Not only does it offer a diverse range of products and services to its 1.5 million customers but it has also adopted a different style of operations from other banks by using a community banking model. This model aims to provide employment for local residents, retain local capital in the community, provide an opportunity for local residents to become **shareholders** of the bank, and fund important community projects.

shareholder any person, company or other institution that owns at least one share in a company

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 19.1

- 1 Locate the nearest Bendigo Bank to you.
- 2 Identify some of the ways that this branch of the bank is connecting with the activities of your local community.
- 3 Discuss whether the approach of the Bendigo Bank would attract you to open an account with it.



Source 19.3 Why did you choose the bank that you are with?

Building societies

Building societies were traditionally established as mutually owned institutions (owned and run by their members), but now they are generally registered as companies with shareholders. There are only nine building societies operating in Australia and their operations also come under the supervision and

regulation of APRA. In the past there were many more building societies, but over time they have been acquired by banks. The main role of building societies is to raise their funds by accepting deposits from individuals and then providing loans (mortgages) for these depositors when buying owner-occupied properties (houses or

apartments). The remaining building societies are the Greater Building Society Ltd, Newcastle Permanent Building Society Limited, Wide Bay Australia Limited, Maitland Mutual Building Society Limited, B&E Ltd, Big Sky Building Society Ltd, Hume Building Society Ltd, The Rock Building Society Ltd and IMB Ltd.

Credit unions

Credit unions are not-for-profit cooperative financial institutions that are owned and controlled by its members. Many credit unions are formed by local communities or at workplaces. There are currently 93 credit unions operating in Australia and, as with all authorised deposit taking institutions, they are supervised and regulated by APRA.

Their purpose is to encourage their members to save money, paying them a slightly higher rate of interest than banks and providing them with credit at reasonable rates (lower than banks). If the credit union generates excess earnings it will offer loans to its members. Credit unions are considered to be safe and convenient places to access affordable financial services. Examples of credits unions associated with a workplace are the Australian Defence Credit Union Limited, Lysaght Credit Union Ltd, Police Credit Union Limited and Woolworths Employees' Credit Union Limited. Examples of community-based credit unions are the Swan Hill Credit Union Limited, Broken Hill Community Credit Union Limited and Wyong Shire Credit Union Limited.

RESEARCH 19.2

- 1 Interview a family member and find out which financial institutions your family has accounts with, and which bank products your family is using.
- 2 Collate the class result in a spreadsheet based on name of banks and different types of bank products.
- 3 Present this information in a series of graphs and conduct a class discussion about the results.

19.2 Types of financial investments available to individuals



Source 19.4 Some people are comfortable taking financial risks, while others are more conservative.

Individuals are involved in many transactions that relate to their financial situation. It is important that they understand how to manage their level of financial risk. People want to have the opportunity to gain financial stability, whether through their employment or

investments. They also want to feel safe and secure in what they are doing and that they understand and can manage the risk involved when managing their finances. To manage the level of risk it is wise to diversify by spreading your investment across the major 'asset classes': cash, fixed interest, bonds, property and shares.

Some people are very conservative in the management of their finances and are said to be 'risk-averse' whereas others feel comfortable exposing themselves to a higher level of risk-taking, believing they will ultimately gain more financially. Risk-aversion is an economics and finance concept formed from the behaviour of the consumer and investor while exposed to uncertainty and their attempt to reduce that uncertainty. A person who is risk-averse is reluctant to accept a bargain with an uncertain (possibly higher) payoff rather than another bargain that has a greater level of certainty, but possibly lower expected payoff. For example a risk-averse individual may put their money into a bank account with a low but guaranteed interest rate, rather than into shares that may have high expected returns, but also possess a likely chance of depreciating value.

Shares

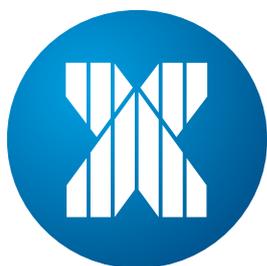
Many individuals, however, do invest in businesses by purchasing shares from companies that are listed on the Australian Securities Exchange (ASX). These shareholders expect to receive both **dividends** and to

dividend a sum of money paid regularly (typically half-yearly) by a company to its shareholders out of its profits

debt money that is owed to another party

gain capital appreciation from their share ownership. It is important that the level of financial risk associated with share ownership is carefully researched. In Australia we often refer to high-quality and usually high-price shares as being 'blue chip'.

A blue chip company is one that is very strong financially, including holding a solid history of producing earnings, and only carries a small to moderate amount of **debt**. It also has a secure name in its industry with dominant goods or services. Many blue chip companies are large, international companies that have been running for many years and are considered to be very reliable. Source 19.6 sets out the 20 top ranked blue chip stocks (shares) in Australia.



ASX

Source 19.5 The Australian Securities Exchange logo

ASX Code	Company name
AMP	AMP Limited
ANZ	Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Limited
BHP	BHP Billiton Limited
BXB	Brambles Limited
CBA	Commonwealth Bank of Australia
CSL	CSL Limited
MQG	Macquarie Group Limited
NAB	National Australia Bank Limited
NCM	Newcrest Mining Limited
ORG	Origin Energy Limited
QBE	QBE Insurance Group Limited
RIO	Rio Tinto Limited
STO	Santos Limited
SUN	Suncorp Limited
TLS	Telstra Corporation Limited
WBC	Westpac Banking Corporation Limited
WDC	Westfield Group
WES	Wesfarmers Limited
WOW	Woolworths Limited
WPL	Woodside Petroleum Limited

Source 19.6 The top 20 blue chip company shares listed on the ASX in 2013

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 19.2

- 1 Create a three-column table using the following column headings: column 1 – 'ASX code', column 2 – 'Company name', column 3 – 'Industry sector'.
- 2 Access the ASX website (www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and, using the company's symbol, determine the industry sector and complete column 3 of the table.
- 3 Choose five of the 20 companies (from different industry sectors). Using the company's symbol, track the share price and volume movement of the selected companies over a 7-day period.
- 4 Create a spreadsheet for each of the individual company's share price movement over the 7-day period. Convert this information into either a line or bar graph.
- 5 Identify factors – in particular between the industry sectors – that may have occurred to explain any movement in the share price over the period identified.

The level of financial risk varies according to the debt levels and adequacy of cash flow of the company. The possibility that shareholders may lose money is greater if they invest in a company that has a large amount of debt and the company's cash flow proves unable to meet its financial obligations. Should a company use debt financing, the level of risk to shareholders (individuals) is higher, as the company's creditors will be repaid before its shareholders if the company becomes insolvent. The shareholders could end up with shares of little or no value

insolvency the inability of a debtor to pay their debt

if the company is then wound up. All notices relating to the appointment of an external administrator to a company are published in the **insolvency** notices website maintained by the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC). This list is published after a company has been declared insolvent, but by checking this list you may gain some insight into types of companies that are not performing well. You will notice that nearly all these companies are private companies, not listed on the Australian Securities Exchange (ASX). The ASX places stringent requirements on listed companies and will halt their trading or de-list them if they do not comply with its requirements.

Investors can use a number of financial risk ratios to assess an investment's prospects. It is recommended that potential investors conduct a thorough and careful review of companies before making any investment in them. For example, check the debt-to-capital ratio measures and the proportion of debt used given the total capital structure of the business. The capital expenditure ratio divides cash flow from operations by capital expenditure to examine how much money a company has left after servicing its debt. Two leading businesses which once had over \$1 billion market capitalisation, Tasmanian timber company Gunns Limited and Australia's largest commercial refrigeration company, Hastie Group Limited, recently folded due to overlaid debt burdens and cash flow problems.

Some individual investors, as part of their investment portfolio, are happy to accept a greater risk when investing in shares. They may choose to purchase shares in companies that are more speculative, such as resources or mining, in the hope of gaining greater returns on their investment. Their risk of these businesses not becoming profitable is also greater.

When determining your personal financial management, and in particular your investment strategy as an individual, the stage at which you are currently in your life has a great impact on the strategy you adopt. When you are younger you may be more willing to purchase shares that provide greater possibility of improvement in their capital appreciation rather than

paying a good rate of return by way of dividend. This is because this is not usually your only form of income. By these shares improving in their share value over time they will give you a greater level of capital appreciation in the event you decide to sell them later on. When a person is older, possibly retired, they are more reliant on the income from their share portfolio and therefore want to hold shares that have a higher yield (dividend payment) rather than capital appreciation.

Many older investors favour holding shares in Telstra, because it has always paid a good rate of return (dividend) while its share value often fluctuates. A popular choice for investors that are looking for both income and growth focus is Wesfarmers. This is a conglomerate (group of companies) with exposure to consumer staples, consumer discretionary and industrial sectors. Under its umbrella group it owns well-known companies such as Coles, Bunnings and Officeworks, while also holding interests in coal operations. Its performance has been strong for many years and it looks to be in a position to continue with its growth strategy.

Government bonds and bank interest-bearing deposits

Should an individual not feel confident in investing in the stock market, a more comfortable financial management strategy may be to place their savings in government bonds or interest-bearing deposits with a bank. This should also form part of any individual's financial management strategy. The Commonwealth of Australia issues bonds called Commonwealth government securities which are tradeable on the ASX. For investors they provide a predictable cash flow paid on a periodic basis (quarterly or half-yearly) and have a specified maturity date. The government also has exchange-traded treasury indexed bonds which have a face value that is adjusted for movements in the Consumer Price Index (CPI). Interest is paid quarterly at a fixed rate on the adjusted face value of these bonds. Accordingly, the amount of interest you receive varies from quarter to quarter.

All banks offer a range of interest-bearing deposits accounts. It is wise to compare what is being offered by the banks. Often they offer enticements for depositors as they are in the business of wanting to increase their market share in the financial sector. Many people are known to stay loyal to the bank where they originally opened their first bank account, but it is a good strategy to shop around for the best deal – it may not be with the bank you are with currently.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 19.3

You have received \$50 000 as an inheritance from your grandparents and would like to invest this money in a term deposit for 3 years so that it will be available to you when you have finished school. You have been advised that you should place this money in a long-term deposit with one of the four major banks, as it will be safe and you won't be tempted to spend the money straight away.

- 1 Access the websites of the ANZ Bank, Commonwealth Bank, National Australia Bank (NAB) and Westpac, all via www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks.
- 2 Construct a chart setting out the names of the banks, interest rates and any entry or exit restrictions on these accounts.
- 3 Calculate and evaluate which long-term deposit account you consider would be the best alternative to meet your circumstances outlined above.

Managed funds

Using managed funds is a very popular and easy way for individuals to invest. It takes away many of the responsibilities and worries of the individual investor as a professional manager is employed to manage the fund. An individual investor deposits their money with the managed fund and these funds are then pooled together with other investors' money. It is the role of the professional fund manager to investigate, research and invest in the assets classes which are

currently performing best – shares, bonds, property and infrastructure assets. The individual investor is allocated a number of shares or units in the fund, which represents an equal portion of the fund's value. The fund manager then monitors the assets on behalf of the individual investor and pays dividends or distributions from the fund based on the profit or income generated by the investments. Investing in one asset class alone can increase your level of financial risk; by investing in managed funds you are in fact reducing and spreading your level of risk.

19.3 Debt – is it good or bad?

Most individuals will incur debts at some stage in their life. A debt involves owing something to someone else or an obligation to pay or repay money, goods or services.

Good debt occurs when an individual borrows money to invest in an income-producing asset. For instance, you decide to buy an investment property. To do this you need to obtain an investment loan from a bank, which will charge you a higher rate of interest than a normal housing loan. The interest that you have to pay to the bank on that loan, however, will be tax deductible and can be claimed against the income you earn from renting the property to a tenant. If you have done your research properly and make a good investment purchase, the value of the asset (house or flat) should increase over time; this debt would most certainly be classified as a good debt. Similarly, if you borrowed money to invest in shares and the value of those shares increase over time, this would also be classified as good debt.

Bad debt is something that individuals should try and minimise or avoid if at all possible. If an individual takes out a loan on a non-income-producing asset that also declines in value over time, such as a speed boat or a car for personal use only, this is regarded as bad debt. Not only is the asset losing value, but the interest payments are not tax deductible as it is a non-income earning asset.

If you find yourself in a bad debt cycle it is important that you put your finances in order. One way of doing this is to develop a personal budget. This will require you to work out all forms of income you receive: salary or wages and overtime payments you receive on a regular basis, any government support benefits or pension payments, dividends from shares, bank interest and rental income if you own a rental property. Once this has been done, then all your expenses need to be identified: mortgage repayments if you own a property or rent if you are a tenant, personal loan repayments for cars or other equipment, travel fees, education expenses,



Source 19.7 Your first loan may be to buy your first car.

food, entertainment, health insurance and medical expenses, regular utility bills (such as electricity, gas and water), telephone bills and insurance for property and car. If after itemising the income and expenses you find that your expenses are greater than your income, you need to really think hard and take action to reduce the expenses. A quick search using an internet search engine will result in many suggestions of how to create

a budget which will help you to control your finances, reduce your level of bad debt and in time enable you to create a safety buffer of savings.

Another way of ensuring that you are creating a savings buffer is this: if your pay is directly deposited into your bank account by your employer, you can organise an ongoing direct deposit withdrawal into a savings account set up in your name.

19.4 Financial risks to be aware of and protect against

Unfortunately there is a range of risks that individuals need to be aware of and that can negatively impact on their financial management strategies.

Becoming a victim of scams

scam a strategy used to steal money or identity from unsuspecting people

A **scam** is a strategy that some people use to steal money or identity from unsuspecting people. The scammers contact their victims with offers that seem too good to be true. They

typically involve giving some money in exchange for a promise to receive a much bigger sum of money in return. This is always a good question to ask yourself, 'Does this sound too good to be true?' If you answer 'yes', then great care should be taken before parting with any of your money.

The schemes used by scammers vary over time and are generally cleverly disguised. Here are some of the current scam types:

- online scams (email) or personalised letter scams
- lottery and competition scams (fake prizes)
- investment scams (get-rich-quick schemes)
- pyramid schemes and door-to-door selling scams
- **identity theft** scams (phishing)
- job and employment scams
- mobile phone scams
- banking and online account scams.

identity theft theft that occurs when a person's identity is assumed to gain goods, services, money and other benefits, or to avoid obligations

Scams are fraudulent and are performed by dishonest individuals, groups or companies who attempt to gain money or something of value. Over time, scams have evolved from the early days of relying on tricks of confidence, where an individual would misrepresent themselves as someone with skill or authority, such as a doctor, lawyer or stockbroker. The internet, however,



Source 19.8 Always think before you act!

has changed the scene and we are seeing new forms of scams emerging: lottery scams, scam baiting, email spoofing, phishing or requests for help to name a few. These are all considered to be email fraud.

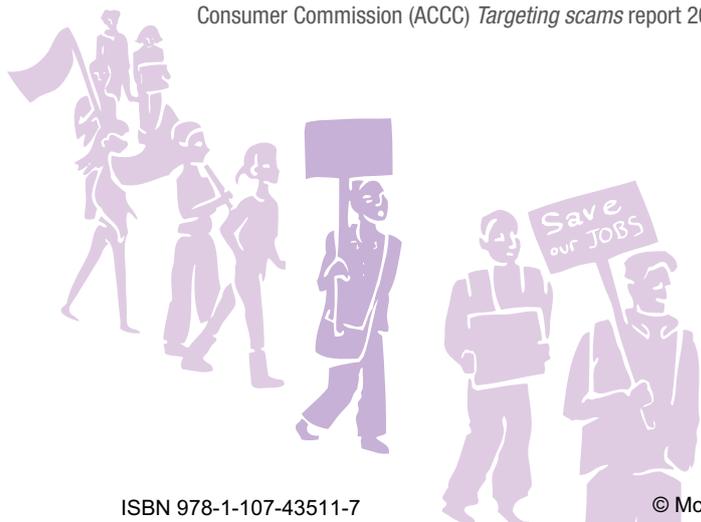
More than 200 cases of shopping and trading scams were recorded by Consumer Affairs Victoria in 2012, including cons where scammers advertised fake goods to trick consumers into sending money and used fake cheques to buy from genuine sellers. The consumer advocacy group Choice says that if a website is unfamiliar, shoppers should research the company, read buyer reviews, call the contact number and check the refund, returns, privacy, delivery and guarantee policies.

In an effort to help individuals lower their risk of being scammed, governments at both federal and state levels have created websites to help fight scams and cybercrime; they recommend that people use these websites to gain information on how to avoid being scammed and also report scams so that others are not then affected. The Australian Competition and Consumer Commission's report stated that in 2012 \$93 million was reported lost to scams in Australia.

The international reporting site for online scams is that of the International Consumer Protection and Enforcement Network (ICPEN) – find it at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks.

Method of scam delivery	Percentage of reported scams
Telephone	42.3
Email	23.2
Text message	14.1
Internet	11.9
Snail mail (normal mail delivery)	7.1
In person	0.9
Fax	0.5
Total number of scams reported	83803

Source 19.9 Summary of the Australian Competition and Consumer Commission (ACCC) *Targeting scams* report 2012



To further assist consumers, every state in Australia has a website for reporting scams (see the table below). Find them at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks.

National	Australian Competition and Consumer Commission (ACCC)
Queensland	Office of Fair Trading
New South Wales	Fair Trading
Victoria	Consumer Affairs Victoria
South Australia	Government of South Australia
Tasmania	Consumer Affairs and Trading
Western Australia	WAScamNet

Source 19.10 Where to report scams in Australia

Becoming a victim of identity theft



Source 19.11 Increased use of technology has opened the door for more scams.

Money is not the only thing that scammers are after – often they want to actually steal your identity. Scammers endeavour to find out personal information about you such as where you live, whether you have a credit card, where you bank and whether you have a current passport.

These types of scams are classified as 'identity theft'. The personal details the scammer obtains could then be used in scams such as **card skimming**, **phishing**, **lottery scams**, **money transfer scams** and **work from home scams**.

card skimming a scam that involves using a skimmer to collect information from a credit or debit card

phishing a scam where someone tries to trick you into giving them your personal details

lottery scam a scam that typically begins with a false notification that someone has won something, but they need to supply an advance fee to collect their prize

money transfer scam a false request for a large sum of money to be transferred to the scammer, usually under a false identity

work from home scam typically a get-rich-quick scheme that convinces victims to take on a role of working from home doing minimal work for large sums of money; money is taken from the victim in the form of fees and false investments

The Australian Competition and Consumer Commission (ACCC) through its SCAMwatch program advises that scammers are using people's personal details to take out loans, claim welfare benefits or run up debt in the name of the person from whom they have stolen the identity. If you have been scammed, you may find that your credit rating has been damaged and that it is difficult to get a credit card or borrow money in the future. SCAMwatch also advises that it can be very annoying

and time-consuming trying to set the record straight after a scammer has misused your identity.

There are other ways that scammers can steal your identity. For instance, a lost wallet or purse can provide the scammer with a lot of your personal details or even a PIN written down on a piece of paper contained in the wallet. Also, if someone 'dumpster dives' in your rubbish bin, they can take your personal details from any discarded mail.

Determined scammers have other elaborate and cunning ways they can trick you into providing your personal details. An example is a request that appears to come (via email) from your bank or telecommunications provider wanting you to clarify your details. These scams are known as 'phishing' and try to trick you into handing over your personal banking details to the scammers. It should always be remembered that no bank will ever send an email asking you to follow a link or asking you for your personal details. Also, if you wish to ring the bank do not call using any telephone number listed in the email, but instead go back to a recent bank statement or credit card statement and use that number. Banks are aware of these scams and employ specialised internet security staff to provide assistance.

Making safe online shopping transactions

Online shopping is often the easiest and most convenient way of purchasing goods, but how do you protect yourself from any financial risk using the online environment? It is important that you know about the entire purchasing process – who you are dealing with, exactly what it is that you are buying, how confidently you know that you are getting what you have paid for and also that your account and credit card details are being dealt with safely.

Set out below are some suggested tips to help with making online shopping a safe experience.

Be wary if:

- the website they use is not professional and looks suspicious, creating uncertainty about who you are actually dealing with; contact deals may also be vague
- the description of the product is not clear, with bargain offers that look too good to be true; insufficient details about sizes, colour, value and safety of the product are other clues
- you are not feeling confident about their use of your information
- the fine print relating to refund and complaint handling policies is not all there
- the website is not clear on the final cost and in particular about what extra charges (currency conversion, postage and handling) may be added.



Source 19.12 It is important to be aware of the dangers when shopping online.

If you decide to go ahead with your online purchase, follow these safety suggestions:

- Only pay via a secure web page (one that has a valid digital certificate). At the beginning of the address bar there should be the letters 'https' and a locked padlock in the browser.
- Use a secure payment method such as PayPal, BPay or your credit card. Money transfers and direct debits should be avoided as these can be open to abuse.
- Never send your bank or credit card details via email, only via a secure web page.
- Always print and keep a copy of the transaction.

RESEARCH 19.3

- 1 Discuss with your parents, carers or other family members the types of scams they are aware of. The discussion could include the following questions:
 - Have they ever been a victim of a scam?
 - How did they come across the scam? (Email, telephone, mail, text message, met a scammer, internet?)
 - What was the exact nature of the scam?
 - Did they think that the scam was a 'real offer'?
- 2 Examine their responses compared to what you have learnt about scams. Do they use less technology, and so are less aware of scams?
- 3 Record your findings and present them to the class.

Take care using ATM banking

Using your local automatic teller machine (ATM) could come at a shocking cost if you are not careful. The reason is that the practice known as 'skimming' may have occurred. Banks and security consultants advise that thieves can without your direct knowledge clear out your accounts. The thieves swipe your credentials by using pirated card readers and pinhole cameras which

they mount on the ATMs. The modifications are very hard to detect by the untrained eye. The thieves capture your stripe data and PIN and then produce counterfeit cards. To assist and raise awareness of skimming for their customers, the Commonwealth Bank of Australia has prepared an ATM awareness guide. Find it at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks.

There are a number of simple ways to help protect yourself against being 'skimmed' when using an ATM:

- Choose ATMs within bank branches or vestibules; these are safer than ATMs in bars or shops.
- Choose places that are well lit and supervised.
- Be observant – look at the ATMs and compare them with each other for any small differences such as loose or crooked areas around the keypad, the card slot and the panels around the machine.
- Cover your PIN entry with your other hand to prevent observers or cameras from capturing your numbers.
- If you see any dodgy transactions in your card statement, immediately advise your bank to avoid further loss.
- Review your bank statements regularly for unusual activity – this helps to prevent 'long-term withdrawal trend'.

If you find that your card has been 'skimmed', you can seek legal protection. Financial institutions in Australia are required to reimburse their customers in the event of unauthorised charges.



Source 19.13 ATMs are the target of card skimming schemes.



Normal fascia

- The flashing card entry indicator can easily be seen.
- Most skimming devices will obscure the flashing card entry indicator.
- This detail serves as a vital clue in identifying suspect tampering.

Skimmer device attached to card entry slot

- The device is designed to look like a standard part of the terminal.
- No flashing card entry indicator can be seen and the shape of the snout is different.

Source 19.14 How to identify a skimmer device attached to an ATM

Economics and business fact

In February 2013, a \$1 million card-skimming ring was busted when a man in sunglasses triggered attention by using several cards to withdraw large sums of money.

The Australian Payments Clearing Association estimates \$262.6 million was lost to credit card theft in the 2011–12 financial year. The Australian Crime Commission estimated losses to be in excess of \$113 million between January 2007 and April 2012.

2011–12	Australia	Overseas	Total
Lost or stolen	\$11.2m	\$7.2m	\$18.4m
Never received	\$5m	\$266 000	\$5.2m
Fraudulent application	\$2.2m	\$88 000	\$2.3m
Counterfeit or skimming	\$15.6m	\$29.7m	\$45.3m
Card not present (e.g. for online purchases)	\$77m	\$112.5m	\$189.5m

Source 19.15 Money lost through debit and credit card fraud in 2011–12

It is essential that personal financial information such as credit cards and ATM cards are kept safe and secure. It is recommended that you do not share your personal identify numbers (PINs) with anyone; also, don't keep a written copy of your PIN with your card. You should never enter your personal, credit card or online account information on a website (or by email) that you are not certain is genuine. Internet

banking is best avoided using public computers at libraries or internet cafes as computer networks at these venues are not always secure. The choice of password is important – make sure you create one that would be difficult for anyone else to guess. Another good protection strategy is to install up-to-date software that protects your computer from viruses and unwanted programs.

Economics and business fact

Australian consumers spent \$444 billion is the amount using their credit and debit cards during 2012–13. This is three times as much as they made in ATM and EFTPOS cash withdrawals.

Make sure you carefully check your credit card and bank statements

If you are using a credit card or debit card it is important that you regularly check your statements. Most banks issue these statements online as they are costly to produce and mail out to customers. Sometimes issues arise with credit and debit card transactions. If you do not recognise the business or retailer itemised on the statement, make contact with them directly to discuss your query. Some of the common types of queries relate to:

- a refund or credit that has not been processed or appears on your statement as a purchase
- a transaction amount on your statement that differs from your receipt
- a regular payment that has been cancelled but you are still being charged
- multiple charges for the same purchase



Source 19.16 Regular checking of your statements can help you catch suspicious behaviour in your account early on.

- goods that were received were not as described
- services that have not been rendered
- merchandise that is defective or was never received.

The credit card statement contains important information for you, such as:

- the due date for payment of your minimum monthly amount – this date is important as it relates directly to interest charges calculated for late or non-payment
- the statement period – this is the actual number of days in the statement period and can vary depending on the length of the month and on which date of the month the account was opened
- the correct account number – there should be only be one account number even if there are multiple cardholders on the one account and each card's transactions should be checked
- the available credit balance for the statement period, which outlines what credit amount is left to spend on the credit card account at the end of the statement period
- opening and closing balances – the balances at the start and end of the statement period should be checked for purchase transactions, cash advances, transfers, and fees and charges less any payments and refunds.

Should there be any problems detected on the statements, you should immediately take action. Initially contact the merchant directly and if they are not able to rectify the problem, contact the bank, who will follow up the query on your behalf.

Make sure you have adequate insurance cover

In life we are exposed to all different types of risk in both our personal and working lives. As individuals it is wise to take measures to minimise the levels of risk that everyday situations can provide. Taking out an appropriate form of insurance cover will assist in providing a level of financial compensation to the policy holder in the event of adverse unforeseen circumstances.

Insurance is broken into two main categories – life insurance and non-life (general) insurance. The types of general insurance policies available are numerous, such as:

- general property, home and contents insurance
- motor vehicle insurance
- business insurance including professional indemnity, public and product liability
- mortgage loss insurance (mortgage protection insurance)

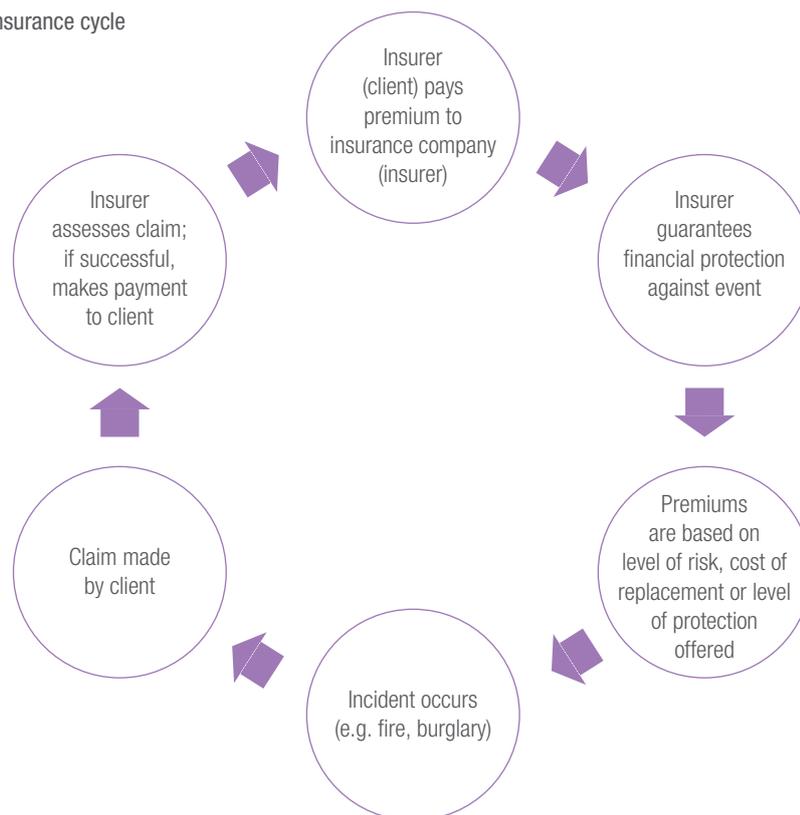
- workers' compensation (WorkCover)
- travel insurance.

Purchasing a home is the largest financial outlay most people will make in their lives, and they will have saved and planned for this purchase for a long time. It is therefore important that all risks associated with owning this asset are identified and that insurance cover is taken out to cover any adverse unforeseen circumstances. Examples of these circumstances could be a fire destroying your house or part of it, a burst water pipe flooding the inside of the house, a lightning strike causing all your electrical appliances to arc and fail, and a burglar cleaning out your house contents and jewellery. The amount a consumer pays for their insurance relates directly to the level of risk associated with the event they want cover for. For instance, if you want to insure your house against burglary, a simple act of installing deadlocks on all windows and doors will reduce your level of risk and

ultimately the premium you will need to pay. Over the past couple of decades home owners have become more concerned with both their personal safety and protecting their property. Walking around your neighbourhood you will observe on both houses and commercial buildings sensor lights, alarms, CCTV cameras, security doors and windows, quality locks and high fences and gates.

Different suburbs are also deemed to be 'higher risk' areas. On an annual basis police departments in each state compile crime statistics and insurance companies use these when determining the risk levels for both property and car insurance. Also, certain makes of cars are deemed to have higher risk of theft and attract loadings on their insurance premiums. Insurance companies often publish lists which provide the risk ratings of suburbs. It can be an interesting exercise to check how your suburb rates compared neighbouring suburbs or even those across town.

Source 19.17 The insurance cycle



RESEARCH 19.4

Undertake an internet search to determine the burglary rating of the suburb or town in which you live. Find out if the rate of burglaries has increased or decreased. If there has been change in the rate, suggest reasons why this has occurred.

Hint: Check the websites of insurance companies and the police department in your state.

Economics and business fact

In 1997 the rate of burglary of houses in the inner-city suburb of Richmond (Melbourne) was one in every 19 homes compared to one in 79 in 2013, according to the RACV.

Australia has experienced a range of disasters (cyclones, severe storms, floods and bushfires) over the past few years. Many people following these disasters have been left in dire financial situations because they either did not take out insurance cover at all or had taken out insurance cover but not read the fine print and exclusion clauses. Insurance companies following a claim by the policy holder will determine whether the claim is covered by the policy and how much compensation is payable or if the event is not covered at all. If the policy holder is disputing payment of their claim, they may contact the Financial Ombudsman Service (see www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) to review their claim. Insurance companies, like other financial institutions, are regulated by APRA (see www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks).

Life insurance

Having protected your home and car, it is important that insurance is taken out to protect you and your family. This is referred to as 'life insurance' and there are several types of policies that can be taken out:

- *Life insurance.* This policy will pay a lump sum to your beneficiaries on your death or to you on the diagnosis of a terminal illness. The payout is often used to pay off your outstanding debts and mortgage on your home and help your family to be financially secure.
- *Total and permanent disability insurance.* A lump sum is paid if you become disabled or are unable to ever work again. This amount is usually used to pay off existing debts, cover your medical expenses (current and ongoing) and pay for any modifications needed to your accommodation or vehicle, with the remainder being invested to help maintain you in future years.
- *Income protection insurance.* If you become ill or sustain an injury that means that you are unable to work, this policy provides a replacement income of up to 75% of the income you were receiving prior to the illness or accident. It is important to read the policy conditions carefully to determine

for what period of time this policy will provide you with replacement income and if any waiting periods apply before entitlement to payment.

- *Trauma insurance.* This policy will pay a lump sum upon the diagnosis of one of a list of specific illnesses – for example, heart attack, cancer or a stroke. This payment will help you to focus on really taking care of yourself (medical and rehabilitation) and if needed will cover the cost of a carer to assist you in your everyday life activities.

When arranging any form of insurance cover, an assessment is made on your level of risk. For instance, a young, fit and healthy person working in an office job would be assessed as being of lower risk than someone who is obese, a heavy smoker and works as a truck driver or construction worker. The level of risk directly relates to the amount of premium you need to pay.

Private health insurance

In Australia we have a universal health insurance scheme called 'Medicare'. The scheme was introduced in 1984 with the purpose of providing access to affordable and high-quality health care for all Australians. Medicare provides access to free treatment in public hospitals and free or subsidised treatment by doctors, optometrists or dentists. As taxpayers we contribute to funding this scheme through our taxes and the Medicare levy, which is based on our taxable income (see www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks).

Many Australians also take out private health insurance to cover a broader range of medical and ancillary service treatment costs than Medicare provides. When deciding to purchase or alter your level of private health insurance, it is important to carefully assess your level of need relevant to yourself (single) or as a family and then to really understand what level of cover is being provided and if there are any waiting periods that must be served before you can make a claim. Private health insurance is very expensive and many people have opted out in recent years due to the increased costs.



Source 19.18 Medicare is an important benefit to Australians.

- There are two types of private health insurance:
- 1 Hospital cover, which covers hospital costs such as your doctor, accommodation (bed) and theatre fees. The level of cover you choose can range from top private hospital cover (which will cover all services where Medicare pays a benefit) to basic private hospital cover where exclusions or restrictions are placed on some medical areas such as cardiac, rehabilitation, psychiatric services and palliative care.
 - 2 Ancillary or extra costs cover, also known as general treatment policies, which provides cover for optical, physiotherapy, podiatry, psychology, chiropractic, hearing and dental work.
- There are numerous private health funds operating in Australia with varying levels of cover and cost. Due to the high cost of these policies, it is highly recommended that you do research to compare what the difference health funds offer.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 19.4

Access the Private Health website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and complete the following tasks:

- 1 Complete the comparison test to determine which private health insurance policies would provide you (as a single person) with the cover you require.
- 2 Complete the comparison test to determine which private health insurance policies would meet the needs of your family.

19.5 Building up your superannuation

The concept of retirement seems such a far-off occurrence for people who are just entering the workforce. However, those who have been working for over 40 years are nearing the time when they are considering retirement from the paid workforce. Important in their minds is: 'Do I have sufficient money to retire on and to live the life I want to live?' The Association of Superannuation Funds of Australia (ASFA) states that a single person needs to be earning an annual income of \$39852 and a couple needs \$54562 to live comfortably during retirement, assuming they fully own their own home.

It is the aim of most people to be financially independent in their retirement years, but trying to estimate how much **superannuation** you will need to fund your retirement is very difficult. Source 19.19 sets out an estimate from REST Industry Super, which shows that the amount of superannuation you will need depends on the age you want to retire and how much income you expect you will need to live on in your retirement years.

superannuation a compulsory payment made into a fund by an employee or employer that is invested and goes towards the person's pension

Gender	Age you wish to retire	For an income of \$20 000 p.a.	For an income of \$30 000 p.a.	For an income of \$40 000 p.a.	For an income of \$50 000 p.a.
Man	55	\$185 500	\$391 000	\$666 500	\$935 000
	60	\$115 500	\$305 500	\$574 500	\$841 500
	65	\$30 000	\$207 500	\$462 000	\$723 000
	70	\$26 100	\$173 500	\$368 500	\$579 500
Woman	55	\$185 500	\$397 000	\$674 500	\$942 000
	60	\$115 500	\$312 000	\$585 500	\$853 500
	65	\$30 000	\$215 500	\$476 000	\$739 500
	70	\$26 100	\$179 500	\$383 500	\$599 000

Source 19.19 How much super will you need in retirement for your money to last until age 90?

To assist us to lower our risk of not having sufficient funds for an enjoyable life in retirement, a compulsory superannuation guarantee system was introduced by the federal government in 1992. Before this, most workers were not covered by any superannuation scheme and relied upon drawing an age pension from the government to fund their retirement years. With the 'baby boomers' (those born after World War II) getting closer to retirement and therefore potentially putting pressure on the Australian economy for pension payments, the government decided that a reform package which incorporated compulsory superannuation would be introduced. The reform package set up a means-tested government age pension system, compulsory contributions to superannuation by employers and voluntary savings by employees to their superannuation and other investment options.

An employee who earns more than \$450 per month, works more than 30 hours per week (full-time, part-time or casual) and is not more than 70 years old will receive in their nominated superannuation fund an employer contribution at the rate of 9.25% (in 2014) of their current wage or salary. The employer is legally obliged to pay these contributions (the Super Guarantee) into the employee's nominated fund at least every 3 months. The Super Guarantee is set to gradually increase and will eventually require an employer to contribute 12% on behalf of their employee. The monies held on behalf of an employee in the nominated superannuation fund can also be topped up by the employee's own contributions and are a very good way to save for retirement. Over the period of your working life, the super money is accumulating and will become a sufficient amount to live off in retirement. The federal government also provides advantageous taxation treatment for contributions made by employees into their superannuation fund; this is referred to as 'salary sacrificing'.

Economics and business fact

Australia is ranked fifth in the list of best places to retire. It is ahead of the USA and the UK.

There are many superannuation funds operating in Australia that employees may choose to join. They fall into five main groups:

- 1 industry funds, which are run by employer associations or unions for the benefit of their members, such as REST Industry Super (Retail Employees Superannuation), AMIST My Super, Australian Catholic Superannuation & Retirement Fund, VicSuper and Cbus
- 2 wholesale master trusts, which are operated by financial institutions for groups of employees, such as AMP My Super and Tailored Super
- 3 retail master trusts/wrap platforms, which are funds run by financial institutions for individuals, such as Commonwealth Bank Super Mix 70 and the Super Directions Personal Super Plan
- 4 employer funds, which are established by employers for their employees and have their own trust structure, such as Telstra Super Balanced Fund and BHP-Billiton My Super
- 5 self-managed superannuation funds (SMSFs), which are established for a small number of individuals (up to four members) and regulated by the Australian Taxation Office (ATO).

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 19.5

Access the Australian Taxation Office website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks to help you to complete the following tasks:

- 1 Outline the current taxation advantages available to people (of different ages) who wish to contribute additional amounts to their superannuation fund.
- 2 Calculate the rate of payable taxation when retired people wish to withdraw funds from their superannuation fund.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- There is a range of financial (deposit taking) institutions in Australia: banks, building societies and credit unions.
 - These deposit taking institutions offer a range of financial products and services to consumers.
 - Financial management can carry a level of risk for individuals.
 - Various factors influence an individual's approach to financial management. These can relate to their approach – conservative (risk-averse) or higher risk takers – and their stage of life.
 - Debt can be classified as being 'good' or 'bad' and needs to be actively managed.
 - There is a range of investment options that allow people to accumulate future wealth – for instance, shares, government bonds and long-term deposit accounts.
 - There is a range of financial risks that consumers need to be aware of and protect themselves against, such as scams, identity theft and fraud, online shopping transactions, using ATM banking, and incorrect entries on credit and bank statements.
 - Insurance cover can provide protection against risk to a person's property and self.
 - Superannuation is a compulsory savings scheme and acts as a method to help overcome the risk of not having adequate finances in a person's retirement years.
- 2 Categorise the following statements as either true or false:
 - a Buying shares in mining companies is popular with investors who are risk-averse.
 - b Individuals can operate a bank account at the Reserve Bank.
 - c In 2014 the rate of employer contribution for superannuation was 10%.
 - d A credit union is classified as a deposit-taking institution.
 - 3 Identify the issues that the internet has caused lawmakers to think about when acting to protect Australians in conducting their financial transactions.
 - 4 Analyse the strengths and weakness associated with having a credit card. In your analysis you need to include the possibility of your credit card being lost or stolen and the level of risk that would be associated with this.
 - 5 Outline the reasons why superannuation is so important and discuss why everyone needs to have superannuation.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Define the following terms. Demonstrate your understanding by incorporating each term in a sentence.
 - a Dividends
 - b Government bond
 - c Superannuation
 - d Life insurance

Extended-response question

Compulsory superannuation has been in existence in Australia only since 1992. At that time employers had to contribute 3% on behalf of their employees into a superannuation fund. Over time this percentage has progressively increased with the target of 12% in 2025.

Discuss whether you believe Australia having a compulsory superannuation scheme is good for individuals, businesses and the government.

20

Competition and businesses in the global market

Before you start

Main focus

All businesses, regardless of the nature of their operations, need to operate in an ethical and socially responsible manner. It is important that they are aware of factors and pressures located within their operating environment, in particular their customers and competitors.

Why it's relevant to us

Australia operates as an open market economy and as such we are all participants in and affected by the operation of businesses and the impact they have on our economy. Businesses have a vital role to play in our economy and we as customers and consumers benefit from them being competitive with each other.

Inquiry questions

- Why is being competitive in the market important to businesses?
- What strategies and techniques can businesses undertake to gain a competitive advantage over their rivals?
- What effect does being a socially responsible business have on gaining a competitive advantage?

Key terms

- Brand
- Brand leader
- Competition
- Competitive advantage
- Ethics
- Market
- Market share
- Monopoly
- Open innovation
- Product differentiation
- Social media
- Social responsibility
- Stakeholder

Let's begin

Since you awoke this morning, you have been exposed to many businesses and the strategies and techniques they undertake to get you to purchase their goods and use their services. All this has been done as part of their quest to attain a competitive advantage over their rivals and to gain your spending dollar. This exposure may have come from you making a choice such as 'Do I take a tram, train, bus or car as the form of transport to get me to school today?' Or at lunchtime, 'Will I eat the sandwiches brought from home or spend money at the school cafeteria?' Throughout your entire day and life you will be exposed to businesses operating in a competitive marketplace both domestically and globally.

20.1 What is a market?

market any place where the sellers of a particular good or service can meet with the buyers of that good and service and where there is potential for a transaction to take place

competition the rivalry that occurs among sellers in their desire to seek and satisfy a market

First it is important to establish what is meant by the term **market**. A market is any place where potential customers with similar needs are willing to exchange something of value (usually money) with sellers who offer various need-satisfying goods or services.

For a market to be competitive there must be more than a single seller or buyer. While two people may trade and exchange goods and services for money, it takes at least

three participants to have a market, so that there is **competition** coming from at least two sides.

Markets vary from different forms, sizes, scale, location and types of consumers, as well as the goods and services traded. Examples include:

- physical retail markets, such as local farmers' markets, shopping centres and shopping malls
- internet markets (non-physical)
- ad hoc auction markets
- markets for intermediate or component goods used in production of other goods and services
- labour markets
- international currency and commodity markets
- stock markets

- artificial markets created by regulation to exchange rights such as carbon trading
- illegal markets such as the market for illicit drugs, arms or pirated products.

Competition

Competition in broad terms is defined as having or displaying a strong desire to be more successful than others. In a sporting event, individuals and teams will strive to be successful and ultimately win the game. For businesses, competition relates to the rivalry that occurs among them in their desire to seek and satisfy a market. For a market to be competitive there must be more than a single seller or buyer.

When visiting a large fruit and vegetable market in a major city (such as Victoria Market in Melbourne or Paddy's Market in Sydney) or a local farmers' market in your suburb or town, you will experience competition first hand. At these markets there are numerous sellers with stalls close to each other. There are also a lot of buyers coming to these markets who can then carry out easy comparisons on quality and price of the similar goods being offered by the various stallholders. The sellers are also able to make these comparisons and change their pricing strategies to ensure they gain a competitive edge.



Source 20.1 Numerous stalls at Paddy's Market in Sydney have to compete for buyers.

monopoly a market containing a single business

In contrast to a competitive market is a **monopoly**. This occurs when there is only one seller in a particular market and many potential buyers. The seller in this situation acts as a price setter rather than a price taker (which occurs in a competitive marketplace). For example, in the area of mail delivery, Australia Post, a federal government business enterprise, has a monopoly over the delivery of mail items. It does, however, have many competitors in the area of parcel delivery and courier services.

Competition is an essential element in the efficient working of markets. It brings important benefits to businesses. Some of these are:

- It has direct effect on its customer base. Competition makes the business serve the customer better as they need to win over a customer and treat them right if they wish to retain them.
- It fosters innovation and efficiency. A business must not remain static but be ready to make changes or do something in a new way.
- It identifies for the business its strengths and weaknesses. Competition can help a business to narrow its focus and concentrate on what it is really good at, while also overcoming its weaknesses.

- It helps to identify potential threats from competitors that could be detrimental to the success of the business.
- It stops complacency and acts to push the business outside its comfort zone
- It helps the business to increase both its products and its market by making the business keep its products and services up to date and appealing.

For consumers, it offers choice and enables them to buy a broad range of goods and services at the best possible prices.

Ultimately a business wants to be able to build and gain a **competitive advantage** or edge over its rivals. This will provide the business with a point of difference or superiority over its competitors.

competitive advantage a point of difference or superiority held over a business' competitors

Identifying and sustaining competitive advantage are critical issues in business success, which can be measured by improved profit margins, or failure, which may then lead to bankruptcy and closure of the business.

There is a range of factors that influence a business gaining a competitive advantage (see Source 20.2).



Source 20.2 Factors that affect gaining a competitive advantage

20.2 Strategies and techniques to be competitive in the market

For businesses to be competitive in the market they need to concentrate on a variety of areas of business practice.

Market share

market share the percentage of total sales in a market held by one brand or business

brand leader the brand in the market with the highest market share

Businesses want to gain and hold a significant **market share**. This indicates that their products and services are well known and well received in the marketplace. It is important for businesses to protect while also aiming to increase their market share. This strategy will help to protect them against new entrants into their market

working to erode their share and possibly their position as being the **brand leader**.

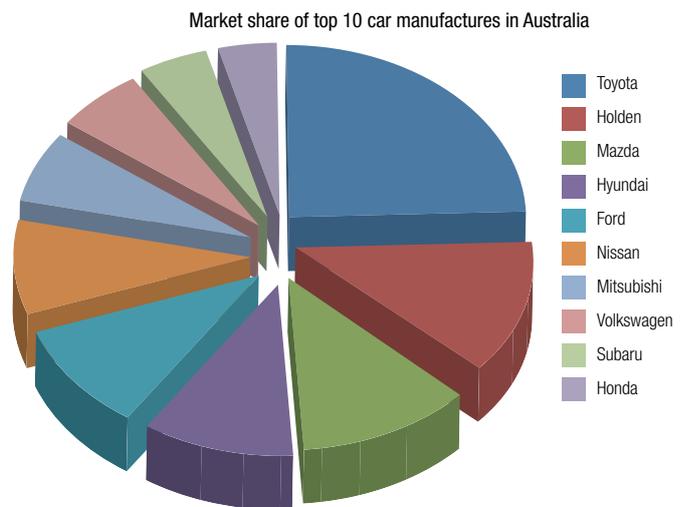
brand the distinguishing name, term, symbol or design used to identify a manufacturer's product

In the car industry in Australia there is fierce competition among all **brands**, either locally produced or imported. On an annual basis the Federal Chamber of Automotive Industries produces statistics

that indicate the market share of the top 10 car manufacturers. Source 20.3 sets out the number ranking of the car manufacturers based on volume of car sales for 2012. Source 20.4 demonstrates the market share of each car manufacturer in a pie chart, which is another popular method of easily showing the market share of a business.

Rank	Brand	Number of cars sold
1	Toyota	218 176
2	Holden	114 665
3	Mazda	103 886
4	Hyundai	91 536
5	Ford	90 408
6	Nissan	79 747
7	Mitsubishi	58 868
8	Volkswagen	54 835
9	Subaru	40 189
10	Honda	35 812

Source 20.3 Market share of top 10 car manufacturers (by sales volume) in 2012



Source 20.4 A pie chart displaying the market share of the top 10 car manufacturers

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 20.1

- 1 Refer to Source 20.3 and Source 20.4. Identify which of the 10 car manufacturers listed above are local (manufactured in Australia prior to 2014) and which are manufactured overseas.
- 2 Visit the Federal Chamber of Automotive Industries' website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks to access the new motor vehicle sales data for 2013.
 - a Present this information in a table.
 - b Compare the current year's ranking to that of 2012 (see the website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks). If different, explain why you believe this difference has occurred.

Contrary to the downturn in the current trading situation for many retail operators, there is one retailer placing great importance on ensuring it increases its market share. In the discount variety retail sector in Australia, the Reject Shop is a very successful operator. This business services a broad range of consumers who are attracted to low price points, convenient shopping locations and the opportunity to purchase a bargain. Its product range covers a wide variety of general consumer merchandise made up of everyday needs such as toiletries, homeware, hardware, cleaning products, kitchenware and snack food. The Reject Shop also has seasonal merchandise available, including gifts, cards and wrapping. It has a specific target market of consumers who are conscious of value for a low cost, their economic security and competitive pricing. It commands an extremely high level of brand awareness in all states of Australia. The success of this business can be measured not only by its increased profit but also by

its aggressive rollout of new stores (74 over a period of 13 months between July 2012 and August 2013).

Brand management

Having a strong brand can ensure long-term success for a business as it often allows the business to charge a price premium for its product, ultimately increasing profit. If in the mind of the consumer a positive image can be created and brand loyalty generated, this becomes a very powerful marketing tool for a business. The consumer then becomes locked into purchasing the same product time after time, even though rival products may exist.

The business with the largest share of the market is known as the market leader or brand leader. It is estimated that a successful and trusted brand is a powerful asset to a business and may account for between 50% and 70% of the total value of a business.

RESEARCH 20.1

- 1 Using the internet, identify a business in the retail sector other than the Reject Shop that is aggressively increasing its market share.
- 2 Explain the strategies this business is using to gain market share.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 20.2

Readers Digest conducted a survey using 3024 Australians as its sample group; participants rated brands on a trust scale of 1 to 10. The results are set out in Source 20.5.

Category	Winner	Category	Winner
Iconic Australian brand	Hills	Deodorant	Rexona
Banks	Commonwealth Bank	DIY power tools	Bosch
Bread	Bakers Delight	Fast food	Birds Eye
Breakfast food	Weet-Bix	Gardening equipment	Victa
Cars	Toyota	Hair care	Dove
Charities	Guide Dogs	Household cleaning products	Pine-O-Clean
Coffee machines	Breville	Laundry cleaning products	Vanish
Confectionery	Cadbury	Life insurance	AAMI
Cruise operators	P&O	Mobile phone service provider	Telstra
Dairy	Dairy Farmers	Oral healthcare	Colgate

Category	Winner	Category	Winner
Pain relief	Panadol	Tea	Liptons
Paint	Dulux	Toilet paper	Kleenex
Pet care	Frontline Plus	Toilet paper	Kleenex
Pet food	Pedigree	TV and home entertainment	Sony
Retailers	Bunnings Warehouse	Vacuum cleaners	Dyson
Skincare	Dove	Vitamins and supplements	Blackmores
Small kitchen appliances	Breville	Weight loss products	Weightwatchers
Sugar substitutes	Equal	Weight loss programs	Weightwatchers
Superannuation	Australian Super	Whitegoods	Westinghouse
Oral healthcare	Colgate		

Source 20.5 Australia's most trusted brands for 2013

- 1 Refer to the list of companies (brands) listed above. Identify which brands are Australian-owned and which brands are foreign-owned.
- 2 Choose five of the above brands and describe the features that you believe each of these brands possesses to make it 'most trusted'. For example, Toyota has been voted the most trusted car brand in Australia 8 years in a row. It is not just Australians who love their Toyotas as it is the world's best-selling automotive brand and its Corolla is the world's most popular small car, with more than 1.6 million sold in 2012.
- 3 Explain what you believe makes a brand connect with the consumer.

Bakers Delight
We're for real.

LUCKY YOU'RE WITH
AAMI




Source 20.6 A collection of Australia's most trusted brand names

20.3 Being judged as ethical and socially responsible

ethics a set of moral principles that a business needs to establish and follow

The strategy of sourcing raw materials from sustainable sources is one way a business can be judged as having strong **ethics** and being socially responsible in their business practices. It also acts to differentiate its product

or service from that of a competitor. The unique attributes of sourcing raw materials in this manner is often valued by customers who are then willing to pay a premium price for the product. The business hopes that the higher price will more than cover the extra costs incurred in offering this unique product.

The Rainforest Alliance (see the website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) is an international non-profit organisation that works to conserve biodiversity and ensure sustainable livelihoods by transforming land practices, business practices and human behaviour. It helps companies to do well

stakeholder an individual or group that has a direct or vested interest in the activities of a business

while also doing good, identifying sustainable sources for their needs. For the employees, investors and other **stakeholders** of the business, the business demonstrates how serious it is about sustainability and transparency in its business practices.

By adopting the strategy of sourcing materials from sustainable sources, the producer is being ethical and socially responsible. It is taking into account the impact the product it is producing or selling will have on the environment or society more generally. While wanting to earn revenue for their business, such producers are also concerned about how the raw materials are purchased, either locally or from overseas, and the impacts these



Source 20.7 The Rainforest Alliance Certified™ seal assures consumers that the produce they are purchasing has been harvested using environmentally and socially responsible practices.

may have on things such as global warming, depletion of natural resources, pollution, animal welfare and exploitation of workers. These concerns come from the underlying values that are important to the business and they can have a very powerful impact on the products it produces and sells.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 20.3

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Nick Savaidis founded Etiko in 2005 after finding that, no matter how hard he tried, he couldn't buy stuff such as sportsballs, clothing and footwear, which he could be 100% confident hadn't been made by a child or some poor worker being ripped off in a developing country. Sweatshops, corporate greed, globalisation, call it what you want, all he knew was that it sucked and it was time for an alternative. Since our launch we've achieved quite a bit for a small operation based in the outer south east suburbs of Melbourne, Australia.

Some of these achievements include:

- first non-food brand to gain Fairtrade certification (Australia/New Zealand/Pacific region)
- first eco-friendly range of footwear (Australia/New Zealand/Pacific region)
- winner of more business sustainability and social justice awards than any other Australian company, big or small, between 2008 and 2009
- teamed up with worker owned cooperatives in Argentina
- helped fund the creation of more than 300 micro businesses in Pakistan.

Etiko has made it possible to access Australia and New Zealand's biggest range of ethically produced fashion and footwear (Etiko Fair Trade) and sports gear (Jinta Sport) and it all comes with the added satisfaction of knowing everything it does is also as eco-friendly as can be.

Source 20.8 Etiko won the Fairtrade Product of the Year Award in September 2013 and received an A+ rating in the 2013 Australian Fashion Report.

- 1 Identify the underlying values that are held by Etiko when sourcing its products.
- 2 Research the 2013 Fairtrade winners online. Choose two of the other winners of the 2013 Fairtrade awards and describe the reasons why they received this award.
- 3 Discuss whether these awards would act to influence you when purchasing products.

In Australia, Fairtrade coffee has evolved from a niche product when it was introduced to the market a decade ago, to now having a competitive retail presence. In 2012, of the approximately 23 million kilograms of coffee sold that year, more than 1.5 million kilograms were Fairtrade certified and available at almost 4000 retail outlets nationwide earning in excess of \$6000 billion annually. Large manufacturers and retailers such as Cadbury and Coles rely on Fairtrade's distinctive blue and green logo on their products to bolster their own social (responsibility) credentials.

A business that focuses too much on profit without fully taking into account the effects of its activity on society would be judged as not being ethical or socially responsible. Such a business may release waste into rivers and waterways, have insufficient emission controls in place (pollute the air), destroy natural environments, exploit its workers and conduct product testing on animals.

It is good business to be judged as an ethical producer or manufacturer as greater sections of society are now demanding that businesses minimise the negative effects that its activities have on the community and society. Many customers make considered decisions

Economics and business fact

Coffee is one of the world's most traded commodities. More than 1.4 billion cups of coffee are estimated to be consumed every day across the globe.

when purchasing products and services to ensure they are dealing with ethical businesses.

Another way businesses can demonstrate their positive approach to ethics and **social responsibility** is in the way they interact and give back to the community. Many businesses give generously to the community, but it is done without seeking any media attention and often the actions go unnoticed by their customers. It is done without the intention of gaining any competitive advantage.

social responsibility the accountability of a business towards its stakeholders; the idea that businesses should contribute to the welfare of their community



20.4 Differentiation of products and services

product differentiation the way products are developed and advertised with unique selling points to make them appear different from others on the market

It is a commonly held belief of marketing professionals that if a business is able to create a level of **product differentiation** for its particular goods, product or service within its specific product category, it will gain long-term advantages. These could be

in the form of being able to charge a higher price or being able to retain customers in the face of increased competition. While competitors may beat your product

on price or what your product offers in the way of features, you will retain customers because you have previously won their 'hearts and souls' and they will stick with you. However, this belief is currently being challenged in the smartphone product category. Apple previously has held the largest market share with its iPhone, but it is being challenged now by the updated Samsung Galaxy S5, BlackBerry Z10 and HTC One: all very good, cheaper smartphones.



Source 20.9 Samsung smartphones are strong competitors to Apple's iPhone.

Adopting an online presence

For a business to be innovative, it has usually created a better product or service, improved the method of production or come up with an unusual approach to increase its appeal to the marketplace. Many businesses in their desire to be competitive have adopted an online presence in addition to their traditional 'bricks and mortar' presence (factory or shop).

Economics and business fact

Roy Morgan Research showed a 12% growth in online retail sales in 2012.

There are many reasons for doing business online:

- The internet has created a new economy which by its explosive growth and sheer size has already changed our perception of the traditional way of doing business. For instance, companies like Amazon, Ebay, Deals and Gumtree have successfully reached into markets previously dominated by traditional stores. The size of a business (small, medium or large) does not affect the growth of it adopting an e-commerce direction.
- The internet provides a good business venue as the shop or outlet is only a click away from the prospective customers. With good marketing, a website can have more buyers than a business would have attracted with a bricks and mortar shop.

social media websites, applications and platforms that allow users to create and share content

- The image of the business is enhanced and taken more seriously if it has a good website presence. It allows a business to define its brand and then to build a **social media** strategy. Businesses

that do not have a website are judged to be 'behind the times' and not taking their customers and competitors seriously. It is a way of providing better customer support. Acquiring and retaining customers are key factors in the value chain of a business. Internet technology enables a business to provide effective customer support. This enhances the level of customer satisfaction and increases profitability.

- Information is more easily available to customers. In previous years, it took days to deliver products or service update information to customers. Now, within a couple of hours or even minutes, the

information can be published and shared with everyone via the website of the business.

- Costs can be cut as new technologies allow a business to put any part of its business online. This can include supply chain management, billing, shipping, procurement and so on. Businesses can streamline their processes through online systems, for example, ordering of components and paying accounts.
- The business is open on a 24/7 basis. Online shops are open 24 hours a day, 365 days of the year. When a normal bricks and mortar shop is closed, internet sales may continue, thereby increasing revenue to the business.
- Start-up costs are low. It is not expensive to develop and maintain a website.
- The World Wide Web allows business to take place in any part of the world. The importance of its actual physical location is greatly reduced.
- The business can become a global player – its marketplace is not limited to its physical environment.

Economics and business fact

Peapol, a US online grocer, has developed a feature on its mobile app that allows customers to restock household staples by scanning bar codes with their smartphones at home. The order then goes straight to the consumer's virtual shopping basket.



DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 20.4

Read the extract and answer the questions below.

Eight years ago, Aussie Farmers Direct started with one van, 100 litres of milk, and a local neighbourhood of customers that loved what we did. Today, Aussie Farmers Direct is an independent online retailer supplying a broad range of some 170 all-Australian products including fruit and veg, dairy, bread, deli items, meat, chicken, seafood, pasta and fresh gourmet meals, with free delivery to your door. Our 200-odd milkos, a most dedicated bunch of hand-picked franchisees, are small business entrepreneurs on this wild ride with us. Our customers are people who value not only our quality and the convenience of food shopping online at everyday prices, but respect our philosophy, our heart and our soul. It's why some 130 000-plus Aussies prefer to shop the Aussie Farmers Direct way.



Source 20.10 Aussie Farmers Direct provides a convenient service of delivering fruit and vegetable boxes to your home.

We're about much more than just getting your fresh produce delivered. We support Aussie farmers and their communities through the Aussie Farmers Foundation. We're hell bent on keeping Australia's food manufacturing sector alive and kicking, investing in our own Aussie Farmers Dairy. We believe in nurturing our schools, clubs and groups the healthy way with Aussie Farmers Fundraising. We educate and share the important stories of our farmers, our suppliers, our manufacturers, our milkos and the nation's issues regarding food security in our Aussie Farmers Direct *Magazine*. We're a business founded on soul; it's the only way we know how to connect. This keeps us grounded and connected to what's real and what matters. And this is what we believe makes our difference.

Aussie Farmers Direct provides an alternative way to buy what you need and want, when you want it, to make your life easier. We're fully aware of this era of lifestyle that's time poor, fast-paced, instant – we're all living it. We crave reliability and honesty because we simply don't have enough time for anything else.

We offer a genuine choice. It's a fine balancing act to offer different things to people with a range of needs and wants, but it's something we constantly review and finesse – after all, we can. With no huge supply chain or a mountain of product no one wants, we just work direct with the farmer, the manufacturer and our milkos. Simple. We'll stock some of your favourite products and help keep the businesses that make them afloat. Importantly, the choices we offer are varied and interesting, with an opportunity to discover something new. Aussie Farmers Direct is a chance to buy 100% Aussie food, produced ethically and sustainably, at everyday value. When you shop with Aussie Farmers Direct, you get to make a conscience vote with your mouse button.

Our farmers and suppliers need us as much as we need them. By electing to buy from Aussie Farmers Direct, you know that you're making a choice to buy Australian. Every Aussie Farmers Direct box represents a little bit of Australia – an investment in our country's farming and manufacturing. There's so much more satisfaction in buying direct from the local family farm, or meeting with the husband and wife team of a small business, and working with them to take their product to our audience. Australia is a nation built on small to medium-sized businesses, and we're one of them too.

Source 20.11 The story of Aussie Farmers Direct

(continued)

Visit the Aussie Farmers Direct website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks and use it to help you complete the following tasks:

- 1 Outline the methods and forms of social media customers can use to order and purchase their products from Aussie Farmers Direct.
- 2 Aussie Farmers Direct is based on a franchise business model. Explain what this means.
- 3 List the states in Australia where Aussie Farmers Direct operates. In which state did it commence and when?
- 4 Aussie Farmers Foundation was created in 2010. Explain the purpose of this foundation.
- 5 Discuss whether or not you believe that the Aussie Farmers Foundation would assist Aussie Farmers Direct to be judged as being ethical and socially responsible in the way it operates. If so, why?
- 6 Identify who Aussie Farmers Direct would see as its main competitors. Do you think it has sufficiently differentiated its business from these competitors? Justify your opinion.
- 7 Recall which business publication has recognised Aussie Farmers Direct as being successful in the way it established and operates its business.

Creating a social media presence

Businesses are increasingly using internet services to interact, share and create content with online communities as part of their overall marketing strategy and as a great way to put their products in contact with customers. Once a business has in place a website which is regularly updated and clearly represents its brand values, with content and messages that are controllable by the business, it can then use social media as a way of gaining input from other stakeholders. Social media comes in a variety of forms, such as:

- Facebook – a business can use this site to have conversations (chats) with its customers, promote special offers and post photographs and videos of its products
- Twitter – businesses can use this blogging service to send information and receive brief messages (enquires or feedback) from its customers
- YouTube – this online video hosting service is where both the business and customers can share their videos
- blogs – a business or person can post entries ('posts') about topics. This is often used by customers to recommend or not recommend to others particular products or services. It is important that businesses monitor blog entries to ensure they can counteract any negative comments.

Using social media as one of your marketing tools means that you are able to both quickly and cheaply contact a large number of potential customers globally

or craft your message to be personal and directed only to your predetermined target group. There are, however, some negatives that need to be considered when adopting this strategy, such as the risks of posting incorrect information and having it spread rapidly, receiving a negative review by another person, or experiencing legal problems related to privacy issues.

Using blended marketing

Blending marketing is a mixture of both traditional marketing and digital marketing (internet, social media and e-commerce) methods with the aim of creating a complete marketing strategy. Achieving the desired outcome means that you have reached your target market through exposure both offline and online.

SPOTLIGHT

Source 20.12 Spotlight, a company that rewards its VIP costumers

For example, Spotlight, a privately owned and operated Australian family business employing more than 6700 staff, adopts a blended marketing approach. When creating a marketing campaign for an upcoming sale of its fabric, craft and home-decorating products, Spotlight utilises emails in conjunction with direct mailing to its VIP customers to provide specific promotional material offering them preferential discounts. This approach is conducted prior to launching the campaign

to its broader target market through the use of printed brochures that are more widely distributed.

Undertaking this blended marketing strategy approach can bring many benefits to a business. One such benefit is that it provides the opportunity for greater

exposure to and development of brand awareness of your products and services. If successful, both your customer base and potential sales revenue should increase, so increasing your competitive advantage.

RESEARCH 20.2

- 1 Visit the website of Spotlight (see www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks), identify which forms of social media it uses and describe their role in its overall marketing strategies.
- 2 Visit the websites of the following large retail stores: David Jones, Myer and Harris Scarfe. Choose one of these stores and complete the following questions:
 - a Identify the types of social media the store is using and describe their purpose.
 - b Explore the product options available via the online store and their range of product offerings in their 'bricks and mortar' store. Are there any differences either in range or price? If so, explain why.

Open innovation

For a business to be competitive in the market, it must have a product or service that is wanted by consumers. This may mean that a new product or service needs to be developed or the life cycle of an existing product or service extended. To assist businesses in looking

beyond their own internal business capabilities to find solutions and ideas, many businesses are now adopting the concept of **open innovation**. New ideas are uncovered through connecting and working with people who have already developed an innovation. This

open innovation a concept that encourages utilising external and internal knowledge by sharing knowledge

allows for products or service to be developed in a less risky and quicker way. A global consultancy group, NineSigma, often assists businesses with implementing this increasingly popular strategy. An Australian arm of this group was established in the early 2000s to assist Australian businesses.

An organisation which has found success in adopting this concept is the Shell Global Group. Operating in the energy and petrochemical sector it employs approximately 87 000 employees in more than 70 countries and territories. In its quest to gain competitive advantage and reinforce its position as a leader in the oil and gas industry, Shell has adopted this open innovation approach in the hope of helping it build a sustainable energy future. Shell invites innovators from both within and external to its business to find solutions to the current challenges relating to meeting future global energy demands with less environmental impact. In 1996 Shell created the program GameChanger with the aim of improving the technical and commercial

viability of an idea in both a quick and affordable manner. Since its creation, over 1500 innovations have been submitted to GameChanger, with 100 of these ideas now having become reality (see the Shell website at www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks).

LG Electronics (LG) is a global leader and technology innovator offering a vast product range in the areas of home entertainment, mobile communications, home appliances, air conditioning and business solutions. In Australia, its slogan 'LG, Life's Good' can be judged as a marketing success as it communicates successfully LG's goal and vision of creating products that enrich lives, so enabling consumers to have more leisure time. LG recognises that innovation is a key driver to business success and by adopting an open innovation strategy it is not solely relying on its own internal resources for innovative technologies. One area it is focusing upon is developing technological products that assist environmentally friendly generation and storage, such as 'green' energy. LG hopes that by adopting this open innovation approach it will (with the help of other innovators' inputs) develop a range of new technologies such as printable solar cells, high capacity batteries, fuel cells and wind generators.



Source 20.13 LG is an example of a business leading in open innovation.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- A market is the place where sellers of particular goods and services meet with the buyers of those goods and services.
- Markets vary in form, scale, location and types of participants, as well as the types of goods and services traded.
- Competition is the desire to be more successful than others and occurs in all aspects of our lives, both as individuals and businesses.
- Competition for both businesses and consumers has a range of benefits.
- Businesses want to be able to gain a competitive advantage or edge over their rivals.
- In seeking to be competitive in the market, businesses can draw on a variety of strategic areas, such as gaining market share, managing their brand, adopting ethical and socially responsible behaviour, how they source their inputs, differentiating their product or service, and adopting an online presence, using social media, blended marketing and open innovation.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Define the following terms. Demonstrate your understanding by incorporating each term in a sentence.
 - a Monopoly
 - b Brand leader
 - c Product differentiation
 - d Competitive edge

- 2 Categorise the following statements as either true or false:
 - a A market is the process by which the prices of goods and services are established.
 - b Market share is the number of shares you own in a company listed on the Australian Securities Exchange.
 - c The internet has greatly reduced the importance of the physical location of all businesses.
- 3 Describe why it is important for a business to listen to and interact with its customers.
- 4 For each of the following factors, identify an issue that may concern a business:
 - a consumers or customers; for example, changing consumer preferences
 - b competitors
 - c suppliers
 - d regulatory bodies; for example, health warnings and plain paper packaging on products.
- 5 Analyse and evaluate the following statement: 'A business that sources its raw materials from a sustainable source is guaranteed to gain a competitive advantage over its competitors.'



Extended-response question

Read the case study and complete the task that follows.

The Rainbow Serpent is a Sydney based company specialising in promoting Aboriginal artists and marketing Aboriginal art and design. It is a family run business which was established in 1991 by Gerry Parnes, Brad Parnes and Caroline Friend. It has stores in Sydney and Brisbane International Airports and operates from its warehouse in Marrickville, Sydney Australia

The Rainbow Serpent's philosophy is to combine the sale of authentic Aboriginal products and promote local and international awareness of Australian indigenous artists and crafts people. All commercial ranges are of genuine design with artists receiving royalties for their sales. It stocks one of the largest ranges of authentic Aboriginal art, craft and endorsed commercial products in representing Aboriginal artists from the Tiwi Islands, Central and Western Deserts, Arnhemland, NSW, Queensland and Victoria. Proceeds and royalties from all purchases assist Aboriginal artists and communities. The gallery promotes community art centres as well as individual artists. Community art centres represented are Tiwi Designs, Bathurst Island NT, Munumpi Arts, Melville Island NT, Keringke Arts, Santa Teresa, NT.

Source 20.14 Rainbow Serpent, a company which promotes Australian Aboriginal art, craft and design

Discuss whether you believe this business would be judged as being 'socially responsible' in the way it operates its business. Provide examples of any actions taken by the business which you believe support your opinion.



21

The changing nature of the Australian and global workplace

Before you start

Main focus

In Australia there is an expectation that we as citizens should contribute to the economic wellbeing of both ourselves and our country. Undertaking work, either paid or voluntary, allows us to do this. This chapter focuses on the changing roles, responsibilities and expectations of participants in our changing workplace, both in Australia and globally.

Why it's relevant to us

At some stage in everyone's life there is the expectation that we will be part of the workforce. As workers we need to know and understand our rights and responsibilities as well as those of our employers. We also need to be aware of what institutions set employment guidelines and seek to protect us. In recent years, the nature of work and the workplace has changed and will continue to change over time.

Inquiry questions

- Who are the main participants in our Australian workplace?
- What is the role of governments in relation to improving employment conditions?
- What effect do governments, trade unions and employer groups have on the work environment in Australia and globally?
- What specific responsibilities does an employer have to both workers and government?
- Identify ways that the role of employees has changed in the workplace.

Key terms

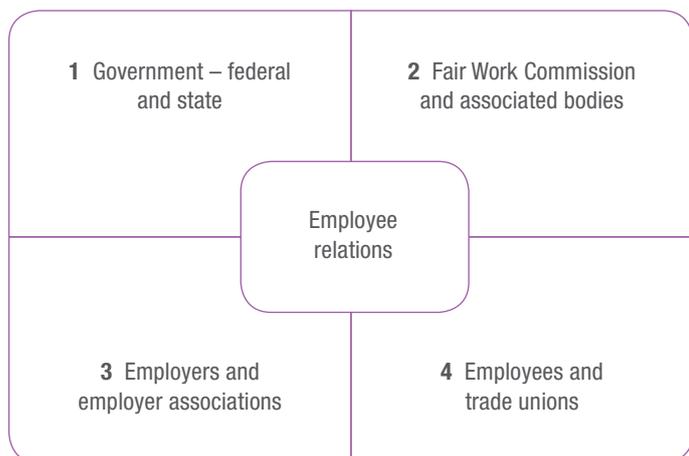
- Award
- Collective agreement
- Discrimination
- Employed
- Employee relations
- Employer association
- Entrepreneur
- Fair Work Commission
- Fair Work Ombudsman
- Government
- National Employment Standards
- Trade union
- Unemployed

Let's begin

In any work environment there are many stakeholders who participate to some degree in the relationships that occur in that particular workplace. The managing of these relationships is referred to in broad terms as 'employee relations'. In Australia, it is possible to easily determine the main participants and their roles and responsibilities. Looking globally, however, the task becomes more difficult as the operating environment in each country is different.

21.1 Main participants in Australia's work environment and their responsibilities

In Australia, we recognise that there are four main participating groups that have defined roles and responsibilities in managing our work environment.



Source 21.1 Participants (stakeholders) in Australian employee relations



Source 21.2 Sydney's central business district

Government

The federal government has an enormous influence on Australian **employee relations** through the enactment of

employee relations the relationship between employees (and their representatives) and employers (and their representatives) encompassing all aspects of their working lives including wages and conditions of employment

legislation that controls and influences the conduct of employee relations. The government is also the largest employer in the Australian economy, employing approximately 30% of the Australian workforce.

Both federal and state governments actively intervene in the conduct of employee relations by passing a multitude of laws that directly affect the employer–employee relationship

in areas such as pay and working conditions, employee contracts, taxation, occupational health and safety, equal opportunity and discrimination. The federal government is also responsible for the overall management of our economy, which then influences the level of inflation and economic activity.

Workplace health and safety

It is imperative that when workers go to their place of employment, there are specific laws in place relating to the health and safety of that workplace. The importance placed on having a healthy and safe workplace has increased over time, as have the penalties that are imposed on employers in the event that a workplace is

deemed unsafe and workers in fact suffer injury or some form of harm.

Safe Work Australia was created by the federal *Safe Work Australia Act 2008* and is a body made up of government (federal and state), employer and employee representatives with the purpose of developing and driving national policy development on work health and safety and workers' compensation matters. Its specific roles are to:

- achieve significant and continual reductions in the incidence of death, injury and disease in the workplace
- achieve national uniformity of the work health and safety legislative framework, complemented by a nationally consistent approach to compliance policy and enforcement policy
- improve national workers' compensation arrangements.

While Safe Work Australia is responsible for creating national policy and developing model work health and safety laws, it is then the responsibility of the federal, state and territory governments to regulate and enforce these laws in their respective jurisdictions. To ensure



Source 21.3 Safe Work Australia

Economics and business fact

In 2011-12, 228 workers died due to an injury incurred at work. This equates to 1.99 deaths per 100 000 workers. Work-related injury and illness were estimated to cost \$60.6 billion in the 2008-09 financial year. This represented 4.8% of GDP.

that all workplaces across Australia adhere to the same safe workplace practices, it is imperative that each jurisdiction passes legislation that is consistent across the various jurisdictions.

In 2011 the *Work Health and Safety Act* was passed by the federal government, with its primary objective being to provide for a balanced and nationally consistent framework to secure the health and safety of workers and workplaces by:

- (a) protecting workers and other persons against harm to their health, safety and welfare through the elimination or minimisation of risks arising from work; and
- (b) providing for fair and effective workplace representation, consultation, cooperation and issue resolution in relation to work health and safety; and
- (c) encouraging unions and employer organisations to take a constructive role in promoting improvements in work health and safety practices, and assisting persons conducting businesses or undertakings and workers to achieve a healthier and safer working environment; and
- (d) promoting the provision of advice, information, education and training in relation to work health and safety; and
- (e) securing compliance with this Act through effective and appropriate compliance and enforcement measures; and
- (f) ensuring appropriate scrutiny and review of actions taken by persons exercising powers and performing functions under this Act; and

- (g) providing a framework for continuous improvement and progressively higher standards of work health and safety; and
- (h) maintaining and strengthening the national harmonisation of laws relating to work health and safety and to facilitate a consistent national approach to work health and safety in this jurisdiction.

South Australia, Queensland, New South Wales, Tasmania, the Australian Capital Territory and the Northern Territory have all adopted the model Act and regulations. This approach has not yet been adopted by all states, however. For example, in Victoria a decision was made not to adopt the model policy at this stage and WorkSafe Victoria continues to enforce Victoria's occupational health and safety laws and regulations; Western Australia is still undecided.

Anti-discrimination laws

International human rights act to guarantee workplace equality and form the basis for our workplace anti-discrimination laws in Australia. Each state and territory has also enacted its own anti-discrimination legislation. **Discrimination** can be classified as either direct or indirect. Direct discrimination occurs when an employee is treated in a less favourable manner due to factors such as their gender, race, age and religion. Indirect discrimination is a little more subtle and may involve imposing a requirement, condition or practice easily compliable by one group but very difficult if not impossible by another group.

discrimination any practice that makes distinctions between different groups based on a range of characteristics such as gender, race, age and religion

If an employer takes adverse action against an employee or prospective employee, based on that person's race, colour, sex, sexual preference, age, physical or mental disability, marital status, family or carer's responsibilities, pregnancy, political opinion, religion, national extraction or social origin the action will be judged as unlawful. Under the Commonwealth workplace laws, the **Fair Work Ombudsman** has the power to investigate allegations of workplace discrimination and then start legal proceedings against the employer. The discriminatory adverse action provisions of the *Fair Work Act 2009* are extremely broad in scope,

Fair Work Ombudsman a central point of contact for the Australian national workplace with the power to investigate allegations of workplace discrimination and then start legal proceedings against the employer

and do not differentiate between direct or indirect, inadvertent or deliberate discrimination.

There are many situations occurring in the workplace that would be classified as 'adverse actions' or discriminatory acts, such as:

- undertaking conduct that is intimidating, offensive or humiliating
- making unwanted and offensive sexual advances (sexual harassment)
- treating an employee adversely because that employee has lodged a complaint of discrimination against their employer
- detrimentally altering the position of an employee in the organisation (such as demotion, pay rate classification and access to employee benefits)
- discriminating between one employee and other employees in areas such as complexity of tasks, harassment and comparative workload.



Source 21.4 A good workplace accepts diversity and ensures anti-discrimination laws are not broken.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 21.1

You be the judge! Read the scenarios below and discuss whether these are discrimination.

Scenario 1: A female employee who had been on maternity leave returned to work on a part-time basis. This employee, who held a senior management role at the global company, was then forced by her managers to try to complete a full-time workload in the part-time hours she had been contracted to work.

- 1 Do you think that she has been discriminated against because of her gender and management position? If so, what would you regard as a successful outcome? Justify your response.

Scenario 2: Tessa (aged 25 years) is being interviewed for a training position as a commercial pilot. John, her interviewer, while stating that he is impressed with Tessa, then goes on to ask her some further questions related to her personal life, such as whether she has any current plans relating to marriage or having children. Tessa tells John that she does not think his questions are relevant to her being accepted as a trainee pilot. John replies that he is asking these questions to ensure that the company gets an adequate return for the cost of her pilot training course.

- 2 Do you think that John's behaviour is appropriate or inappropriate? Justify your opinion.

Scenario 3: Harry works at a restaurant and is regularly rostered on for late-night shifts on Fridays. Harry requested to swap his shifts for an earlier time of Friday so he can attend his synagogue for Shabbat. His employer responded by telling him all employees must work the shifts they have been rostered, even though Harry knows that there are other employees who could swap shifts with him.

- 3 Classify the situation above as either indirect or direct discrimination. Justify your response.

Any employee, whether employed on a permanent (full-time or part-time) or casual basis, on probation, as an apprentice or trainee, or on a fixed-term contract, who feels that they have been unlawfully discriminated against in their employment is able to

lodge a complaint with the Fair Work Ombudsman. In the event of the action being proven, there are a number of remedies and penalties that can be imposed. For instance, the employer may be ordered to pay compensation. The maximum amount is \$10 200 per



Australian Human Rights Commission

Source 21.5 Australian Human Rights Commission logo

contravention performed by an individual and \$51 000 per contravention for a company.

The Fair Work Ombudsman does not have jurisdiction to look into all unlawful discrimination complaints. The Australian Human Rights Commission (AHRC), established in 1986 by the Australian government, is an independent statutory organisation that works to protect and promote the human rights of all people in Australia. Anyone who believes they have been subjected to any form of discrimination in areas such as education, sport and the provision of goods, services and facilities is encouraged to contact the AHRC for advice and, if necessary, to lodge a complaint. The AHRC will look into the alleged discriminatory issue and try to resolve the matter through the process of conciliation. There is a range of remedies resulting from conciliation: issuing an apology, paying compensation or introducing to staff anti-discrimination training are examples.

Employment and unemployment – how are they defined?

government a group with authority to govern a country or state

employed describes a person over the age of 15 years who has worked for 1 or more hours for payment

The federal **government** of Australia adopts a very specific approach when it measures the employment and unemployment levels in Australia. The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) uses the following definition of **employed** to describe people (over the age of 15 years) who, during the reference week:

- **worked** for one hour or more for pay, profit, commission or payment in kind in a job or business, or on a farm (comprising employees, employers and own account workers); or
- worked for one hour or more without pay in a family business or on a farm (i.e. contributing family workers); or

work the process whereby a person provides labour or other resources in return for a reward or remuneration

- were employees who had a job but were not at work and were:
 - away from work for less than four weeks up to the end of the reference week; or
 - away from work for more than four weeks up to the end of the reference week and received pay for some or all of the four weeks up to the end of the reference week; or
 - away from work as a standard work or shift arrangement; or
 - on strike or lock out; or
 - on workers' compensation and expected to return to their job; or
- were employers or own account workers, who had a job, business or farm, but were not at work.

The ABS definition of **unemployed** is 'persons aged 15 years and over who were not employed during the reference week' and:

unemployed describes a person over the age of 15 years who has not been paid for any work and has actively looked for work within a 4-week period

- had actively looked for full-time or part-time work at any time in the four weeks up to the end of the reference week and were available for work in the reference week, or
- were waiting to start a new job within four weeks from the end of the reference week and could have started in the reference week if the job had been available then (future job starters).

Economics and business fact

Australia's unemployment rate at February 2014 was 6%.

The federal government provides assistance to workers unable to find employment. This assistance is in a variety of forms:

- The Newstart Allowance is available if a person is aged between 22 years and age pension age, looking for paid work and prepared to meet the activity test while looking for work. In addition, an income and assets test is also applied.

- The Youth Allowance is available for people aged 16 to 24 years who are studying full-time, undertaking a full-time Australian apprenticeship, training or looking for work.

These schemes are administered by Centrelink, which operates as part of the federal Department of Human Services, responsible for delivering social and health-related payments and services.

21.2 Fair Work Commission and Fair Work Ombudsman

Fair Work Commission the national workplace relations tribunal responsible for dealing with workplace matters including dispute resolution, wages and terminations

award an agreement that sets out the minimum terms and conditions of employment relating to an industry

The **Fair Work Commission** (FWC), formerly known as Fair Work Australia (FWA), was established by the *Fair Work Act 2009* to be a one-stop shop for information, advice and assistance on workplace issues. The FWC has the power to establish and vary **awards**, make minimum wage orders, approve agreements, determine unfair dismissal claims and make orders to assist employees and employers to resolve disputes at the workplace.

The Fair Work Ombudsman (FWO) is the other key organisation in Australia's workplace relations system. It is also an independent statutory agency whose role is to:

- educate people about their rights and obligations in the workplace
- investigate any breaches of employee's workplace rights
- take relevant cases to court to ensure workplace laws are implemented.

The FWO appoints Fair Work inspectors who are entrusted to investigate possible breaches of workplace laws and rights. The inspectors do not act on behalf of either employees or employers and are impartial in their investigations. In the event of a suspected breach of workplace law, the FWO can bring court proceedings to a federal court.

Most Australian workplaces, since 1 July 2009, have been governed by a new system created by the *Fair Work Act 2009*.

On 1 January, 2010 the **National Employment Standards** (NES) came into existence providing a safety net for employees covered by the national workplace system. An employer must not contravene a provision of the NES.

A contravention of a provision of the NES may result in penalties of up to \$10 200 for an individual and \$51 000 for a corporation.

National Employment Standards the 10 minimum conditions that provide a safety net for employees



Source 21.6 The Fair Work Commission has the power to establish and vary awards, make minimum wage orders, approve agreements, determine unfair dismissal claims and make orders to assist employees and employers to resolve disputes at the workplace.



The 10 National Employment Standards (NES) involve the following minimum entitlements:

- maximum weekly hours of work – 38 hours per week, plus reasonable additional hours
- requests for flexible working arrangements – an entitlement allowing parents or carers of a child under school age, or of a child under 18 years with a disability, to request a change in working arrangements to assist with the care of the child
- parental leave and related entitlements – up to 12 months' unpaid leave per employee, plus a right to request an additional 12 months' unpaid leave, plus other forms of maternity, paternity and adoption-related leave
- annual leave – 4 weeks' paid leave per year, plus an additional week for certain shift workers
- personal/carer's leave and compassionate leave – 10 days' paid personal/carer's leave, 2 days' unpaid carer's leave as required, and 2 days' compassionate leave (unpaid for casuals) as required
- community service leave – unpaid for voluntary emergency activities and leave for jury service, with an entitlement to be paid for up to 10 days for jury service
- long service leave – a transitional entitlement for employees as outlined in an applicable premodernised award, pending the development of a uniform national long service leave standard
- public holidays – a paid day off on a public holiday, except where reasonably requested to work
- notice of termination and redundancy pay – up to 5 weeks' notice of termination and up to 16 weeks' severance pay on redundancy, both based on length of service
- provision of a Fair Work Information Statement – this must be provided by employers to all new employees and contains information about the NES, modern awards, agreement-making, the right to freedom of association, termination of employment, individual flexibility arrangements, union rights of entry, transfer of business, and the respective roles of the Fair Work Commission and the Fair Work Ombudsman.

Source 21.7 The National Employment Standards

21.3 Employers and employer groups

An employer is generally regarded as any person or business that engages one or more people and in return pays them a wage or salary. As an employer there are a range of responsibilities that are attached to employing and managing your staff, such as:

- ensuring your employees are receiving their correct pay based on the Australian minimum wage and National Employment Standards
 - providing a safe and equal opportunity workplace
 - paying employees their entitlements (holiday pay, sick leave, maternity and parental leave, and long service leave)
 - paying all required taxes (income tax (PAYG), payroll tax, company tax and Goods and Services Tax (GST))
 - making superannuation contributions on behalf of your employees
 - ensuring accurate records are being kept on staff.
- Employees can be engaged in a variety of ways:
- a permanent full-time basis where the employee enters into a continuing contract of employment. The number of hours worked per week (for example, 38 hours) will depend on the conditions of

either the award or **collective agreement** applicable to that business. The employee will be entitled to receive a salary or wages, leave entitlements and superannuation as well as accruing long service leave.

- a permanent part-time basis where the employee enters into a continuing contract; however, while entitled to all of the above employment conditions, they work fewer hours than a full-time employee. All calculations for pay and entitlements are made on a pro rata basis.
- a casual basis where an employee is often appointed by oral contract (not written) for short-term, irregular or seasonal work. They are usually engaged or paid on a daily or hourly basis and do not have access to many of the employment benefits available to permanent employees. Their wages usually include compensatory loads of between 15% and 20%. Legislation now protects casual employees terminated after having been employed for more than 12 months.

collective agreement an agreement that results from negotiations between an employer and employers at a workplace to determine pay and working conditions



Source 21.8 Employees may be hired on a full-time, casual or part-time basis.



Source 21.9 Negotiating a collective agreement

All workers in Australia, whether they are in permanent or casual employment arrangements, have the same right to work free from discrimination. It is unlawful for an employee to be treated poorly at work or to be fired on the grounds of discrimination.

Businesses (employers) may choose from one of the following arrangements relating to the pay and working conditions under which they employ their staff:

- an award, which is a legally binding document which relates to a given industry or occupation. The Fair Work Commission sets the minimum wages and conditions that must be paid to workers and incorporates the National Employment Standards.
- a collective agreement, which is a written agreement made between an employer and the employees setting out the terms and conditions of employment relevant to a particular workplace. These agreements also incorporate the NES. Once in operation, it replaces any award that would otherwise apply. The agreement prior to its approval is subject to checking against the Better Off Overall Test (BOOT) created by the *Fair Work Act 2009*. The purpose of this test is to ensure workers entering into this agreement will be better off overall.

The ABS reported that in May 2012 the most routine methods of setting pay for all employees were collective agreements (42%) and individual arrangements (38.7%). An award was the least popular method of setting pay (16.1%). The remaining 3.2% of employees were owner-managers of incorporated enterprises.

In 1992 the Australian government made it compulsory for employers to pay superannuation for their eligible employees. This is referred to as the 'Super Guarantee' (SG). To be deemed eligible an employee

has to have earned \$450 or more (pre-tax) in a calendar month working for an employer. Should the employee be under 18 years of age, they must also have worked more than 30 hours per week to be regarded as eligible. The employer must select a compliant super fund for the employee; however, if the employee is already a member of an authorised fund, the employer can pay the super guarantee into that fund on their behalf. All SG payments must be sent through to the fund on a quarterly basis. The federal government determines the rate of the SG. In 2014, the rate is 9.25% and it will incrementally increase to 12% by July 2025.

RESEARCH 21.1

Use the internet to discover the current rate of the Super Guarantee an employer must pay on behalf of their employees. Record your findings.

A paid parental leave scheme was introduced by the federal government on 1 January 2011. Under the existing NES, employees who had worked for 52 weeks for an employer before applying for leave were entitled to receive up to 12 months' unpaid maternity leave. It should be noted that many employers had already negotiated a paid component of their parental leave scheme. The introduction of this scheme was not to be seen by employers as a way of stopping their current arrangements, but instead complementing them and providing additional financial assistance to employees taking time out of the paid workforce to care for a child.



Source 21.10 Paid parental leave is aimed at providing financial support to all eligible working parents of newborn or recently adopted children.

Paid parental leave is aimed at providing financial support to all eligible working parents of newborn or recently adopted children. The government funds employers to provide up to 18 weeks' Parental Leave Pay or two weeks' Dad and Partner Pay when eligible employees take time off work to care for a new child. The rate of pay is based on the National Minimum Wage and it is the responsibility of both the employee and the employer to register with Centrelink. The employer needs to advise Centrelink of their employee's normal pay-cycle so that payments can be paid in accordance with it. Pay as You Go (PAYG) tax needs to be withheld from the employee's pay and then forwarded to the Australia Tax Office (ATO).

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 21.2

- 1 Explain why working parents receive financial support when they give birth to or adopt a child.
- 2 Do you think up to 18 weeks' Parental Leave Pay or 2 weeks' Dad and Partner Pay is a generous amount? Justify your answer.
- 3 Determine whether there have been any changes to the paid parental leave scheme. If so, describe the changes.

It is the responsibility of employers to pay a range of taxation to the federal government. The money collected from taxation acts as a vital revenue stream for the government. Employers are responsible for paying (some) and collecting the following taxes:

- Personal income tax is based on the personal earnings of tax payers. Income tax is withheld from the wages and salaries of employees and is calculated on a progressive rate, with a current tax-free threshold of \$18200. It is the responsibility of employers to deduct (withhold) this amount from the gross income of their employees and then forward the amount to the ATO.
- Company tax is calculated at the flat rate of 30%. This federal income tax is levied on the taxable income of the employer's business. It is calculated on assessable income excluding GST (paid or collected) less any allowable deductions for certain expenses incurred in relation to running the business. It is the responsibility of a business to lodge a tax return every year, regardless of whether it has a tax liability or not.
- Goods and Services Tax (GST) is a broad-based tax of 10% on most goods, services and other items sold or consumed in Australia. Any employer who operates a for-profit business that has a GST turnover of \$75000 or more, or a not-for-profit business with a GST turnover of \$150000 or more, needs to register for GST. The business must then include GST in the price of the products it sells and also claim credits for GST in the price of products it buys for the business. A tax invoice must be provided to the business' customers. Upon payment of the account, it is recommended that the business place the GST into a separate bank account, and report and pay GST amounts to the ATO when lodging its quarterly business activity statements (BAS).
- Payroll tax is levied by state governments in Australia and is based on the wages bill of the employer. The rate differs between states, with Tasmania imposing the highest rate of 6.10% and Queensland charging the lowest rate of 4.75%.



Source 21.11 Different states charge different payroll tax rates.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 21.3

- 1 Determine whether the rate of GST has changed. If so, what has it changed to?
- 2 Identify whether there has been any change in the goods and services on which GST is levied. If so, what are the changes?

employer association
a group of employers who unite to promote their common interest in employee relations as well as to share information and offer mutual support

Employer associations are groups of employers who unite to promote their common interest in employee relations as well as to share information and offer mutual support. There are three types of employer associations:

- 1 industry associations formed to represent employers from the same industry, such as Mining Council of Australia and the Master Builders' Association
- 2 professional associations made up of members of professions such as lawyers (the Law Institute), doctors (the Australian Medical Association) and engineers (Engineers Australia)
- 3 peak bodies comprised of large numbers of employers from varied industry types (the Australian Industry Group). Australia's largest and most representative business association is the Australian Chambers of Commerce and Industry (ACCI), which speaks on behalf of the nation's peak council of business organisations and regards itself as the authentic voice of Australian enterprise and industry.



Source 21.12 A member of an employer association will often act as a spokesperson.

The impact these associations have on the work environment is varied. They can act as the spokesperson for members of their organisation, advise their members of their rights and obligations, and represent employers in employee relations matters.

21.4 Employees and trade unions

When a person becomes an employee it is expected that they will fulfil the duties and responsibilities stated in their job description. Their performance at the workplace will be judged against established performance standards. If they meet or even exceed these standards they may be recognised with some form of reward. This could take the form of a pay rise, a bonus payment or a promotion. If, however, they do

not meet the predetermined performance standards, the employee may be required to undertake additional training to bring them up to the required standard or disciplinary counselling if their behaviour is not acceptable or appropriate.

Many businesses are now encouraging their employees to go above and beyond the normal expectations and responsibilities and to demonstrate

Economics and business fact

A well-known example of innovation and entrepreneurship was the development of Post-It notes by 3M back in the mid-1970s. In 1970 a scientist, Spencer Silver, who was working in the 3M research laboratories, developed a new adhesive (weaker than 3M's current one) which, while it stuck to things, could also then be lifted off. The idea was kept on the back burner until 1974 when Arthur Fry (another scientist), who was a member of a local church choir, decided to try the glue on small markers in his hymn book. He found they would stay in place but when required could be lifted off without damaging the book. This discovery then led to the commercial production of the Post-It Notes.

entrepreneur an employee within a business who is takes risks, demonstrates innovative practices and often turns an idea into a profitable product or service for the business

initiative and in some case act as **entrepreneurs**. They are encouraging their employees to take risks, show initiative, be innovative, see opportunities where others don't see them and then sell their ideas to others in the business. It is not only the individual that benefits from

developing their entrepreneurial skills, but also the business.

It is the role of managers to create a positive workplace culture where employers are encouraged and rewarded for being proactive and demonstrating initiative, whether they are in positions of authority or not. It has been demonstrated that when people

enjoy their work, they are more creative. Modern organisations are now adopting a more team-oriented approach, which then encourages group creativity and collaboration of ideas.

For example, at Google, what started as a good management technique is now not as popular. In the past Google allowed its engineers to spend 20% of their time working on projects of their choosing. Some of the company's most successful products (for example, Gmail, AdSense, GTalk, Google Sky and Google News) were developed during this free time. When Google first started, Larry Page and Sergey Brin described the use of 20% time as a way to keep the company innovating. Unfortunately, employees are finding it harder and harder to find the 20% time in their schedules and upper level management have been instructing lower level managements not to approve the 20% time requests.

A **trade union** is a group of employees, usually from the same or similar industry, who have combined to protect their interests in all matters relating to their employment. The impact that trade unions have had on the work environment has been significant. They have achieved improvements in wages, working conditions and entitlements (benefits) such as annual leave, pensions, superannuation, maternity leave, parental leave and carer's leave.

At the workplace, employees who have joined a union elect another employee member at that particular workplace to become their shop steward. That person then acts as the first point of contact for an employee with their trade union. Unions are run on a day-to-day basis by union executives, who are full-time union officials. In each state of Australia there are two key

trade union an association of workers in a trade or profession focused on protecting rights and interests of employees



Source 21.13 Google is known for being a positive place to work.



Source 21.14 Australian Council of Trade Unions logo

union organisations: their local state-based body (for example, the Victorian Trades Hall Council, Unions NSW, Queensland Council of Unions, SA Unions, Unions WA and Unions Tasmania) and the national peak body of the Australian union movement (the Australian Council of Trade Unions (ACTU)).

RESEARCH 21.2

Using the internet, research an Australian trade union and then prepare a written report explaining the following elements:

- a brief history of the union
- the number of members and occupations covered by that union
- any current campaigns being undertaken by that union
- the cost of membership and who is eligible to join that union
- the benefits of being a member of that union.

Possible unions to investigate include the Australian Workers Union (AWU), Electrical Trades Union (ETU), Australian Education Union (AEU) and Australian Metal Workers Union (AMWU).



Source 21.15 Teachers are part of a federal union, the Australian Education Union.

Reflecting and consolidating

Chapter summary

- The main participants in our work environment are the government (federal and states), the Fair Work Commission (and associated authorities), employers and employer associations, employees and trade unions.
- Governments are responsible for enacting legislation to improve the conditions of workers; for example, health and safety laws and anti-discrimination laws.
- The Australian Bureau of Statistics provides specific definitions of 'employed' and 'unemployed' people.
- All workers have the right to work in a workplace that is safe and free from discrimination.
- Statutory bodies such as the Fair Work Ombudsman and the Australian Human Rights Commission regulate acts of discrimination.
- The Fair Work Commission is a one stop shop for information, advice and assistance on workplace matters.
- The Fair Work Ombudsman's role is to educate, investigate and ensure workplace laws are implemented and complied with.
- National Employment Standards (NES) are 10 minimum standards which act as a safety net for employees.
- Employers have a range of responsibilities relating to their employees, such as pay (award or collective agreement), entitlements, working conditions, providing a safe workplace, and paying taxes and super contributions.
- Employees can be employed on a permanent (full-time or part-time) or casual basis.
- Employer associations support, share information and represent employers.
- Trade unions act to protect the rights of employees.

Short-answer questions

- 1 Define the following terms. Demonstrate your understanding by incorporating each term in a sentence.
 - Award
 - National Employment Standards
 - Trade union
 - Fair Work Ombudsman
 - Discrimination
- 2 What is currently the most popular method of organising workers' pay and working conditions at workplaces?
- 3 What are the criteria used by the ABS to categorise a person as being 'employed'?
- 4 Which body is responsible for setting the safety net of minimum wages and working conditions in Australia?
- 5 Discuss whether you believe the amount of regulation we currently have covering the workplace in Australia is a positive or negative influence on Australian businesses being competitive in the global market.

Extended-response question

In 2014 two large employers (Toyota and Ford) decided to cease their manufacturing operations in Australia. Many reasons were put forward as to why these large businesses were pulling out of Australia. One reason was workplace culture. An example of this was the expectation of some employees that they had 'the right to take a long weekend' and get paid for it by claiming Monday as a sick day, resulting in an adverse effect on productivity. Another reason was the interventionist and militant role played by some trade unions, causing workers to strike for long periods and then banning overtime when requested by the company as a way of overcoming lost production.

Discuss whether you believe that the reasons outlined above for manufacturers ceasing their Australian operations are valid or whether there are other important reasons that have led to this decision.



Source 21.16 Melbourne, Victoria

Civics and citizenship

Citizenship, diversity and identity

Identity and the media

National identities are made up of lots of different factors. Cultural practices, morals, laws, attitude towards religion and social values all help form an identity that represents an entire country. The media representation of a country's identity has a considerable impact on how we view ourselves and the national identities of our countries.

national identity a collection of shared feelings, attitudes and values that represent an entire country

The reporting of global events hosted by Australia, such as the 2000 Olympic Games in Sydney, provide other countries with an insight into the cultural and social identity of Australia.



Source 21.1.1 Fireworks at the closing ceremony of the 2000 Sydney Olympics

Similarly, global reporting of incidents in Australia can lead to a very different type of national identity. For example, after several attacks on Indian international students in Melbourne in 2009, many Indian newspapers reported potential racism as a part of the Australian identity.

Neither the media coverage of the Sydney Olympics nor the attacks on international students is an accurate representation of an Australian identity, but the way in which the media reports on events and represents

Australia will have an impact on other countries' perceptions of Australians.

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people and the media

The media can be a very powerful tool for spreading a particular message. Within Australia, the media has been used to address the **disparity** between the health and life expectation between Indigenous Australians and non-Indigenous Australians. A non-Indigenous Australian has a life expectancy of 79, while Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people have a life expectancy of 59. The difference in life expectancy and well being has led to an initiative called 'Closing the gap'. Researchers found that an Indigenous Australian is twice as likely to die from a disease or serious illness as a non-Indigenous Australian.

disparity a large difference

One area of health risks that is particular high in Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities are diseases caused by smoking. Over 50% of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people smoke, a statistic far higher than in any other group in Australia. In reaction to this, the 'No Smokes' campaign was launch which used the media to spread the message about the dangers of smoking. The campaign targeted teenagers and young adults through utilising social media (particularly



Source 21.1.2 The 'No Smokes' campaign website. The campaign employed social media as a way to spread the message of dangers of smoking. Taken from @Menzies School of Health Research, No Smokes website. Contact info@nosmokes.com.au for more information.

YouTube). In this case, the media has been used to address a major health concern within Australia.

Australia and global connectedness

Over the past few decades it has become increasingly easy for people to live and work overseas. Generations ago an overseas trip would have been a luxury that few families could have afforded; now overseas holidays are fairly commonplace. Over 800 000 Australians choose to work overseas, primarily in the United Kingdom and the United States. While this would be an exciting adventure for the people involved, there is a concern that Australia's most highly skilled workers are leaving the country (over 44% of Australian working overseas have a university qualification). This concern is known as 'brain-drain' in the popular media and there is some debate surrounding whether or not it is a significant issue.

The Australian values of respect, acceptance and 'fair play' extend beyond our own borders. Australia is part of a bigger global community and is known for representing good **global citizenship**. The government organisation

Australian Aid delivers aid from Australia to underdeveloped countries, particularly in the Asian region. Many Australians work for Australian Aid providing desperately needed support to countries that require assistance in health care, education and emergency relief. For example, Australia provides \$500 million dollars to Papua New Guinea, primarily to help build schools and develop the education system.

global citizenship
practising awareness of the
wider world and having a
sense of your own role as a
citizen of the world

PNG is Australia's closest neighbour. Despite positive economic growth rates in recent years, PNG's social indicators are among the worst in the Asia Pacific. Approximately 85% of PNG's

mainly rural population is poor and an estimated 18% of people are extremely poor. Many lack access to basic services or transport. Poverty, unemployment and poor governance contribute to serious law and order problems. Improving the lives of poor people and promoting stability are central to Australia's interests.

Source 21.1.3 Australian aid in Papua New Guinea

Australians working for NGOs

A **non-governmental organisation (NGO)** is a group or organisation which works on important human rights issues without influence or orders from a government. NGOs play an important part in improving the living conditions and civil rights of many impoverished people around the world. Many Australians choose to work for NGOs in order to make a difference to the local and global community.

non-governmental organisation (NGO) is an organisation working on important human rights issues without influence and orders from a government

World Vision Australia is an important global NGO that seeks to deliver children out of poverty around the world. The organisation was formed in 1966 and is based in Melbourne. The group has strong links to Christian churches and receives funding from donations from the public as well as the Christian church. This NGO employs over 600 people (many of whom are Australian) and provides emergency relief and aid in 94 of the world's poorest countries.

Australian Tim Costello is the CEO of World Vision Australia and was given the Order of Australia in 2006 for his good works with the NGO and his many contributions to the Australian community.

DEVELOPING YOUR UNDERSTANDING 21.1.1

- 1 List three reasons why you think overseas university students might want to study in Australia.
- 2 Define the term 'global citizenship' and outline how Australia reflects the term through Australia's aid program in Papua New Guinea.
- 3 Outline what the term 'brain-drain' might mean and how the term relates to Australians working overseas.
- 4 Visit the 'No Smokes' website (via www.cambridge.edu.au/hass9weblinks) and identify three different ways the campaign uses the power of the media to spread the message of the dangers of smoking.
- 5 Analyse the ways in which World Vision Australia and Tim Costello demonstrate good global citizenship.

Glossary

GEOGRAPHY

acidification when a substance becomes acidic, or is converted into an acid

adaptation an evolutionary trait a plant or animal develops to better suit its environment

Agricultural Revolution a period of massive change in the way that agriculture is practised

agriculture the science or practice of farming, including cultivation of the soil for the growing of crops and the rearing of animals to provide food, wool and other products

anaerobic (organism) an organism that can live without free oxygen (oxygen in the air)

animal husbandry the agricultural practice of breeding and raising livestock

appropriate technology the idea that technology use in middle- and low-income countries should meet the community's needs, be compatible with local socio-cultural traditions, and be cheap, small and promote independence by using local natural and human resources

artisan mining individual or small group mining activity carried out using minimal machinery and very basic tools, such as a bucket and spade

aspect the warming effect of the sun's rays on vegetation

bed and breakfast a guest house that just supplies sleeping accommodations and a meal in the morning

biodiversity the diversity of plant and animal life in a particular habitat

biofuel fuel made from natural sources

biome grouping of plant and animal communities that have adapted to inhabit particular parts of the Earth's surface

bund an embankment, like that of a river's edge

capacitor a passive electronic component – it does not require extra electricity to function – that, in a circuit, holds a voltage, or a charge, for a specific period of time when the electronic device is unplugged from an electrical outlet

cereal crop grasses grown to produce edible grains, such as wheat, oats and rice

chlorophyll the green substance in plants that allows them to use the energy from the sun

city a larger town; in Australia this is generally defined by being a metropolitan area

climate the long-term changes in temperature and rainfall experienced in an area

climax vegetation the most dominant form of vegetation in an area

cloud computing broadly, programs and services available via the internet: the 'cloud' is used as a metaphor to symbolise the worldwide and intangible character of the internet

colonisation the process in which a species enters a new area and dominates it

coloniser the first to inhabit an area

commodity a raw material or primary agricultural product that can be bought and sold, such as copper or coffee

conflict mineral a mineral mined in areas where there are armed conflict and human rights abuses

confluence the point at which rivers meet

coniferous describing an evergreen tree that grows cones

consensus an agreement reached by a group as a whole

crepuscular active at dawn or in the early evening

Crown land land owned by the government

deciduous describing trees that drop their leaves each year, typically for winter

decomposer an animal, fungus or bacterium that breaks down or cleans up waste matter

demographic related to the structure of a population

desert an area that receives less than 250 millimetres rainfall per year

diaspora a community of people who have had to leave their homeland but wish to return or remain connected to it

digital divide inequalities in access and use of technology between countries, or between rural and urban regions, and even between men and women

diurnal active during the day

- domestic tourism** where people travel within their own country for recreation
- domesticated** describing a plant grown from seeds originally harvested from plants growing wild, and which are used to plant areas such as rice fields
- domestication** the process of taming animals or cultivating plants for uses that benefit humans
- dryland agriculture** farming that depends only on natural rainfall and soil moisture to water crops
- dugout** a shelter that is dug in the ground and roofed over
- ecology** the way in which everything living interacts with the world around it
- economic development** improvement in the standard of living in a region as measured by financial indicators
- economy of scale** the advantage that a larger producer or consumer has over a smaller one because of costs that do not increase proportionately with size or amount purchased
- ecosystem** an area of the Earth's surface where living organisms interact with parts of the Earth
- El Niño** extensive warming of the eastern and central Pacific Ocean, leading to an increased possibility of dry conditions in eastern Australia
- environmental degradation** a change or disturbance to the environment perceived as harmful or undesirable
- erosion** the wearing away of the surface of the Earth by the action of water and wind
- eutrophication** an excess of nutrients in water, resulting in an increase of bacteria and plant life, which leads to the deaths of animals as the oxygen levels in the water decrease
- evapotranspiration** the process by which water evaporates from land and water and is expired from plant material and joins the atmosphere
- e-waste (electronic waste)** rubbish created by throwing away used electronic devices and components, such as batteries; also, the disposal of materials involved in their manufacture or use
- expatriate** a person who lives and works outside their native country
- extensive agriculture** crop or livestock production over large areas of land that requires fewer inputs such as labour; one example is wool production
- exurbia** a residential area beyond the suburbs
- factory farm** a farm where many animals are raised together in a small space
- fair trade** trade based on the buying and selling of products (usually from poorer nations) that have been mined, grown or manufactured under humane working conditions, with appropriate wages for the workers and minimal environmental impact
- floating** (a company) letting the public buy shares in it; this gives the company money to invest or spend
- food chain** the sequence of feeding arrangements in an ecosystem in which each member may be food for the next highest member of the chain
- food security** the knowledge that enough food will be provided for the population now and in the future
- footloose** able to relocate easily
- fragmented** broken up into smaller or separate parts
- GDP (Gross Domestic Product)** the total value of all goods and services produced in a particular country; often used to compare the size of national economies
- geographical concept** a key notion or idea that helps us to explore, understand and explain features, patterns and relationships on the Earth's surface
- global citizenship** our rights and responsibilities as citizens of the global community as well as our rights and responsibilities as citizens in our local community and the country we live in
- globalisation** the process by which the world is becoming more interconnected, with an increase in social and economic integration between countries (for example, an increase in international trade and communication)
- governance** the set of rules, organising processes and structures that groups, societies and countries follow to make decisions and maintain order in their day-to-day living

- Green Revolution** a period beginning in the 1940s where new agricultural techniques brought great increases in production and greatly decreased the incidence of hunger worldwide
- gross national income (GNI) per capita** the average total annual income of each person in a particular country
- hectare** a unit of land equal to 10 000 square metres
- high-yielding varieties (HYVs)** varieties developed by selective breeding and cross-breeding to achieve faster growth and to produce more seeds
- hi-tech** products and technology that are complex, and that use or produce the latest advances in computers and electronics
- hunting and gathering** the practice of obtaining food requirements through the hunting of wild animals and the collection of naturally growing plants and plant products
- identity** the ways in which we define ourselves
- immigrant** a person who has left their country of origin and settled in a new country
- industrialism** when a country's economic and social systems become based on the production of goods through mechanised industries in urban centres, rather than through agriculture
- industry** a type of commerce or business, such as the metal industry or the tourism industry
- information and communications technology (ICT)** devices that can electronically receive, store, retrieve and manipulate digital data, and communication technologies, such as the internet and wireless, that transmit information
- in situ** in the original position; not having been moved
- intensive agriculture** where the land is intensively farmed with high inputs of things such as labour, water and fertiliser; one example is wheat production
- international tourism** where people travel outside their own country for recreation
- internet** a worldwide interconnected network of computers
- intertidal wetland** the part of a shore between the high water and the low water marks
- irrigation** the process of supplying water to a crop, typically via channels
- La Niña** cooling of the central and eastern Pacific Ocean, leading to an increased possibility of wet conditions in eastern Australia
- landscape aesthetic** the way a person responds to their environment
- leaching** the draining of water-soluble compounds out of the soil by the flow of water
- legume** a type of plant, such as clover, soybeans and lupins, that carries nodules on its roots; working with certain bacteria, legumes are responsible for the fixing of nitrogen in the soil
- low- or middle-income country** a country that has a lower GNI per capita than wealthier countries
- maize** a grain known in most English-speaking countries as 'corn'
- manufacture** to produce something in a mechanical way
- megatrend** a major movement, pattern or trend emerging in the global environment
- metropolitan** relating to a large city, its surrounding suburbs and other neighbouring communities
- migration** movement from one location to another
- monocot** a flowering plant that grows its parts in threes (the number of petals is typically a multiple of three); it only produces one embryonic leaf (cotyledon) in its seeds
- monoculture** the growing of a single crop in an area
- nitrogen** an odourless, colourless, unreactive gas forming about 78% of the Earth's atmosphere
- nocturnal** active at night
- nomadic herding** moving cattle or other animals, such as goats or yaks, from place to place as food becomes available and so as not to exhaust the biome
- north-south gap** the gap between the economically 'richer' and economically 'poorer' countries of the world – the 'haves' and the 'have-nots'
- nostalgia** remembering good things about the past
- ocean current** the regular movement of water in the ocean in a particular direction

- offshoring** moving a business activity or part of a business activity to an overseas location
- offsite sedimentation** the contamination of waterways by accumulated sediments washed from the land
- orographic rainfall** rainfall produced when rain-bearing winds are forced upwards by mountain ranges; they then form clouds and (often) rain
- outsourcing** contracting part of a business function to another person or business
- panicle** a cluster of rice flowers from which the grain develops
- pastoral land** land used for the grazing of cattle or sheep
- penal colony** an institution where prisoners are held (often located on an island or an isolated location from which escape is difficult, or impossible)
- peri-urban** areas just beyond the boundaries of the major urban centres
- perpetual frost** an area that is constantly covered in ice, such as the polar caps
- personal mobility** one's ability to move around
- pesticides** substances used to destroy insects and other organisms that can harm or damage plants or animals
- phosphate** the salt of phosphoric acid, which is commonly used as fertiliser
- photosynthesis** the process of plants converting sunlight to energy
- population** the number of people residing in an area
- precipitation** water, in forms such as rain, snow or hail, that condenses in the air, becomes too dense to remain suspended, and falls to the Earth's surface
- primary producer** an animal that eats only plant matter
- principles** rules or morals that a person or company/group decides to follow
- rainforest** a tropical forest environment with a large rainfall
- rural-urban migration** the movement of workers from farmlands to cities and other urban areas
- salinisation** when salt is deposited on the soil
- salinity** the level of salt in soil and water
- savanna** a grassy plain with scattered trees and shrubs
- scale** (on a map) the amount by which the real world has been reduced so that it fits onto the map
- sea changer** the colloquial term for a person who opts for what they perceive as an improved quality of life by the coast
- selector** a farmer, often with few resources, who bought a small parcel of land following the land reforms in Australia in the 1860s
- sequent occupance** land use changing over a period of time
- service centre** a settlement (village, town or city) that has shops and services such as education, health and banking; larger service centres (cities) have a greater range of services than smaller service centres
- shareholder** a person with a financial interest in a company
- smelter** a factory where a metal (such as tantalum) is melted under extreme heat to separate the mineral (such as coltan) from the ore containing the mineral; conflict-free smelters use only minerals from lawful sources
- soil acidification** a gradual increase in the acidity of a soil, which reduces crop productivity
- solstice** the two times of the year when the sun is at its greatest distance from the celestial equator. The summer solstice is the longest day of the year and the winter solstice is the shortest
- squatter** a farmer who in colonial Australia occupied large tracts of Crown land in order to raise sheep or cattle
- staple food** the most commonly eaten food in a specific region
- subsistence** (agriculture) producing just enough for the family to survive
- surplus** excess
- sustainable agriculture** farming that is conducted in a way that preserves resources

synthetic pesticide a pesticide in which the active ingredient has been manufactured (as opposed to a natural pesticide, in which the active ingredient occurs naturally)

tantalum a heat-resistant powder, refined from ores such as coltan (columbite–tantalite), that can hold a high electric charge

tariff a government tax on imports and exports

temperate belonging to a broad climate zone between the tropics and the poles

title deed a legal document that shows ownership of a piece of land

topography the natural or artificial features of an area

town a built-up area somewhere between a city and a village in size

trace element a chemical element required only in minute amounts by living organisms for normal growth

trade the buying and selling of goods and services

transnational companies (or corporations) companies that operate their businesses in and across more than one country; also called multinational companies

tundra an area where plant growth is limited by low temperatures and a short growing season; usually found at high latitudes or high altitudes

turbidity cloudiness in the water due to the presence of extremely fine soil particles that are held in suspension

urbanisation an increase in the proportion of people living in built-up areas

vegetative phase the stage at which a plant produces its leaves

venture capitalist a company or individual that invest large sums of money in small companies to help them start up and grow

vineyard a plantation where grapevines are grown, usually for use in wine-making

water table the level below which the ground is saturated with water

weather the state of the atmosphere at a given time

winery a place where wine is made

World Wide Web (WWW) the sites and pages that are connected across the internet

worldview the collection of ideas, beliefs and spiritual connections through which we – personally, as groups and as cultures – understand, connect with and interact with the world

xeric extremely dry, or adapted to extremely dry conditions

zonation variation in plant life due to differing environmental conditions

HISTORY

1848 revolution an uprising in the Netherlands by middle-class people who wanted more political rights

absolute monarchy a political system in which monarchs have complete power, including over armed forces

age of consent the minimum age at which it is legal for a person to have sexual intercourse

amphibious involving land forces that arrive by sea

animism the belief that spirits exist in inanimate objects, including plants, mountains and weather phenomena

anti-colonialism a belief that a state or country should be independent, and not under the rule of another country

anti-racism opposition to any form of racism

anti-semitism prejudice against or hatred of Jewish people

arbitration settling disputes by using an independent judge

aristocracy a privileged upper class of hereditary nobles

Armageddon from the Bible, the last battle between good and evil

armaments military weapons and equipment

armistice the ending of hostilities by mutual agreement

attrition the wearing down of enemy numbers by constant attack

bannermen a professional military group loyal to the Chinese emperor, in which positions were inherited by family members

bends a condition divers can acquire by surfacing too quickly from deep water

- benevolent asylum** an institution used to house impoverished families who could not support themselves
- bereavement** the deprivation of relations and friends through death
- bicameral parliament** a parliament consisting of two houses or chambers
- blockade** isolation of an area by hostile ships or forces in order to prevent the entrance and exit of traffic and commerce
- bluestocking** an insulting term for women who pursued higher learning in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries
- bourgeoisie** capitalist owners and rulers
- boycott** the refusal to buy goods, usually for political reasons
- British Raj** British rule in India
- cameleer** a camel driver
- canal** an artificial waterway large enough for boats to travel upon
- capitalism** an economic system based on private ownership and free-market enterprise
- capitalist** a businessperson who seeks profit by using others' labour
- carding** the process of combing raw wool or cotton to make it smooth and to remove impurities
- cash crop** a crop grown for sale, rather than to feed farmers or their stock
- casualties** those wounded or killed in war
- catalyst** a person or thing precipitating a change
- cavalry** soldiers who fight on horseback
- Chartism** a social movement of people committed to the People's Charter, a set of basic political claims, including the right to vote
- chattel** a movable property or slave
- cochineal** a scarlet dye made from the cochineal insect
- cohong** a guild or group of 13 merchants who were authorised by the Chinese emperor to have a monopoly over trade, especially tea and silk, with the West
- collectivism** an outlook that places the interests of individuals as subordinate to the group for the benefit of all
- colonial system** arrangements made for the successful operation of colonies
- colony** a settlement formed in a conquered territory
- commodity** an item that is bought or sold, especially a raw material or something that is manufactured, for which there is a commercial demand
- conciliation** establishing goodwill
- Confucianism** a philosophy derived from teachings of Chinese philosopher Confucius (551–479 BCE)
- conscript** a person who is enrolled for compulsory military service
- conscription** compulsory enlistment for military service
- coolie** an insulting term for Indian and Chinese indentured workers in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries
- daimyo** a feudal Japanese lord, roughly equivalent to a medieval European duke or earl
- demobilisation** disbanding troops back into civilian life
- depot** a station for assembling recruits
- diaspora** the forced or voluntary movement of people from their homeland to new regions
- discriminatory** showing an unfair bias or prejudice
- dispossession** taking a people's land or dislodging or removing them from their territory
- diversion** a strategy designed to divert an enemy's attention
- domestic system** a system of production in houses, cottages and villages, using hand-operated tools
- dripping** fat melted from roasted meat and used for cooking or as a spread on bread or damper
- drover** a person who drives a herd of animals long distances
- egalitarianism** the idea that everyone should have equal rights and opportunities
- Eight Regent Ministers** the ministers entrusted by Xianfeng Emperor before his death to guide his son when he assumed the throne
- emancipist** a convict who served their term of imprisonment and became a free member of colonial society
- embarkation** going on board a ship or plane

- Enlightenment** a philosophical movement that placed emphasis on reason rather than tradition and gave rise to many progressive ideas
- entrepreneur** one who undertakes an enterprise with a chance of profit or loss
- equilibrium** a state of balance
- ethnic** of a social group with a common national or cultural heritage
- eugenist** a person who wants to improve natural characteristics by controlled breeding
- eulogy** a speech praising a person, usually given at their funeral
- exemption** freedom from an imposition
- extraterritoriality** an exemption to local law; typically as a result of diplomatic negotiations
- factory system** a system where many workers gather in a factory to operate large-scale machinery
- female infanticide** the killing of female infants
- feminism** advocacy for the belief that men and women are equals and should enjoy all the same rights
- feminist** a person who believes that women and men are equals and should enjoy all the same rights
- fire-stick farming** environmental management to create regeneration and grasslands by controlled burning
- foot-binding** the painful practice of tightly binding the feet of young women, breaking the foot bones to stop their feet from growing; it was thought to make the women, beautiful, dainty and feminine
- fossil fuel** a non-renewable fuel formed by geological pressure over a long time span
- furlough** military leave of absence
- girmit** a term for an Indian indentured labourer; derived from the word 'agreement'
- global warming** a rise in the Earth's average temperature due to the atmosphere's inability to release heat because of the growth of greenhouse gas emissions
- governess** a female teacher, usually teaching children in a private house
- Grand Canal** begun in 486 BCE; the longest artificial waterway in the world; crucial for transportation of goods and people in China
- greenhouse gas** a gas, such as carbon dioxide, that contributes to the insulating effect of the Earth's atmosphere
- Han Chinese** the largest ethnic group in China
- hierarchy** a system of organisation in which individuals or groups are ranked one above the other
- Hindu** a member of India's major religion, which involves the worship of many gods and a belief in reincarnation
- hoeing** using a long-handled tool to dig the earth
- homogeneous** similar or of the same type
- howitzer** a big gun for the high-angle firing of shells
- Hun** an offensive term for a German person
- imperialism** the domination of one or more nations by another, which seeks to use the wealth and people of the dominated nation for its own interests
- incapacitated** permanently injured
- indentured labour** a system in which workers enter contracts to perform labour at reduced wages for a certain period of time, usually at a place far from their home
- indigenous** native to, or belonging to, a particular land or region
- Indigenous** relating to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people
- individualism** an outlook that emphasises the rights and interests of individuals
- infantry** soldiers who fight on foot
- infrastructure** structures (for example, roads, railway lines and canals) needed for the operation of a particular service
- intoxicant** alcoholic drink
- intrigue** a secret and underhand scheme
- investment** the commitment of money or capital with the aim of gaining a profitable return
- invulnerable** not to be injured or disturbed
- iron gang** a party of convict workers undergoing further punishment by being chained together
- irregulars** troops that do not belong to the regular army

- Islam** a religion based upon belief in one God of whom Muhammad is the chief and last prophet
- junk** a Chinese sailing ship or river boat
- kanaka** a disparaging term for a South Sea Islander brought to Australia to work; the word is derived from the Melanesian term *kanak*, meaning 'person'
- kowtow** to kneel and bow, touching one's forehead to the ground
- land fill** buried waste
- lithography** the process of making a drawing or design on a stone or metal plate, so that multiple impressions in ink can be taken from it
- loom** a machine on which thread is woven into cloth
- lugger** a small sailing boat with two or three masts used for pearling or fishing near the coast
- manhood suffrage** the right of all adult men to vote in parliamentary elections
- mechanisation** the invention and use of machines for farming, production and transport
- merchant** a person who buys and sells goods
- merchant ship** a ship designed and used for commercial purposes (trading, buying and selling)
- militia** a military force made up of ordinary citizens rather than highly trained soldiers
- missionary** a person sent to spread a particular religious faith in another country
- mortality rate** the measure of total deaths in relation to a total population
- Mughal emperors** Muslim rulers who were in power in India from around 1525 to 1857
- muster** gathering together a group of people to check their identity against a list or roll
- mutiny** open revolt by soldiers or sailors against their officers
- nationalism** devotion to national identity, or patriotism
- neutrality** not helping or supporting either of the opposing sides
- Opium Wars** wars in 1839–42 and 1856–60 between China and the British Empire over trade and diplomatic relations
- outside daimyo** a *daimyo* (lord) whose lands were distant from Edo, the Japanese capital
- Owenite** the term given to a follower of Robert Owen's movement of an idealistic, socialist society
- pacifist** a person who believes that war and violence are morally unjustifiable
- pandemic** infectious disease that spreads over a large area of the world
- pastoralism** the raising of sheep and cattle
- pastoralist** a person who runs sheep and cattle on large landholdings
- pauper** a very poor person
- peerage** a system of hereditary noble ranks, such as duke, duchess, count and countess
- penal colony** a colony that serves as a prison
- pie-melon jam** jam made from tasteless melons that grew plentifully in paddocks
- pilgrimage** a journey to a place of particular religious, personal or political significance
- pogrom** a violent mob attack, often on Jewish people, that may be government-sanctioned
- polarise** to divide into two opposing groups
- polygamy** a system where men can have more than one wife
- privation** lack of life's necessities
- pseudonym** a false name used by writers to hide their real identity
- Quaker** a member of a Christian group, the Society of Friends, often involved in humanitarian campaigns and opposed to war
- real wages** the purchasing power of earnings relative to prices
- real of eight** an old silver coin, about 38 millimetres in diameter; also known as the Spanish dollar
- referendum** taking a political question to the electorate to get a direct decision from voters
- regent** a person who rules on behalf of a monarch who is too young or ill to take the throne
- rehabilitate** restore to normal life
- repatriate** to send someone back to their country of origin
- restricted property franchise** an electoral system where voting is restricted to people with a substantial amount of property

- rural** of the countryside
- samurai** the hereditary warrior class of Japan
- Sanskrit** an ancient language in which sacred Hindu texts were written in about 2000 BCE
- schism** division of one group into opposing parties
- Scottish Enlightenment** refers to a group of Scottish thinkers (Adam Smith, David Hume, etc.) who espoused the ideas of the Enlightenment
- secular** non-religious
- servile** slave-like
- settler colony** a colony developed by free individuals, usually with the protection and assistance of a parent government
- Shinto** a Japanese religion involving worship of ancestors and nature
- shogun** the military dictator of Japan
- social Darwinism** the idea that only the 'fittest' or most suited individuals or nations or races survive
- socialism** a political ideology based on shared contributions to and shared benefits from society and the economy
- spindle** a circular rod on which raw wool is twisted and formed into a thread
- squatter** an Australian settler who ran sheep or cattle on large tracts of land without the permission of the government
- stagflation** inflation coupled with high unemployment and stagnant economic growth
- stalemate** a situation where opposing forces are deadlocked, so no winner is possible
- standard of living** a measure of how well people live, with regard to their diet, housing, education and health
- status quo** the existing state of things
- suffrage** the right to vote in political elections
- sultanate** a territory ruled by an Islamic leader (sultan)
- sustainability** the ability to replace resources as we consume them
- Taiping Rebellion** a civil war across south China in 1850–64 led by Hong Xiuquan
- tallow** animal fat that is melted down to make soap and candles
- tariff** government tax charged on imported or exported goods
- tenement** a room or rooms forming a separate residence within a house
- trade union** an organisation of workers joining together in order to achieve common goals such as better wages or working conditions
- treason** the betrayal of one's country, particularly by trying to kill a national leader or overthrow a government
- trench foot** a painful destruction of foot tissue caused by continual immersion in cold water or mud
- two-up** a gambling game played with two pennies, with bets placed on a showing of two 'heads' or two 'tails' when the coins land after being tossed in the air
- unequal treaty** a treaty that is far more favourable to one country than the other; often the result of a military threat or defeat
- unfree labour** a system in which labourers are compelled to work and are not paid wages
- urbanisation** the growth of cities
- vassal state** a state that pays tribute, either monetarily or militarily
- veteran** returned soldier
- xenophobia** having a hatred or fear of foreigners or foreign cultures and customs

ECONOMICS AND BUSINESS

- award** an agreement that sets out the minimum terms and conditions of employment relating to an industry
- brand** the distinguishing name, term, symbol or design used to identify a manufacturer's product
- brand leader** the brand in the market with the highest market share
- budget deficit** where government spends more money than it receives in taxation and other revenue in order to expand economic activity
- budget surplus** where the government spends less money than it receives in revenue in order to contract economic activity

- budgetary (fiscal) policy** policy that sets out the revenue and expenditure of the government (both federal and state level)
- card skimming** a scam that involves using a skimmer to collect information from a credit or debit card
- collective agreement** an agreement that results from negotiations between an employer and employers at a workplace to determine pay and working conditions
- commodity** a raw material or primary agricultural product that can be bought and sold, such as copper or coffee
- comparative advantage** the ability to produce goods and/or services at a lower opportunity cost than other firms or individuals; the ability to sell goods and services at a lower price than competitors
- competition** the rivalry that occurs among sellers in their desire to seek and satisfy a market
- competitive advantage** a point of difference or superiority held over a business' competitors
- composition of trade** types of products (goods and/or services) being traded
- consumer** a customer or shopper who purchases goods and services
- containerisation** the practice of transporting cargo in containers that can be used on ships, trucks and trains
- debt** money that is owed to another party
- deregulation** removal of laws and regulations
- direction of trade** refers to the particular countries and kinds of countries towards which a country's exports are sent, and from which its imports are brought
- discrimination** any practice that makes distinctions between different groups based on a range of characteristics such as sex, race, age and religion
- dividend** a sum of money paid regularly (typically half-yearly) by a company to its shareholders out of its profits
- e-commerce** commercial transactions conducted electronically on the internet
- economies of scale** a proportionate saving in costs gained by an increased level of production
- employed** describes a person over the age of 15 years who has worked for 1 or more hours for payment
- employee relations** the relationship between employees (and their representatives) and employers (and their representatives) encompassing all aspects of their working lives including wages and conditions of employment
- employer association** a group of employers who unite to promote their common interest in employee relations as well as to share information and offer mutual support
- entrepreneur** an employee within a business who is takes risks, demonstrates innovative practices and often turns an idea into a profitable product or service for the business
- ethics** a set of moral principles that a business needs to establish and follow
- expatriate worker** an employee temporarily working in a foreign nation
- exports** goods and services that are produced domestically and sold abroad
- factors of production** a term used to describe the inputs used in the production of goods and services
- Fair Work Commission** the national workplace relations tribunal responsible for dealing with workplace matters including dispute resolution, wages and terminations
- Fair Work Ombudsman** a central point of contact for the Australian national workplace with the power to investigate allegations of workplace discrimination and then start legal proceedings against the employer
- free market** a market economy based on supply and demand with little or no government intervention
- Global Financial Crisis (GFC)** a worldwide economic issue that started in the United States and adversely affected economic activity around most of the world
- globalisation** the growing integration of national economies and societies, so that no society is isolated and unaffected by changes and developments in other countries
- government** a group with authority to govern a country or state

- identity theft** theft that occurs is when a person's identity is assumed to gain goods, services, money and other benefits, or to avoid obligations
- import quota** restriction on the quantity of a specific product to be imported over a given period of time
- imports** purchases of foreign goods and services; the opposite of exports
- insolvency** the inability of a debtor to pay their debt
- insurance** a service created to provide financial protection against loss, damage, illness or death
- intermediate product** a good or service that is used in the eventual production of a finished product (for example, sugar and car components)
- logistics** the activities related to product distribution between companies and to the consumer
- lottery scam** a scam that typically begins with a false notification that someone has won something, but they need to supply an advance fee to collect their prize
- market** any place where the sellers of a particular good or service can meet with the buyers of that good and service and where there is potential for a transaction to take place
- market share** the percentage of total sales in a market held by one brand or business
- mass production** production of large quantities of a standardised article (often using assembly line techniques)
- mixed economy** an economic system that is partially free enterprise and partially under government control
- money transfer scam** a false request for a large sum of money to be transferred to the scammer, usually under a false identity
- monopoly** a market containing a single business
- multinational organisation** an organisation with branches in more than one nation
- national comparative advantage** an economic concept that states that a country should specialise in production and export of only goods and services it can produce more efficiently than other goods and services (which it should import)
- National Employment Standards** the 10 minimum conditions that provide a safety net for employees
- open innovation** a concept that encourages utilising external and internal knowledge by sharing knowledge
- outsourcing** where a company gives some of its roles or functions to another company; for example, information technology is often outsourced
- phishing** a scam where someone tries to trick you into giving them your personal details
- price mechanism** an economic system where the forces of demand and supply determine how economic resources will be utilised
- primary sector** a sector of the economy relating to natural resources
- producer** a person or business that makes a good or provides a service to consumers
- product differentiation** the way products are developed and advertised with unique selling points to make them appear different from others on the market
- quaternary sector** the branch of the tertiary sector that provides intellectual activities
- quinary sector** the branch of the tertiary sector that contains businesses that are in hospitality and services such as household services
- scam** a strategy used to steal money or identity from unsuspecting people
- shareholder** any person, company or other institution that owns at least one share in a company
- social media** websites, applications and platforms that allow users to create and share content
- social responsibility** the accountability of a business towards its stakeholders; the idea that businesses should contribute to the welfare of their community
- stakeholder** an individual or group that has a direct or vested interest in the activities of a business
- start-up company** a newly established business
- superannuation** a compulsory payment made into a fund by an employee or employer that is invested and goes towards the person's pension

supply chain a system of organisations, people, resources and information involved in getting a product or service from suppliers to consumers

supply chain management (SCM) the efficient use of resources, the production process and distribution of the finished product

tariff a tax or levy on imported goods and services

tertiary sector a sector of the economy relating to products known as services

trade exchange of goods and services between countries

Trade Confidence Index an index that measures the confidence of businesses involved in exporting goods and services to other countries

trade union an association of workers in a trade or profession focused on protecting rights and interests of employees

transnational corporation a firm owning or controlling production facilities in more than one country through foreign investment

unemployed describes a person over the age of 15 years who has not been paid for any work and has actively looked for work within a 4-week period

work the process whereby a person provides labour or other resources in return for a reward or remuneration

work from home scam typically a get-rich-quick scheme that convinces victims to take on a role of working from home doing minimal work for large sums of money; money is taken from the victim in the form of fees and false investments

worker (employee) a person who works for themselves or a business to produce a product or service

CIVICS AND CITIZENSHIP

civil law a body of law concerned with disputes between individuals, organisations or between the two, and compensation for the victim

common law a body of law concerned with law developed by judges through decisions of courts and similar tribunals

Commonwealth law laws made by the federal government

criminal law a body of law concerned with crime and the legal punishment of criminal offences

disparity a large difference

electorate an area with a member of parliament representing it

global citizenship practising awareness of the wider world and having a sense of your own role as a citizen of the world

habeas corpus a judicial law that requires all prisoners to be brought before a court to determine whether the government has the right to continue to detain them

hung parliament an even division of seats between the two major political parties

minority government a government that is formed when a party does not have a majority of seats in parliament, but is sworn into government by outside support

national identity a collection of shared feelings, attitudes and values that represent an entire country

non-governmental organisation (NGO) an organisation working on important human rights issues without influence and orders from a government

Opposition the political party which has most seats, but does not have enough to hold a majority

parliamentary majority held by the political party with the most amount of seats in the House of Representatives

precedent an earlier action or decision that will influence all other following decisions on the issue

representative democracy where people elect others to represent them in a decision-making process

Index

- abiotic ecosystem components 4
abiotic environments 6
Aboriginal people 466–7
absolute monarchy 205
Accessibility and Remoteness Index
 Australia (ARIA) map 105–6
accident 434
accountability 445
see also social responsibility
acidification 54
adaptation 14, 18, 20, 29, 45–8
adverse acts 455
advertising 445–9
advocacy 428
age of consent 309
agricultural systems 37, 89
 agricultural revolution 216–17
 in Australia 58–90
 extensive (large-scale) agriculture 38
 intensive (small-scale) agriculture 38, 47–8
 new technologies in *see* Green Revolution
 spread of settlement and 61–70
 subsistence (agriculture) 38
air masses 32–4
air pollution 136
alpine biomes 23–6
altitude 24–5
ancillary/extra costs cover 435
animals/animal kingdom
 adaptation to surface of Earth *see* biomes
 animal life in savannas 21–2
 animal welfare 444
 decomposers 8, 21
 domestication of 9, 13, 41
 effect of sunlight on 7–8
 herbivores 8, 21
 meat-eating animals—carnivores 8
 native animals 9
 nomadic herding 37
 plant-eating animals—primary producers 8
 responses to climate variations 16
 species under threat 10
 see also extinction
 warm-blooded animals 26
annual gross domestic product (GDP) 395
anti-colonialism 275
anti-discrimination laws 454–5
ANZACs 363, 377
arbitration 315
Armageddon 358
armaments 356
art 197–8
artisan mining 145–7
Asia
 colonies and independent states in 204
 European imperialism in 203–4
 global economy and 389–406
 main items traded with 400–3
 and the world 322–48
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) trade group 397
aspect 25
assets 426–7, 433
Association of Superannuation Funds of Australia (ASFA) 435
atmosphere 6
attrition warfare 364
Aussie Farmers Direct *extract* 447–8
Australia 28, 108–10, 113–18, 395–6, 453–63, 467
 agricultural systems in 58–90
 Australian aid to PNG 467
 Australian biomes 26–34
 Australian economy 389–96, 403–4
 Australian justice/court system 384–5
 Australian ski fields 23
 Australian sugar production and export 46–7
 Australia's work environment 453–7
 changing trade patterns 397–403
 economic activity 47
 federal government 456–7
 global connectedness and 467
 global economy and 389–406
 immigration in 179–82
 Industrial Revolution in 195–6
 major city events 110–13
 making a nation 288–318
 natural disasters, economic impact of 405–6
 ocean currents 32
 railways in 224–5
 Sydney Olympics legacy 111–12
 towns and cities, characteristics 107–10
Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) 105, 184
Australian Chambers of Commerce and Industry (ACCI) 461
Australian Competition and Consumer Commission (ACCC) 428–9
Australian Council of Trade Unions (ACTU) 463
Australian Human Rights Commission (AHRC) 456
Australian Imperial Force (AIF) 359, 365
Australian Prudential Regulatory Authority (APRA) 421–3
Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) 425
Australian Securities Exchange (ASX) 424–5
Australian Taxation Office (ATO) 436
automatic teller machine (ATM) 421, 430–2
awards 459
baby boomers 436
bacteria 8, 53
bank interest-bearing deposits 425
Banking Act 1959 421
banks 421–2, 430–2
Bendigo Bank 422
bends, the 305
benevolent asylum 301
bereavement 372
bicameral parliaments 306, 332
biodiversity 53, 444
biofuel fuel 50
biomes 4–11, 14–22, 37–55, 58–90
 adapting 45–8
 alpine biomes 23–6
 Australia's biomes 26–34
 changing biomes over time 48
 definition 14
 distribution 16
 food production and 37–55
 global biome distribution, climate factor 31–4
 goods production 37
 how people use 37–41
 human interference in 13
 preserving 49
 world land use 37–45
biotic ecosystem components 4
biotic environments 6–8
blended marketing 448–9
blockades 356
blogs 448
blue chip company 424
bonds 425
botanical gardens 10
bourgeoisie 274–5
brand 392, 441–5
British Empire 214–15, 360–1
budget deficit 395–6
budgetary (fiscal) policy 395
building societies 422–3
bunds 52
'Bunyip aristocracy' 307
burglary 434
bushfires 9
business 439–49
 benefits of competition to 440
 costs 446
 economics and 389–406, 409–18, 421–36, 439–49, 453–63
business process outsourcing (BPO) 172
buyers 439
canopies 17, 29, 44
capitalism 122, 206, 239, 269, 369
carbohydrates 55
carbon compound 6
carbon dioxide 6
card skimming 428
carnivores 8–9, 21
casualties 358
casuarina forests 30
catalysts 356
censorship 368–9
Centrelink 457
cereal crops 50
see also rice
Chartism 305
chartism 271
chemical warfare 364
China 324–8
 The Chinese question in Australia 301
 gun-boat diplomacy 325
 opium wars 324
 position until 1900 327–8

- rising giant 301
 Taipin and Boxer Rebellions 326–8
 trade relations with West 325
 chlorophyll 6
 cigarette smoking 466
 civics and citizenship 142–3, 188–9,
 384–5, 466–7
 civil law 385
 climate 3, 31, 68–9
 climate change 13, 169
 dry climate 16
 global biome distribution 31–4
 vegetation–climate relationship 16,
 20–1
 world's biomes location and 16
 climax vegetation 7, 30
 cloning 9
 closed-circuit television (CCTV) 104
 'Closing the gap' initiative 466
 cloud computing 163
 collective agreement 458
 collective agreements 459
 collectivism 270–1
 colonisers 7
 commerce 194
 commercial farmers 46–8
 commodities 203, 397
 common law 385
 Commonwealth law 384
 communication 126, 160, 410
 see also information and
 communications technology
 (CT) industry
 company tax 458, 460
 comparative advantage 399
 competition 122, 439–43
 competitive advantage 438–40
 competitors 440
 compulsory military training 359–60
 conciliation 292
 conflict 230–1
 conflict minerals 144–6
 confluence 124
 confucianism 324
 coniferous trees 25
 conscription/conscripts 326, 357,
 370–1
 consensus 103
 Consumer Affairs Victoria 428
 Consumer Price Index (CPI) 425
 consumerism (responsible) 154–6
 consumers
 consumer advocacy 428
 economy participants 389, 391–2
 global economy participation 411
 global supply chain participants
 415
 needs and wants 395
 rights of 392
 consumption 55, 142–56
 patterns of consumption 121–39
 containerisation 410
 convicts 10, 180, 290–1
 convict transportation 200, 245–7
 corporate greed 444
 cottage production 217
 court system 384–5
 cowardice 361
 credit cards 421, 431–2
 credit unions 423
 crepuscular animals 7
 criminal law 385
 crops 9–10
 cultivation 43–6
 culture 108–9, 195
 currents *see* ocean currents
 customers 440, 446–8
 cybercrime 428

 Dad and Partner Pay 460
 debit cards 421, 432
 debt 424–7
 decomposers 8, 21
 decomposition 7–8
 demobilisation 377
 democracy 188–9, 206–7, 305–11
 demographics (changing) 169
 Department of Human Services 457
 deregulation 412
 deserts 16, 26, 31, 37
 diaspora 178–9, 251–2
 Dictation Test 313–14
 diet 8, 55
 digital divide 161
 disasters 434
 discrimination 299, 301, 304, 454–5,
 459
 disparity 466
 dispossession 294
 diurnal animals 7
 diversion 363
 diversity 466–7
 dividends 424–5
 domestic system 219–20
 domestication 9, 13, 41, 51
 dry climate 16
 dryland/upland agriculture 45–6,
 53, 66

 Earth 9, 14, 31
 earthquake 405–6
 Eastern Highlands 32
 e-commerce 411
 economic downturn 442
 economic growth 404
 economic loss 53
 economics 389–96, 403–4
 business and 389–406, 409–18,
 421–36, 439–49, 453–63
 economic events 403–4
 global economy, participation in
 411–14
 mixed economy 395
 economies of scale 83, 409–10
 ecosystems 3–10
 education 277–8, 281
 efficiency 440
 egalitarianism 207, 277
 El Niño 33–4
 electorates 188
 Electronic Funds Transfer at Point of
 Sale (EFTPOS) 421
 emancipists 248
 embarkation 359
 employee relations 453
 employees 461–3

 better conditions for 417
 discrimination complaints 455–6
 economy participants 389
 exploitation of 444
 'footloose' employees 129
 global economy participation 412
 global supply chain participants
 415
 skills 391
 see also expatriate workers
 employer associations 461
 employer–employee relationship 453
 employers/employer groups 458–61
 energy 217–18
 Enlightenment 205, 264–7
 entrepreneurs 292, 447, 462
 environments 6–8, 17–18, 55
 Australia's work environment
 453–7, 461
 environmental impacts 53–5,
 70–80, 146–7, 155
 saving and protecting 10
 epiphytes 17–18
 Equator 14, 16, 23
 erosion 60, 72
 ethics 144–7, 443–5
 eucalypt forest 7, 30
 eugenicists 369
 Eurasia [continent] 23
 Eureka Stockade 307–8
 European Economic Union (EEC)
 397
 eutrophication 53
 evapotranspiration 53
 e-waste 147–9
 exemption 314
 expatriates 186, 412
 expenses 427
 exploitation (of workers) 444
 exports 396–9, 402, 404
 extensive agriculture 38
 extinction 9
 exurbia 108

 Facebook 167, 448
 factors of production 389, 394
 fair trade 150–3
Fair Work Act 2009 454–5
 Fair Work Commission (FWC) 457–9
 Fair Work inspectors 457
 Fair Work Ombudsman (FWO)
 454–5, 457–8
 discrimination complaints 455–6
 Fairtrade coffee 445
 fauna 6–8, 13
 Federation 297, 310–11
 Australia at 312
 how people lived at 316–17
 female enfranchisement 309–10
 feminism 279, 309
 see also women's movement
 fertilisers 53, 55
 financial institutions 421–3
 financial investments 423–6
 Financial Ombudsman Service 434
 financial risk 425, 427–35
 scams 427–8
 financial risk management 421–36

- fire-stick farming 294
 First Nations 294
 floating 128
 flora 6–8, 13
 food 37
 food production and population
 growth 39–40
 staple food—rice 50
 food chains 8, 21–2
 food security 88–9
 biomes and 4–11, 14–34, 37–55,
 58–90
 Fordism 123
 forests 17, 30, 44, 48
 deciduous forests 24
 eucalypt forest 7, 30
 mangrove forests 28–30
 needleleaf forests 24
 taiga (boreal) forests 37
 temperate deciduous forests 26
 vine forests 28
 see also rainforests
 fossil fuels 232
 fraud 431
 free enterprise 122
 free markets 394
 free trade agreements 412–13
 French Revolution (1789) 267–8
 frost 16
 fungi 8, 18

 gender gap 165
 geography 4–11, 14–34, 37–55, 58–90
 geographies of interconnections
 96–118, 121–39, 142–56,
 159–75, 178–86
 ‘scale’ concept 26–7, 38
 global citizenship 142–3, 467
 global connectedness 467
 global economy 389–406, 409–14
 global events 405–6
 Global Financial Crisis (GFC) 395,
 403
 global markets 409, 439–49
 global mobility 178–86
 global supply chains 413–16
 global warming 232, 444
 globalisation 55, 128, 142–3, 169, 444
 definition 409–10
 drivers for 410–11
 goldfields/gold 300–1
 goods 123, 393, 414, 439
 Goods and Services Tax (GST) 458,
 460
 Google 462
 governance 100
 government 394–5, 425, 453, 456,
 460
 civics and citizenship 188–9
 compulsory superannuation 436,
 459
 Dad and Partner Pay 460
 global economy participation 412
 global supply chain participants
 415
 government bonds 425
 paid parental leave scheme
 459–60
 revenue and expenditure 395
 self-government 305–11
 grass/grasslands 19–21, 37, 45
 monocot grass 50
 grazers 21
 Green Revolution 50, 77–8
 Greenhouse Effect 53
 greenhouse gases 232
 gross domestic product (GDP) 128,
 395, 404
 gross national income (GNI) per
 capita 163–4

habeas corpus 384
 habitats 46
 hail 6
 Harvester judgement (1907) 315
 heat 4
 herbivores 8, 21
 hierarchy 365
 high-yielding varieties (HYVs) 50,
 53, 55
 history
 commercial highways 194
 depth studies 212–33, 237–60,
 263–83, 288–318, 322–48,
 354–81
 modern world, making of (1750–
 1918) 193–207
 timeline 193
 home loans 422
 homogeneity 195
 hospital cover 435
 House of Representatives 189
 howitzer 358
 human beings 8–10, 13, 16, 37–48
 hung parliament 188
 ‘Huns’ 358
 hunters and gatherers 41–2

 ice 13, 15–16, 24
 identity 98, 466–7
 identity theft 427–9
 immigrants 179–80
 immigration 179–82
 policy 181
 imperialism 195, 239, 272
 imports 397, 399–400, 402
in situ [term] 6
 incapacitation 378
 inclusion 103–4
 income 427
 income protection insurance 434
 income tax (PAYG) 458
 indentured labour 195, 199–200, 239,
 244–50
 India 333–7
 British India 336
 language 335
 Mughal emperors 333
 position until 1900 335–6
 Indigenous cultures 195
 individual arrangements 459
 individualism 271
 Indonesia 337–49
 Dutch East India Company 338–9,
 341–2
 position until 1900 344–9

 trade 339–40
 Treaty of London 342–4
 Industrial Revolution (1750–1914) 10,
 121–5, 195–6, 212–33, 269
 affecting living and working
 conditions 196
 causes 214–25
 coal industry transformation
 218–19
 economic, social and political ideas
 205–7
 European imperial expansion
 202–4
 impact 232–3
 modernity and representation—art
 and photographs 197–8
 movement of peoples 199–202
 population movement 225–32
 power and energy 217–18
 revolutions, independence and
 equality 205–6
 textile industry transformation
 219–20
 timeline 212
 transport revolution: railways and
 canals 222–4
 industrialisation 136–7
 industrialism 121
 industry 123–4, 127–37
 industry associations 461
 infantry 362
 inflation 453
 information 159–60, 432, 446–7
 information and communications
 technology (ICT) industry
 144–7, 159–64, 168–75
 information technology outsourcing
 (ITO) 171
 injury 434
 innovation 77, 168–70, 440, 446, 449
 insolvency 425
 insurance 422, 432–4
 intensive agriculture 38, 46–8
 interactive mapping 161
 interconnections 96–118, 121–39,
 142–56, 159–75, 178–86
 interest 421, 423, 425
 Intergovernmental Panel for Climate
 Change (IPCC) 53
 intermediate products 400
 internal migration 184–5
 International Consumer Protection
 and Enforcement Network
 (ICPEN) 428
 internet 159, 161, 410, 429, 446, 448
 intertidal wetlands 112
 intoxicants 300
 invention 215
 investment/investors 123, 296, 417,
 425–6
 iron gangs 290
 irregulars 362
 irrigation 50, 52–3
 Islam 304

 Japan 328–33
 Japanese divers 305
 Meiji Restoration 331

- position until 1900 331–2
samurai 329
 kanaka 299
 king tides 30
 knowledge process outsourcing (KPO) 172
 La Niña 33–4
 land 37–45, 54, 64, 74, 216–17
 land fill 232
 landscape aesthetics 178
 landslides 46
 latitude 24
 laws and citizens 384–5
 leaf litter 18
 leisure/sport 109
 lichens 17–18
 life insurance 434
 livestock 9–10, 37–8
 logistics 414
 long service leave 458
 lottery scams 428
 low- and middle-income countries 163
 luggers 300
 Machu Picchu [city] 5–6
 maize 50
 Malthusian trap 40
 managed funds 426
 mangrove forests 28–30
 manhood suffrage 308
 manufacturing 130–1, 133, 138, 441
 market share 441–2
 markets 439–43
 ‘Marys’ 299
 mass production 409
 mechanisation 195
 media 189, 466–7
 Medicare 434
 megatrends 168–9
 merchants 199, 214, 301
 methane gas 48, 53–4
 metropolitan area 108
 migration 133–5, 178, 184–5, 240–58
 militia 359
 Miners Protective League 300
 minimum wages 459
 mining industry 144–6, 218–19, 297, 300, 307
 see also goldfields/gold
 minority government 188
 missionaries 41–2, 44
 mixed economy 395
 mobile technology 165–6
 modernity 197–8
 money transfer scams 428–9
 monocots 50
 monoculture 52–3
 monopolies 440
 monsoons 32–3
 mortality rate 200
 mortgages 422
 mosses 17–18
 mountain biomes *see* alpine biomes
 mountains 24–5, 31
 movement of peoples (1750–1901) 237–61
 multiculturalism 182
 multinational corporations (MNCs) 340, 403, 410, 412, 418
 mutiny 365
 mutually owned institutions 422–3
 national comparative advantage 410
 National Employment Standards (NES) 457–9
 national identities 466
 national parks 10
 nationalism 206, 272, 357, 381
 nationhood 288–318
 Afghans 303–5
 Australian cities and towns 289
 Australian self-government and democracy 305–11
 beliefs and customs; new and old 299
 Chinese 300
 convict settlement, spread of 290–1
 the 1890s 296–7
 Eureka Stockade 307–8
 Federation 297, 310–11
 female enfranchisement 309–10
 free settlement 182, 251, 258–61, 292–3
 Harvester judgement (1907) 315
 legislation 1901–14 312–18
 monster petition and victories 310
 non-Europeans, Australian experiences 297–305
 position of women and women organising 309
 racial discrimination and intolerance 299
 rights denied 311
 settlement and contact, extension of 290–7
 South Sea Islanders in Australia 297–9
 state welfare establishment 317–18
 sugar industry, driving out those who made 299
 timeline 288
 trouble on goldfields 300–1
 Tung Wab Times, reading 301–2
 unlock the lands 308–9
 white settlers and Indigenous occupants 291–2, 294–5
 wool and gold 293–4
 working life in 1900s 314–15
 natural disasters 405–6
 negotiation 459
 Newstart Allowance 456
 nightlife 110
 nitrogen 50
 nocturnal animals 7
 nomadic herding 37
 non-governmental organisation (NGO) 467
 non-profit organisations 444
 non-violence 275
 North Pole 14, 16, 25
 north–south gap 150
 nostalgia 98
 nutrients 7–8, 53, 55
 see also decomposition
 ocean currents 31–2
 OECD (Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development) 172
 offshoring 171–2
 offsite sedimentation 54
 One Laptop Per Child (OLPC) project 170–1
 online presence development 446
 online shopping (safe) 429–30
 open innovation 449
 Opposition, the 188
 orchids 18
 Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) country 186
 orographic rainfall 25, 31
 outsourcing 171–2, 414
 overseas migration 186
 oxygen 48
 paid parental leave scheme 459–60
 palm oil 154–6
 palms 17
 pandemic infection 377
 panicles 50
 parliament 188
 parliamentary majority 188
 passwords 431
 pastoralism 64, 293
 payroll tax 458, 460
 peak bodies 461
 Peapol [online grocer] 446
 peerage 307
 penal colonies 200
 perpetual frost 16
 personal identification numbers (PINs) 430
 personal income tax 460
 personal loans 421–2
 personal mobility 184
 pesticides 49–50, 55, 75
 phishing 428–9
 phosphate 50
 photography 197–8, 257
 photosynthesis 6
 places and spaces 96–107
 Elma Yantarrnga’s story 96–8
 Tala’s story 98–9
 plants 6–9, 16–18, 30, 50–2
 adaptation to surface of Earth *see* biomes
 domestication of 9, 13, 51
 species under threat 10
 see also extinction
 pneumatophores 29
 polar caps 16
 polarisation 370
 poles (North and South) 14, 16, 25
 political choice 189
 political parties 188–9
 pollution 136–7, 444
 Polynesian Labourers Acts 298
 Poor Law 231

- population 9–10
 food production and population
 growth 39–40, 44
 Malthus' views 38–40
 rapidly increasing populations in
 SE Asia 49
 Post-It notes 462
 potato famine 251–2
 power 217–18
 precedent 385
 preservation 49
 price 394, 442
 primary producers 8
 primary sector 389
 principles 149
 private health insurance 434–5
 private property 122
 privation 296
 producers 391, 393–4, 412, 415
 product differentiation 445–9
 production economic indicators 393
 professional associations 461
 profit 442, 445
 progressive ideas and movement
 (1750–1918) 263–83
 role in social upheavals 267–83
 timeline 263
 propaganda 368–9
- quakers 242
 quaternary sector 389
 quinary sector 389
- racism 299, 313
 anti-racism 272, 275
 radiation 4
 Rainforest Alliance 444
 rainforests 15–18
 Australian rainforests 28
 defining 28
 domination by plant life 17
 features 17–18
 height, density and coverage 17
 plant species in 17
 shifting cultivators, impact of 43
 special adaptations 18
 special relationships between
 plants 18
 tropical rainforests 24
 rain/rainfall 4, 6, 15–16, 18, 55, 68
 orographic rainfall 25, 31
 subsistence crops reliance on 45–6
 Ramadan 52
 raw materials 124, 138, 414, 444
 refugees 181–2
 Reject Shop 442
 renewable energy 173
 repatriation 367, 377–8
 representative democracy 188
 Republicanism 294
Reserve Bank Act 1959 421
 Reserve Bank of Australia (RBA) 401,
 403, 421
 reserves 10
 REST Industry Super 435
 restricted property franchise 305–6
 retirement 435–6
 see also superannuation
- rice 45–6
 ageing workforce in rural areas 54
 domesticated varieties 51
 Green Revolution 50
 growth stages 51
 irrigated rice 52–3
 rain-fed rice 53
 rice plant 50–2
 rice production and sustainability
 53–5
 rice-growing systems 52–3
 role of rice 49–55
 rural–urban migration 54
 significance in culture 52
 in Southeast Asia 49–55
 as staple food 50
 use as currency 52
 wet rice 46, 48
 rice cultivators 45–6
 rights 278–9, 336, 392
 risk 433–4
 see also insurance
 ‘risk averse’ people 423
 robotics 391
 rocks 6
 weathering of (*in situ*) 6
 root systems 29–30
 pneumatophores 29
 Roy Morgan Research 446
 rural communities 82–3
 rural households 195
 rural–urban migration 54, 133–5
- Safe Work Australia 453–4
Safe Work Australia Act 2008 453
 safety 103–4
 salary 421, 436
 salinity 54, 60, 73–5
 savannas 16, 19–22, 26
 animal life 21–2
 climate in 20–1
 domination by animal life 19
 grasslands in 19–21, 37
 plant density, coverage and species
 20
 special adaptations 20
 tree height 19
 vegetation and patterns 19–21
 savings 123, 421
 ‘scale’ concept 26–7, 38
 scams 427–8
 SCAMwatch 429
 scavengers 8
 schism 370
 Schlieffen Plan 356
 sea changers 184
 sea levels 30
 seasonal air mass movements 32–4
 secular pacifists 369
 self-managed superannuation funds
 (SMSFs) 436
 sellers 439
 services 105, 123, 393, 439, 445–9
 servility 313
 settlers 201–2
 shareholders 149, 422, 425
 shares 424–5
 Shell Global Group 449
- shelter 37
 shifting cultivators 43–5
 shopping 109–10
 Siemens Ltd Australia 168–70
Silent Spring [book] 49
 Silicon Valley 127–30
 ski fields 23
 skimming 430–1
 slash and burn cycle (of cultivation)
 43–4
 slavery 199–200, 240–4, 278
 abolition of 242
 sleet 6
 snow 6, 23–4
 social media 166–8, 446, 448–9
 social responsibility 415–17, 443–5
 socialism 272–3
 soil 6–7
 acid sulfate soils 55
 acidification and salinisation 54
 acidity 72–3
 erosion 72
 fertility of 18, 44, 55
 soldier settlement scheme 66–7
 solstices 6
 South Equatorial Current (SEC) 32
 Southeast Asia
 changing consumption trends 55
 environmental impacts 53–4
 Green Revolution 50
 rapidly increasing populations 49
 rice in 49–55
 rice production and sustainability
 53–5
 role of rice 50–2
 significance of rice in culture 52
 spatial data 161, 173
 squatters 62, 293, 308
 stagflation 358
 standard of living 215
 staple food 50
 start-up companies 394
 state welfare 317–18
 status quo 379
 subsistence agriculture 38, 45–6
 suffrage 207, 281
 sugar 6, 46–7
 Suki people 42
 sun, the 4, 6–8, 25
 sunlight 4, 6
 ‘Super Guarantee’ (SG) 459
 superannuation 458–9
 building 435–6
 compulsory superannuation 436,
 459
 fund groups 436
 supermarket chains 85
 supply chain management (SCM) 414
 supply chains 413–14, 416–17
 surplus excess 38
 sustainability 53–5, 85–8, 168–70,
 233, 416–17, 444
 see also ethics; social responsibility
 sweatshops 444
- taiga (boreal) forests 37
 tallow 293
 target groups (customers) 448

- tariffs 400
 Tasmanian tiger (thylacine) 9
 taxation 426, 458, 460
 tax invoices 460
 technology 50, 159–75
 appropriate technology 168
 from heavy to high tech 125–37
 mobile technology 165–6
 of movement 215
 new technologies 219, 409, 446
 where your laptop comes from 137–9
 temperate deciduous forests 26
 temperature 4, 6, 16
 tertiary sector 389
 tillering 50
 title deeds 101
 topography 52–3
 Torres Strait Islander people 466–7
 total and permanent disability insurance 434
 tourism
 domestic/international travel 113–14
 popular destinations 115
 trace elements 79
 trade 150–3, 439
 changing trade patterns 397–403
 composition of trade 399
 direction of trade 397–9
 downturn in current trading situation 442
 free trade agreements 400, 412
 trade barriers removal 411
 two-way trade 402–3
 Trade Confidence Index 401–2
 trade unions 273, 314, 461–3
 transnational corporations 128, 146, 418
 transparency 417
 transport 105–6, 410
 trauma insurance 434
 treason 365
 Treaty of London (1840) 356
 trees 17, 19, 25, 43–4
 trench foot 363, 366
 Tropic of Cancer/Tropic of Capricorn 33
 tropical rainforests 26
 tsunami 405–6
 tundra 24, 37
 Twitter 448
 two-up game 381
 typhoons 405
 Uluru experience 100–3
 UN Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) 10
 unemployment 456
 unfree labour 199
 Unilever 416
 unions 462–3
 urbanisation 135–6, 169, 316
 vegetation
 changes with altitude and latitude 24–5
 climax vegetation 7, 30
 development and the sun 8
 vegetation patterns 20–1, 24
 vegetation–climate relationship 16
 see also plants
 vegetative stage (of plants) 50
 vine forests 28
 virtual shopping 446
 wages 314, 361, 421, 436
 Walker Circulation 34
 War of American Independence (1776–83) 267
War Precautions Act 1914 358, 368, 375
 waste/waste material 4, 8, 55, 147–9
 water 4, 6, 9–10, 53–5
 salt water 29–30
 turbidity 76
 water diversion 53
 water pollution 136
 water quality decline 75–6
 water table 73
 weather 6, 33–4
 weathering 6
 websites 429
 welfare (animals) 444
 wet rice 46, 48
 wetlands 74, 112
 wheat production 78–80
 White Australia Policy 182, 312–14
 wildlife 46
 Woman's Christian Temperance Union (WCTU) 309
 women's movement 278, 280–1, 283
 women's suffrage 281
 work 122, 428–9
 work environment 453–7
Work Health and Safety Act 2011 454
 work related injury 454
 workers *see* employees
 workplace 453–63
 world biomes 14–16
 World Heritage Convention 49
 World Heritage listed sites/areas 10–11, 49, 101, 103
 world land use 37–45
 World Vision Australia 467
 World War I (1914–18) 354–70
 amphibious invasion 362
 ANZACS 363, 377, 380–1
 armistice 375
 Australian women and 372–3
 bringing troops home 376–7
 campaigns 362, 367–8
 casualties 367–8
 causes 356–61
 censorship and propaganda 368–9
 enlisting to fight and reasons 359–61
 European nations at outbreak, and during WWI 355
 Gallipoli—landing and digging in 362–4
 growth of returned soldier organisations 379
 importance of the Empire 360–1
 Indigenous people and 373–4
 military conscription 370–1
 repatriation and grieving 377–8
 social and ethnic division 374–5
 timeline 354
 trench warfare conditions 366–7
 war front 375–6
 war on home front 368–75
 war's end—commemoration and legend creation 375–81
 war's outbreak 357–9
 Western Front 364–6
 where Australians fought, nature of warfare and 362–8
 World Wide Web (WWW) 159
 worldviews 99–103
 xeric shrublands 27
 Youth Allowance 457
 YouTube 448
 zonation 25
 zoos 10

